This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

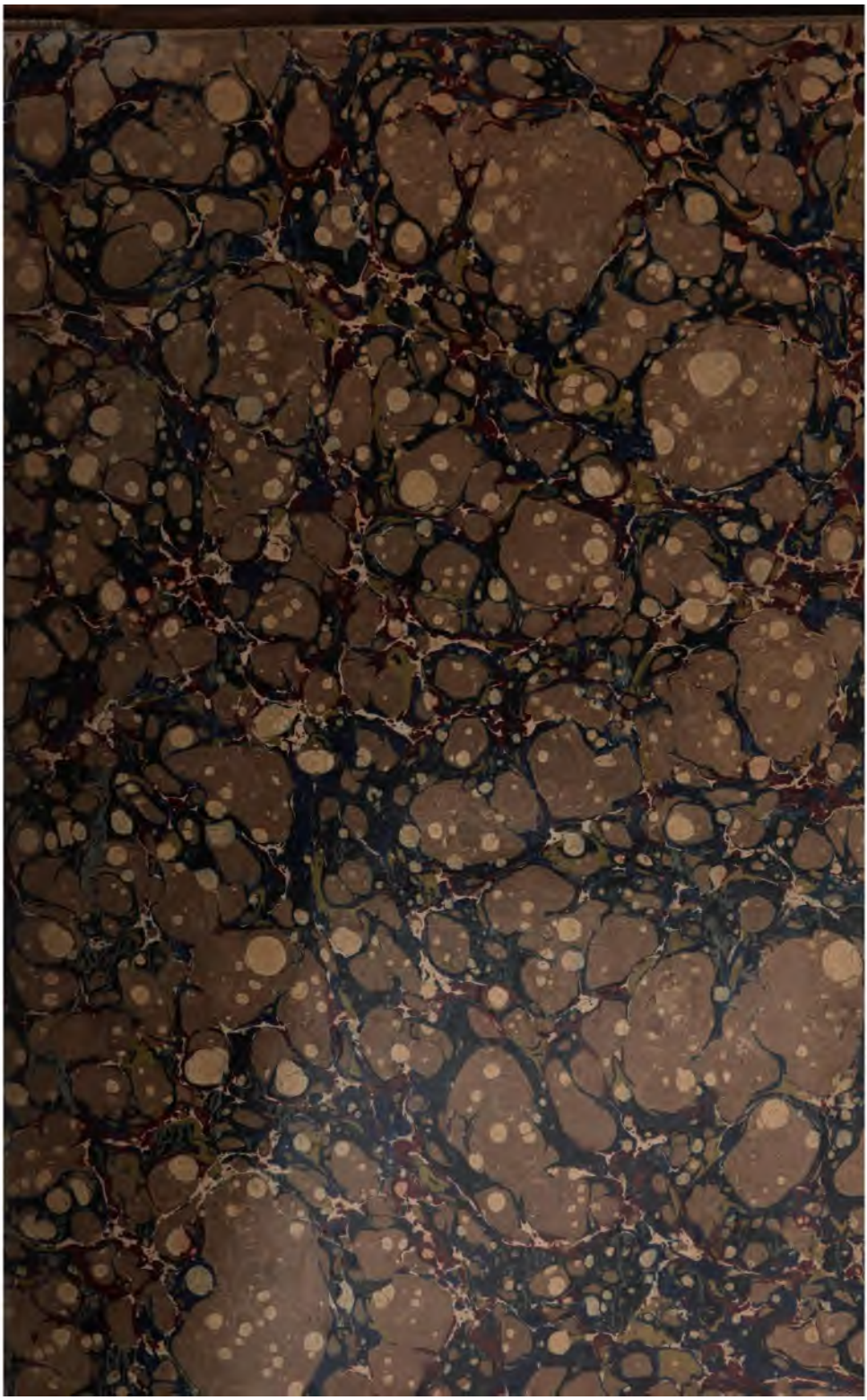
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



E12e

670 - 20117

Sir Ferumbras.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XXXIV.

1879.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

THE

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

Fierabras.

PART I.

Sir Ferumbras.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE PAPER MS. ABOUT 1380 A.D., IN THE BODLEIAN LIBRARY (ASHMOLE MS. 33)

BY

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF THE "GESTA ROMANORUM," "STARKEY'S LIFE AND LETTERS," ETC.

LIBRARY
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR
UNIVERSITY

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXIX.

LIBRARY
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR
UNIVERSITY

Extra Series,

XXXIV.

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS.

122430

INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. *Popularity of the romance, as shown by numerous editions*, p. v.
§ 2. *Caxton's "Lyf of Charles the grete,"* p. viii.
§ 3. *Ferumbras an enlarged portion of a previous romance*, p. xi.
§ 4. *English MSS. of the Charlemagne Romances*, p. xii.
§ 5. *Description of the Ashmole MS.* 33, p. xiv.
§ 6. *Characters of the romance*, p. xvii.
§ 7. *Its versification*, p. xviii.
§ 8. *Its Dialectal and Grammatical peculiarities*, p. xviii.
§ 9. *Conclusion*, p. xxvii.

§ 1. In the present Introduction I do not propose to enter into the general question of the Origin and History of the Charlemagne Romances, but to confine myself to the one with which we are immediately concerned.

Of all these romances none attained to so high a pitch of popularity as that, the present version of which is now for the first time published. MM. Krœber and G. Servois, the editors of the old French version (from which the present is a translation), in their introduction say: "Des le xiime siècle probablement, et pour sûr au siècle suivant, la chanson de Fierabras était chantée en provençal et en français, au midi et au nord de la France. Elle a été de bonne heure traduite ou imitée dans presque toutes les langues de l'Europe, et n'a cessé chez nous d'être rajeunie et reproduite dans les versions en prose qui en ont été publiées depuis le xve siècle jusqu'à nos jours."[1]

Of the Romance of Fierabras two versions exist, the one Provençal,[2] the other French, the former of which, in the opinion of MM. Krœber and Servois, was a translation from a French original now lost. Of the French

[1] "Fierabras, *Chanson de Geste*," Paris, 1860, 8°. p. ii.

[2] Published by Herr Bekker, with the title, "Der Roman von Ferabras provenzalisch, herausgeg. von Herr Bekker," Berlin, 1829, 4°. It consists of 5084 lines.

version five MSS. are known to exist, two belonging to the XIV, and two to the XV century.[1]

Previous to 1860, the poetical version of Fierabras had never been printed, but there had been numerous editions of the prose romance. A full account of these will be found in Brunet's *Manuel du Libraire*, s.v.v. *Conqueste* and *Fierabras*, and I shall therefore confine myself to a notice of the most remarkable of these editions.

The first prose version was published in 1478, at Geneva, with the title, "Le Roman de Fier a bras, le geant," and the colophon, "Imprime a Geneve l'an de grace mil cccc.lxxviij. le xxviij^{e} iour de Nouembre." It is in folio, Gothic letters, and consists of 115 leaves, with no pagination.

In the Grenville Library in the British Museum, Nos. 10,531, and 10,532 are two copies.

The first, entitled, "Fierabras, Roman par Henry Bolomier," which is the copy mentioned by Brunet, N. R. II. p. 231, as incorrectly described in the Catalogue of Vander Velde, commences with the prologue *Saint Pol docteur de Verite*, which, with Table of Chapters, occupies five leaves. The text begins on leaf 6, and finishes on 110 back, with the colophon—"Explicit Fierabras, par Symon du Jardin à Geneve." It is in folio and undated.

The work is divided into three Books, the second of which contains

[1] The editors of Fierabras only mention *four*, but one has since been discovered in the Municipal Library of Hanover. (See p. xiv. below.) Of these only one is in the British Museum, viz. MS. Reg. 15. E. vi. This magnificent MS., which is in a state of perfect preservation, forms an enormous folio volume, on vellum, written in double columns in the 15th century. It contains 487 folios, besides 5 folios at the beginning, of which one is blank. The first has, on the back, a table of the contents of the volume. The second contains, on the back, a superb miniature, representing John Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury, who died in 1453, on his knees, presenting this volume to Margaret of Anjou, queen of Henry VI, who is seated beside her husband on a kind of bed, in a chamber of which the tapestry bears everywhere the arms of England and France quartered. Behind the queen are two ladies, and behind the king a great number of men. Above is a dedication in verse.

The third leaf contains a pedigree of Henry VI. This leaf, as well as the preceding, is ornamented with the armorial bearings of John Talbot, and of Henry VI. and his queen quartered. The back of the fifth folio is entirely occupied by a large miniature, representing *le Chastel du Chaire, la Cité de Babiloine, Nectanebz seigneur d'Egipte, père Alixandre, le jardin du Baulme*, and *les moulins de Babiloine*.

The volume contains a large number of Romances in prose and verse. Fierabras begins on lf. 66, and ends on lf. 81, with the colophon, *Cy fine le iiij^{me} livre Charlemaine*, and is followed by *Le livre de Oger Le Dannemarche*, which begins on leaf 82, under a miniature representing Ogier breaking Charlot's head with a chess-board. The last piece but one is *Le livre des fais d'armes et de chevalerie*, translated and printed by Caxton in 1490,

the whole of the romance of Sir Ferumbras. This is subdivided into 3 parts, the first containing 16 chapters, and extending from the appearance of Ferumbras before Charles' camp to the capture of Oliver: the second extends to immediately before the starting of Richard of Normandy on his message to Charles from the besieged knights; and the third ends with the wedding of Guy and Floripas. The fight between Roland and Ferragus occurs in Book III. part i. chapt. 12. It agrees throughout with the French version as printed by MM. Krœber and Servois.

The heading to Book II. runs as follows:—"La premiere p*ar*tie du second liure co*n*tient XVI chapitres, et p*ar*le de la bataille faicte p*ar* oliuier & fierabras ung merueilleux geant," and it is taken, we are told, from a "rommant fait a lancienne façon sans grand ordonnance dont iay este insite a le reduire en prose p*ar* chapitres ordonnez," and has been turned from "la rime anci*en*ne en prose."

The first and third parts are taken from Vincent de Beauvais, *Speculum Historiale.* (See quotation from Caxton's translation below.)

The second copy in the Grenville Library, 10532, has the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil quattre cens quatre vingtz et seize, Le xx jour de novembre." It consists of 65 leaves, in folio.

In the Royal Library, British Museum (press-mark c 6 b. 12), is a copy without title-page, with the colophon, "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc.lxxxiij. et Le. xiij. iour de moys de Mars. Deo gracias. Amen." Folio, 115 leaves. On the back of A i is a large woodcut representing Fierabras, and another large one on O 5, representing Charlemagne. Smaller cuts are interspersed in the text. The preface is on A ij, the Index begins on A ij back, and the text on A vj. It corresponds throughout with the Grenville copy, No. 10,532.

A prose edition in German is also in the British Museum (Press-mark 837, l. 21), printed by Iheronimus Rodler, at Siemern, 2 May, 1533. Folio: 53 leaves without pagination. It is interspersed with large woodcuts. This edition was reprinted in 1809.

In the same Library are also three editions of a work entitled—"Historia del Emperador Carlo Magno, en la qual se trata de las grandes proezas y Nazañas de los doce Pares de Francia, y de como Fueron vendidos por el traydor Ganalón: y de la cruda batalla, que hubo Oliveros Con Fierabras, Rey de Alexandria. *Traducido del Frances al Castellano.*" Por Nicolas de

Piamonte. First edition, 1528. Reprinted, Cordova, 1649, 4°.; 1700, 8°.; 1777, 8°. This work is in reality a literal translation of the second part of the French prose romance, and corresponds exactly with our version.

Italy early adopted the Romance, and towards the close of the XV century was published a poetical version in that language, entitled, "*El cantare di Fierabraccia et Olivieri.*"

§ 2. In 1485 Caxton printed his "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete," which is simply a translation of the French Prose Romance of Fierabras already referred to. The following is his rendering of the Prologue of the French versions:—

[1]"SAynt Poul doctour of veryte sayth to vs that al thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng / ben wryton to our doctryne / And Boece maketh mencion that the helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuercely / Thenne sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and corrobered by the doctours of holy chyrche / Neuertheles the thynges passed dyuersley reduced to remembraunce / engendre in vs correction of vnlauful lyf. For the werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue to vs ensaumple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions digne & worthy of helth in folowyng the good / and eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hye hystoryes / the comune vnderstondyng is better content to the ymagnacion local than to symple auctoryte / to which it is submysed / I saye this gladly / For oftymes I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry bolomyer chanonne of lausanne for to reduce for his playsyr somme hystoryes as wel in latyn & in romaunce as in other facion wryton / that is to say of the ryght puyssaunt / vertuous / and noble charles the grete / kyng of fraunce and emperour of Rome / Sone of the grete Pepyn / And of his prynces & barons / As Rolland Olyuer / and other / touchyng[2] somme werkes haultayne doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght ardaunt courage / to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and myscreaunts whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf to to lyue wel / And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen of thys mater / and the hystoryes dysioyned wythoute ordre / therfore at his request after the capacyte of my lytel entendement / And after thystoryes and mater that I haue founden I haue ordeyned this book folowyng / And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more largely enformed and al playn I had letter made it / For I haue not sayd ony matere / but I haue therof ben enformed / Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrrour hystoryal / as by the canonnes and somme other bookes whiche make mencyon of the werke folowyng / And by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable foundement I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce. For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of the frenssh men / and for prouffyte of euery man / and after the desyre of the redar and herer / there shalle be founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche the persone

[1] sign. A ij. [2] col. 2.

shal haue desyre to here or rede / wythoute grete ate[n]dacyon / by[1] the playsyr of god to whome I submytte al myn ente*n*te to write no thyng that ought to be blamed / ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion of euery persone /"

This is followed immediately by Caxton's own prologue, as follows:—

"THenne for as moche I late had fynysshed in enprynte the book of the noble & vyctoryous kyng Arthur fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of crysten kynges / and also tofore had reduced into englisshe the noble hystorye & lyf of Godefroy of boloyn kyng of Iherusalem / last of the said iij worthy Somme persones of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce thystorye and lyf of the noble and crysten prynce Charles the grete kyng of fraunce[2] & emperour of Rome / the second of the thre worthy / to thende that thystoryes / actes / & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue lyke as they be in latyn or in frensshe / For the moost quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe here in this noble royame of englond / And for to satysfye the desyre & requeste of my good synguler lordes & specyal maysters and frendes I haue enprysed and concluded in my self to reduce this sayd book in to our englysshe / as all alonge and playnely ye may rede / here / and see in thys book[3] here folowyng / besechyng al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and amende it / And also to pardone me of the rude & symple reducyng / and though so be there be no gaye termes / ne subtyl ne newe eloquence / yet I hope that it shal be vnderstonden & to that entente I haue specyally reduced it / after the symple connyng that god hath lente to me / wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke hym / & also am bounden to praye for my fader and moders soules / that in my youthe sette me to scole / by whyche by the suffraunce of god I gete my lyuyng I hope truly And that I may so do & contynue I byseche hym to grau*n*te me of his grace / and so to laboure and occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette & dedely synne / that after this lyf I may come to hys blysse in heuen. AMEN."

The text concludes with the following epilogue[4]:—

"¶ And by cause I Wylliam Caxton was desyred & requyred by a good and synguler frend of myn / Maister wylliam dau[5]beney one of the tresorers of the Iewellys of the noble & moost crysten kyng / our naturel and souerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy To reduce al these sayd hystoryes in to our Englysshe tongue I haue put me in deuoyr to translate thys sayd book as ye heretofore may se al a longe and pl[a]yn / prayeng alle them that shal rede / see or here it / to pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[l]acyon and reducyng / bysechyng theym that shal fynde faute to correcte it / & in so doyng they shal deserue thankynges / & I shal praye god for them / who brynge them and me after this short and transytorye lyf to euerlastyng blysse. Amen / the whyche werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xviij day of Iuyn the

[1] sign. A ij, back. [2] *Ed.* frauuce. [3] col. 2.
[4] sign. M vij, back, col. 1. [5] col. 2.

second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrd / And the yere of our lord MCCCClxxxv / And enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth /

¶ Explicit *per* William Caxton."

On Sign. M. vij we read—"it is so that at the requeste of the sayd venerable man tofore named Maister henry bolonnyer chanoune of lausanne I haue been Incyted to translate & reduce into Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd[1] book / I haue taken & drawen oute of a book named myrrour hystoryal for the moost parte / & the second book I haue onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe"—In the "Table" we are told that "The fyrst book spekyth of the begynnyng of fraunce / and of the fyrst crysten kyng of fraunce / whyche was named Cloys." . . . "The second book spekith of the batayle that Olyuer dyd ayenst Fyerabras the meruayllous geaunte." . . . "The iij book speketh how by reuelacyon of saynt Iames Charles went and conquerd Spayne and Galyce . . . and fynally of the trayson of Ganellon by the whyche the deth of Rolland was pyetous / the deth of Oliuer dolorouse. . . . . and fynably the deth of Charles themperour."

The only existing copy at present known is in the King's Library, British Museum (Press-mark C. 10 b. 9). It is perfect, and consists of 96 folio leaves in double columns, 39 lines to a column. There is no title-page.

The present romance was particularly popular in Spain. The *Historia del Emperador Carlomagno* contains, in addition to the events related in 'Fierabras,' also the combat between Ferragus and Roland, and an account of the fatal day of Roncesvalles.[2] Piamonte's work has been several times reprinted, and two editions in Portuguese were published in the last and present centuries.[3] To it doubtless Cervantes was indebted for many of his allusions, and it was it which he represents as having been in the library of Don Quixote, and burnt by order of the priest and the barber.[4] In 1635 Calderon wrote his drama 'La Puente de Mantible,'[5] which is founded on a portion of our romance.

The Welsh version of the 'Gests of Charlemagne,'[6] lately published, does not contain our romance, but is a translation of Turpin's life of Charlemagne, as is also the Irish version in the "Book of Lismore," the property of the Duke of Devonshire.[7]

[1] sign. M. vij, back.
[2] See Ticknor, *History of Spanish Literature*, 1849, I. 222.
[3] 'Fierabras,' ed. MM. Krœber and G. Servois, introd. p. xvi.
[4] See Skelton's ed. of 'Don Quixote,' 1652, Bk. I. Pt. 4, chapt. xxii. p. 130.
[5] In this spelling he follows the practice of Piamonte in his *Historia*.
[6] 'Campeu Charlymaen,' being the Gests of Charlemagne, &c., ed. from the Hengwrt MSS. by the Rev. R. Williams, 1878 (privately printed).
[7] See the *Academy*, May 22nd, 1875.

The earliest known mention of any romance on the subject is in a deed of the xiv century, by which Guy de Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, bequeathed his library to the Abbey of Bordesley, in the county of Warwick, in the catalogue of which we find a *Volum del romance des mareschaus et de Fierabras de Alisaundre*, and probably is the same which is referred to in the catalogue of the library of the Castle of Montauban, in France, taken in 1507 :—

> "Item. vng libre en romans dit Mellusina.
> Item. ung autre libre en romans dit *Fierbras*."[1]

§ 3. M. Gaston Paris in 1865 pointed out that 'Fierabras' was in reality but a portion of an earlier Romance, considerably amplified and re-handled. Of this earlier poem, only known from the short analysis of it by Philippe Mousket (v. 4666 *et seq.*), the following summary is given by M. Paris:[2]—"Puis Rome fut prise par force, et toute la population mise à mort, le pape tué, Château-Miroir pris, et toute la ville brûlée. Le duc Garin et les siens entrèrent en Château-Croissant; car les Sarrasins, Turcs et Persans, avaient amené trop de monde et de Syrie et d'Espagne. Les chrétiens désespérés envoyèrent demander secours au bon roi Charlemagne, qui tenait sa cour en France. Le roi leur envoya Gui de Bourgogne . . ., et Richard de Normandie. Ils reprirent *le Miroir;* le duc Garin, qui tenait Pavie et avait conservé Château-Croissant, prit aussi part à la bataille. Charles arriva lui-même, amenant ses troupes rassemblées de maint pays . . . . . il se dirigea vers Rome et fit grand mal aux païens. C'est alors qu'Olivier combattit l'orgueilleux Fierabras; il le vainquit et reconquit les deux barils que celui-ci avait pris à Rome; il les jeta dans le Tibre, afin que personne ne pût plus boire du baume qu'ils contenaient; c'était celui-là même dont Jésus-Christ fut embaumé. Enfin tous les païens furent tués et les chrétiens reprirent Rome; on fit un autre pape, et Charles revint en France, louant Dieu et saint Pierre."

There are numerous passages in 'Fierabras' pointing to a preceding romance: thus at the very start we are introduced at once *in medias res* in a manner which seems to show that the author takes it as granted that his readers are well acquainted with the events which he so rapidly describes[3]—the opening lines being in point of fact a brief *resumé* of the poem summarized as above by M. Gaston Paris under the name of 'Balan.' Again, ll. 2241—2246[4] are also palpable references to events previously described.

[1] 'Fierabras,' ed. MM. Krœber and Servois, introd. p. xxii.
[2] *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, pp. 251-2. [3] *Histoire Poétique*, p. 251.
[4] Corresponding with ll. 1412—1420, and 2076—2084 of 'Sir Ferumbras.'

The author of 'Fierabras' has, however, considerably modified his original to suit the altered taste of the time, has transported the scene of action to Spain,[1] and has substituted for the simple and matter-of-fact ending of the earlier poem one much more romantic. From these facts, and the absence of any reference to it by any author earlier than the xiv century, as well as from the frequent allusions to other works found in it, M. Gaston Paris has come to the conclusion that 'Fierabras' is a comparatively modern production, and he thinks it probable that it was composed in the interest of the monks, in order to draw attention to the relics preserved at the Abbey of Saint Denis.

These allusions to a pre-existing Romance are not, of course, so evident in 'Sir Ferumbras.' The first leaf of the Ashmole MS. being lost, we cannot say how the English translator rendered the introductory lines, and his words at l. 65 in reference to the sacred relics "of wham y tolde ȝow of eer," may only refer to his mention of them in his (now lost) introduction. Lines 1412—1420, and 2076—2084, however, as already stated, clearly refer to a story already told, as do also ll. 3193-4.

But since the publication of M. Paris' exhaustive work, there has been found in the Municipal Library of Hanover a unique copy of a Romance with the title of 'La Destruction de Rome,' which represents the first part of the Romance of 'Balan' alluded to above. This poem, which consists of 1507 lines, contains the account of the capture of Rome by Balan, the slaughter of the Christians, and the seizure by Ferumbras of the holy relics.[2]

§ 4. I now come to the consideration of the English MSS. of the Romances.

It is not a little remarkable, considering the great popularity of the subject,—a popularity clearly proved by the frequent allusions in other works,[3]—that so few English versions of the Charlemagne Romances should

[1] M. Gaston Paris points out a curious instance of forgetfulness on the part of the author of 'Fierabras,' which, in itself, is a strong proof of the source of the poem. Mousket in his analysis of 'Balan' says that Oliver threw the two *barils* containing the sacred ointment into the Tiber, and so in 'Fierabras' the author, forgetting that he had shifted the scene to Spain, says (l. 1049)—"Pres fu du far de Rome ses a dedans jetés." —*Histoire Poétique*, p. 252.

[2] Published by M. G. Grœber, in *Romania, Recueil Trimestre, consacré à l'étude des langues et des littératures Romanes*, edd. MM. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, January 1873, pp. 1—48. It was composed in England towards the end of the 14th century.

[3] For references to the Charlemagne Romances generally, see the *Cursor Mundi*, ed.

exist, and that those which do survive are each *unique*.[1] This last word perhaps calls for a few words of explanation. Mr J. Shelly, in his analysis of the English MSS. of the Charlemagne Romances,[2] writes as follows :—" *Ferumbras.* We have two versions of this romance : one of them the Farmer MS. analyzed by Ellis, and now in the library of Sir Thomas Phillipps ; the other a fragment of great length [Ashm. 33], which will shortly be printed by the Early English Text Society. They both belong probably to the end of the fourteenth century. *The original of the romance is the French 'Fierabras.'* "

Now this I believe to be likely to mislead. The two poems appear to me to be essentially different works : the 'Sowdone' being a translation of a MS. of the poem, analyzed by M. Gaston Paris, and already referred to, under the name of 'Balan ;' while 'Sir Ferumbras' is, as has before been stated, a translation of the French 'Fierabras,' itself an enlarged and greatly modified version of the second part only of that poem. What Mr Shelly refers to as the "long introductory account" is, in point of fact, only a condensed reproduction of the 'Destruction of Rome,' which, as I have said, represents the first portion of 'Balan.'

To point out all the differences between 'Sowdone' and the present poem would take up too much space, besides being unnecessary, as the former will

Morris, ll. 15, 16 ; *Richard Cœur de Lion*, prologue ; and others mentioned by Warton, *Hist. Eng. Poetry*, ed. Hazlitt, II. 122, 125. And for direct references in other authors to *Sir Ferumbras*, see notes to ll. 511, 1109 below ; Ellis, *Metrical Romances*, II. 369 ; Pinkerton, *Ancient Scotish Poetry*, I. 195, ed. 1792.

[1] The following are all which are at present known to exist :—

1. 'Roland and Vernagu.'

2. 'Sir Otuel.'

(These two are in the Auchinlech MS., the date of which is 1330, and have been analyzed by Ellis, *Met. Romances*, II. 283, the first under the title of 'Roland and Ferragus,' and the second from a more complete version in a MS. belonging to W. Fillingham, Esq. They were both published by the Abbotsford Club in 1836.)

3. 'The Song of Roland.'

(A fragment of about 1000 lines preserved in Lansdowne MS. 388, leaf 384. Extracts and an analysis of this fragment from the pen of the late Mr T. Wright will be found in the *Chanson de Roland*, ed. M. Fran. Michel, Paris, 1837.)

4. 'The Sowdone of Babyloyne.'

(Edited for the Roxburghe Club in 1854 from the MS. now in the Library of Sir T. Phillipps, at Middlehill, and analyzed by Ellis, II. 369, under the title of the Farmer MS.)

5. 'Sir Ferumbras.'

(The romance here printed. As all these romances will shortly be published by the E. E. T. S., it is unnecessary to describe them more in detail. I don't know whether I ought not to add that most amusing poem of "Rauf Coilȝear," now being edited for the E. E. T. S., by Dr J. A. H. Murray.)

[2] Warton, *Hist. of English Poetry*, II. 197-8.

shortly be edited by Dr Hausknecht for the Early English Text Society, but I may mention a couple of important instances.

In the 'Sowdone' Roland is captured by the Saracens at the same time as Oliver, and both on being conducted before Lavan (Balan) at once avow their identity. It will be at once seen how greatly this alters a portion of the story as told in our poem.

Again, the names of the "douȝeperes" do not agree. In fact, in the 'Sowdone' no less than 16 names are first given, and to these 11 more are subsequently added. (See note to l. 259 of the present volume.)

Moreover, in the 'Sowdone' the narration of the same events which in the Ashmole MS. occupy nearly 6000 lines, is compressed into 2224 lines (excluding the 1050 lines of the account of the taking of Rome), and as the lines in the 'Sowdone' are but half the length of those in Sir Ferumbras, as here printed, we see that the proportion between the two poems is over 5 to 1.

It is impossible to believe that two authors could have so treated the same MS. in so essentially different a manner. But the difficulty vanishes if we assume, as I think is clear, that the 'Sowdone' represents the original poem of 'Balan,' while Sir Ferumbras represents only a portion of it.[1]

The version here printed is clearly a translation of a MS. of the same type as the *Fierabras*, edited by MM. Krœber and Servois. The author has followed his original closely, so far as relates to the course of events, but at the same time he has translated it freely, introducing several slight incidents and modifications, which help to enliven and improve the poem. That he has not translated his original literally is shown by the fact that the French version consists of only 6219 lines, or, allowing for the missing portion of the Ashmole MS., not much more than one-half the number of lines in the latter, and that too, although he has cut down the account of the duel between Oliver and Ferumbras from 1500 to 800 lines, by leaving out Oliver's attempts at converting the Saracen, Charlemagne's prayers, &c.

§ 5. I will now proceed to give an account of the MS. from which this

[1] In the Hanover MS., which contains the 'Destruction of Rome,' that romance is followed directly by a version of Fierabras, with the colophon—"Ici est li finemant de l'estoire de Fierenbras d'Alisandre et del bone roy Charles." Of this poem M. Grœber does not give any account, and I was in hopes that on examination it would be found to be of the same type as the MS. from which the 'Sowdone' was translated, but M. Gaston Paris informs me that it is the same as the printed text, differing only in slight variations of readings. He agrees, however, that the "Sowdone" is founded on a MS. similar to the Hanover one.

Romance has been printed. It is unfortunately imperfect, but, judging from the proportion between the French 'Fierabras' and it, I do not believe that more than *one* leaf has been lost from the beginning and perhaps three from the end. The missing lines have been supplied from the French version.

The Ashmole MS. 33, preserved in the Bodleian Library, is an octavo volume, consisting of 77 leaves of coarse, thick paper. The ink used by the writer was very bad, and in many places so completely has it faded that it is only in a strong sun-light that it is at all possible to decipher the words. The MS. has been fully described by Mr Black in his Catalogue of the Ashmolean MSS. col. 14, and I cannot do better than quote his account, which has been verified by Mr Henry Sweet, of Balliol Coll., Oxford. Mr Black says:—

"The book is not more curious than its antient covers, which are now preserved in a case with it. They are a triple invelope of parchment flapping over the right hand cover, and consist of 2 sheets. The outer one is a letter executory of a bull of pope Innocent VI for the presentation of Thomas de Silton to the vicarage of Columpton, in the diocese of Exeter, then vacant by the death of Peter Moleyns; which bull, being addressed to the Abbots of Schirbourne and Cerne, and to John de Silvis, dean of S. Agricola at Avignon, was executed (by the last named) in the present letter addressed to the Bishop of Exeter. The foot, containing the date, is cut off; but the bull is dated at Villa-nova, 3 *id Maij*, *anno* 5, which is 1357.

"The inner cover is a very long and imperfect [latin] instrument, stating that before mass on the 7th Sunday after Trinity, in 1377, in the chapel of Holne, in the diocese of Exeter, Roger Langeman, rector Lydelynche (dioc. Schirb.), publicly read and expounded an instrument which cites the proceedings and final sentence in the Court of Rome in consequence of the consecration of a burial-ground adjoining the said chapel, which was prejudicial to the rights of John Brygge, the Vicar of Buckfastleghe, to whose parish church the right of burial belonged, the said chapel being a member thereof. [But] these covers are most remarkable for having preserved a curiosity not equalled in any collection of MSS., and that for antiquity is unique of its kind, namely, a part of the author's original corrected draught of this poem [of 'Ferumbras'] written on the back of the documents already described. Thus the lines [in the draught]—

"'As Charles stod by chance at conseil with his feris
Whiche þat wern of france his oȝene doȝepers.'

are read at the foot of fol. 3 [ll. 258-9 of the corrected copy]—

"'As Charlys was in his greu*a*nce stondyng among his feren
And cou*n*sailede wi*th* þe grete of *fra*unce and wi*th* ys doþþeperen.'

"The inner cover is folded double; and the draught, being written on the inner side, has been kept free from dust, though it is much worn at the edges

and folds. The sheet contains four large columns of text, each equal to 2½ pages of the MS.; half of the breadth of the fourth column was cut off to reduce the flap to a convenient width."

I may add to what Black says that the draft and the MS. are in the same handwriting, and that the handwriting is evidently, in the opinion of Mr Sweet, of the same character and period as that of the second document described as forming part of the cover, which is of the end of the fourteenth century. The draft is only of the earlier part of the poem, and contains numerous corrections.[1] The latter part of the poem itself is much corrected in the same handwriting, and was possibly written off at once, and not copied from a previous draft. Black concludes from the facts he mentions, that "the author [of the poem] was a clergyman, lived in the diocese of Exeter (probably in that city), and composed his work shortly after 1377, or early in the reign of Richard II. Mr Furnivall suggests to me, however, that the facts lead to a very different conclusion, viz., "that the author was not a man who cared much for bulls or Exeter diocese, and had no hesitation in using up for his poem documents that a Devonshire man would have valued and kept unharmed." I am inclined, however, to believe that Black is probably right. It is not likely that these documents would have wandered out of the diocese of Exeter, where their most likely place of deposit was the cathedral city, so soon after their date as the time when this draft of the poem was apparently written upon them. The documents are not such as were likely to be very carefully preserved, and we must remember that at that time there was no antiquarian interest attaching to them. From internal evidence I should be inclined to suppose that the author of the poem was a clergyman, and for the reasons I have given I think it is most likely that he lived at Exeter.

The date of the action of the poem is fixed by ll. 304-5, where we learn that the events related occurred *three* years before the battle of Roncesvalles, and the treachery and consequent death of Gwenelon, which took place in A.D. 778, and are narrated in the 'Song of Roland:'—

> "traytours wern hee.
> As ȝe schul huren after þys: or passede ȝeres three,
> þay be-traiede þe kyng & his."[2]

---

[1] The corrections throughout are given in the footnotes, the square brackets showing the words erased, and the text showing the corrected form of each line.

[2] The author of 'Sir Ferumbras' has gone out of his way to give the date of the poem wrongly, for ll. 4869—4871, in which he says—

§ 6. The character of Roland is throughout most admirably and consistently drawn. Everywhere we find him the same reckless headstrong fellow, whether it be in the battle-field or in delivering his message to Balan. He is far the most important personage in the poem, and it certainly seems a misnomer to call it after Ferumbras, whose actions fill only about one-fifth of the whole poem. The title having, however, been already given to the romance, it has not been considered expedient now to alter it.

Oliver is the next most important character. As he himself says, he "ys noȝt so good" as Roland, but he "ys a man heȝ of mod Sarasynȝ to yule arraye." He has not the daring nor the high spirit of Roland, and when he finds himself in captivity, with no probable hope of relief, his courage gives way.

Ferumbras himself after his duel with Oliver disappears from the scene, and does not appear again till close to the end of the poem. At his first appearance he conducts himself like a conceited bully, and his abject appeals for mercy when defeated do not tend to raise our estimation of him.

Of the remaining characters of the poem it is unnecessary to speak, with one important exception, Floripas, the handsome but certainly undutiful daughter of the Emir. From first to last she is consistently exhibited to us as an exceedingly strong-minded young lady, determined to have her own way, whatever the cost may be: her murders of Britomart and her governess are equalled only by her conduct towards her father in the closing scene of the poem. But yet at times the naturally soft disposition of the woman shows itself; as, for instance, when the French knights return to the castle after their sally against the Saracens, with the tidings of her lover's capture, and we cannot help admiring the daring of the woman who is never at a loss for an expedient, and who always effects her purpose, though without the slightest consideration as to the means adopted.

The origin of the name Ferumbras, which is only a corruption of the French *Fierabras*, is fully discussed in MM. Kroeber and Servois' edition, pp. xi, xii, where they point out that the name was not invented by the author of the poem, since William II., Count of Poitiers (963—990), was surnamed Fierabras (*Fera brachia* or *Ferox brachium*) on account of his

"After þe ȝer þat our lord was bore
Nyȝen hondred & four score . . . . .
þe toun of mantrible conquerid was,"

are not in the original French.

///

extraordinary strength, in the same way as Baldwin, Count of Flanders, was surnamed *Bras de Fer* (the Iron-armed). Pierre de Maillezais[1] calls William III., the son of William II., Fierabras or Fierebrace: *Natus est willelmus cognomento Fera-brachia.* To these instances I may add that Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, ed. Hazlitt, II. 184, mentions that "about the year 1230, William Ferrabras, and his brethren, sons of Tancred the Norman, and well-known in the history of the Paladins, acquired the signories of Apulia and Calabria." In a footnote to this passage he explains the name as being simply *Bras de fer*, but the French Editors incline to the opinion that it is derived from the Latin *ferox brachium*, or *fera brachia*, a view which seems strongly supported by the quotation given above from Pierre de Maillezais. As to the name Floripas the same editors consider that it is equivalent to *passe-fleur* (the Wood Anemone).[2]

§ 7. Of the versification of the poem it is not necessary to say much. It is for the most part written in short alternately ryming lines, and, though not an alliterative poem, yet has a large amount of alliteration. In parts it is very rough, possibly from never having been finally revised by the author, while at times it runs along very smoothly. As a rule the final *e* is pronounced (see ll. 354-5, 1904-5, 1982-3, &c.). The rymes are full and true, to effect which, however, the author frequently has had recourse to some very curious spelling (see for instance ll. 260-1). Occasionally we have instances of half-rymes, as in ll. 76-7, 86-7 (first-half), 370-1, 1545-6, &c.

The change in form and metre at l. 3411 is remarkable, more especially as there is nothing to correspond with it in the original French version. It is noticeable that the concluding portion of the poem has been revised by the author more than any other, and is in consequence more smooth and finished, and "goes" better.

§ 8. The poem is written in a Southern (probably Devonshire) dialect, but has an unusually large admixture of Midland and Northern forms. Whoever the author may have been, it is abundantly evident that he had travelled, and most probably resided, for some considerable time in counties north of his own. In this way only can we account for the combination of Northern and Southern forms which so frequently occur. It is nothing unusual to

[1] *De Antiquit. Eccles. Malleac.*, Bk. I., heading of cap. II.

[2] It is worthy of notice that in the description of Floripas given in the 'Destruction of Rome,' l. 259, her lips are compared to the peach-blossom, *flour-de-peskier*.

find varying forms even in the same line: thus, for instance, in ll. 1975-6 we read:—

> "And er *sche* cam strauȝt in-to halle ⁝ neuere *heo* ne stente,
> And forþ *sche* þraste among hem alle ⁝ & to hur fader ryȝt *heo* wente."

So again in l. 2380:—

> "y not how *þay* schul ascape þen ⁝ þat *hy* ne goþ to dede."

A and *he* are also frequently met with in the same line, *e. g.* ll. 740, 2403, 3004, &c.; and so *buþ* and *beo* in l. 2940.

To the same circumstance, doubtless, are also due the small number of instances in which *v* occurs for *f*;[1] the use of the Northern *-ande* in the present participle as well as the Southern *-ing*, *-yng*, and of such a distinctively Northern preposition as *til* (to); and the absence at times of inflexion in the past indicative.

We frequently find *c* substituted for *s*; especially in the words *wace* (was); *nace* (was not)[2]; *horce*,[3] *pacye*: and in a few instances we find *t* for *d*; *hant*, *swert*.

Fry for *freo* occurs at l. 3441. This form is found also in the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*, and Shoreham's Poems.

Late examples of several forms which occur in Lazamon appear in the present poem. Thus we have l. 311: *tweyre* (A.S. *twegra*), genitive of *tweȝen*; *beyne* (both), l. 661: *þan* (dat: of the article); *y-kend* (begotten); *spelie* (spare).

-chs and *-sch* or *-sche* would appear to be equivalent, for we find *frechs*, *flechs*, *frenchs*, used indiscriminately with *fresch*, *flesch*, and *frensche*.

To give a complete list of all the curious forms which occur in the poem would exceed the limits of this introduction, and is moreover unnecessary, since very many of them are, so to speak, ἅπαξ λεγόμενα, invented for the occasion, by the author, solely in order to make his rymes as perfect as possible.[4] They can therefore only be looked upon as curiosities of orthography, except in so far as they bear on the question of pronunciation.

Perhaps the most curious form of all is *doþþeper* for *doȝȝoper*, which with one exception is found consistently throughout the poem, although in the original draft the correct form appears.[5]

[1] The following are all that occur:—*by-vore*, *vaste* (verb); *vaste* (adv.); *vewe*, *vetres*, *vifty*, *vyve*, *vynde*, *vores* (furrows); *vacche*, *y-vere*, *vet*, *verde* (fared); *volde*, *auonge*, *voule*, *vuste*. In some cases the author has actually corrected the *v* as first written into *f*: see for instance, l. 5829.

[2] See ll. 186—190. [3] See ll. 4203-4. [4] See for instance, l. 260. [5] See note to l. 259.

Premising this much, I now proceed to give the principal dialectal and grammatical peculiarities of the poem.

NOUNS.

1. Number.

Plurals as a rule end in *-s*, *-es*, or *-ȝ*, but we find numerous examples of plural forms in *-n* and *-en*, and very frequently the same word occurs in both forms: thus we have *fon, fone, foes, foos, fos; feres, feren; otes, oten; browes, browen; tres, tren; mylen; lippen; knen; tren*, and others peculiar to the Southern dialects, as well as *eyene, eyne; schon; hosen*, which are found also in Northern writers.

A few instances occur of plurals in *-e* (representing an earlier *-en*); as *longe, lunge* (lungs); *feþeme* (fathoms); *hande, haunde, hond* (= *honde*, hands); *sythe* (times); *hyne* (servants); *gome* (men); *fere* (companions); *tange* (tongs).

2. Gender.

Inanimate objects are generally considered as *neuter*, but not unfrequently as *masculine* or *feminine*, the pronouns in these cases following the gender of the nouns in Anglo-Saxon. Thus l. 1551:—

"þay toke þe way as *he* lay ful euene." "the day *hym* sprunge;" "the sunne *hure* sette," &c.

3. Case.

The genitive singular ends in *-s*, *-es*, or *-is*, and in the case of proper names *is* or *ys* written as distinct words: thus we find *godes* gras; the *Ameral ys* pauylloun; *Terry* is sone, &c.

When a proper noun ends in a sibilant, as Charlis, Naymes, the sign of the genitive is altogether omitted; as *Charlis* Knyghts, &c.

Fader, moder, suster, doȝter do not alter their forms in the genitive singular: thus we find *suster* sone (sister's son); *doȝter* dede (daughter's deed); *moder* half (mother's side); *fader* loue.

Of a genitive singular in *-e* there are a few instances, viz.: *heuene*, which occurs frequently in the phrase *heuene* king, *heuene* blisse; *helle* pyne; and *gode* loue; and of the genitive plural in *-ene* (A.S. *-ena*) we also find one example (l. 3222), *heþenene* route. (See also l. 4646.)

The genitive is occasionally used adverbially, as *lyues, willes*.

ADJECTIVES.

The rule as to the use or omission of the final *-e*, as a distinctive mark of singular and plural and definite and indefinitive forms, has not been always followed by our author, a result probably due to Northern influence.

We find an instance of the genitive singular ending *-es* in *oþrys* syde, and a few instances also occur of the genitive plural in *-re;* as *alre* (*aller, aldre*); *tweyre* (A.S. *twegra*).

Boþen is the only instance of the dative plural; and *anoþerne,* acc. mas. occurs once in l. 995.

Adjectives and Adverbs in *-liche* form their comparatives in *-loker, -luker;* as *lodliche, lodluker; sykerliche, sikurlukere, surlokere.*[1]

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

In this poem we find late examples of the inflexions of the definite article. The following forms occur:—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	Masc. & Fem.	*Neut.*	
N.	*þe, þa.*	*þat.*	N. Acc. *þo, þay, þey.*
G.	[*þas.*[2]]		
D.	*þan, þen.*		
Acc.	*þan, þan.*	*þat.*	

þo and *þat* are also found as demonstratives as in the Northern dialects.

THIS.

Many of the older inflexions of *this* occur in the present poem: thus we find:—

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
N.	*þes, þis, þys.*	*þis, þys.*	*þis, þys.*	*þes, þeese, þis, þus, þys.*
G.				
D.	*þis, þys.*	*þis.*		*þes, þis, þus.*
Acc.	*þees, þes, þis, þys.*	*þes, þys.*	*þis, þys,*	*þes, þese, þis, þys, þus, þuse.*

Ilke, þilke, a distinctively Southern form, occur frequently: twice in combination with *þat,* as *þat þilke.*

[1] *Sykerer* occurs once.

[2] Only in the phrase *sone þas;* but see under Adverbs, p. xxvii below.

NUMERALS.

Amongst these we find the Southern forms in—*the; elleuefþe, twelþe.* No Northern forms occur.

We have only one instance of the dropping of the final *-n;* viz. *seue* (seven).

PRONOUNS.

1. Personal Pronouns.

The following table will show the numerous forms which occur :—

SINGULAR.

	1st Pers.	2nd Pers.	3rd Pers. Masc.	3rd Pers. Fem.	3rd Pers. Neut.
N.	*I, y, ic, ich, ych.*	*þou.*	*a, he, hee.*	*heo, she, sche, sheo.*	*it, yt, hit, hyt.*
G.	*my, myn, myne.*	*þy, þyn, þyne.*	*his, hys, is, ys.*	*her, hir, hire, hur, hure, hyr.*	*his.*
D.	*me.*	*þe.*	*him, hym.*	*hir, hire, hure.*	*him, hit.*
Acc.	*me.*	*þe, þee.*	*hem, him, hym, hymme, em.*	*her, hur, hure.*	*it, yt, hit, hyt.*

PLURAL.

	1st Pers.	2nd Pers.	3rd Pers.
N.	*we, ous.*	*ȝe.*	*hee, hi, hy, hymen, þai, þay, þaye, þei, þey.*
G.	*our, oure.*	*ȝour, ȝoure.*	*her, hir, hire, hure, hyre, þair.*
D.	*ous, us.*	*ȝou.*	*hymen, hem, hymyn, þaym.*
Acc.	*ous.*	*ȝou, ȝow.*	*hymen, hyme, hem, hemen, em, þeym.*

Ich, which is still retained in the Southern dialects of the present day as *uch, utchy,* occurs once in l. 389 of the original draft of the poem in combination with *wille* as *ich chille,* where the *ich* is unnecessary and the corrected copy reads *i wille.*

Ic, which is the Northern form, only appears once, l. 2799. The two forms, *ich* and *I, y,* are used without any distinction, except that if the pronoun follows the verb, the latter form is generally used.

The distinction between the singular and plural pronouns of the second person is regularly observed; *þou, þe,* being used in sentences expressing contempt, inferiority, and affection, while *ȝe, ȝou,* imply inferiority or respect on the part of the speaker. This Balan addresses Floripas as *þou,* while she uses the plural *ȝe.* (But see l. 1998.)

A = he, which does not occur in any Northern writer, still survives in

modern dialects in the South of England, and is the usual form in the present poem.

Heo is the Southern pronoun corresponding with the Midland *sche, she* (Northern *sco, sho*).

My self, him selue, &c., occur as well as *me selue, þe self, ous self.*

In the pronouns of the third person plural, *þai, þair, þeym*, are Northern forms: *þei* Midland, and the remainder Southern. *Em* is only used in coalescence with a verb, as *castem, affuldem.*

Me, ma, is used as an indefinite pronoun of any person.[1]

Hit, it, is usually referred to masculine nouns even in the plural number: thus (l. 1981) we read:—

"Hit beþþ kniȝtes y-sent to me."

See also ll. 3114, 3183, &c.

We also find such forms as *hure boþen; ȝour summe; þat summe; hur ayþer; hur everech; our on.*

The pronoun frequently coalesces with the verb; thus we find such forms as *leuet* (leave it); *shaket* (shake it); *taket* (take it); *affuldem* (felled them); *profryem* (offer them).

A very noticeable peculiarity of the poem is the reflexive use of the pronoun in conjunction with the noun before an intransitive verb. We commonly find such sentences as the following:—"þe *nyȝt hure neȝhede* faste" (l. 1494); "endelonges is side þat *blod him ran;*" "þat *blod him renneþ;*" "þat gret *host hym come;*" "on þe wal þat *fur him hent;*" "þe *day hym sprunge;*" "þe *day him is a-go;*" "forth *hem wendith þes noble knyȝtes,*"[2] &c.

þat is commonly used as a relative, and *hwych, wich*, not infrequently is used indefinitely: see, for instance, ll. 514, 3101, &c.

The interrogative pronoun is *Ho, wat, what;* gen. *was;* dat. and acc. *wham.*

VERBS.

1. Indicative Mood. Present Tense.

The following are the personal endings:—

[1] It is frequently understood after the verbs *let, make, do*, in such phrases as "to don him sle" (= cause *men* to slay him, cause him to be slain); "let hewen hem flesch & bon."

[2] As to this last instance see Prof. Skeat's note to 'P. Plowman,' B. Prol. 7.

SINGULAR.

1. *-a, -e, -y, -n;* as *granty, thonky, ha* (I have).

2. *-st,* as *ledest;* very frequently contracted as *gest* (gettest); *abust* (= *abeodest,* tellest)[1]; *hurst* (hearest).

3. *-th, -t, -es, -en, -n.*

The ending *-y* of the first person which is purely Southern is common in this poem. The ending in the third person *-t* is used where the original ending *-th* has been contracted, as *stent, stont* (stendeth)[2]; *calt* (calleth); *bygynt* (beginneth); *telt* (telleth); *lest* (loseth); *sit, syt* (sitteth). Such forms as *riȝdt* (he rides) and *tyþd* (betides) are noticeable.

Of the ending *-es, -s* (a West-Midland and Northern form) we have but very few examples; all that I am aware of are *wendes, ounlekes, strekes* (ll. 1364-5); *gas* (goes)[3]; *cryes* (l. 3079).

The ending *-en, -n* (Midland) only occurs in a few instances, l. 2195, *gon* (goes); l. 2782, *sen* (I see).

The *e* is very frequently omitted before the *-th* in the third person singular; thus we find *comþ, berþ, scherþ,* &c. In many cases this peculiarity, which still exists in Devonshire, serves to distinguish between the singular and plural.

PLURAL.

1. *-n.*
2. *-es, -n.*
3. *-en, -n, -es.*

} *e, -th.*

The Midland ending *-en, -n,* occurs but seldom in comparison with the other endings; but yet is not uncommon. We find ȝe *sen;* we *han;* þay *comen,* &c.

Of the Northern ending *-es* there is only one instance, viz. *goes,* which occurs in the second and third persons.[4]

There are several instances in which the plural ending *-th* is preceded by an *a,* as *þay prikeath;* ȝe *loueath,* &c.

[1] Explained by Halliwell wrongly "arranges?"

[2] According to Dr Morris (*Specimens of Early English,* 1867, Introd. p. xxxv) the rule is that "*-t* is used for *-teth* or *-deth,* only in verbs having *t* or *d* for the last syllable of the root," but from the examples given above it is clear there are numerous exceptions to this rule.

[3] See ll. 1975, 2145, &c.

[4] On l. 5821, Mr Parker says:—"I think this *s* is added, though by the same hand."

PAST TENSE.

The past tense of weak verbs ends in *-ede, -de,* or *-te.*

We find instances of inflected verbs as *þou slowe,* &c., as well as of non-inflected; the final *-e* being as often as not omitted.

The third person singular and plural occasionally ends in *-n,* as *hoten* (he bade); *kemen* (they came); *beren* (they bore).

2. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

With one exception there is no instance of any but the Southern forms:—singular, *-e,* plural, *-eth: -ath* occurs in *prykeaþ* (l. 979); *confortiaþ* (l. 1154); and *harneyscheaþ* (l. 2929); *schewyaþ; herknyaþ* (l. 2072).

The Northern imperative ending *-es* occurs only in l. 2347, where we have *leteȝ.*

3. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Here we find a large variety of forms mainly Southern. Thus we have verbs ending in *-a, -y, -ye, -ie, -n, -ne, -o* (*on*). Very frequently the same verb appears in two or more forms; e. g. *sle, slee, slen, slo, slone; flee, flen, flene, fleo; be, bee, ben, bene, beo. Ha* and *prikea* (l. 3641) are the only instances of infinitives in *-a.*

The endings *-y, -ye, -ie* (representing older forms in *-ian*) are very common in this poem, but are *never* used by any Northumbrian writers.

The gerundial form of the infinitive occurs in three instances; to *tristyng* (= *tristenne,* l. 199); to *done* (l. 811); and to *donde* (l. 681).

The verb to *Have* appears under the following forms:—*ha, hab, han, hane, hauen:* while *dan* occurs twice as the infinitive of *do.*

4. PARTICIPLES.

In the present participle instances of the Northern ending *-ande* are not uncommon, the same verb sometimes using it as well as the Southern *-ing, -yng:* thus we find such double forms as *fleoyng* and *fleand; prikyng* and *prikande; liggynge* and *liggande,* &c., as well as the single forms, *lyuand, flyngande,* &c.[1]

5. PAST PARTICIPLE.

The past participles of weak verbs end in *-ed, -t,* or *-te,* and of strong verbs in *-en.* In the latter the final *-n* is frequently omitted.

The prefix *i-* or *y-* (peculiar to the Southern dialects, and never used by Northern writers,) abounds throughout the poem.[2]

[1] Query—Is *gonde* (l. 1890) a present participle?

[2] This prefix *i-, y-,* is not confined to the past part., but is used also in (*a*) other parts

Instead of the prefix *i-* or *y-* we sometimes find *a-*, as *a-slawe* (twice combined with *be* into the form *ba-sclawe*), *a-go*, *a-broke*.

Verbs in *-che* and *-ge* make their past participles in *-nt*, or *-nte*, a form peculiar to Southern dialects. Thus we have *i-spreynt* (*springe*, to sprinkle); *i-dreynt* (*drenche*, to drown), &c.

To *Be* has the forms *i-be*, *i-beo*, *y-ben*, *be*, *ben*, *bene*, *beo*; and to *Do*; *do*, *don*, *done*, *dow*.

Negative Verbs, which occur but very seldom in Northern writers, are here common, e. g., *nas*, *nel*, *nabbe*, *nyste*, *nam*, *nad*, *naþ*, &c.

The curious form *mixt* (mightest) occurs in l. 474, and *sysst* (seest) in l. 5809.

The following are examples of the pt. tenses of verbs:—*blan*, *bute*, *carf*, *to-chon*, *clef*, *dradde*, *floȝe*, *ful*, *gan*, *gun*, *glod*, *huld*, *keem*, *lowe*, *nam*, *nome*, *preynte*, *roȝt*, *schad*, *schar*, *schet*, *shette* (to shoot), *shitte* (to shut), *shutte* (to shoot), *seȝ*, *skryȝte*, *slowe*, *swarf*, *swer*, *sworn*, *swatte*, *þraste*, *wep*, *ȝaf*, *ȝif*, *ȝoue*.

Hab occurs in the 2nd person plural of *have*.

The verb to *Be* in the present indicative has the following variety of forms:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. *am*.	*are*, *beeth*, *bene*, *beo*, *buth*, *byth*.
2. *art*, *ert*.	*are*, *buth*.
3. *is*, *ys*, *ysse*.	*are*, *aren*, *arn*, *beeth*, *ben*, *buth*.

Of these *aren* and *arn* are Northern forms.[1]

It is not at all an unusual thing to find two different forms in the same line; thus (l. 2940)—"we ne *buþ* bote ten her now, & mo ne *beo* we noȝt;" and (l. 1070)—"my felawes þat her *beeþ*, knyȝtes þay *buþ* fol sure."

In the past tense we find the following forms:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. *was*.	*were*, *wore*, *wern*.
2. *wer*.	*were*.
3. *was*, *wes*.	*war*, *ware*, *wer*, *were*, *wern*, *weore*, *woren*, *worne*.

In the imperative *beo* is the singular, and *beeþ*, *beþ*, the plural form.

of verbs, as *y-laste* (inf.); *y-knowe* (pres.); *y-lif* (imperat.); *y-saw* (pt.): (*b*) with adjectives, as *i-liche*; (*c*) with adverbs, as *y-fere*, *y-mone*, *y-same*.

[1] *Aren* occurs in 'P. Plowman,' C. xi. 155.

We also find numerous examples of the *verbal prefixes* peculiar to the Southern dialect. Thus we have:—

1. *An-* (*a-*); as *angrise* (*agrise*), to frighten: *anhonge*, to hang; *a-lacche* (catch).

2. *Of* (for, to); as *of-seche* (seek for); *of-sende* (send for); *of-take* (overtake).

ADVERBS.

With the exception of *algate* and *umtil*, which are purely Northern forms, the adverbs are mainly Southern. Thus we have:—

1. Adverbs in *-e*, as *longe*, *swyþe*, *hanne*, *henne* (= *hennene*); *whenne* (= *whanene*); *thenne* (= *thanene*), &c.

2. Adverbs in *-en*; as *suþþen*, *weþen* (Northern).

3. Adverbs in *-es*: as *endelonges*, *willes*, *hannes*, *lyues*, *þannes*, *ones*, *wannys*.

4. *Ac* (but); *eke*, *eek*, *yke* (also); *so—so*, *as—so* (as—as).

The phrase *sone þas* (= soon thereafter, directly), which occurs several times in the poem, is noticeable. Dr Murray inclines to consider *þas* as the genitive of the article (compare "wel was him þas," in *Early Eng. Poems*, &c., ed. Furnivall, xii. 122); while Dr Morris thinks it is a corruption of *suþþes* afterwards.

PREPOSITIONS.

Til (to), a purely Northern preposition occurs frequently. Of peculiarly Southern forms we have:—

1. *An*, *a* (on, in); as *an-heȝ*, *an-honde*, *a* þys side. The corresponding Northern form *on-* occurs only in *on-lyue*, *on þe lift* (aloft), *on sonder*.

2. *Fram* (from).

3. *Mid* (with).

§ 9. To Mr George Parker, of the Bodleian Library, Oxford, who has always taken a very lively interest in this romance, is due the sole credit of deciphering the MS. Written as it is on bad paper, with bad ink, and with numerous interlineations and corrections, it is difficult for any one who has not seen the MS. to appreciate the difficulties under which he has had to labour—difficulties increased as they have been by his having to compare the proofs with the original in the dull, sunless days of winter, when, as I have

already said, in some passages nothing but a strong sun-light is sufficient to render the writing legible.

To him my best thanks are due, as also to the Rev. Professor Skeat and F. J. Furnivall, Esq., who have rendered me assistance as to the meanings of some obscure words.

S. J. HERRTAGE.

SKETCH OF THE STORY OF "SIR FERUMBRAS."

CHARLES, at the head of his army, had encamped close to Morimond, when Ferumbras, a gigantic Saracen knight, appears and challenges any six of the French knights to single combat (p. 2). Charles requests Roland to accept the challenge, but he refuses (p. 5). Oliver, who is suffering from a serious wound, with difficulty obtains Charles's permission to accept the challenge (p. 10). Ferumbras, despising Oliver's youthful appearance, tries to frighten him (p. 12); asks him to describe Charles and the douzeperes (p. 15); and enquires his name (p. 16). Oliver declaring himself to be a poor knight, Ferumbras derides him, and bids him return and send Roland, or another of the douzeperes (p. 18). Stung at last by Oliver's language, Ferumbras prepares to fight (p. 22). The struggle lasts with varying success, till Ferumbras, in striking at Oliver's head, exposes his side, which Oliver pierces (p. 31). Ferumbras begs for mercy, promising to become a Christian (p. 32), and warns Oliver of an ambush of Saracens close by (p. 34). Oliver, finding himself obliged to abandon Ferumbras, tries to escape by flight, but is surrounded and taken prisoner (p. 36), as are also four others of the Douzeperes, who had come to his assistance (p. 38), and the five are bound, blindfolded, and led away to Balan, at Aigremont (p. 42). Ferumbras, being discovered by Charles, lying wounded, is taken to the French camp and baptised (p. 42). Oliver and the other French captives are brought before Balan (p. 43), who at first orders them to death, but afterwards throws them into a deep dungeon, without food or light (p. 45). Floripas, Balan's daughter, hearing their cries, comes to them, and offers to release them, if they will help her in gaining Guy to her husband (p. 47). They agree, and Floripas conducts them to her own chamber (p. 48). Charles determines on sending a messenger to Balan to demand the restoration

of the prisoners (p. 51), and the seven remaining Douzeperes start (p. 53). On their way they meet seven kings coming from Balan on a similar errand, whom, with one exception, they slay (p. 57). By a trick they pass the bridge of Mantrible (p. 61) and arrive at Aigremont. They deliver their message in turn, and Balan in a rage orders them to prison (p. 66), from which they are saved by Floripas, who leads them to their comrades (p. 68). She then presents to them the Sacred Relics of the Thorns, Cross, Nails, &c., which Ferumbras had carried off from Jerusalem, and sent to his father Balan, the Emir of the Saracens (p. 71); and advises them to kill all the Saracens while unprepared (p. 75). They follow her advice, but Balan escapes (p. 76), and gathering his army, lays siege to the tower (p. 77). Provisions failing, the French sally out (p. 85), and capture a convoy, but are forced to abandon it. Guy is captured (p. 88), and is about to be hanged by Balan, when he is rescued by Roland (p. 96). The French capture a convoy of provisions (p. 99). Balan attacks the tower with a battering ram (p. 103). The tower is set on fire, but the flames are extinguished by Floripas (p. 104). The French Knights in default of stones throw Balan's gold at their besiegers (p. 105). In a sally by night Roland captures Aspayllard (p. 107). Provisions running short, the French determine to send Richard of Normandy to the Emperor Charles the Great for aid (p. 110). Balan, however, besets the bridge so that none can leave the tower (p. 111). After eight weeks he escapes, pursued by King Clarion, whom he slays (p. 116), and crossing the river Flagot by a miracle (p. 123), reaches Morimond, just as the French are starting for France, Charles having given up all hope of his knights (p. 131). By a stratagem the bridge and town of Mantrible are taken (p. 150), and Charles presses on to Aigremont (p. 152). Balan, instigated by the devil, ventures on battle (p. 170): he himself is defeated by Charles, and captured (p. 175), and the Saracens utterly routed (p. 176). Balan, in spite of the entreaties of Ferumbras, refuses to be baptized, and is slain by Ogier (p. 182). Floripas is baptized, and wedded to Guy (p. 183), between whom and Ferumbras Spain is divided; and Charles returns to Paris, where he distributes the Sacred Relics (p. 188).

ERRATA.

Page 209, *note to* l. 2034, *for* gayme *read* gayne; *and for* amuse *read* profit.

ADDITIONS.

Introd. p. xxii, to forms of 3rd pers. pron., acc. pl., add *ȝam* (l. 2650; cf. Laȝamon, l. 763).

Introd. p. xxvii, l. 15, "*sone þas:*" compare Laȝamon, l. 1787: "wel was Brutus *þas:*" and the Peterborough Chronicle, sub ann.: "Ða com se arcebiscop . . . . . and *sona þæs* to þam cyng gewænde."

p. 38, l. 971. I have since found an instance of this use of acre: see *Morte Arthure*, l. 3849:—

"Ane *akere lenghe* one a launde, fulle lothely wondide."

So also Allan Ramsay in his poems, ed. 1844, p. 73, says:—

"By ane *akerbraid* it came nae neer him."

To Glossary add—Abye, 176/5657, *vb.* bend, bow. A.S. *abêgan*, the trans. form corresponding to the intrans. *abûgan*. The two forms appear to be confused by Stratmann under *abeȝen*, where the first two examples should be referred to *abûȝen*. See the *Saxon Chronicles*, ed. Earle, sub ann. 1073 (p. 212):—"swiðe þet land amyrdon. and hit eall *abegdon*. Willelme to handa" (completely dèvastated that land, and subdued it all under the power of William), and *ibid.* p. 223:—"mycel *abegdan* to heora anwelde" (subdued much of it under their power).

Done man, 109/3445, *pp.* For the explanation of this phrase I am indebted to Prof. Skeat, who refers to *P. Plowman*, B xviii, 298: "to warne pilates wyf what *dones man* was ihesus." The phrase is very rare and singular. Prof. Skeat, in his notes to *P. Plowman*, shows that "*dones* is the pp. *don*, made, used as a substantive, and even taking a genitive suffix, such as we see in the phrase *what kynnes man*." He refers to three other instances of the phrase, two being from the B. fragment of the *Alexander Alliterative Romances*, ll. 222, 999 (MS. Bodley 264).

Since the footnote (1) to p. xiii of the Introduction was written, a paper MS. of the early part of the 15th century has been purchased by the authorities of the British Museum. This MS., amongst many other poems, contains two Charlemagne Romances, the first, which is entitled "The Siege of Milan," being unique, while the second is a version of "Sir Otuel" (No. 2), but varying so much as to be practically an entirely different poem. Both these romances are now in the press for the E. E. T. S.

☞ The cost of the *Gesta* and *Sir Ferumbras* being over the income of the Extra Series for 1879, the Committee give notice that *Sir Ferumbras* must be lookt on as partly an 1880 book, tho included in the 1879 issue.—F.

CHARACTERS OF THE ROMANCE.

Charlemagne, Emperor of France, &c.
Balan (Laban), Emir of the Saracens.
Ferumbras, Balan's son; defeated in single combat by Oliver, and converted to Christianity.
Floripas, daughter to Balan; in love with Sir Guy, to whom she is finally married.
Reyner, a French Knight, father of Oliver.

Roland.	Charlemagne's *douzeperes*.
Oliver.	
Terry (Thierry).	
Geoffrey.	
Ogier.	
Basyn.	
Naymes.	
Richard of Normandy.	
Berard.	
Aubrey.	
Gwylmer.	
Guy of Burgundy.	
Raoul.	French Knights.
Howel.	
Alorys.	
Gerard.	
Hugo.	
Gwenylon (Ganelon)	
Hautefulle.	
Malkare.	
Hardree.	

Turpin, the Bishop.
Alagolofure, a Saracen giant; warden of the Bridge of Mantrible.
Brytamon: Balan's gaoler at Aigremont.

Turgys.	Saracen Kings.
Kargys.	
Lucifer of Bandas.	
Lampatrys.	
Moradas.	
Clarion.	
Sortybran.	
Bruyllant.	
Aspayllard.	
Tenebre.	

Bruyllant, King of Persia, brother to Balan.
Maubyn, a Saracen thief.
Enfachoun, a Saracen giant.
Amyote, a giantess, wife to Enfachoun, slain by Charles.
Malyngras, Balan's messenger.
Maumecet: chamberlain to Floripas.
Maragounde: governess to Floripas.

Sir Ferumbras.

[*Ashmole MS.* 33, *Bodleian Library.*]

(As the first leaf of the Ashmole MS. is lost, the missing introductory lines are here given from the edition of "Fierabras," published in the Series of "Les Anciens Poêtes de la France," from the MS. in the French National Library, No. 180.)

[Seignour, or faites pais, s'il vous plaist, escoutez — Listen to me,
Canchon fiere et orible, jamais meilleur n'orrez,
Ce n'est mie menchoigne, mais fine verités. — and I will tell you a
A Saint Denis en France fu li raules trouvés: — 4 wonderful and true story of Charles,
Plus de cent cinquante ans a yl esté celez.
Or en ores le voir, s'entendre me volés,
Si com Karles de Franche, ki tant fu redoutés, — the doughty king
Reconquist la coronne dont Dix fu couronnés, — 8 who recovered the crown of thorns,
Et les saintismes claus, et le signe honneré, — the nails,
Et les autres reliques dont ill i ot assés. — and the other sacred relics,
A Saint Denis en France fu li tresors portés; — and brought them to
Au perron, au lendi, fu partis et donnés. — 12 St Denys.
Pour les saintes reliques dont vous après orés,
Por chou est il encore li lendis apelés.
Ja n'i doit estre treus ne nus tresors donnés;
Mais puis par convoitisse fu cis bans trespassés; — 16
Moult par est puis li siecles empiriés et mués;
Se li peres est maus, li fix vaut pis assés,
Et du tout en tout est li siecles redoutés,
Ke il n'i a un seul, tant soit espoentés, — 20
Ki tiegne vraiement ne foi ne loiautés.
N'en dirai ore plus, s'arai avant alé.

Charles had collected all his barons,

Karles ot ses barons semons et demandés
De par toute sa tere où est sa poestés ; 24
Moult fu grans li barnages quant il fu assanles.

and advanced on Morimond.

Tant les a l'enpereres et conduis et menés,
K'es vaus sur Morimonde a fait tendre ses trés.

Oliver, who commanded the advance-guard,

Oliviers li jentieus, ki tant fu alosés, 28
Icil fist l'avangarde à .v^c^. fersarmés ;

is suddenly attacked by the Saracens in the valley of Rayer.

Le val Raier garda tout contreval les prés.
Et paien lor salirent à l'issue des gués ;

He himself is wounded, and the French are on the point of being put to flight, when Charles with his old knights comes to their aid.

.L. mile furent, les gonfanous fremés, 32
Pour calanger les teres et les grans yretés.
Olivier li gentius i fu le jour navrés.
Desconfit fuissent Franc, c'est fine verités,
Quant les secourut Karles o les viellars barbés, 36
Et paien s'en tournerent les frains abandonés.]

[leaf 1]

. . . Charlis doghti [kny3tes] . . ta . le as þay a waywarde spedde
Mo þan a þausend w*ith* out . . . . slowe þai as þay fledde
& drow hym . . . . wiþ on . . are ⁊ w*ith* his host þ*at* was þere. 40
Ac Olyuer was a-woundede sare ⁊ at þ*at* tyme wiþ a spere.

That night Charles said that his old knights had borne them better than the young barons.

¶ þat ny3t was Charl[es proude] y wet ⁊ & auau*n*ted his kni3tes olde.
& sayde þat þay had [boren] he*m* bet ⁊ þan ys 3onge barou*n*s bolde.
& [Rolan]d iherd hit euery del ⁊ & his au*aun*ttyngge he*m* g*r*euede sore,
Ac þo3 hi*m* self had born hi*m* wel ⁊ þ*an*ne spak he no more. 45

Roland heard, and the boasting grieved him. Next morning, after mass,

ERlich on þe morrwenyng þe kyng aras ⁊ & al his chiluelarie,
& hurd is masse wan hit was ⁊ & so to þe mete gan hye,
& al on mur3þe was he y-sete ⁊ wiþ a fair baronye ; 48
Ac or he hadde þane half y-3ete ⁊ on herte hi*m* gan to nuye,

comes a Saracen knight.

Wan cam þer a Sarsyn [werreour] þere ⁊ by-fore is host al-one :
Of such anoþer herde 3e nere ⁊ nowar þar 3e han gone,
Of Strengþe, of schap, of hugenys ⁊ of dedes of armes bolde. 52

Alexandria was his, and all from Babylon to the Red Sea.

þe kyngdom of Alysandre was al his ⁊ & fro babyloyne, þ*at* holde,
Ri3t in to þe rede see ⁊ lord was he and syre.
To ma[r]trye cristen men & slee ⁊ þat was his desyre.

Apulia, Palermo and Russia were his subjects.

Poille, palerne, and russye ⁊ he putte to seruage, 56
To holde of hym by maystrye ⁊ & to do til hym homage.
But for þay of Rome in such a cas ⁊ wolde no3t g*r*antte ys [wille]

He slow þe Pope þat þo was ⁝ and alle þ*at* he myȝt tille: — He had slain the Pope,
Cardynals, Abbotes & Pryours ⁝ monekys & frerys eke, 60
& alle clerkes of honours ⁝ boþe pore & reke,
Saue nu*n*nes ⁝ sloȝ he sykerly ⁝ þe relygyous þat þar war.
Wymen he tok, & lay hem by ⁝ & afterward duden hem [slee]
þat Cite a struyede, & þa*n*ne beer ⁝ þe relyqes fayre & free, 64 — and destroyed the city of Rome.
Of wham y tolde ȝow of eer ⁝ þe croune & þe nayles three.
Of ier*usal*em & of al þat lond ⁝ lord he was aboute, — He was lord of Jerusalem.
þer-for þer duden vmtil his hond ⁝ many a sarsyn loute;
Of turkys, persans & arrabyen ⁝ gret puple had he wyþholde. 68 — He had fought with Turks, Persians and Arabians,
He ne doutede þ*er*-for non c*r*isten men ⁝ so riche was he of golde.
He was departid f*ra*m ys host ⁝ þat was ful gret of nombre,
& soȝte þat contree & al þ*at* cost ⁝ cristenmen to encombre. — and had come to that country to harass Christians.
Wan he w*ith* non ne may ymete ⁝ on herte hi*m* greueþ sare; 72
To Charlisward rod he wiþ herte grete ⁝ & fyndeþ hy*m* loged þ[are]
In pauylons riche & wel abuld ⁝ a fair host hi*m* aboute.
. . þe[1] feldes wern al y-fuld ⁝ wiþ hym & wiþ his route. — [leaf 1, back]
¶ Wan he was war of þe frenschemen ⁝ on h[ert] hi*m* likid ille 76
He stynte & þoȝte noȝt remuye he*m* ⁝ þere til he ha foȝt is fille.
By þe egle of gold þ*at* briȝte schon ⁝ vppon charlis pauylou*n* — By the standard he knows the king is there.
knew he þer-by þe kyng, was on ⁝ þat was of gret renou*n*:
& ful wel saw hy*m* whar he sat ⁝ & knew hi*m* by his araie. 80
for angre þ*at* he tok*e* of þat ⁝ he wax so pal so clay— — He grows pale with anger, and swears to take or slay Charles.
By Mahonet ys oþ þa*n*ne a swer ⁝ as he was þar al-one
þ*at* he ne wolde for no fer ⁝ out of þat felde gone,
Er Charlis wiþ þe hore berde ⁝ wer take ouþer a-slaȝe, 84
& discou*m*fit were al his ferde ⁝ þat lyuede on þe *crist*ene lawe,
hi*m* self schelde þer ben is bane ⁝ he swor þan by his driȝte.
now wil ych to ȝov telle ys name ⁝ & sigge ȝow wat he hyȝte
¶ Syre Fyru*m*bras of Alysandre ⁝ me calde þat Sarsyn. 88 — Fyrnebras [Ferumbras] of Alexandria was his name.
His body wold he putte in auntre ⁝ for þ*er*e riȝt þoȝte he lyn
& liȝt hym dou*n* an vndre a tree ⁝ a boȝe-schot f*ra*m þ*at* host: — He alights under a tree,
þar-to ys stede þan tyeþ he ⁝ & gan to blowe bost.
He seȝ Charlys sitte & ete ⁝ þan þoȝte he as a stod, 92
If he may let hi*m* of his mete ⁝ ys herte hit wold do gode.

[1] *Originally* [Al] þe. *the* Al *having been erased.*

and cries to Charles, 'Send thy best knight

þa*n*ne cryede he "Charlis, w*ith* þe berde ⁝ herkne what y speke : 80
[S]end me þe beste kny3t of þy furde ⁝ myn anger for to wreke,
Duk Roland, oþer Olyuer ⁝ ovþer any of þy route, 96

to fight with me.

& fi3te y wile wiþ he*m* her ⁝ beo þay no3t so stoute :
& if þ*at* on of he*m* ne dar hi*m* self ⁝ wiþ me fi3te al one
Send he*m* boþe on þyn helf ⁝ to fi3te wiþ me ymone ;

If two are afraid, send three;

[&] if þay two ne buþ no3t bolde ⁝ a3en me to fi3te on stoure, 100
[Of] such þre y ne 3yue auelde ⁝ & þo3 þer come foure,

and though there come twelve

[&] þo3 þer come twelue ⁝ þe beste of þy fered,
[B]ot if y slee hem sone helue ⁝ ne kep y neu*er*e ete bred.

I will pound them to dust.

[I] wil kuþe on he*m* my mi3t ⁝ & dyngen he*m* al to douste. 104
Wheþer þay wille on fote fi3t ⁝ ouþer on horse iouste,
Send hem hider to me anan ⁝ for ich hymen her diffye,
Ouþer by Mahou*n* þ*at* made man ⁝ þ*o*u schalt wel sore a-bye.

I have slain ten kings, and so shall I thee.'

Y haue wyþ myn handes two ⁝ y-slawe kynges tene, 108
So schal y þe now or þov go ⁝ þat al men schal it sene."

He takes his helmet off to wait for an answer.

he dude his helm þan of is hed ⁝ & set hi*m* dou*n* þat tyde ;
Of þyng he haueþ þer y-sed ⁝ an answer he þo3te a byde. 111

[leaf 2] Charles is angry,

Kyng Charlys þe Sarsyns speche y-hurde[1] ⁝ & so dude al his host,
& how foule þ*at* þe freke hi*m* furde ⁝ blowyng such a bost ;
He was atened of his envy ⁝ he tok of hym so li3te,

and asks Richard of Normandy if he knows that knight.

And asked of Rychard of normandy ⁝ if he knew þ*at* kny3te 115
þat mad he*m* þer so peryllous ⁝ & au*au*ntid hi*m* þo so 3erne.
"He ne telleþ bote lyte of ous ⁝ be his wordes sterne ;
Proutelich he au*au*ntteþ hem ⁝ wiþ xij. for to fi3te. 118
Wiþ þe beste þat buþ of al my men ⁝ & to dulfulle deþe hem di3te."

'Yes,' says Richard, 'it is the greatest king in heathenesse.'

¶ "3ea," quaþ Ri[chard], "with outen oþ ⁝ y knowe hi*m* wel to wisse ;
Hit is on þe grettest kyng for soþ ⁝ þ*at* dwelleþ in heþenisse. 121
In al paynye nys prync3 ne kyng ⁝ þat berþ so gret a name :
þor3 out þe werld of is beryng ⁝ spryngeþ los & fame.
Ne douteþ he kyng ne Emperour ⁝ þe value of a ryssche, 124
þar for he*m* folwyþ al þat flour ⁝ þat in paynye ysse."

Then the king swears he will eat nor drink more till one

¶ þa*n*ne þe kyng gan waxe wroþ ⁝ & aboute hi*m* gan be-holde,
& by seynt dynys a swer is oþ ⁝ þ*at* after þ*at* tyme a nolde
Ete ne drynke no more þat day ⁝ for none kynnes þynge, 128

[1] Charlys [sat &] hurde.

Or on of hys[1] in god aray ⁝ had foȝt *with* *þat* kynge. — of his has fought with that king.
¶ þe Emp*er*our, sir Charlemayn ⁝ a wondrede of þat man:
More wolde he wyte fayn ⁝ & of Richard askeþ þan
What ys riȝte name was ⁝ *þat* made such a slaundre. 132
"Sire," said he, "sir Fyru*mbras* ⁝ þe kyng of Alysaundre: — 'And the man's name?' 'Sir Ferumbras,' says he, 'the King of Alexandria.'
þys ys he þat be-lay ⁝ Rome þy gode Citee,
& þyn relyqes bar away ⁝ þe croune & þe nailles three, 135
Þat þou & þyne *with* strengþe of hond ⁝ in heþnisse su*m* tyme wonne.
To cristenmen in many a lond ⁝ gret sorwe he haþ by-gonne." — The French are frightened.
¶ Wan þe frensche i-hurde þys ⁝ sore þay wern afriȝte, 138
Was non of hymen þat wolde y-wys ⁝ profryem *with* hi*m* to fiȝte; — None would fight with him.
Euereche behuld on oþer tho ⁝ bot ech man held hym stille.
Charlis bot is lippen tho ⁝ for he nad noȝt is wille,
¶ He clipede is neuewe duk Roland ⁝ þat was aman of myȝte, 142 — Charles prays Roland to take the fight in hand.
& prayede hi*m* faire to take an hond ⁝ aȝen hym to take þe fyȝte.[2]
Roland answerede wyþ egre mod ⁝ & sayde so most he þe, — Roland refuses,
Leu*er*e hi*m* were he were wod ⁝ oþer hanged on þe tre,
Or he wolde eu*er*e after þan ⁝ for hys p*ra*yere fiȝte 146
Wyþ Sarasyn ne *with* *c*risten man ⁝ noþer in wrong ne riȝte.
"For ȝest*er* neite wan we had fiȝt ⁝ ȝonder out on þ^e playne, — [leaf 2, back]
A þousent *þer* we putte to fliȝt ⁝ & x þousent þer wern sleyne,
& My[3] felawe Erld Olyuer ⁝ was þar y-wou*n*ded sare; 150
Alle ȝe hadden be a-slawe ther ⁝ *with* sarsyns *þat* *þer* ware,
Ne had þyn do[ȝȝ]epers þe bet i-swonke ⁝ ich & my felawes:
& to-niȝt wan þat þov were dronke ⁝ þan *þou* laidest þy lawes,
& saydest þat þyn knyȝtes hore ⁝ hadden wel bet*er*e ifyȝt[4] 154
þan we þat ȝonge knyȝtes wore ⁝ *þat* disconfited*em* alle *with* myȝt.
þyn angre[5] ous greuede sore ⁝ wan *þou* toke of ous so lyȝt; — because Charles had insulted him.
At al me*n* know[t] *þat* þar weore ⁝ *þat* þov saidest ou*n*riȝt,
þou madest *þat* au*au*nt, soþ to saye ⁝ for to preyse þe selue. 158
Ac[6] Be-hold aboute now y praye ⁝ ouer a*nd* on euery helue. — 'Look about who will take the fight,
Hwych of hi*m* wil take þe fiȝt ⁝ aȝen *þat* Sarsyn strong;

[1] hys [pers] in. [2] Aȝe [þe sarsyn to] fyȝte.
[3] My [owe]. [4] MS. *altered* (?) *to* ifoȝt. [5] þyn [speche]
[6] *The MS. has a line drawn from* Ac *to* At *above; the* Ac *being added before* Behold. *The line originally ran:*—Be-hold aboute y þe praye ⁝ her by euery helue.

for I will not.' For y ne wil noȝt by god almyȝt ⁝ & wyt þat þyn owe*n* wrong,
& ho so takeþ hit on þy part ⁝ y swere by cryst in trone, 162
Of me neu*ere* after-wart ⁝ loue ne get he none."
¶ "A ⁝ glotou*n*," saide þe Emp*er*er ⁝ "entempre þ*o*u bet*er* þy tonge[1],
If þow nere my cosyn þe neer ⁝ wel heȝe scholdest*o*u be honge." 165

Charles, with his gloves, smites Roland in the face. Wiþ gloues[2] þ*a*t he þan had an hond ⁝ þ*a*t w*ith* gold ibotened were,
In þe face smot he duk*e* Rolond ⁝ þ*a*t þe blod sprong out þere.

Roland draws his sword, but the others separate them. þe duk a syde þānne gan to sterte ⁝ & drow ys swerd anon, 168
& wolde ys vncle þar-wiþ herte ⁝ nad oþre betwen he*m* gon.
¶ "Alas" ⁝ quaþ Charlis þar a stod ⁝ "wel sory now may y be,[3]
Wan he þat ys my flesch*e* & blod ⁝ w*ith* wepne assaylleþ me:
& he þat scholde me socoury ⁝ to ȝen myn enymys 172
Despyseþ me her dispytously ⁝ & telt of me no prys.
Now y pray to god of heuene ⁝ þ*a*t al þyng knoþ & seeþ,
Ne lyue he noȝt þys day til euene ⁝ wyþ oute schentful deeþ."

Charles orders him to be put to death, for wraþþe þ*a*n hi*m* crieþ þe kyng ⁝ & het to taken hi*m* sone, 176
& swer he nolde ete ne drynk ⁝ til he to deþe wer done.

but Roland swears whoso comes near him shall be slain. ¶ Roland huld ys swerd a-drawe ⁝ & swer bi god al one
Ho so neȝed hi*m* schold ba-sclawe ⁝ & cloue dou*n* to þe stone.
Wan þe frensche men ihurde þys ⁝ þay douted hi*m* for to fonde, 180
þan was non sa hardy y-wys ⁝ on hym to leyn no honde.

Ogier interposes. ¶ Oger spak for duk Roland ⁝ & praide þe kyng to cesse,
& saide "sire, ȝe doþ hym wrong ⁝ to smyten hi*m* on þis presse.
Wel ofte he haueþ socourd ȝow ⁝ & of ȝour fon ȝov venged, 184
Wer for y rede cessyeþ now ⁝ til eft hit may be amended."

[leaf 3] Charles is sorry. CHarlis be-huld þan how ys blod ⁝ ran dou*n* of ys face[4]
þe lasse hi*m* wondrede þoȝ ys mod ⁝ til anger gu*n*ne hi*m* chace,
þoȝ he for hi*m* þan sory were ⁝ no wonder for soþ hit nace 188
Amonges þe lordes alle þere ⁝ ofte he saide "alace!
Fader, & sone, & holy gost ⁝ wat schal y don," he[5] sede,
"Suþþe þe man y trist an most ⁝ for-sakeþ me at my nede,
& draȝþ ys swerd bi-fore my fas ⁝ to sle me ȝif he miȝte? 192
þat y so longe scholde lyue alas ⁝ to sen hit w*ith* my siȝte!"

[1] [mesure] þ*o*u bet*er* þy [speche].
[2] Wiþ [þe] gloues.
[3] [Now] sory may y be.
[4] *These words*, face, chace, nace, alace, *are altered from a final* s *in a hand of the same date.*
[5] MS. he [he.]

¶ Duk Neymes þan hi*m* spak anon ⁝ & sayde wordes wyse— — Duke Neymes then said, 'Let him go,
"At þis tyme, sir, now let hi*m* gon ⁝ he wil hi*m* betre auyse;
ȝe habbeþ kny3tes among ous her ⁝ þe beste þ*at* mo3e be fou*n*de, 196
Sendeþ anoþer doþþeper ⁝ to fi3te wiþ þat hounde." — and send another.'
¶ "By god," quaþ þe kyng, "now it is so ⁝ þat Rolond hit haþ for sake,
y knowe non oþre to tristyng to ⁝ batail with hi*m* to take,[1] — 'I know none but Oliver,'
Out-take hys felawe Olyuere[2] ⁝ & he were hol & sou*n*de; 200 says the king,
ac he lyþ hert now w*ith* a spere ⁝ & bereþ a gryslich wounde." — 'and he is sorely wounded.'
¶ As he þa*n*ne[3] stod & þo3te ⁝ to wham he speke may,
þe tydyngge was to Olyuer bro3te ⁝ þer he on bedde lay — Meanwhile Oliver had
Of þe sarsyn þat was y come ⁝ & of þe kyng al so, 204 heard of the Saracen,
& how Roland haþ Charlys vndernome ⁝ & wold no3t þ*at* batail do.
¶ Wan þe Erld hit vnderstod ⁝ þat Rolond hit nolde take
To fi3te a3en þe Sarsyn wod ⁝ & al for wraþþes sake,
& non oþer ne profrede hi*m* no3t ⁝ þat batail to vnde[r]fonge, 208 and how none would fight with him.
Hi*m* was ful wo þan on is þo3t ⁝ & ofte sekede amonge;
Sone he arerd hi*m* after þan ⁝ & lokede oppon is syde, — Soon he lifts himself up,
& saw is blod how [doun] it ran ⁝ out of is wonde wyde: — and seeing how his blood
Hys wou*n*de was þo in yuel aray ⁝ & for Angwys gan to chyne. 212 runs from his wound,
Olyuer tok his mantel of say ⁝ gold peynt hit was wel fyne, — tears his mantle to
& rent hit al to peces smal ⁝ & þer wiþ is wonde he di3te, — pieces,
& stoppede is wounde þ*er* wyþ al ⁝ & bond hure as he mi3te. — and stops his wound with
þan he clepede ys squyer ⁝ Garyn, & til hym he sayde: 216 it.
"Do þat myn armes sone be heer ⁝ & help me y were a-rayde: — Then calls for his arms.
I wil fi3te wyþ þat heþene kyng ⁝ as crist me helpe & rede.
ne langede me neu*e*re more do þyng ⁝ þat toched ma*n*nes dede."
¶ Garyn þa*n*ne ansuerede a3en ⁝ "sire, wat hast þow þo3t? 220 His squire, Garyn, remonstrates with him,
Wilt þ^u^ silf willes lete þe slen ⁝ þy p*ur*pos ne preyse y no3t.
By-þenk þe how þy blod ys schad ⁝ & hast a grislich wou*n*de;
How scholdest þou fi3te þ*at* art so mad ⁝ wyþ þat heþene hou*n*de?"
¶ "Let of þy speche," þe Erld hym saide ⁝ "for no þyng wil y spare, [leaf 3, back]
Bot y made til hym abrayde ⁝ of blisse y were al bare. 225
To helpe my liege lord Charlou*n* ⁝ to batail mot y fare, — but Oliver insists.
y wil hold vp his renou*n* ⁝ wyþ al my my3t & mare.

[1] [þat battail] with hi*m* to take. [2] Out-take [þe gode erld] Olyuere.
[3] As he [byþo3te hi*m*] þa*n*ne.

If y hi*m* faillede on þys nede ⁝ wan Roland hit haþ for-sake 228
þer is non oþer, so god me spede ⁝ þat wil hit vndertake:
ne schal no man bet proue is frende ⁝ bot a-say he*m* on his nede,
·y praye þ^e^, Garyn, as þou ert hende ⁝ go bryng þ*o*u forþ my wede."
"Sir," said he wel delfolly ⁝ "þoȝ hit beo noȝt my wille 232
y wol þe armye sykerly ⁝ þy p*ur*pos to fulfille."

His arms are brought, and he puts them on,

his armes he bryngþ hi*m* þa*n*ne anon ⁝ & Olyuer gan hi*m* schride,
wiþ is hosen of mayle he by-gon ⁝ nolde he no leng a-byde:
& suþþe an haberke al of steel ⁝ on is body he caste, 236
Garyn hur lacede faire & weel ⁝ & mad hur sitte faste.
His helm he setteþ on is heuede ⁝ & fastnede þe auentaille.
Hautecler is swerd was noȝt be-leued ⁝ he gurd hi*m* w*ith* sau*n* faille.
Garyn his gode stede hym fette ⁝ þ*a*t was in spaygne iboȝt; 240

mounts his steed,

þe erld lep vp wyþ oute lette ⁝ his styrop trepede he noȝt,
A*n*d smot þe stede hi*m* to saye ⁝ wiþ is spores of golde.
þe stede was god & lup a waye ⁝ wel fifty fet i-tolde;
þat gode hors blessede he þo ⁝ & louely strek ys mane, 244
He miȝte sikerly hym triste to ⁝ hym semede wel by þane.
"Garyn," quaþ Olyuer, "wel þe be ⁝ þov hast wel kept my stede,
If y may lyue & come aȝe ⁝ ȝelde y wil þy mede." 247

takes his shield and spear,

¶ Garyn hi*m* þankede & tok hym als ⁝ his scheld w*ith* hym to bere,
& Olyu*er* hit heng a-boute is hals ⁝ & til hi*m* tok a spere.
wan he was armed on horses bak ⁝ a fair knyȝt a was to see,
a iolif on wyþ oute lak ⁝ boþe strong & fers was hee.
God hi*m* spede for his miȝt ⁝ now he takþ ys waye, 252
wiþ þe werste Sarsyn wil he fiȝt ⁝ þ*a*t he dude eu*er*e a-saye.

and rides to Charles' tent.

¶ fforþ þan rod he stoutely ⁝ wel i-armed oppon his stede,
ys herte was god & sykerly ⁝ serued hi*m* to do þ*a*t dede: 255
he lifte vp ys hond & blessed hi*m* þan ⁝ & recoma*n*dede*m* to god almiȝte,
To Charlis pauylloun þe way he nam ⁝ til hym rod ful riȝte.
AS Charlys was in his greua*n*ce ⁝ stondyng among his feren, 258
& cou*n*sailede w*ith* þe grete of fr*a*unce ⁝ & w*ith* ys doþþeperen,
Roland drow hi*m* a-side þare ⁝ among he*m* he ne keem,
& þan he by-gan repentye sare ⁝ þ*a*t he haþ greued his Eem. 261

[leaf 4] Roland is sorry that

Wel sore hi*m* greuede þat þe kyng ⁝ was angred for ys sake,
þan had he leuere þan eny þyng ⁝ had he þ*a*t batail take:

þer to wolde he þa*n*ne be fayne ⁝ for schame ȝif he miȝte
ffor þat batail to dereyne ⁝ profry hym forþ to fiȝte. 265

he offended Charles.

¶ Olyuer rideþ wyþ sper & scheld ⁝ in-to þe pauyllou*n*,
Many was þe knyȝt þ*a*t hi*m* beheld ⁝ wan he spak ys resou*n*:
To þe kyng said he among þe pres ⁝ "y haue þe serued ȝore 268
In werre & eke in lond of pes ⁝ wel seuen ȝer' & more,
& eu*er*e suþþe y haue me raid ⁝ redely to þy seruyse,
& ȝut i holde me wel apaid ⁝ to don þe same gyse,
for y haue me preued on þy werre ⁝ to fiȝte aȝen þy foes. 272

Oliver reminds Charles of his long services,

In many a lond boþ ner & ferre ⁝ y gete me prys & loes;
y þank þe þ*a*t in many a lond ⁝ my name ys kud aboute.
& namliche be cause of duk Rolond ⁝ þe more me doþ me doute,
for siþþen to gaddr*e* we furstly knewe ⁝ neu*er*e ous two to sterte. 276
We habbeþ be felawes gode & trewe ⁝ in body & eke on herte;
he haþ me holpen in many plas ⁝ syn we to-gadre come.
y þonky þ*a*t ȝow & godes gras ⁝ þat he tok frendschip to me.
for al my seruyse y haue þe don ⁝ y pray þe now a bone, 280
Oþer sond ne kep y non ⁝ so þow hit grante sone."
¶ þe kyng ansuerede hi*m* a-ȝe ⁝ "dure frend, say þy wille,
be it castel, burgh, outher Cite ⁝ & ich hit wol ful-fille.
And wan we comeþ to fraunce ⁝ more miȝt þ*o*u craue, 284
As god ȝyue þe gode chaunce ⁝ ask on & þou schalt haue."
¶ þe Erld hym þonkeþ lome ⁝ & til hi*m* gan to sayne:
"Grau*n*te, sire, þe batayl to me ⁝ þe sarasyn to fiȝte agayne,
for al þe seruyse y haue þe do ⁝ y aske non oþer þyng." 288

and asks to be allowed to accept Ferumbras' challenge.

Alle þ*a*t herd hi*m* wondrede þo ⁝ of is bold askyng;
& for he was wonded so sore ⁝ þ*a*t is colour was neȝ a-go,
hymen wondrede wel þe more ⁝ þ*a*t he therste hym profry to.
¶ þan saide Charlis kyng ⁝ "Olyuer, what hast þ*o*u þoȝt? 292
By-þenk þ*o*u art y-woundȝyng ⁝ & neȝ þe deþe ybroȝt,
& art now al pal of hewe ⁝ for þe blod þ*o*u hast schad,
& þy wounde ys ȝut al newe ⁝ & no medecyn naueþ ihad,
how miȝtest þ*o*u now fiȝte þanne ⁝ þy miȝte ys þe be reued, 296
wyþ þat myȝty heþene manne ⁝ y rede þ^e^ þ*a*t þ*o*u leuet."

Charles remonstrates with him.

¶ "Nay," quaþ O[liver], "be god of heuene ⁝ for no þyng wil y spare,
noȝt for grete Citees seuene ⁝ in what lond þ*a*t þay ware.

& if ȝe been a trewe kyng ⁝ þat batail wil y haue." 300

[leaf 4, back] ¶ "Noȝt by my wil for noþyng" ⁝ said he so god hi*m* saue.

Then Gwenelon and Hardree come before Charles. They were traitors, and ere three years they betrayed the king and were hanged.

þa*n*ne þer come bi fore Charlou*n* ⁝ Gweneloun & hardree.
Cristes cors come on hure croun ⁝ for traytou*rs* wern hee!
As ȝe schul huren after þys ⁝ or passede ȝeres three 304
þay be-traiede þe kyng & his ⁝ war-for þai had hure fee,
an honged þai weren & to-drawe ⁝ þ*er* after boþe two,
As for t*ra*ytours ȝaf þe lawe ⁝ for traysou*n* þay had ido[1].
þa*n*ne wolde þay wel faȝe ⁝ ȝif þei miȝt helpe to 308

They say to the king, 'According to the law of parliament,

þat sir Olyuer hadde be slaȝe ⁝ & to þe kyng þay saide þo:
¶ "Syre, hit ys ordeynt be p*a*rlyment ⁝ among ous to ben yholde,
þ*a*t wat be r*e*warded be tweyre assent ⁝ þ^e^ þridde assenty sholde: 311

it has been determined by us two that Oliver shall engage the Saracen.'

Hit ys rewardet o*us* two be twyne ⁝ þ*a*t Olyuer schal wende & take
þe batayl wiþ þe ȝond Sarsyne ⁝ & do hit for þy sake."

The king answers, 'Evil befal you; he shall go to the battle, but woe to you if he fall!'

¶ þe kyng answerede þis traytours ⁝ "Gweneylou*n* & hardree,
For ȝour iuggiment out of cours ⁝ haue ȝe muche maugree! 315
Now schal he to þat batail fare ⁝ on hi*m* ȝe hit habbeþ ypilt;
& if þe sarsyn ou*er*compþ hi*m* þare ⁝ certis ȝe bereþ þ^e^ gilt.
Body & saule mot y forfare ⁝ ȝif hit be falleþ so,
Bot if ȝe boþe for-þynk hit sare ⁝ ȝour lyues schul ȝe for-go." 319

'Christ shield us,' they say.

"So crist," quaþ þay, "scheld ous f*ra*m care ⁝ þat batayl mot be do,
& alþoȝ he ben a-slawe þare ⁝ what mowe we do þer-to?"

'May he never return.'

By twene he*m* þan þay sede stille ⁝ "ne come he neu*er*e aȝen!"
For þat was al hure herte wille ⁝ þat þe sarsyn schold hi*m* slen.

Charles wishes him God speed.

¶ Charlis to Oliuer saide þo ⁝ "god help þe, dere herte, 324
þat þ*o*u mote ouercome our fo[2] ⁝ & come aȝeyn in querte.
y hope þe scholde spede wel ⁝ nere þy greuous wou*n*de,
ȝut t*r*ist y to god þat so þe schal ⁝ for þyn herte is hol & sou*n*de."

Reyner,

¶ Wiþ þat com forþ Duk Reyner ⁝ þat of Genyue duk was þo, 328

Oliver's father, says, 'My son is wounded sore; how can he fight?'

Olyuers fader, a knyȝt ful feer ⁝ for hi*m* his herte was wo:
"Mercy, quaþ he to kyng Charlou*n* ⁝ my sone ys wonded sore,
F*ra*m hym ys falle ys blod adou*n* ⁝ how miȝte he fiȝte more.
He ys boþe paal & feynt ⁝ & ȝut me greues more, 332

335

[1] [god] for traysou*n*, &c. [2] ouercome [þy] fo.

Original draft. F*ro*m hi*m* ys falle his blod adou*n* . how miȝte he fiȝte more?" 331

þat if he beo þer in batail atteynt ⁝ þou lest þy los þ*er*fore."
¶ þan hi*m* answerede Gweneyllou*n* ⁝ & Hardre in hure scorn : Gwenelon and Hardree insist.
" þov hast y dremed of venesou*n* ⁝ þov mostest drynke a torn.
He schal do now þat he be-soȝte ⁝ for we assentieþ to : 336
ho so wil or wil hit noȝt ⁝ þat batail he mot do."
¶ " ȝif hym þy blessyng, swete Reyner ⁝ saide Charlis kyng, 'Give him thy blessing,' says the king.
For fiȝte he mot wyþ þat sarsyn feer ⁝ me semeþ bi hur*e* tellyng."
þe duk hef vp an heȝ his hond ⁝ & blessede his sone þare, 340 [leaf 5] The duke blesses his son;
& O[liuer] þat was wel fre to fond ⁝ tok is leue to fare. many pray God speed him.
for hi*m* praiede many a wyȝt ⁝ þat god hi*m* scholde spede,
boþe kyng, duk, erld & knyt ⁝ scholde help hi*m* in þ*at* nede.
DVc Oliuer hi*m* rideþ out of þ*at* plas ⁝ in a softe amblere, 344 Oliver rides away,
ne made he non oþer pas ⁝ til þey wern met y-fere[1] :
And wan he cam þ*er* as he was ⁝ þyd*er*ward he caste ys chere,
& fyndeþ þ*er* sir Fyru*m*bras ⁝ liggyng on þ^e erþe there. and finds Ferumbras lying down.
¶ Wan he saw erld Olyuer ⁝ a tornþ hi*m* þ*at* oþer side ; 348
Aȝeyn hi*m* for to arise þer ⁝ dedeyngnede he þo for pride.
þe knyȝt hi*m* neȝede þa*n*ne neer ⁝ & spak til hi*m* þ*at* tide :
" Arys vp, Sarsyn, þat ert so feer ⁝ no leng*er* ne miȝt*o*u bide ; Oliver calls to him, 'Arise,

[1] til þey [come], &c.

[þan him answerede Gweneyllou*n*] & Hardre in hur scorn : 334 *Original draft.*
þou [ha]st y met of venysou*n* [þou mostest] drynke a torn
[He moste] ytake þat he bi-soȝt [for] we assentieþ to 336
Ho so wil or wil hit noȝt . he [mot þat batail do]
. . . . saide charlis þ*o*u ȝif hy*m* þy blessynge . . .
Siker he . . . . . .
þe duk*e* hef vp an-heȝ his hond & blessid is sone þare ; 340
& Olyu*er* was fre to fond & forþ he gan to fare.
For hi*m* prayede many wiȝt þ*at* god hi*m* scholde spede,
Boþe of barou*n* & eke knyt ⁝ & holp hi*m* in þ*at* nede.
Oliu*er* torneþ hi*m* þa*n*ne wiþ an hardi chere,
Toward þat heþene manne he rideþ a softe amblere ; 344
Til he cam þ*er* þ*at* he was hi*m* þoȝte ech stap was þre,
At þe laste he fyndeþ Fyrumbras liggyng vnd*er* a tre.
Whan he of saw[1] Sir O[lyuer] he t*ur*neþ þ*at* oþre side, 348
Hi*m* dedeygnede to hi*m* arise þer, so ful he was of pride.
þe knyȝt hi*m* neȝeþ ner & ner, & spak*e* to hi*m* as he lay,
& askude of hi*m* what he were þat made such affray,

[1] of saw *added above the line.*

& þat auantyngge þat þou hast mad ꝛ & þou hit meyteyne wolle 352
Loke þat þou be armed sad ꝛ & hele þy bare scolle :

and defend thyself;

y am come her .o. semple knyȝt ꝛ y-redy w*ith* þe to fiȝte, 354
yf þou þyn au*au*nt p*er*forny myȝt ꝛ a-rys vp anon & diȝt þe."

I am come to fight with thee.'

¶ Fyru*m*bras on hi*m* glente ys eyȝe ꝛ scornfullich & low :
"Lef," saide he, "þy grete foleye ꝛ y rede þe for þy prow,
For if þou yknewe me ariȝt ꝛ my doynge & my creaunce, 358
þou noldest profry me no fiȝt ꝛ for al þat gold of fraunce.

Ferumbras says scornfully, 'If thou knewest me thou wouldst not offer to fight me,

Al þoȝ y ben her my self al one ꝛ a gret lord am y holde,
A kyng ycrounede on my trone ꝛ þe richeste man on molde.

altho' I am alone.

Fyru*m*bras is my name ꝛ of Alysandre kyng y-tolde, 362
In tal þe worlde sp[r]yngeþ fame ꝛ of myne dedes bolde.

I am Ferumbras of Alexandria, the troubler of Christendom.

¶ Wyþ my werres y haue a-nyed ꝛ muche of cristendome,
& spayne & poyle y haue distryed ꝛ þe Citee eke of Rome ; 365
þer slow ich þañ [þe] pope prout ꝛ & al his Cardynales þ*at* yfond,
& alle þat wern of þe rout ꝛ y slow he*m* w*ith* myn hond.

I slew the pope and all his cardinals,

¶ þa*n*ne tok ich þe croune of thorn ꝛ & þe nayles three,
þat paynede crist wan he was born ꝛ on þe rode Tree,
& send hem to þe Amerel Balaan ꝛ my fader to present. 370
Muche del of cristendam ꝛ y haue y-slawe & brent :

and took the Crown of Thorns and the Nails

and sent them to the Emir Balan, my father.

Original draft.

& þat au*au*nt þat he gan make ȝif he metenye wolde 352
A preydem army hi*m* for þ*at* sake for w*ith* hi*m* fiȝte he scholde.
Fyru*m*bras on hi*m* glent his eye scornfuly & low :
"Lef þou," seid he, "þy foleye, y rede þe for þi prow ;
If þou yknewe me ariȝt & wat is my creance, 358
þou woldest p*ro*frie me no fiȝt for al þ*at* gold of *fra*unce.
þoȝ y be her now al-one a gret lord ic*h* am iholde,
A kyng [y-]crouned on my trone, þe richest man of molde.
Fyru*m*bras ys my name, of Alisandr*e* ich am kyng*e*, 362
In tal þe world spryngeþ fame of my wel berynge.
ic*h* am þilke þat haþ destruied[1] muche of c*ri*st*en*te :
Al Spaygne an[d] poile y haue anuyed, & Rome ȝ*our* oȝe Cite.
þar y slow þe pope of Rome & alle his cardinals, 366
& alle þ*at* wolde noȝt loute to me þa*n*ne slow ic*h* als :
þar tok ic*h* þe croune of þorn & þe nailes þre,
þat peyne crist wan he was born on þe rode tre,
& sende he*m* my fader Balahen & ȝif he*m* to p*re*sent. 370
Miche puple of cristen men me self[1] y haue i-schent.

[1] destruied [Rome].

Fram babylony þat ys my owe tour ⁝ in to [þe] rede see — From Babylon to the Red Sea all is mine.
Al þe lordes of honour ⁝ hure londes holdeþ of me.
Ierusalem, naym, & ierico ⁝ ich wan wyþ my prowesse, 374 I won Jerusalem and all the towns about,
& alle þe tounes aboute al so ⁝ boþe more & lesse.[1]
þe croys þat ihesus deyd an ⁝ & þe sepulcre al so, [leaf 5, back] the cross and sepulchre and many more reliques.'
With dede of armes ich hem wan ⁝ & relyqes many mo."
¶ þanne saide Olyuer "by my croun ⁝ y hure wel by þy sawe 378 Then says Oliver, 'Thou hast done much harm to Christians.
þow hast y-do distruccion ⁝ myche to cristen lawe;
& hast al so y-mad envy ⁝ wiþ christene men to fiȝte,
of alle oure ȝonder company ⁝ wiþ .xij^e^. þe moste of miȝte.
& y am her bote a demeyne kniȝt ⁝ of þe realme of fraunce, 382 I am here but a lowly knight to fight with thee.
& am y-come wyþ þe to fiȝt ⁝ for al þy grete bobbaunce.
Arys vp raply & þyn helm do on ⁝ & aray þe on þy stede, Arise, and prepare to fight with me.'
& grayþe þe to fiȝte wiþ me anon ⁝ or elles y make þe blede."
¶ þe Saraȝyn gan to lawe smere ⁝ & to O[lyuer] sayde þan: 386 The Saracen says,
"Wat wendest þou now so me a-fere ⁝ þov art an hastif man,

[1] At the bottom these lines (the 3rd and 4th in a different hand):
Duk O[lyuer] priked in-to þe feld þer þe Saraȝyn lay,
Wel y-armed with sper & sheld his harneys was so gay.
[*These are crossed through and were probably a substitute for lines* 344, 345, *between which a line is erased, though written in the margin.*]
Do on þyn helm oppon þyn hed . & lep oppon þy stede
If þou miȝte proue þat þou hast sed . let se hit now in [dede]
which seem to be a substitute for lines 384-5.

Fro Babalony þe heȝe tour in-to þe rede se — *Original draft.*
Al þe lordes of honour alle þay holdeþ of me;
Ierusalem & ierico ich wan with my prouesse 374
& al aboute tounes mo boþe more & lesse.
þe croyȝ þat ȝour god dayd an[1] & þe sepulcre also
Wyþ dede of armes ich am wan, & reliqes many mo."
O[lyuer] saide, "by my croun y haue y-herd þy sawe: 378
þou hast do muche distruccioun to oure christene lawe
& hast mad[2] þy avy wyþ xij men for to fiȝte
Of al oure ȝonder company þe alre beste knyȝte.
Y am her a meyne knyȝt y-comen out of[3] fraunce, 382
Al-redy now with þe to fiȝt for al þy gret bobaunce.
Arys vp & anon do on þyn helm & lep oppon þy stede,
& rap . . . redy ray þe wel & elles y make þe blede."
þe Saraȝyn law . . . smere & to Oliuer sayde þan: 386
"Wenist þou so me a-fere? þou ert an hastife man.

[1] ȝour god [was] an [ido]. [2] & [now] hast mad. [3] MS. of of.

Er y remuvie me of þys place ⁝ þat soþe þou schalt me telle, 388
'Who art thou, and who sent thee here,
Of wat kunne comen þov wace ⁝ & þy name wyten i wille,
& of þy comyng whar for it ys ⁝ & ho þe hiderward sente.
and what is thine intent?'
y wol wyten[1] þat soþe of þys ⁝ & wat is þyn entente:
& wan þat y know it wyterly ⁝ þe soþe þat þou saye, 392
þan schal y sykerly ⁝ arise vp and me arraye."
Oliver answers, 'I am sent by Charles
¶ þan him ansuerede Olyuer ⁝ wyþ sterne contynaunce:
"y am y-sent to þe heer ⁝ by Charlis kyng of fraunce.
to say, Turn to Christendom, or else
Charlis þe sente be me to say ⁝ þov torndest to crestendome, 396
& for-soke þy false lay ⁝ & to folloȝt sone þov come:
belyue þou scholdest on god almiȝt ⁝ þat for ous gan blede,
fight, or flee.'
& elles y chalenge wiþ þe to fiȝt ⁝ outher y schal haue þy stede,
& fleo þov schalt of þis lond ⁝ as a ladde doþ on þy fote. 400
Charlis sent to þee þis sond ⁝ þou ne ge[te]st non oþre bote."
330
'Christian knight,' says Ferumbras, 'there is no haste.
¶ "*Christ*ene knyȝt," quaþ Fyrumbras ⁝ "þou art a wonder gome:
þer is non haste in þys cas ⁝ to fiȝt ȝut mowe we come.
Ac for þou tellest so litel of me ⁝ ne were it for repreue, 404
By Mahou*n*, þat ys my vowee ⁝ of þyn heued y wolde þee reue.
Tell me one thing, before we fight,
Ac tel me o þyng noþeles ⁝ er we to-gadre fiȝte,

[1] MS. wynten, *marked for correction.*

Original draft.

Or ich remuwy of þys plas þat soþe þou schalt me telle 388
Of wat kyn y-come þou was, & þy name wyte ic*h* chille,
& war-for þy comyng is, & ho þe hider sente.
Y wil wite þat soþe of þis & what is þyn entente.
& wan y knowe hit wyt*er*ly þat hit is soþ þat þow saye, 392
þan schal y sykerly arys vp & me a-raye."
¶ þan hi*m* ansuerede olyuer wyþ sterne continance:
"Y am y-sent to þ^e^ her by Charlis kyng of fraunce;
Charlis þe sente by me to say þou torne to cristendome, 396
& reneye þy false lay & to folloȝt sone þou come;
by-lyue þou scholdest on god almyȝt, þat for ous gan blede,
& ellis ich chaulange w*ith* þ^e^ to fiȝt, oþer y wil haue þi stede.
Fleo þou a-way out of þ*is* lond as an harlot al afote. 400
C[harlis] sent þe such a sond, þou getest no*n* oþ*er* bote."
¶ "Crestene knyȝt," q*ua*þ F[yrumbras], "þou ert a wonder gome.
Ne haste noȝt me myc*he* in þ*is* cas to fiȝte þou myȝt wel come.
Ac for þou letest so lite of me, nere hit for r*e*preue, 404
By Mahou*n* þat ys my vowe of þy*n* heued*e* wold y þe reue!
Ac tel me o þyng*e* noþeles or we to-gadre fiȝte,

& say me soþ & no lees ⁝ as help þee þy god almiȝte.
of C[harlis] þat ys ȝour Emperer ⁝ of whame men stondeþ aye, — of Charles
& of duk Roland þat ys so fier ⁝ þe soþe þou me saye, — and Roland,
& ek of is felawe, Erld Olyuer ⁝ tel me y þe praye, 410 — and of Oliver,
And of duk Berard of mou*n*disdier ⁝ what man*er*e men buþ þaye." — and Berard.'
¶ "Sarsyn," saide þe gode knyȝt ⁝ "þat soþe schalt*o*u here.
Charlis ys so strong in fiȝt ⁝ he fyndeþ nowar is pere: — [leaf 6] Oliver says,
& Rolond ys so muche of myȝt[1] ⁝ so coraious & so fere, 414 — 'Charles is so strong he has
þat nowar nys founde non so wyȝt ⁝ wan he ys on ys gere. — no equal,
Olyu*er* þ^e^ erld ys noȝt so god ⁝ þe soþe for to saye, — and nowhere is such a knight as Roland.'
Ac he ys a man heȝ of mod ⁝ Sarasynȝ to yule arraye. — Oliver is not so good, but
Onys y wiste oppon a day ⁝ þat he slow kynges three 418 — once he slew three kings,
þat lyued on ȝour false lay ⁝ & tweyne mad he flee: — and made two to flee.
Ac he slow Sarazyns on þat place ⁝ [so doȝtilich þat t]yde
þat al þe feld y-strawed wace ⁝ of hymen on eu*er*y syde.
Terry is sone duk Berard ⁝ ys a noble knyȝt. 422 — Berard is a noble knight.
þ*er* ys no doþþeper þat nys hard ⁝ & str*o*ng iholde & wyȝt.
Now haue y told þe þyn askyng ⁝ for þy fer arys vp sone — Now I have told thee, arise and put on thy gear.

[1] & Rolond ys so [noble a kni].

& say me soþ & no les, so helpe þe þy driȝte! — *Original draft.*
Of þi lord kyng Charlou*n*, of wam men stondeþ aye,
& of Roland þ*a*t knyȝt of gret r*e*nou*n* þe soþe þ*o*u me saye;
& of his felawe oliuer tel me, y þe praye, 410
& eke of Berard of mou*n*disder, wat man*er* men buþ þaye."
"Saraȝyn," saide þe gode knyȝt, "þ*a*t soþe y telle þe here.
Charlis ys so stron*g*e in fiȝt he fyndeþ no-war is pere,
& R[oland] is an hardi man, so str*o*ng man & so wiȝt, 414
þ*a*t in no batail þ*er* he cam . ne fond he neu*er*e knyȝt,
þ*a*t onys a strok hy*m* astod þat he on hi*m* leide,
þ*a*t he ne affuldem were wod, ouþ*er* slowe at a braide.
Olyuer his felawe is noȝt so god, to soþe i þe telle,
Ac noþeles he is a man of mod heþene men to quelle.
Y wiste onis on a day war he slow kyng*es* þre, 418
þ*a*t bi-leuede on þe false lay & tweye he made fle;
He laide on Saraȝyns on þat plas so doȝtilich w*ith* wille 420
þ*a*t al þe feld y-strawid was of Sarsyns þ*a*t weren ille.
Terry is sone, sir*e* Berard, is a noble knyȝt,
& alle þe oþre doȝepers buþ doȝty men & wiȝt.
Now y haue þe al itold ne tarie þ*o*u me no mere; 424

And do on þyn helm þou heþene kyng ⁝ & let se wat þou canst done,
& bot þou þe raþere gynne to spring ⁝ y swere by crist on trone 426
Sone getest þou euyl endyng ⁝ with my swerd y wil þee slone."

The Saracen says, 'Thou art a fool.'

¶ þañ þe sarsyn huld vp ys hed ⁝ after þes wordes felle,
& sayde, "knyȝt þou art a qued ⁝ to make me such a spelle,

Little prowess were it for me to fight with a vassal.'

Litel prowesse for me it were ⁝ wiþ a vauasour for to melle, 430
Wiþ my swerd þat ys here ⁝ ellis y wolde þe quelle."

'Saracen,' says Oliver, 'ere the sun set thou shalt yield.'

¶ "Sarsyn," quaþ Olyuer, "let now ben ⁝ þy prude & þy manace;
Or þe sonne hure sette þou schalt sen ⁝ of þy blod ful þis place.
þow schalt þe ȝelde recreent ⁝ ouþer her riȝt schaltou dye." 434
þe Saraȝyn saide "verament ⁝ y hope þov schalt lye."

The Saracen dreads Oliver no more than a fly.

His scheld tok he þo til hym ner ⁝ & laide vnder ys hed an hye:
Hym dredeþ noþyng of Olyuer ⁝ no more þan of a flye;
For he was strong & coraious ⁝ & heȝ man of parage, 438
Him semede it nas noȝt worþ a lous ⁝ batayl wiþ him to wage.

'Christian,' says Ferumbras, 'tell me thy name and kin.'

¶ "Christene kniȝt," quaþ Firumbras ⁝ "y haue of þe god game,
Tel me nov riȝt in þis plas ⁝ what ys þy riȝte name;
& of wat kyn þou ert y come ⁝ tel me al þat soþe." 442

'Garyn,' says Oliver, 'at Perigot was I born.'

"Garyn," quaþ O[lyuer], "Gwylmynes sone ⁝ y tel þe wyþouten oþe:
At Perigot ich was y-bore ⁝ a borgeys dude me gete.
y haue trauayld her be-fore ⁝ wel herde for my mete,

At Court

Til ich me droȝ to courte-ward ⁝ & an seruise diȝte me þare; 446

Original draft.

If þou ert to fiȝte bold, arys; & do on þy gere,
& bote þou þe raþer haue y-do y make myn be-heste,
With my swerd y schel þe slo ȝif þat hit wil leste."
þan þe Saraȝyn held vp ys hed. wanne he had herd him telle
& saide, "knyȝt, þou ert a qued to make such a spelle.
Litel prouesse for me hit were. with a uauysour for to melle, 430
With my swerd þat is here ellys y wold þe quelle."
"Saraȝyn, quaþ O[lyuer], let þis ben, þy prude & þy manace;
Or sonne . . . sette þou schal y sen of þy blod ful þis place.
þou schalt þe ȝelde 434

[(?) 10 *lines missing.*]

[top of col. 2] . . . . . saie with-outen [oþe] 443
[At Perigot ich] was [y-bore, a borgeys dude] me gete
y haue trauayled her bifore many many for my mete
At . . . y drow to courtward an seruise ich þer me diȝte, 446

þan se*r*ued ich þe kynges[1] styward ⁝ [seuene[2]] ȝer & mare :
He bar my los to Charlis kyng ⁝ for my gode seruyse,
þ*a*t he ȝaf me lond & oþer þyng ⁝ & halp me in þis wyse :
þe kyng suþþe mad me knyȝte ⁝ to se*r*uie hi*m* in is werre,
& he me sente wiþ þe to fiȝte ⁝ com on ȝif þov derre."
¶ Wan O[lyuer] hy*m* haueþ al itold ⁝ Fyru*m*bras gan to smyle :
"Garyn," quaþ he, "þou art ful bold ⁝ bot lust to me a wyle :
Why ne sendeþ he duk Rolond ⁝ w*ith* me for to fiȝte,
Ouþer olyuer w*ith* þe harde hond ⁝ þ*a*t is so god a kniȝte ;
Oþer duk bera[r]d of montdisdier ⁝ ouþ*er* Ogerou*n* þe wiȝte ?"
"Parfay" ansuerede erld Olyuer ⁝ "þay han of þe dispiȝte ;
þar-for y am to þe y-sent ⁝ to spelie þai doȝty men :
for þoȝ y ben in batail schent ⁝ it ys no lest for hem.
Arys vp now & don þyn helm ⁝ þy scheld & [eke] þy gere,
& kep þe silue w*ith* oute herm ⁝ & be-þenk þe self to were.
Ouþer be þe deþ þat y schel deye ⁝ y ȝeue þe such a stroke,
þ*a*t þou hi*m* neu*er*e schalt clowe a-weye ⁝ wile þou þy lyf miȝt broke."
¶ "By my fayþ," quaþ Firu*m*bras ⁝ "haue þis wel in mynde,
Neu*er*e ne faȝt y ȝut in plas ⁝ w*ith* man of lowe kynde,

I served the high steward 7 years. He bore my praise to Charles, who made me knight.

[leaf 6, back] Come on now, if thou dare!' Ferumbras smiled.

'Why sendeth he not Roland, or Oliver, or Berard, or Ogeroun?'

'Faith,' answers Oliver, 'they despise thee.

Arise, now; arm thyself.'

[1] þe [heȝ] styward. [2] MS. sone.

& se*r*ued . . . . styward & memde*n* w*ith* al my miȝte :
He [bar my los to Charlis kyng] þ*a*t he me gan au*au*nce,
& ȝaf me beste lond [& thyng] þ*a*t be in þe realme of f*ra*unce,
Charlis [suþþe mad me] knyȝt to se*r*uie hi*m* on his werre,
He se[nte] me hider w*ith* [þe] to fiȝt, asay now [if] þou derre."
Wan O[lyuer hy*m*] haueþ [al i-]told F[yrumbras] gan to smyle :
he [said] "Garyn, þou ert ful bold, but lust to me a while :
Wy [ne] sendeþ he hider sir Roland w*ith* me for to fiȝt,
[Ouþer] O[lyuer] w*ith* þe herde hand, þ*a*t ys so noble a kniȝt,
[Ouþer Be]rard of mou*n*disder, oþer sir Oger þe wiȝt ?"
"Parfay," þan said Olyuer, "for þay han of þe dispiȝt,
þarfor y am to þe y-sent to spelie þai doȝty men,
þoȝ y ben in batail schent : it is ne lest for hem.
Aris vp now & do on þyn helm þy scheld & þy gere,
& lep vppon þy stede ariȝt & by-þenk þe for-to were ;
Ouþer by þe fayþ þat y schal to kyng Charlemeyn
On þyn heued y ȝeue þ^e a knal & cleue þe in-to þe brayn."
"By my . . faiþ," quaþ F[yrumbras], "haue þis wel in mynde,
Neu*er*e ne fauȝte y ȝut in plas w*ith* no man of so lowe kynde

Original draft.

1175

Bote wyþ duk ouþer Erld of myȝt ⁝ ouþer kyng y-crouned free. 466

'If I slay thee,' says Ferumbras, 'what honour would it be?

þoȝ y slowe þe her in fiȝt ⁝ what prys were þat for me?
Men wolde sayn y were to blame ⁝ wyþ such on for to fiȝte,
Bote þou haddest a betere name ⁝ þan Garyn a pore kniȝte.

However, one thing I will do;

Ac o þyng y schal now for þe do ⁝ i dude it neuere to wiȝte. 470
ȝyf þov wilt assenty to ⁝ in armes y wil me diȝte,
& lepe y wol now on my stede ⁝ & bere to þe a spere,
with anoþer ryd þou to me ⁝ wyþ a cors of werre,
Als so harde as þou mixt flynge on ⁝ a-rede me on þe schelde; 474
y schal þe harmles lete gon ⁝ & falle y wil on þe felde;

I will yield thee my steed. Lead him to Charles,

Tak þou þanne my gode stede ⁝ & þy beste þer-wyþ þou do,
& to Charlis þou him lede ⁝ & eke my scheld al-so.
Say him þanne as þy god þe saue ⁝ þat þov hem y-wonne heer, 478

and tell him to send Oliver, or Roland, or Gwylmer the Scot, or Terry, or Guy, or Berard, or Ogier, or all together; I shall not

& ȝif he þenkeþ more to craue ⁝ [1]to me send he[1] Olyuer,
Ouþer Roland, þat is so strong in fiȝt ⁝ oþer þe scot Gwylmer,
Terry, ouþer Gy þe hardy kniȝt ⁝ Berard, ouþer Ogier.
& if it [be] so þat on al-one ⁝ ne dar noȝt þat batail take, 482
þeyȝ þay come euerechone ⁝ nel ich hem noȝt for-sake."
¶ "þov spekest folie," saide Olyuer ⁝ "& makest muche delaye,

[1]—[1] [þanne] send he.

Original draft.

Bote it wer duke or erld ful wiȝt, ouþer kyng y-crouned fre. 466
þoȝ y sle þe in such a fiȝt, what pris wer þat for me?
Men wolde sayn y were to blame wyþ such on for to fiȝte,
Bote þou haddest a better name þan Garyn a pore knyȝte.
¶ Ac o þynge y schal for þe do, y dude hit neuere to wiȝte: 470
If þou wolt assenty to, in armes i wil me diȝte,
& take y wol my stede & bere to þe a sperre,
Wiþ an oþer rid þou to me with a gret cors of werre
As harde as þou miȝt flyng[1] [on a-]rede me on my scheld. 474
y shal þe harmles lete gon, & falle y wil on feld,
& take þou þanne my gode stede þy best þer with to do;
& To C[harlis] þou him lede & eke my scheld al-so;
Say him as þy god þe saue how þou hit getest her, 478
Bot ȝyf he þenkeþ more to craue sende hider Oliuer,
Ouþer Roland þat ys so strong in fiȝt, oþer þe scot Gwilmer,
Terry, ouþer Gy þe hardi kniȝt, berard, ouþer Ogier.
& if hit ys so þat on al-one wil noȝt þe batail take, 482
þeyȝ þay come euerechone nel ich noȝt hem for-sake."
"þou spekest as fol," qua[þ] O[liuer], "& makest moche delaye;

Wiþ þyn au*au*nt þou makest heer ⁝ þou ne miȝt noȝt me amaye. run away.'
þy stede ys myn, y haue y-þoȝt ⁝ wather þou wile or no, 486 'Thou speakest like a fool,' says Oliver;
þer-of schalt þou me lette noȝt ⁝ þat hit ne schal be so.
þyn au*au*nt worþ dere aboȝt ⁝ þyn heued þou schalt for-go. 'thy boasting will cost thee thy life.'
To do þ*at* batail þou hast i-soȝt ⁝ al redy am y þarto.
¶ Arys vp þer-for hastely ⁝ & aray þe wel to fiȝte, 490 [leaf 7]
Ouþer y swere be þat Mary ⁝ þ*at* bar þ*at* child of miȝte,
no lenger wil y spary þe ⁝ for al þy grete bostyngge:
bote liggyng her y wol þe sle ⁝ w*ith*-oute more drecchynge." 'In spite of it all I will slay thee.'
¶ Fi[rumbras] gan to waxe wroþ ⁝ & vp bi-gan to sitte: 494 Ferumbras begins to be angry, and sat up.
Were O[lyuer] lef, oþ*er* wer hi*m* loþ ⁝ þannes nolde he flitte:
Egrelich he be-huld aboute ⁝ & lokede on þe kniȝte,
& saw þe red blod russchen out ⁝ þorw is arm*ur*e briȝte: He sees the blood on Oliver,
endelonges is side þ*at* blod hi*m* ran ⁝ & ful dou*n* to þe grou*n*de 498
þe sarsyn knew it wel by þan ⁝ he hadde a greuo*us* wou*n*de.
& þan he askede of Olyuere ⁝ þat houede þer hi*m* tabide; and asks if he is wounded.
If þat he any[1] wonde bere ⁝ in ys body þat tyde.
"Me þynkþ þou hast a wonde þere" ⁝ said he, "in þy syde." 502
"þ*er*-of," quaþ . O[lyuer], "ne haue þou no fere," ⁝ & t*ur*nd hi*m* þ*at* sor to hyde. 'Trouble thyself not,' says Oliver:

[1] he [a].

W*ith* þyn au*au*nt þou makest her þou schalt noȝt me amaye, *Original draft.*
þy stede ys myn y haue iþoȝt, waþ*er* þe wil or no, 486
þow ne schalt me lette noȝt þ*at* hit ne schal be so.
þyn au*au*nt worþ ful der*e* a boȝt þyn hed þou schalt for-go.
To do þ*at* batail þ*at* þou hast soȝt me self am redi þer-to.
Go now . . . . . & raye anon to fiȝt 490
Ouþer . . . . by my god of [miȝt]
. . . . . þy gret bostyng*e*
. . . schal . . þe sle as þou ert liggyng*e*."
Feru*m*bras made hi*m* þane wroþ & vp he gan to sitte, 494
Were O[liuer] he*m* lef or loþ þa*n*nes nolde he flitte;
Egerlich he be-huld aboute & lokede on Olyuer,
& saw þ*at* red blod rusched oute out of his body þer;
þorw-out his arm*ur*e þe blod out ran riȝt dou*n* to þ*e* gronde, 498
þe Sarzyn knew it wel by þan he hauede a grisly wonde:
He askede þanne of Olyuer, þ*at* houede þ*er* hi*m* to byde:
"Me þenkþ þou ert y-hert ful ser*e* & berest a wo*n*de wyde
By þ*at* blod þ*at* renneþ dou*n* by þyn oþer side." 502
O[lyuer] saide, "[þat] is noȝt so," & t*ur*nde hi*m* hit to hide;

'the blood is that of my steed.'

"þat blod," quaþ he, "þov seȝe þo ⁝ it comeþ out of my stede,
For he scholde ȝerne go ⁝ his side y made blede:
Of þe hors it comeþ þat y sit on ⁝ þat blod[1] þat þou y-seȝe" 506

'Thou canst not so deceive me,' says the Saracen.

"þat ys lees," saide he anon ⁝ "þou blerest noȝt so myn eȝe,
Ac if i can þat riȝt arede ⁝ þat blod him compþ of þe,
Fram vaste be-side þy nauel-stede ⁝ as it semeþ me.

'But at my saddle hangs a vessel full of the balm with which thy God was anointed.

Ac by myddel þer hongeþ her ⁝ a costrel as þou miȝt se, 510
hwych ys ful of þat bame cler ⁝ þat precious ys & fre,
þat ȝoure god was wiþ anoynt ⁝ wan he was ded & graued,
y wan hym wyþ my swerdes poynt ⁝ many man haþ he saued.
For hwych man þat haueþ any wounde ⁝ & beo þer-wiþ enoynt, 514

It will heal any wound.

it wil don him be hol & sounde ⁝ & maky him in god poynt:
& if he þer of drynke may ⁝ beo þe deþ him noȝt so neere,
Sone he schel be on god aray ⁝ & beo al hol & feere.

Drink a little,

Go tak him now þer he hongeþ ⁝ & dr[i]nk of him a stounde, 518
þan schaltou noȝt a-bide longe ⁝ til þou be hol & sounde;

then thou wilt fight all the better.' 'No,' says Oliver, 'I need it not.'

& wan þou felest þy body feer ⁝ þe better þan miȝt þou fiȝte."
þan him answerede Olyuer ⁝ "y wil noȝt by þis liȝte;
& or we departye henne ⁝ al hool þou schalt me vynde." 522

[1] þat [rede] blod.

Original draft.

"þat blod þat þou y-seȝe þo hit comeþ out of my stede,
For he schold faste hider go his sides y makede blede:
Hit is þe hors þat y sit on þat blod him renneþ fro." 506
"þou lyest," he saide, "by Makeron! hit miȝte neuer be so,
Ac If y can þe riȝt arede þat blod him renneþ of þe.
Fro Faste by-sydes þy nauel stede, so ymote y þe!
But ȝunder at my sadel boȝe hongeþ o botel, 510
Ful of baume oun y loȝe ys he euery del,
þat ȝour god was anoynt þer-with wan he byried was:
Ich hem wan with swerdes poynt at rome ȝour oȝene plas.
þe man þat haueþ wonde & is þer-with anoynt 514
He schel be hol & sonde & waxe on god poynt.
Ac If he þer-of drynke, beo þe deþ noȝt so neer,
Anon riȝt he may swynke & beo hol & fer.
Take him þer he honge and drynke þer-of a stonde, 518
þou schalt [noȝt] abide longe or þou be hol & sounde,
& wanne þ[y] hert [ys] hol & fer þe surlokere þou miȝt fiȝte."
þan him ansuerde Olyuer, "y wil non bi þis liȝte;
Or we departe a-twynne al hol þou schal[t] me fynde." 522

þe Sarasyn sayd til hi*m* þa*n*ne ſ "þyn he3 herte wil þee schynde."
¶ Fyru*m*bras of Alysandre ſ to Olyuer spak & low3 : 524 Then Ferumbras asks Oliver to describe Roland,
"Of what schap ys duk Rolandre ſ tel me y pray þe now3,
& ek of Olyuer þat is so wi3t[1] ſ of what schap ys hee y praye,
As þou art a iantail kny3t[2] ſ þat soþe þat þou me saye."
¶ Olyuer hi*m* answerede þan ſ "be-hold me þ*a*t am heer! 528 and Oliver answers,
for In al þyng þ*a*t þ*o*u auyse can ſ such schap ys Olyuer. [leaf 7, back] 'Look at me; such is Oliver.
Roland ys no3t so long as hee ſ ac more is he of my3te, Roland is not so tall, but stronger and mightier.'
& do3tyere man on to see ſ & sternere man in fi3te :
ne fa3t he neue*re* 3et in felde ſ wyþ kyng ne Ameraun*t*, 532
þat he ne aslo3 ouþer made*m* 3elde ſ ys body to hi*m* creaunt."
¶ Fyru*m*bras ansuerde hi*m* agayn ſ prouteliche & sayde :
"þo3 þay wern her boþ^e twayn ſ þay scholde me no3t dure abraide, 'Though they,' says
& þo3 suche foure were here ſ be Mahou*n* & te*r*nagaunt, 536 Ferumbras, 'or four such
Ich he*m* wolde wel conquere ſ wiþ my swerd trenchaunt." were here I should not fear them.'
¶ "Sarsyn," saide Erld Olyuere ſ "al day þou makest bost; 'Thou art ever
Wer al þyng soþ þ*a*t þou saist here ſ þou were a grymly gost. boasting,' says Oliver;
Arys vp anon & arme þe ſ y ne wil no lenger duelle, 540 'arise, or else
Oþer be þ^e lord þ*a*t schep lef and tree ſ heuene & eke helle,
Bote þou arys vp on þy fet ſ & schippe þe a-no*n* to fi3te,
A tweyne i wol forcleue þyn hed ſ w*ith* my swerd her ri3te." I will cleave thy head.'

[1] And ek of [þe Erld] Olyuer.
[2] As þou art iantail kny3t [& feer].

þe Sara3yne saide þanne, "þy prude wol þe schynde." *Original draft.*
¶ Feru*m*bras of Alisandre to O[liuer] spak & low, 524
"Of what shap ys Roland, tel me y praie þe now,
& of þe Erld Olyuer, of what facio*u*n is he :
As þou ert iantail kni3t*es* peer ano*n* ri3t tel þou me."
Oliuer hi*m* ansuered þa*n*, "be-hold me fer & ner, 528
In alle þyng þ*a*t þou can, ri3t such ys Oliu*er*.
Ro[land] is no3t so long as h[ee] [Ac] more he is of mi3t,
& do3tyere man y w[iste to see] & sternere man in fi3t.
Ne fau3t he neue*re* in fylde w*ith* kyng*e* ne Amerant, 532
þ*a*t he [ne] made hi*m* 3elde [ys] body to him creaunt;
& if he hi*m* 3elde nolde, & putte hi*m* to ys grace,
Sle hi*m* [þanne] he wolde [for] he went out of place."
F[yrumbras] ansuerde h[im agayn, prout]fulich & saide, 534
"þo3 þei were her boþe tweyn, þey scholde me no3t dure abraide,
& þo3 suche iiij wer her, by Mahon & ternagant,

Ferumbras is wroth, and starts up.

¶ Wiþ þat þe Sarsyn þat was þor ⁝ wax wroþ on his herte 544
& bente hym brymly as a bor ⁝ & vp hym gan to sterte;
& wan he stod appon þe ground ⁝ huge[1] was he of lengþe,

He is 15 feet high, wonderfully strong

Fifteuene fet hol & sound ⁝ & wonderliche muche of strengþe. 547
Had he ben in cryst be-leued ⁝ & y-vollid on þe haly fant,
A bettre knyȝt þan he was preued ⁝ þo was þer non lyuand:

and broad-shouldered.

Fyrumbras of Alysaundre ⁝ was a man of gret stature, 550
& ful brod in þe scholdres was ⁝ & long man in forchure.
Oppon is armure was he clad ⁝ wyþ a cote-armure clene,

He is clad in cloth-of-gold.

Of cloþ of gold it was mad ⁝ & enbrouded with perlis schene.
He be-holdeþ oppon Olyuer ⁝ egrelich ⁝ as lyoun, 554
And by-gan to gon him ner ⁝ & siggeþ þys resoun;

He says, 'I marvel at thy daring and pity thee.

"Garyn, me meruaylleþ myche of þe ⁝ þat art so meyne a knyȝt, 557
How þou darst entremetrie of me ⁝ a-ȝen me to take fiȝt.
A ful gret pite me þenkþ it were ⁝ for þou art so bold 558
To sle þe in fiȝte here ⁝ oþer to take þe, if y wold.

I will fight with none except he be noble and mighty.'

Hit nys noȝt on my porpos her ⁝ with no man to[2] fiȝte
Bote he ben a kyngis peer ⁝ & strong man eke of miȝte.
Wend a-wey þou vauasour ⁝ & say so Charlis kyng, 562

[1] [ful] huge. [2] [for] to.

Original draft.

Ich hem wolde alle sone wiþ my swerd trenchant
. . . . . makest bost
[*Bottom of sheet.* ? 8 *lines* (*long*) *wanting.*]
. . . hol & sond . . . he . . . .
Had he beo in crist be-leued, & fulled in holi fanston,
A betere knyȝt þan he was preuid liuande nas þer non.
Fyrumbras of Alisandre was a man of gret stature, 550
Wel brode were his sholdres & long was his forchure
Vppon his armes he was clad wyþ a mantel . . .
Of a cloþ of gold [it was] ymad . . . . . ene
He beholdeþ O[liuer] egrelich as lyoun, 554
& by-gan to gon him ner, & siggeþ þis resoun,
"Garyn, me meruailleþ muche of þe þat ert so comune a knyȝt,
þat þou þerst þe sette to me a-ȝen me for to fiȝte;
Gret pite me þenkþ it were for þou ert so [meyne a kniȝte] 558
To sle þe her wyþ my gere, ouþer take þe to . . . .
Hit is noȝt to fiȝte myn entente . . . . . .
Bote he beo of londe & rente, gret & eke of miȝt.
Wend a-wey, þou vauasour, & tel so [Charlis kyng] 562

'þys day he falleþ in deshonour ⁝ for is fol sendyng.'"
¶ "What! ys," quaþ O[lyuer] "þy prechyng ⁝ icome to such an ende?
I ne schal neu*er*e, by heuene kyng ⁝ a fot ferther wende
Or y haue of þe þe heȝere hand ⁝ ouþ*er* sleyȝ þ*e*e on þ*is* felde, 566
Outher þov schalt be recreant ⁝ & maugre þy teþ þe ȝelde.
Tak þyn armys if þ*o*u wilt ⁝ no lenger nel y þe spare;
On yuel deþ mot y be spild ⁝ if ich þe byde mare."
A lefte ys sper & drow ys swerd ⁝ & smyteþ til hy*m*-ward sare, 570
& þoȝte cleue hi*m* vn-to þe berd ⁝ & til his hed hit bare.
þe Sarsyn ano*n* bar of þe stroke ⁝ w*ith* ys scheld þ*at* a held an honde
& a[1] quarter þ*er*-of a smot ⁝ þ*at* it fel dou*n* on þe sonde.
¶ "Arme þe, Sarsyn," saide Olyuer þan ⁝ "hit wil be for þy*n* prow."
"þ*o*u saist soþ," quaþ he, "by ternaga*n* ⁝ þ*o*u haddest neyȝ slawe me now.
Hadd y þat stronge strok y-take ⁝ þou haddest to me[2] ymynt, 576
For eu*er*e my bred had be bake ⁝ myn lyf dawes had be tynt;
Ac for þ*o*u mentest me þilke stroke ⁝ or ich ful armed were,
þov schalt abigge it al so hot ⁝ or þat y take my gere."
¶ þe Sarsyn þanne a drow ys brond ⁝ þat was so gret of strengþe, 580

Oliver answers, 'I will not move till I have conquered thee.'

[leaf 8]

He draws his sword and strikes at Ferumbras, who wards off the blow with his shield, which is broken.

'Had that stroke hit me,' says Ferumbras, 'my bread had been baked for ever.'

He drew his sword,

[1] [noþeles] a. [2] MS. mo.

To day he falleþ in de[s]hono*ur* for his fol sendyng."
"Wat! is," quaþ O[lyuer], "þy p*re*chyng icome to such an ende?
I ne schal neu*er*e be heuene kyng, [a fot ferther] wende,
Or ich haue þe ouer hand y-slawe þe in þ*is* felde, 566
Ouþ*er* þ*o*u schalt to me creant[1] maugr*e* þy teþ þ^e ȝelde.
Tak*e* þyn armis ȝif þ*o*u wilt no leng*er* y nel þe spare,
In yuel deþ worþ y spilt if y þe bide mare."
He lefte ys sper & drow is swerd, & smot til hi*m*ward sare, 570
& haued y-þoȝt to cleue ys hed in-to þe bar[de þa]re.
þe Sarsyn þan bar of þe stroke wyþ his scheld [þat a] bar an honde,
Nòþeles a q*uart*er þ*er*-offe he smot ful dou*n* [oppon þe so]nde.
"Arme þe, Sarsyn!" saide O[lyuer], "hit wil be for þi prow."
"þ*o*u sayst soþ, by Iubit*er*, þ*o*u haddest neyȝ . . . e now.
Hadde y þ*at* ilke st*r*oke y-take þ*o*u haddest [to me y-ment] 576
For eu*er*e my bred hadde ben bake, my lif dawes hadde ben spent.
Ac for þ*o*u mentest me þylke stroke or ich all armed were,
þ*o*u schalt a bie hit al so hot or þ*at* y take my gere,"
þe Saraȝyn þan a drow his brand þat was so gret of strengþe, 580

Original draft.

[1] MS. to [re]creant.

7 feet long,

& wan it was nakede on his hond ꞉ vij. fet it had of lengþe,
Hi*m* self was eke strong & feer ꞉ & is herte gan vp sprynge,

and showers blows on Oliver, who defends himself well.

So þikke he smot to Olyuer ꞉ as he miȝte flynge.
þe erld was war, & kepte hi*m* wel ꞉ & laide til hi*m* wi*th* miȝte, 584
Ac þe Saraȝyn was ful fel ꞉ & kepte is heued ariȝte.
His heued he kepeþ wi*th* is schelde ꞉ þ*a*t ou*n*helid was & bare;
Bytere he þoȝte is whyle ȝelde ꞉ þ*a*t hadde a-greued hi*m* þare.

Ferumbras then smites Oliver on the helmet, but the sword glances off,

To Olyuer þa*n*ne smot he a stroke ꞉ riȝt on þe helm an heȝ; 588
þoȝ þ*a*t swerd wer god it noȝt ne bot ꞉ bot dou*n* by is chyn it seȝ,
& before ys scheld a-dou*n* it glod ꞉ & oppon is sadel it ran,

and kills his horse.

þorw sadel & hors þ*a*t swerd hi*m* wod ꞉ þan ful dou*n* hors & man.
þe Saraȝyn drow hi*m* þa*n*ne a-part ꞉ & to O[lyuer] saide sa*n*ȝfaille 592
"þou ne schalt me fynde no cowart ꞉ a liggeng man to saille."
A sterte to his helm, & pult hi*m* aan ꞉ & to O[lyuer] þa*n*ne a sede,
"If þou wi*th* me wilt fiȝte aȝan ꞉ by Mahou*n* þou gost to dede."

Oliver starts up unwounded, defies Ferumbras, and abuses him.

¶ Olyuere stert vp hol & sound ꞉ & spekeþ til hi*m* wyþ grame, 596
"Y diffye þe nov, þou heþene hound ꞉ crist ȝyue þe muche schame!
Why hast þou my stede a-slawe ꞉ wat hadde þat hors mysdo?
þy stede for hym now wil y craue ꞉ & haue hi*m* er þou go."

Original draft.

Wan hit was naked on his haund vij fet hit had of le*n*gþe;
& hi*m*-self was st*r*ong & fer, his herte gan vp sprynge,
So þylke he smot to Olyuer as þ*a*t he miȝt flynge.
þe duk was war & kepte hi*m* wel & laide to hi*m* wi*th* miȝt, 584
Bot þe Sarasyn was ful fel & kepede his heuede ariȝt.
He kepeþ his heued al wi*th* his scheld ou*n*keue*er*ed it was & bare;
Bytere he þoȝte his wile ȝeld þ*a*t hadde ag*r*eued hi*m* þare.
To Oliu*er* þan ment he a stroke, on his helm he dud bi-gy*n*ne; 588
þoȝ þ*a*t swerd wer god hit noȝt ne bot, bote ran dou*n* be his chyne.
A-fore his scheld a-dou*n* hit glod, vppon his sadel hit gan re*n*ne,
þorw hors & sadel þ*a*t swerd forþ wod, & O[lyuer] fel dou*n* þenne.
þe Saraȝyn drow hi*m* þa*n*ne apart & to O[lyuer] said, "sanȝ faille,
Ne schalt þou fynde me no coward, A liggynge man to saile." 593
A sterte to ys helm & putte hi*m* an, & saide, "ic*h* rede þou fle,
for If þou[1] fiȝtest wi*th* me aȝan, by Mahou*n*, y wil þe sle!"
O[lyuer] sterteþ vp hol & so*n*d [& spekeþ] to hi*m* wi*th* [grame]
"y dyffie þe heþene hond 597

(2 *lines illegible*)

[1] MS. þou þou.

A leyde to þe Sarsyn strokes smerte ⁊ riȝt als til his dedly fo; 600
& grete dyntes þanne þay gerte ⁊ hir eyþer til oþer þo.

¶ NOW by-gynt a strong batayl ⁊ be-twene þis knyȝtes twayne; — Now begins a deadly duel,
Ayþer gan oþer harde assayl ⁊ boþe wyþ myȝt & mayne
þey hewe to-gadre wyþ swerdes dent ⁊ faste with boþen hondes, 604
Of helmes & sheldes þat fyr out went ⁊ so sparkes doþ of brondes; — fire flies out of their helmets and shields.
So sterne strokes þay arauȝte ⁊ eyther til oþer with strenghþe
þat al þe erthe þer-of quaȝte ⁊ a myle & more on lenghþe. — So mighty are their blows that
þey weren so eger boþe of mod ⁊ & eke so fers to fiȝte, 608 — [leaf 8, back] the earth shakes for a mile round or more.
þat eyþer of hem þan þoȝte god ⁊ to sle oþer if he miȝte. — The fight is too hot to last.
Hit ne miȝt noȝt longe endure ⁊ þe batail betwene hem two,
for neyþer ne knew of oþer mesure ⁊ bot euere þay foȝte so.
¶ Olyuer hym by-þoȝte þan ⁊ his los was lost in londe 612 — Oliver exerts himself,
Bot yf he sleȝe þat heþene man ⁊ & þer-for he gan him fonde,
& smot him on þe helm an heȝ ⁊ & a gobet away a bar; — smites Ferumbras on the helmet,
Ys chyke þat swerd þo cam so neȝ ⁊ þat sum of is berd yt schar; — and cuts off some of his beard.
þe strok a doun him glente anon ⁊ ac he wiþ is scheld him hente, 616
& elles had he his schuldre bon ⁊ for-coruyn wyþ þat dente.
Fyrumbras saide til hym þan ⁊ "maugre mote þou haue! — 'A curse on thee,'

. . . . . on him strokes smerte — *Original draft.*
. . . wel," quaþ he, "wilt þou so haue at þe wyþ herte."
¶ Now by-gynneþ strong batail by-twyne þe knytes tweyne,
Eyþer oþer gan to assayl wyþ miȝte & with mayne. 603
þey hywe to-gydre with swerdes dynt, with miȝt of boþe hir honde,
of helm & scheld þat fur out went So sparke doþ of þe bronde.
So Sturne strokes þay a-raȝte eyþer til oþer þe whyle
þat al þe erþe aboute quaȝte men miȝt hure a myle.
þey wer so fers on hure mod, & eger on hure fiȝte, 608
þat eyþer of hem þoȝte god to slen oþer if he miȝt.
Hit miȝt noȝt lange dure such fiȝt by-twene hem two,
for Neyþer ne couþe no mesure bote euere foȝte so.
¶ O[liuer] by-þoȝte him þo is los wer lost in londe 612
Bote he miȝte þat Sarsyn slo anon a gan him fonde,
He smot him on þe helm an heȝ, a gobet away he bar;
His cheche þat swerd cam ful neyȝ, sum of is berd he schar.
þe stroke adoun him glent anon, & he with is scheld him hente, 616
& elles had he[1] is scholder bon for coruyn at þat dente.
Fyrumbras saide to O[liuer] þan, "maugre mote þou haue;

[1] MS. he had he.

exclaims Ferumbras; 'never was I so shaved.'

Suþþen y was furst i-bore to man ꝛ my berd nas noȝt so schaue."
¶ þe Sarsyn by-gan to waxe wroþ ꝛ egre, & eke fere, 620
& hef vp ys sword, & til hi*m* a goþ ꝛ & smot to Olyuere;

Then he cuts the crest off Oliver's helmet.

Al anoneward þe helm an heȝ ꝛ ys crest a bar adoun,
& þe cercle of gold þat sat þ*er*-bey ꝛ þe perles wer worþ a tou*n*,
& of ys auantaile wyþ þat stroke ꝛ a carf wel many a maylle. 624
þan olyuer profrede til hi*m* a st[r]oke ꝛ & gan hi*m* for to saylle,
& þan by-gan þe stronge fiȝt ꝛ betwene þ*es* kniȝt*es* tweye;

They fight like two lions.

As twey lyons þay furde riȝt ꝛ þat wolde slen his preye.
þe Sarasyn sayde to þe knyȝt ꝛ "by Mahou*n* þ*ou* schalt deye!' 628
þan said O[lyuer] "by god almyȝt ꝛ y hope þ*ou* schalt leye!"
¶ Aȝeyn þey wente to-gydre thare ꝛ & hur arm*ur*e hewe a-sonder;

Their strokes resound like thunder.

Hure strokes fulle so styþ & sare ꝛ þay schulde so doþ þe ponder.
Helmes & hauberkes þay kutte a two ꝛ wiþ hure strokes rounde, 632
& eyþer enpaynede hi*m* other to slo ꝛ ac ȝut nad þay no wounde.

Ferumbras is vexed and wonders who Oliver can be.

¶ Fyru*m*bras was aggreued sare ꝛ þat O[lyuer] hym stod so longe,
& þan hi*m* wondrede wat a ware ꝛ for he was so stronge.
He drew hi*m* þa*n*ne apart & sayde ꝛ "y pray þe, iantaile kniȝt, 636
As þov louest þat ilke mayde ꝛ þat baar þy god almyȝt,—
Wel y wot þ*ou* art ful gret of fame ꝛ a bettere kniȝt wot y non,—

Original draft.

Syþ y was i-bore to man my berd was noȝt so y-schaue."
¶ þe Saraȝyn by-gan to waxe wroþ, egre & eke fere, 620
& hef vp ys sword & to hi*m* agoþ, & smot to Olyuere,
Riȝt oppon is helm an heyȝ þe crest he bereþ [adou*n*],
& þe cercle of gold þ*a*t sat þ*er*-by, þe p*er*les were worþ [a tou*n*];
of his auentaille w*ith* þ*a*t stroke he carf wel [many] a maile. 624
þan O[liuer] p*ro*frede hi*m* a st[r]oke & gan hi*m* for to assaile,
& þo by-gan ynewe fiȝt be-twene þis knyȝt*es* tweye;
As lyons þey furde boþe riȝt þat folhode on ys preye.
þe Saraȝyn saide to þe knyȝt, "by Mahou*n*, þ*ou* schalt dye!" 628
þan saide O[liuer], "by god Almyȝt, y hope þ*ou* schalt [lye].'
þ*an* þay foȝte to-gydre mare, hur armure þay k[utte ason]der;
Hur*e* strokes wer so dedly sare þay schulde so doþ þe ponder.
Helm & haberke þay kutte a two w*ith* hure strokes rou*n*de, 632
& eyþ*er* enpeyned hi*m* oþ*er* to slo. Ac ȝut nad [þay no wounde].
F*erumbras* was an angred sore þ*a*t O[liuer] hym stod [so longe]:
Hi*m* wondr*e*de myche what he were for he was [so stronge].
Adrow hi*m* apart þa*n*ne a*n*d saide, "y p*ra*ye þe [iantail] kniȝt, 636
As þow louest þ*a*t ilke maide þar bar þy god of miȝt,
Tel me þy riȝte name for bettr*e* knyȝt w[as] non.

Tel me þer-for þy riȝte name ⁝ Wat calleþ me þe at hom.
Wyþ many a man y haue y-fauȝt ⁝ fond y neu*er*e þy peer; 640
þe grete strokes þov hauest me rauȝt ⁝ sitteþ my bones neer.
þ*o*u toldest me to day or þys ⁝ þy riȝte name was Garyn;
Hit is noȝt so, y wot to wys ⁝ by Mahou*n* & Appolyn;
If þ*a*t Garyn were þy name ⁝ y knewe it wel apliȝt 644
In tal þe world scholde sprynge fame ⁝ of such a noble kniȝt.
Tel me now þer-for þ*a*t soþe ⁝ as þ*o*u art gent & free,
& suþþe schul we to-gadre boþe ⁝ falle to fiȝt a-ȝe."
¶ þe iantail knyȝt w*ith*-drow hi*m* þan ⁝ & spak w*ith*-oute duelle, 648
"Herkne now, þou heþene man ⁝ & þ*a*t soþe i wol þe telle.
Olyuer ys my name riȝt ⁝ a doþþeper y am of fraunce,
& am an erld & a knyȝt ⁝ as haue ich gode chaunce.
Y am Charlis Emys sone ⁝ y-come of men of gode, 652
& in my moder half i am y-come ⁝ al-so of kynges blode.
nov haue y to þe her itold ⁝ my name w*ith*-oute lye,
If þov art to fiȝte bold ⁝ com on · y þe diffye!"
¶ þan ansuerede fyru*m*bras ⁝ & saide to Olyuer, 656
"Y am now gladdere þan y was ⁝ for now y haue my per."
þan aȝen þai toke þe fiȝt ⁝ w*ith* swerdes sherpe & kene,
Eyþer til other wiþ mayn & miȝt ⁝ þe strokes were wel sene;
Harde þay foȝte to-gadre þo ⁝ þus miȝty men of mayne, 660
þ*er* was no reste betwene he*m* to ⁝ bot laide on ȝerne beyne.

He asks him his name, and praises him.

[leaf 9] 'Tell me the truth, and then we will fight again.'

Oliver tells him that he is one of the peers of France, and of royal descent,

and challenges him to renew the fight.

They begin again

and fight even more fiercely than before.

---

for þ*o*u ert a knyȝt gret of fame wan þ*o*u ert at hom.
Wyþ many a man y haue i-fauȝt fond y nere [such] an oþer, 640
Eu*er*y strok þ*a*t þ*o*u me rauȝt falleþ dou*n* as a foþer.
þ*o*u toldest to me to day or þys þy name was Garyn:
Hit is noȝt soþ, so ȝyue me blys, Mahou*n* & Apolyn!
If þ*a*t G*aryn* were þy name y knowe it wel ariȝt 644
In tal þe world schold springe a fame of such a noble kniȝt.
Tel þ*o*u me, kniȝt, al þe soþe as þ*o*w art gent & free,
& suþþe schalle we to-gadre boþe falle to . fiȝte aȝe."
þe iantayl knyȝt w*ith*-drow 648
[7 *long lines cut off.*]
"Ich am gladder þan y was now 657
þan aȝen þay toke þe fiȝt wyþ . . . .
Eyþ*er* til oþer wiþ al hur*e* miȝt . . . .
Wel hard was þat batail þe 660
þer nas no reste be twene . . . .

Original draft.

Wan eyþer knew what oþer was ⁝ þe hardere þay gu*n*ne to fiȝte,
Each tries his best. & to slen eyþer oþer in þat plas ⁝ eyther dude ys miȝte.
¶ Firu*m*bras þe heþene kyng ⁝ was a man of gret fertee, 664
& anpeynedem þanne þorȝ al þyng ⁝ erld O[lyuer] þer to slee:
Ferumbras had never been beaten. Siþþe þe tyme þat he was bore ⁝ on batail ne com he non,
In-to þe day þat he com þore ⁝ þ*a*t he ne ou*er*com his fon;
ne a-ȝen no man ne tok querel ⁝ by-for þ*a*t in no lond 668
þat he ne hadde þe betere deel ⁝ & eke þe heȝere hond.
ac now haþ he so longe y-soȝt ⁝ ys peer he haþ i-founde,
& þat til hym worþ hard iboȝt ⁝ wiþ-inne a litel stonde. 671
The fight continues. þey foȝten to-gadres þanne ȝerne ⁝ þys wytherwyns wilde & wroþe,
& smyte strokes smerte & sterne ⁝ in hab*er*kes & helmes boþe.
Wiþ þe strokes þ*a*t þis frekes slente ⁝ flyngande to-gad*er* in fiȝte,
Helmets, hauberks and shields are shattered. Hur helmes & haberions þay to-rente ⁝ þat arst wer fair & briȝte,
& hure scheldes stronge & grete ⁝ þey were al to-hewe; 676
Vnder hure boþen fete ⁝ þan miȝte me þe peces schewe.
¶ Olyuer laid on þikke y-now ⁝ so dude Fyrumbras,
Bot w*ith* enterlas þ*a*t a þrow ⁝ to þe Sarasyn bi-tid a cas:
Oliver knocks Ferumbras' sword out of his hand, Olyuer smot is swerd away ⁝ fer out f*ra*m ys honde: 680
þan was þe Sarsyn in gret affray ⁝ & niste wat · was to donde.

Original draft.

Wan eyþ*er* yknew wat oþ*er* was . . . .
& To slen ys felaw in þ*a*t plas 663
Of Alysandr*e* s*er* F[erumbras] was . ful . . . .
In no batail neu*er*e he nas þ*a*t . . . .
Ne aȝe no wiȝt ne tok q*u*erel 668
þ*a*t he nadde þ*a*t bet*er*e del & e . . . .
Ac now he haueþ so longe ys[oȝt] . . . .
& þat worþ ful hard iboȝt wiþ . . . .
þay foȝten to-gaddre ȝerne þy 672
& smyten strokes harde sterne in he . . . .
Wiþ st*r*okes þ*a*t þay to-gadre slent w . . . .
Hur*e* haub*er*ions weren alto rent þ*a*t erst . . . .
& hur*e* scheldes strong & gr[et] 676
þe peces ley dou*n* at hir*e* fet . . . .
Olyuer laid on þikke y now . . . .
Bot w*ith* entrelas þat he þrow . . . .
Olyuer smot his swerd aw 680
þan was þe Sarasyn in gret a . . . .

Ac O[lyuer] was a corteys kniȝt ⁝ & a-syde by-gan to stonde.
"Tak vp," said he, "þy swerd ariȝt ⁝ & to kep it bet*er* þ*o*u fonde."
¶ Fyru[mbras] was glad, & tok*e* vp þ*a*t brond ⁝ quiklich at a brayde, 684
& wan it was on is hond ⁝ to O[lyuer] he spak & sayde,
"þ*o*u hast y-lyued þy lif to longe ⁝ to do me such a spyte,
y wil wiþ þ*a*t selue bronde ⁝ þy whyle wel a-quyte:
þyn outrage schal be dure a-boȝt ⁝ by Mahou*n*, my god al-one; 688
þy god ne may þe helpe noȝt ⁝ þyn heued þ*o*u schalt for-gone.
A-fore þis day ne toke y nere ⁝ of no man such a schame."
"ne make it noȝt so," quaþ Olyuere ⁝ "for oþer weys þ*e*e schal g*ra*me.
Or we departe þis ilke day ⁝ such tyme schalt þ*o*u sene 692
þ*a*t þow schalt sayn a weleway ⁝ þ*a*t y cam in þis grene!
ne schalt*o*u by þ*a*t tyme noþyng ȝilpe ⁝ of þy doynge here;
þy Mahou*n* ne schal þe noþyng helpe ⁝ þ*a*t þov ne a-biest dere."
¶ & þan þey waxe wonder wroþe ⁝ þys knyȝtes styþ on stoure, 696
& eyþer of þis frekes boþe ⁝ til oþer ȝaf many a schoure.
þey fouȝte to-gadre þar so longe ⁝ & ȝyue strokes sore,
þ*a*t þe fom of hure mouþ out spronge ⁝ so doþ out of þe bore.
þe Sarsyn þ*a*t was noþyng feynt ⁝ smot Olyuer in þe side, 700
þorȝ is scheld wyþ gold ypeynt ⁝ þe st*er*ne strok gan glyde;

but chivalrously tells him to take it again.
[leaf 9, back] Ferumbras picks it up, and says,
'Never before have I suffered such a disgrace,
but before we part thou shalt repent it.'
They both wax wroth,
and foam like wild boars. Ferumbras smites Oliver in the side.

Olyu*er* was wel corteys knyȝt . . . .
"Tak vp," quaþ he, "þy swerd ar . . . . . .
F[erumbras] tok vp ys longe brond 684
& wan it was on hys honde to . . . . .
"þ*o*u hauest y lyued wel to longe . . . .
Y schal þer-for wyþ *þis* bronde þ . . . .
þyn out-raȝe schal beo dur 688
þy god ne may þe helpe noȝt . . . .
Y ne tok ȝute neu*er* er of no . . . .
"Ne make noȝt so," quaþ Ol*iuer*, "for oþer . . . .
Er we dep*ar*te þys ilke daȝe So tyme 692
þ*o*u schalt sayn a weleway þ*a*t y cam.
Ne schelt þ*o*u noþyng ȝilpe of . . . .
þy Mahou*n* ne may þe helpe þ*a*t þ*o*u ne abi . . .
þan þey waxe wonder wroþe 696
Eyþ*er* of hem þanne boþe to oþer . ȝ . . . . . .
þei foȝte to-gadre so longe w*ith* . . . . . .
þe fom of hur*e* mouþ out spronge . . . . . .
þe Saraȝyn þ*a*t was noþyng 700
þorw his scheld þ*a*t w*ith* goldo y-pe . . . . . .

Original draft.

of scheld & haberk a-wey a schar ⁝ al þat he arauȝte,
& al þat side he made baar ⁝ with þe selue drauȝte,
nad he stert þan a side ⁝ with-oute wordes mo, 704
Wiþ þat stronge stroke vnride ⁝ is lifdawes had be do.

The Saracen thinks he has wounded him,

¶ þe Sarsyn þan him vnderstod ⁝ he had ihert him sore,
& saide, "þou lesest þyn herte blod ⁝ þou turnest agayn no more!
Charlis wiþ þe hore berde ⁝ doþ þe lite Auaylle, 708
Suþþen þat y schal wyþ my swerde ⁝ sle þe in bataille."

but Oliver says no, and defies him.

Oliuer ansuerede & swor ys oþ ⁝ "bi god, þou spekst folie;
Arst y wol þe make wroþ ⁝ ȝut her y þe diffie.
for ȝut am y sond & heyl ⁝ & ne fele no maner sare; 712
y schal acquite þy trauayl ⁝ hennes or þov fare,

I will make thee yield to me, and to Charles I will hand thee over.

þow schalt ȝulde þe creaunt ⁝ to me in þys felde;
To Charlis suþþen y wil þe graunt ⁝ & to hym y wil þe ȝelde."

Then began a fearful fight;

¶ þan by-gan a ferly fiȝt ⁝ be-twene þis two baroun, 716
Eyþer enpeynede him with al ys miȝt ⁝ to dyngen oþer adoun.
þay smyte to gadre þo so feste ⁝ with grisly dentes grete,

the sweat runs down their faces;

þat þe soot fram hem gan breste ⁝ & made hure chekes wete.
¶ Kyng Firumbras þe stronge ⁝ O[lyuer] ascriede þo, 720
"þov endurest me to longe ⁝ þy lif þou schalt for-go,"

Original draft.

Scheld & haberke a-doun he sch . . . . . .
& al þat side he makede bar . . . . . .
Nadde he stert þan a-syde y 704
Wyþ þat strong stroke [vn]ride he h . . . . . .
þe Saresyn þanne him vnder . . . . . .
& sayde, "þou lesest þyn herte blod . . . . . .
Charles with hore berd 708
Suþ . . . . . .
O[liuer] ansuerden . . . . . .
"Arst þou schalt þe make wroþ . . . . . .
ȝut am y boþe quert & heil 712
y schal a-quyte þy trauail hen . . . . . .
þou schalt ȝelde þe recreant to . . . . . .
To C[harlis] suþþe i wille þe grant . . . . . .
þan bi-gan þer a ferly fiȝte 716
Eyþer enpeynedem with is my[ȝt] . . . . . .
þey laide on þan so feste wyþ . . . . . .
þat þe sot of hem gan out berste & mad . . . . . .
Sir Fyrumbras þe stronge Olyuer 720
"þou durest me alto longe . þ . . . . . .

þan hi*m* spak erld Olyuere ⁝ "þou ne afferest me noȝt so ! [leaf 10]
Other tydyng schalt þow here ⁝ er we departe a-two."
¶ Al so scharply þ*es* men of mayn ⁝ þa*n* smyte to-gadre aȝy 724 their strokes are like flashes of lightning;
So doþ þe fyr & wynd & rayn ⁝ an heȝ al on þe sky,
W*ith* wilde strokes þat þay streken ⁝ eyþer on oþer asonder,
Helmes & scheldes þar-wiþ to-breken ⁝ & schilde, so doþ þe ponder. their helmets and shields are shattered.
¶ Firu*m*bras wax wod on Olyuer ⁝ þat he hym wiþstonde miȝte ; 728 Ferumbras is angry,
A toke is sweord, & ȝude hi*m* neere ⁝ to slen hi*m* had he tiȝte ;
A smot hi*m* on þe helm an heȝ ⁝ þat was of god entaille, smites Oliver on the helmet,
A qua[r]ter þ*er*-wiþ a-way þar fleȝ ⁝ & for-carf ys cappe of maille ; and cuts through his cap-of-mail.
Wyþ þat stroke a schar away ⁝ a gret del of ys hare ; 732
Ac god halp O[lyuer] þat best may ⁝ þat he nas wonded sare.
¶ O[lyuer] egerlich[1] þo gan to lok ⁝ & smot til hi*m* wiþ ire, Oliver aims a blow at Ferumbras's neck.
& eymede ful euene to ȝyue þe strok ⁝ þe sarsyn on is swyre.
Wan Fi[rumbras] þe strok come seȝ ⁝ þ*at* Oliuer til hym mente,[2] 736
His scheld held he vp an heȝ ⁝ to kepe hym fro þ*at* dente ; Ferumbras guards too high,
Ac As he huld is scheld vp so ⁝ discouert was al ys side, and leaves his side uncovered.
& O[lyuer] ap*er*ceuede ful wel þat þo ⁝ & no lengre nolde abide,
Bote Til hi*m* a gerte a stroke anon ⁝ & egerlich he hym sette : 740 Oliver thrusts

[1] In margin 'st*ur*nelich.' [2] þ*at* til hym [þo was] mente.

Original draft.

þa*n*ne hi*m* saide O[lyuer] "þ*o*u afferest . . . . . .
O þ*er* tydyng þ*o*u schalt here . . . . . .
Als so scherply þys kny*ȝ*tes 724
So doþ þe fur wynd & rayn . . . . . .
W*ith* wylde st*r*okes þat þey . . . . . .
Helmes & scheldes þer-w*ith* . . . . . .
F[erumbras] wax wod on O[liuer] þ*at* he hi*m* 728
A takeþ ys swerd & co*m* hi*m* n[eer] . . . . . .
& smot hi*m* on þe helm an he*ȝ* . . . . . .
A quart*er* þ*er*-of he to clef & eke . . . . . .
W*ith* þ*at* stroke he schar a-way . . , ... 732
Ac god hy*m* halp þ*at* best may þ*at* . . . . . .
þa*n* wax he ful egre of mod & . . . . . .
& eymed to ȝyue hi*m* a stroke . . . . . .
Wan F[erumbras] þ*at* stronge stroke y[-se*ȝ*] 736
Hys scheld he held vp þa*n*ne an [he*ȝ*] . . . . . .
As he huld his scheld vp so . . . . . ,
O[lyuer] þat p*er*ceyuede þo, no len , ...
To hi*m* he a gerte a strok a 740

at his breast, Vnder ys brest þe dent hi*m* com ⁝ ac ys costrel fferst hi*m* mette;
þe costrel þ*a*t was w*ith* yre y-bou*n*de ⁝ þ*er*-w*ith* a-two he carf[1],
& þ*a*t lykour þ*er*-on schad on þe grou*n*de ⁝ & þ*a*t sw*e*rd on ys syde swarf[1],
cuts his hauberk & Oþer half spanne for carf[2] a two ⁝ of is hauberke ymad of maylle,
& of is Iupou*n* hit[3] dude al-so ⁝ þat was of riche entaylle, 745
and 5 of his ribs in two, & wiþ þat strok dou*n* hit do (?) nam ⁝ v. ribbes of ys syde,
& wel ne3 ys guttes þ*a*t sw*e*rd hi*m* ran ⁝ & made hym a wou*n*de ou*n*ride.
and his guts begin to fall out. His guttes þ*er*-w*ith* gu*n*ne out falle ⁝ & dou*n* gan re*n*ne þat blod;
& 3ut stod he strong & stif w*ith*-alle ⁝ & ne batedede no3t is mod; 749
Of herte was he hol & sound ⁝ & pleynede hi*m* þe 3ute no þyng,
He kneels down, and Ac sone he knelede oppon þe grond ⁝ & þankede heuene kyng,
¶ þ*a*nne clypede til hym ry3t ⁝ erld Olyuer and sayde: 752
prays Oliver not to kill him, "Haue m*er*cy of me, iantail kny3t ⁝ for Marie sone þ*a*t mayde.[4]
& For his loue þat al may see ⁝ y pray þe, sle me no3t;
as he will be christened, Hit is my wille cristned to bee ⁝ certis þat is my þo3t.
My godes þat y me affied on ⁝ buþ no3t to haue on mynde, 756
þay mo3e no more do þan a ston ⁝ & þat y now auynde,
3if hit by-tideþ so þat y may ⁝ bé y-wareschid of my wounde,
persecute Mahomedans, y schal scaþye hem ni3t & day ⁝ þat bileueþ on Mahou*n*de;
Cristendo*m* by me schal encressed be ⁝ sykerly if y may scape; 760

[1]—[1] These two lines in margin. [2] spanne [he] carf.
[3] he *altered to* hit. [4] for [loue of] Marie sone.

Original draft.

Faste vnder is breste he com . . . . . .
Oþer half spa*n*ne he carf at[wo] . . . . . .
& of his iupou*n* he dude also þ*a*t w 745
W*ith* þ*a*t stroke a dou*n* he carf his rib . . . . . .
Ne3 þe guttes þ*a*t sw*e*rd dou*n* . . . . . .
Ac þow he se3 his guttes fall a . . . . . .
He stod als-so stif for al as h 749
Of herte was he hol & sound & . . . . . .
Bott knelede hi*m* dou*n* on þe g*r*ond & . . . . . .
Sone he clepede to him ri3t E 752
"Mercy," he saide, "iantail kny3t for loue . . . . . .
For his loue þ*a*t al may se y p[ray] . . . . . .
For y þenke to cristened be ce . . . . . .
My godes þ*a*t y affied on beþ 756
þay mowe . . . . . stòn . . . . . .
. . . . . may be . . . . . .
[6 *or* 7 *lines cut off?*]
y schal boþe ni3t & day 759

& for payenye, so mot y þe ⁝ ful yuele wil y schape;
þa*n*ne schulleþ peynymes c*r*istned be ⁝ & hure lay for-sake. — and make Pagans be christened. [leaf 10, back]
& þe croune of þorn & þe naylles þre ⁝ aȝen þa*n*ne wil y betake,
& al þe relyqes þat y haue ⁝ y-take aȝeyn þe riȝt, — He will restore the reliques he has,
Y wil ȝeld op, so god me saue ⁝ & bileue on god almiȝt.
¶ y ȝylde me her to Charlis kyng ⁝ þe beste knyȝt y-core — and yield to King Charles.
þat is owar now lyuyng ⁝ oþer eu*er*e was her be-fore.
for þ*o*u me hauest conquerid her ⁝ i put me in-to þy grace;
y pray þe iantail Olyuer ⁝ for-ȝyf me my manace!"
¶ Wan Olyuer had hi*m* al yherd ⁝ is herte gan vp sprynge, — Oliver pities Ferumbras,
In-to is scaberke he potte his swerd ⁝ & went hi*m* to þ*a*t kynge,
& huld hi*m* vp, for he wax paal ⁝ bi-twene ys armes rou*n*de,
& laid hi*m* dou*n* þar-wiþ-al ⁝ ful softe oppon þe grou*n*de
& pulte is bowels in ageyn ⁝ & is goffanou*n* he gan to berste; — pushes his bowels in,
To make a bond he was ful feyn ⁝ & bond he*m* in wel feste. — and binds them up with his flag.
¶ þa*n* saide Fi[rumbras] til hi*m* aȝe ⁝ "do let me hennes bere, — Ferumbras asks to be carried away.
þat y ne daye in þis degre ⁝ cristned y wolde y were."
"Certis," saide þe ientail knyȝt ⁝ "y wolde wel fayne fonde, — Oliver says he is afraid to move him.
If y wiste how ymyȝt ⁝ make þe vp to stonde;
Ac þow hast so myche y-bled ⁝ þat paal ys al þy face,
Wharfor y am sore adred ⁝ to r*e*muwe þe of þys place."
¶ þan Fi[rumbras] enforcede hy*m* þer ⁝ to arise vp-on ys fete, — Ferumbras asks
& stod hy*m* vp by Olyu*er* ⁝ & saide wordes swete:
"Iantail knyȝt, of me tak rewþe ⁝ as þow art god & hende, — him to
& help me hannes for þy trewþe ⁝ for y am neȝ myn ende.
Myn herte hi*m* ys a-go ful ner ⁝ ychaunged is al my chere;
y pray þe, iantail Olyuer ⁝ let me noȝt daye here.
¶ Go now, tak my gode stede ⁝ þ*a*t tyed ys at þis tree, — fetch his steed,
& he schal wel in thys [my] nede ⁝ bere boþe me & þee.
& tak al-so my swerd ploraunce ⁝ þat hongeþ her by my side, — and take his sword *Ploraunce* from his side, as it hurts his wound,
þe hefþe of hym doþ greuaunce ⁝ to my wounde wyde;
& help me y were on hym an horce ⁝ y pray þe, ne spare þ*o*u noȝt,
& y wil me selue enforce ⁝ þat y wer on hym broȝt.
Set me be-for þe on is bak ⁝ & þe silue be-hynde þanne, — and to lift him on to his horse.
& so schalt þou wyþ-oute lak ⁝ safly haue me hanne.
¶ Ac y warne þe of a torn ⁝ war-for y wolde þow spedde: — Ferumbras warns Oliver

þys dai erly by þe morwn ⁝ wan y ros of my bedde,
of an ambush of 15,000 Saracens — y leuede ȝond on a buchyment ⁝ sarasyns wonder fale, 798
In þe wode þat ȝonder stent ⁝ ten þousant al by tale;
& in þat ilke brusschet by ⁝ v. þousant of oþre and mo,
[leaf 11] — y-horced & y-armed ful sykerly ⁝ fro þe top in-to þe to.
waiting — Ac y for-bed hem alle þ*er*e ⁝ wan y departede hem fro, 802
þat non of hem so hardy were ⁝ fro þenne þay ne scholde go,
for his return. — Or ich hadde su*m* viage done ⁝ & til he*m* come a-geyn.
Go we hanne þ*er*-for sone ⁝ & elles þow worst beleyn."
¶ Wan O[lyuer] y-hurde how he spak ⁝ in herte a was agreued, 806
Oliver lifts him on to his horse, — A tok þe stede þat was colblak ⁝ & softly vp hi*m* heued.
Fir[umbras] was hard, & suffrede wel ⁝ þoȝ hit hi*m* greuede sare,
and leaps up behind him, — & O[lyuer] lep vp be-hynde hym snel ⁝ & forþ wiþ hi*m* gan fare.
Ac al þat trauayl he cast away ⁝ as ȝe schul here sone, 810
For or þ*a*t he eft kyng Charlis say ⁝ ful miche had he to done.
but the Saracens in ambush break out. — OF þys anbuschymenȝ þan brek out ⁝ Bruyllant of Mou*n*t mirree,
& Sortybrant of Combles w*ith* hur*e* rout ⁝ & þ^e kyng of Mant*re*blee,
Arrenor · Gwychard · & Moredas ⁝ Gayot and Angwyree, 814
Wyþ al þe power þat þeer was ⁝ xv. þousant & three.
Olyuer sone y-seȝ þat cas ⁝ & swyþþer bi-gan to haste. 816
But he was encombred wiþ Fyru*m*bras ⁝ þ*a*t he ne may ride faste.
The French blow the assembly. — Ac wan þe frensche men hit seȝe & knewe ⁝ how þe Sarsyns come w*ith* bost,
Hure co*m*mune horn þa*n*ne þay blewe ⁝ to assemblie to-gadre hure host.
¶ Charlis neuew duk*e* Roland ⁝ þan was sore amayed, 820
So wern þe doþþepers y vnderstand ⁝ for þay wern ou*n*-araid,
Charlemagne and his peers arm. — Ac as ȝerne þay miȝte ⁝ þay caste þa*n*ne on hure gere,
Boþe kyng, duk, erld & knyȝt ⁝ & al othere þat þar were.
Oliver being surrounded, sets down Ferumbras, — ¶ þe Sarsynȝ gu*n* prykie a-rau*n*dou*n* ⁝ & Olyuer bi-sette aboute, 824
þe wou*n*dede man þan he set adou*n* ⁝ & þouȝte askape þe route.
& þan he prayde to god almiȝt ⁝ schold saue hi*m* þ*a*t ilke day,
As wys hit was in t*re*wþe & riȝt ⁝ þ*a*t he tok þat iornay.
& al-so he prayde for Fyru*m*bras ⁝ þat no man hi*m* be-reue 828
Til he wer cristned þorȝ godes gras ⁝ & y-broȝt to þe riȝt beleue.
¶ & þan he be-gan to prykie bet ⁝ & nolde no leng[er] abide,
but finding he cannot escape, — Ac wiþ Sarsyns he was bi-set ⁝ þ*a*t come on eu*er*y side,
þat he ne miȝte a-scape þe ferd ⁝ so þikke þay fulle hi*m* aan; 832

& þanne at arst drow he is swerd ⁝ & defendede him as a man. draws his sword,
¶ þanne was O[lyuer] þat sembbly knyȝt ⁝ al-one among is fon; and cuts down numbers of the Saracens.
He hewþ on Saraȝyns with al is myȝt ⁝ & sleþ of hem manyon.
Wham he smyteþ wyþ his dent ⁝ to deþe a leyþ hem doune, 836
Helmes & haberkes he al-torent ⁝ & doȝtylich scherth hure croune.
¶ þan O[lyuer] bleynte hym a-side ⁝ & þoȝte a-scape þ^e route, [leaf 11, bk]
Bot þanne þer cam til him ride ⁝ lampatrys þe proute: Lampatrys charges him,
þe sarsyn bar til him a spere ⁝ ac for O[lyuer] haþ no schelde 840
þe strong strok awey to bere ⁝ is bodi a-side he felde, but Oliver dodges,
& ferlich til him a rod a-gayn ⁝ wiþ wel egre mode,
& wiþ is swerd a clef is brayn ⁝ þorw-out helm & hode: cleaves his skull,
þe sarsyn ful doun ded anon ⁝ & Olyuer tok is spere 844 and taking his spear,
& eke ys scheld & heng hit on ⁝ þer-wiþ him-self to were,
And meteþ with Turgys on þe feld ⁝ & rideþ til him for tene, runs Turgys through;
& ȝaf him a strok on þe scheld ⁝ þat was ful wel y-sene;
þorw scheld, haberke, & aketoun ⁝ þat sper him gan to glyde, 848
þorw-out is body he bar him doun ⁝ & ded he ful þat tide.
¶ & þan he drow out hautecler ⁝ is swerd ful scharp igrounde, then draws his sword *Hautecler*,
& smot a saraȝyn þat cam him ner ⁝ & ȝaf him deþes wounde:
Wiþ four othre meteþ he þan ⁝ þat of is way him lette, 852
& smot him boþe þorw hed & pan ⁝ & fuld hem on þe flette. and slays five Saracens.
Alle þat O[lyuer] areche miȝte ⁝ wiþ hautecler he dust him doun.
þanne þe sarsyns waxe afriȝte ⁝ & flowen him what þay mown̄.
¶ To himward come þar ride þan ⁝ Moradas & kyng Kargys, 856 Moradas and three kings
& þe kyng of Combles, sir Sortybran ⁝ & eke þe kyng Margys,
þus kynges a-scried erld Olyuer ⁝ & gradde til him ful hye, charge Oliver.
"þou ne askapest noȝt ous, pautener ⁝ bot her riȝt þou schalt dye."
¶ þan Olyuer gan drede hym sare ⁝ & faste prikede away, 860 He flies
And com þo wel neȝ him þare ⁝ Firumbras as he lay. past Ferumbras,
By þat tyme hadde sir Firumbras ⁝ ys haberioun of y-caste,
& to Olyuer clepede in þat cas ⁝ & said til hym an haste:
"þys hauberk y rede tak of me ⁝ & cast it oppon þyn owe, 864 who says: 'Take my hauberk,
þe sikerlukere þer-inne moȝe ȝe ⁝ defendy ȝour body aþrowe.
þow hast þer-to grete nede ⁝ wyþ sarsyns þow art enclos,
þe grete god þe helpe & spede ⁝ & kepe þe fram þy fos!" and may God save thee!'
¶ þan Olyuer hym þonkede ȝerne ⁝ & schridde him with þat gere, 868 Oliver puts it on.

& anoþer way gan he terne ⁝ þat Firu*m*bras y-founde nere.

The Saracens press on him. Aboute Olyuer þan ful faste ⁝ þay prikede wiþ spers & scheldes
& sturnelich on hi*m* þay þraste ⁝ Sarasyns in tal þe feldes.
Ac euere he meteþ he*m* wi*th* is brond ⁝ & deleþ strokes sounde, 872
Wham so he hitteþ wyþ ys hond ⁝ a ȝaf he*m* deþes wounde.

Kargys with 10,000 men attack him. ¶ Kyng Kargys wes st*ur*ne & prout ⁝ & Olyuer gan ȝerne assaille
W*ith* ten þousant sarsyns stif & stout ⁝ wel y-armed w*ith*-oute faille.
Olyuer gan hym sturie about ⁝ & for-hewþ he*m* plate & maille 876

Oliver slays 20, xx^ti slow he of þ*a*t rout ⁝ þat non armure ne miȝt he*m* vaille ;
& þan he meteþ wiþ þat kyng ⁝ & rideþ til hym wyþ mod,
[leaf 12] & smot hi*m* wiþ is swerd keruyng ⁝ a sterne strok & a god ;

and then the King himself. þorw helm & scolle he clef hi*m* dou*n* ⁝ & þorȝ auentaile & þorȝ hod 880
þorw haberke & þorw is aketou*n* ⁝ attes nauel þe dent a-stod.
¶ þan laid he on þe Sarsyns wykke ⁝ faste be eu*er*y helue,
Ac euere þay fulle on hi*m* so þykke ⁝ þ*a*t ounepe he kepte hi*m*-selue.

The Saracens swarm round him. þe sarsyns wente til hym wiþ strengþe ⁝ & laid on hi*m* al aboute. 884
Ac O[lyuer] kepte hymen[1] is swerdes lengþe ⁝ eu*er*echone wiþ-oute,
& smyteþ til hymen w*ith* myȝt & mayn ⁝ & kepþ hi*m* be eu*er*y syde ;
Su*m*me he smyteþ in-to þe brayn ⁝ & su*m*me ȝaf woundes wyde ;
A sterne gret schour a ȝaf hem þar ⁝ & laide he*m* a doun ful þykke.
Neu*er* nas o man þat bettre hi*m* bar ⁝ amonges so mony wikke. 889

His horse is killed. ¶ þan cam til hi*m* a Sarsyn prout ⁝ prikyng wiþ rendou*n*,
& smot his stede wiþ a sper þorw-out ⁝ þ*a*t he ful ded adou*n*.
O[lyuer] stert vp . & til hym wond ⁝ & ȝaf hi*m* a stroke wyþ miȝte,
Wyþ al þe strengþe of boþe ys hond ⁝ & to-clef ys body riȝte. 893
¶ þe Saraȝyns wroþe gu*n*ne to waxe ⁝ & as wode men þa*n*ne þay furde,
& layde til hi*m* wiþ sper & axe ⁝ wyþ Gysarmes & w*ith* swerde.

His shield, ys scheld þat was wyþ golde y-batrid ⁝ & eke wyþ ire y-bou*n*de, 896
Sone þay had hit al to-clatrid ⁝ þe peeces leye on þe grounde.

his helmet, ys helm, ys coyphe, ys habryiou*n* ⁝ alle þay hadde to-rente,

and his jacket are in pieces. & eke ys noble aketou*n* ⁝ was [al] for-hewe & schente.
Ac al þe whyle þ*a*t he was sounde ⁝ he delte dentes sare, 900
Til he hauede so many a-wounde ⁝ þ*a*t he ne miȝt fiȝte no mare.

The Saracens overpower him, ¶ þan þe Sarsyns on hi*m* ru*n*ne ⁝ & set on hi*m* hondes fale,
To þe erþe þay habbeþ hi*m* wonne ⁝ & broȝt is body on bale.

[1] MS. hymem.

His hondes þan þay toke riȝt ⁝ & leyden hi*m* on his bak*e* be-hynde, 904 tie his hands,
& al so harde as tweyne myȝt ⁝ wiþ a corde þai duden hi*m* bynde.
& suþþe þay han y-take a clout ⁝ & duden hi*m* more tene, blindfold him,
& byndeþ þer-wiþ is eȝene about ⁝ for he ne schold noȝt sene.
An hakenay þay toke þ*at* þay founde ⁝ & set hi*m* þer-on god spede, 908 set him on a horse,
& vnder ys wombe ys legges bounde ⁝ þe sykerluker hym to lede. and tie his legs under its belly.
¶ þan þe knyȝt is mone gan make ⁝ & sayde, "alas ⁝ alas!
Charlis kyng, for þy sake ⁝ me is bi-tid þys cas."
He saide, "Charlis, whar ert þ*o*u ⁝ in hwam my trist was euere? 912
A ⁝ Rolond, felawe, help me now ⁝ ! for þ*o*u ne failedest me neuere."
Til hym þan saide kyng Moradas ⁝ "a-noþer schal be þy songe, Moradas mocks him,
y ne schal noȝt ete, by Mahou*n* is fas ⁝ til þow be heȝe an honge."
NOW ys Olyuer þus ytake ⁝ among is enymys. 916 [leaf 12, bk]
Moradas þe kyng of wham y spake ⁝ clipeþ his co*m*panys,
L. Saraȝyns þ*a*nne a chees ⁝ among hem þar and sede: and orders him
"Wendeþ bi-fore & ledeþ þees ⁝ to Egremoyneward w*ith* god spede; to be taken to Aigremont.
Fareþ faste on ȝour way ⁝ bote euere habeþ on mynde, 920
þ*at* he be kept in yuel aray ⁝ & we willeþ ȝow kepe behynde."
þay went hem forþ on apendant ⁝ w*ith* olyuer þ*at* was ibou*n*de,
þ*at* hewles was of semblant ⁝ for he bar many a wou*n*de.
His blod gan renne a-dou*n* ful toȝt ⁝ by þe waye as he gan ride, 924
& ȝut þe sarasyns ne spared hi*m* noȝt ⁝ bote beten eu*er*e & cride, His escort torment and threaten him.
"Turmentye we wel þes *crist*ene þef ⁝ þ^e^ wile he is o*us* amonge,
For he hath don ous gret reprefe ⁝ to morȝe schal he ben ho*n*ge."
¶ By þat was araid duk*e* Rolant ⁝ & saw hymen awayward schake, 928 Roland sees them,
"Alas," said he, "god vayllant, ⁝ "Olyuer my felaw ys take!
y-seeþ þat ȝonder company ⁝ how þay hi*m* ledeþ away;
now spede we hi*m* to socoury ⁝ for godes loue wat ȝe may!" and calls for a rescue.
Roland prikede is stede of prys ⁝ so dude scot Gwylmer, 932
So dude Geffray and Aubrys ⁝ & Berard of Montdisdier; The French knights
So dude þe duk' of Borgoygne · Sir Gy ⁝ þat hardy was & wys,
& eke Richard of normandy ⁝ & eke sire Alorys;
& duk neymes of Baueer ⁝ Wyþ þe gray hore berde, 936
Basyn, Terry, and Ogier ⁝ & Charlis wiþ al · his ferde.
þay criede "a mont ioie! seynt dynys ⁝" after hem as þay gu*n*ne ryde, ride to rescue him.
"ȝe token yuele þe knyȝt of prys ⁝ & yuele ȝou schal be-tyde."

¶ Rolant ran to Cornybourgh ⁝ & smot hi*m* wi*th* a spere, 940
A persched ys scheld & bar hi*m* þorwh ⁝ & slow hym for al ys gere.
Berard in þe same plas ⁝ mette wyþ Turgys,
& Oger deneys wyþ Athenas ⁝ & Richard wyþ Margys,
& sire Gyou*n* of Borgoygne ⁝ wiþ Brudelan of mou*n*tbys, 944

Each slays a Saracen.

So þ*a*t eu*e*rech wi*th*-oute ensoygne ⁝ haþ a-slawe his.
To þe Sarasyns ȝyuen þay hard batail ⁝ & slowe hi*m* alle aboute;
Wan hure speres gu*n*ne to faille ⁝ hur*e* swerdes þay drowen oute. 947
Of su*m*me þay smyte of legges & armes ⁝ & of su*m* þe heuedes þay gerde,
& su*m*me þay stykede þorȝ guttes & þearmes ⁝ so foule wi*th* he*m* þei ferde.

They are like wolves in a flock of sheep.

Als furde þay wiþ þat ilke hepe ⁝ wiþ-oute tales mo,
As doþ wolues among þe shepe ⁝ wan þay comeþ he*m* to.
Al þe feldes þo wern y-fuld ⁝ of dede men on þe grounde, 952
Saue an vewe þat leye & ȝulde ⁝ & abide hur*e* deþes stou*n*de.

[leaf 13]

¶ þe whyle þys batail was don þer ⁝ as y ha told ȝow here,

Oliver's escort hurry him on,

þe oþre of wyche y tolde of eer ⁝ chacyeþ forþ Olyuere,
And leggeþ on hym strokes harde ⁝ as he riȝdt y-bou*n*de, 956
þe wyles þay of þe rerewarde ⁝ buþ y-laid doun to grou*n*de.

and take to flight;

¶ Wan þay y-seȝe þat þ*e*s frensche men ⁝ ȝyue he*m* so scherp a schour,
Faste a-wayward gu*n*ne þay flen ⁝ þay sparede no deshonour.

but Sortybran

Ac þe kyng of Combles, sir Sortybran ⁝ þat was hure gou*e*rnour, 960
þa*n*ne cryede, "lordes, comeþ aȝen ⁝ & schewyaþ ȝour vygour!
We wolleþ sle þus frensche her ⁝ riȝt in clene bataille."

rallies them, and they attack the French.

Wiþ þat þe Sarsyns reliede he*m* þer ⁝ & þe frensche me*n* gu*n*ne tassaille.
¶ þe Sarsyns þanne wi*th* gode herte ⁝ foȝte & sparede he*m* naȝt, 964
Harde strokes & eke smerte ⁝ to þe frenschemen þa*n*ne þay raȝt.
þay caste til hem gleyues & lau*n*ce ⁝ falsarȝ & feþerd dart,
& slowe þ*e*r-wiþ kniȝtes of frau*n*ce ⁝ & ȝaue he*m* batail hard.

Gwater, Gwylmyn, and others are slain;

Gwater þay a slowe þen ⁝ & Gwylmyn þay duden al-so, 968
And of othre frensche men ⁝ wel thre score & mo.
So sherplich þo on he*m* þay fulle ⁝ þ*e*s Sarsyns al wiþ strengþe,
þ*a*t þe frensche men þai made reculle ⁝ wel an akers lengþe.

Gwylmer, Berard, Geoffrey, and Aubry are taken,

þa*n*ne þay asayllede Scot Gwylmer[1] ⁝ & toke hi*m* a-force fyne, 972
& eke sir Berard of Moundisder[2] ⁝ & Geffray of Langeuyne;
& þe ferþe þay token al-so þere ⁝ sir Aubry, a noble knyȝt,

[1] þay asayllede [Berard of montdisdier]. [2] Some words erased here.

& alle þay arn of þe doþþepere ⁝ þat þo buþe taken in fyȝt.
¶ þus barons weren take wiþ force ⁝ & harde y-bounde y trowe, 976 tied on horses, and carried away.
And suþþen y-set alle an horce ⁝ & awayward with hem þay drowe.
Ac wan Charlis hit wiste & seȝ ⁝ for hymen hym gan to maye: Charles laments for his knights.
Ofte a cride to his host an heȝ ⁝ "now prikeaþ knyȝtes, y praye;
If þay hymen ledeþ þus away ⁝ my doþþepers þat buþ y-take, 980
þanne ys my worschip lost for ay ⁝ certes for þat sake."
þanne miȝte me sen þe frensche men ⁝ after þis Sarsynȝ chace, Then the French pursue the Saracens, and overtake them.
þay huld hur scheldes bi-forn hem ⁝ & harde hem bi-gunne enbrace.
At aualyng of an hulle ⁝ þe frensche han þey of-take, 984
& wanne þe frensche men on hem fulle ⁝ þe Sarasyns gunne to quake,
¶ þan comencede a batail newe ⁝ by-twene þes hostes two, A fresh fight begins.
þe Sarasyns sone þay al-to-hewe ⁝ þat þay of-token þo.
Rolond drow out durendal ⁝ þat schon so siluer briȝt, 988 Roland draws his sword *Durendal*
For O[lyuer] hym was wo wyþ al ⁝ þat he ne had him in siȝt.
Ac suþþe þat he ne may hym seen ⁝ a þoȝte þan or he wente
Amonges hem þer a-wreke is teen ⁝ sone wyþ swerdes dente.
¶ þe furste he mette hiȝt engwylard ⁝ a Sarsyn of gret renoun, 992 [leaf 13, back] and cuts down Engwylard.
þorȝ helm & coyphe þat wern hard ⁝ he clef ys hed a-doun;
He fel doun ded oppon þe ground ⁝ is lifdawes wern ido;
"Rest," quaþ he, "þou heþene hound" ⁝ & anoþerne he lawte þo,
& ȝaf him a strok al on ys yre ⁝ with durendal is brond: 996
His heued gerte he fro þe swyre ⁝ þat it tomblede on þe sond.
Al þat he areche miȝte ⁝ a dust hem doun to dede.
þe Sarasynȝ wern of him affriȝte ⁝ & prykede away god spede, The Saracens fly with their prisoners.
& ledeþ wiþ hem þe ryche prysouns ⁝ þat þay habbeþ y-take, 1000
& þay folȝyeaþ after wiþ rendouns ⁝ wel sory for hure sake.
¶ Roland prykede after blyf ⁝ for þe loue of Olyuer þan, Roland and
& potte an auenture ys owe lif ⁝ to rescuwy þat doȝty man.
Ogier deneys on Bryafort ⁝ wiþ him prikede al-so, 1004 Ogier
And ȝaf Roland god comfort ⁝ þat chyuachee for to do.
¶ Now chacieþ þay þe Sarseneys ⁝ þis noble kniȝtes tweye, chace the Saracens over hill and dale,
Ouer mountayns & ouer valeys ⁝ ne dradde þai for non aye.
To rescuwe þis barouns gode ⁝ euere þay prykede faste, 1008
As noble men & heȝ of mode ⁝ þat of noþyng wern agaste. slaying all they can catch,
Ac al þat þay of-take miȝte ⁝ as þay prikede þo,

W*ith* dent of swerd þay sloȝen hi*m* riȝt ⁝ & prikede forþ after mo.
þus·þay prikede, þuse two barou*n* ⁝ hure frendes to rescowe, 1012
till nearly sunset, Til þe sonne was neȝ go dou*n* ⁝ & gan to sitte lowe.
Sory wer þey for hi ne miȝt ⁝ hure pruwesse fulfille þore.
when they turn back. To Charlis host aȝen þay tiȝt ⁝ be-hynde he*m* fer þoȝ þay wore.
¶ Wel longe hadde þys chas y-lest ⁝ of þys knyȝtes tweyn, 1016
þe Sarsyns fleȝe & noȝt ne sest ⁝ war-for þay t*ur*nde aȝeyn.
Al ful were þe weyes almost ⁝ of sarasyns þay han a-sleyn,
Ac for Rolond haueþ is p*ur*pos lost ⁝ þan was he noþyng fayn.
Charles at sunset retires to his camp, ¶ Charlis saw þ^e^ so*n*ne neȝ set ⁝ þ*a*t red þan schon & lowe, 1020
In his pauillou*n*s to haue recet ⁝ þiderward gan he drawe.
& wiþ his host he tornde aȝeyn ⁝ wiþ a wel yuele chere,
grieving for Oliver. & eu*er*e he siȝte & gan to seyn ⁝ 'Alas' ⁝ þat he cam theere:
"Alas ⁝ Olyuer, my gode kniȝt ⁝ for þe myn herte ys cold. 1024
Alas! þe tyme þ*o*u scholdest fiȝt ⁝ w*ith* þat Saraȝyn bold.
Alas! now buþ myn barou*n*s wyȝt ⁝ fro me y-take in hold.
Alas! þe tyme þat in mi siȝt ⁝ þis mischef falle schold."
Neymes comforts him. ¶ Duk neymes ihurde ys mone ⁝ & saide to þe kyng, 1028
"Auenge þe her-of eft sone ⁝ & let now þy mornyng.
[leaf 14] þyn barons schulleþ be delyuered wel ⁝ wiþ þe hilp of god almiȝt,
& þe Sarasyns, be þay noȝt so fel ⁝ sch*u*llaþ abigge þys ounriȝt."
Charles vows vengeance. þan kyng C[harlis] swer is oþ ⁝ ne scholde he neu*er*e be fayn, 1032
Til he had hi*m* mad he*m* wroþ ⁝ & his barons gete aȝayn.
As they ride they find Ferumbras. ¶ As þey ride so[1] on þe way ⁝ sechyng on þe playne,
þey founde Firu*m*bras þar a lay ⁝ vnder a tre of frayne.
Wan Charlis y-saw hi*m* war he was ⁝ he neȝhedem & sayde, 1036
Charles cursēs him. "Maugree haue þ*o*u, Fyru*m*bras ⁝ for þy foul mysbrayde;
y haue y-lost Erld Olyuer ⁝ þys day for þy sake,
& duk Berard of Moundesdier ⁝ & oþre þat buþ y-take."
Ferumbras sighs deeply and humbly answers: ¶ Fyr[umbras] herde what Charlis saide ⁝ & made a grete syȝyng, 1040
oppo*n* ys arm ys heued a layde ⁝ & hu*m*bliche ansuered þe kyng,
"A ⁝ charlis, kyng of fraunce ⁝ ne spek þer-of no more;
'I have sorrow enough. Oliver has conquered, and I am pledged to become a y haue ynow of greuaunce ⁝ & ȝut me ys wers þer-fore.
Erld Olyuer w*ith* strenþe in fiȝt ⁝ haþ me her conquered, 1044
& y til hi*m* am trewe y-pliȝt ⁝ & haue myn oþ y-swered,
þat y schal euere fro þys day ⁝ þe heþene lay for-sake,

[1] MS. ride [forþ].

And beleue in *crist*ene fay ꝛ & folloht to me take. — Christian;
y suffrie ynow of sorwe & pyn ꝛ my syde ys al to-tore, 1048 — I am sore wounded.
& if y daye her sarsyn ꝛ y wot y am y-lore.
For þe loue of þilke crist ꝛ þat þou lyuest on,
Help me *þat* y were baptist ꝛ in þe holy fanston: — Help me now and I will make all Saracens become Christians.
For wer ich mad a cristenman ꝛ & my wounde faire y-helid, 1052
Heþemen schold y so greue þan ꝛ þat þay shulle sore y-felid,
& þay *þat* now buþ Sarasyns ꝛ schold *tur*ne to *crist*ene lay;
& elles þay scholde þolye pyns ꝛ for hure false fay.
¶ þe croune of þorn schal y ȝeld vp ꝛ & þe naylles three 1056 — I will give up the crown of thorns, and the three nails and other relics.
þat pyned ȝour lord wan he was put ꝛ on þe rode tree;
& oþre reliques riche y-now ꝛ whar-of y haue plentee,
y schal he*m* ȝelde aȝen to ȝow ꝛ Charlis kyng so free.
Be þe saule þat y bere ꝛ & as god lese me of my greuau*n*ce, 1060
Me greueþ more for Olyuere ꝛ þan of my owe penau*n*ce; — I grieve more for Oliver than for myself,
Ac If y be helyd by help & cure ꝛ of my wou*n*de wyde, — but I will avenge him.'
Alle þey schulle abbigget dur*e* ꝛ *þat* token hi*m* in *þat* tide.
For godes loue, sir Emperour ꝛ tak pite of me here, 1064
It *tur*neþ ȝow to gret deshono*ur* ꝛ & y daye in þis manere." — [leaf 14, back]
¶ Wan Charlis had herd þis answere ꝛ is herte to hi*m*ward feld;
He het .iiij. kniȝtes hi*m* arere ꝛ & bere hi*m* forþ on a scheld. — Charles orders four knights to bear him to his tent,
Softe þus knyȝtes þa*n* hi*m* bere ꝛ to þe kyngis pauylloun 1068
& of hur handes ne let hi*m* nere ꝛ til Charlis het set hi*m* dou*n*.
¶ Charlis he*m*self & sire Oger ꝛ ou*n*armede hi*m* þo anon, — and takes off his armour.
& wan he was sengle amou*n*g he*m* þer ꝛ hy auysed is schap echon.
Brode scholdres had he w*ith*-alle ꝛ & brustes ful quarree, 1072 — A well shaped man he was, with broad shoulders, and eyes like an eagle.
Wyþ longe sydes & middel smalle ꝛ a wel schape man was hee.
W*ith* Browes bente & eȝen stoute ꝛ a*n*d lokede so þe facou*n*:
To seche þe worlde al aboute ꝛ ne was man of fairer fasou*n*.
Alle þat hi*m* be-hulde þan ꝛ among hem þai saide þere, 1076
þat Olyuer was a doȝty man ꝛ wan hym he miȝt co*n*quere.
¶ A wel fair kniȝt was Firu*m*bra*s* ꝛ ou*n*armid wan he lay,
Ac ys Fysage al discolourid was ꝛ for is blod was gon away; — Thrice he faints with pain.
thre siþes a sounede afforn hem þere ꝛ for angwys of ys wounde, 1080
By-fore þe lordes *þat* þar were ꝛ wiþ-inne a litel stonde. — Charles orders an Archbishop
¶ Charlis tok pite of *þat* siȝt ꝛ an archebisschop a clepede anon,

to baptise him that night.

And het hi*m* sone þ*at* he wer diȝt ⁝ to blessy þe holy fanston,
þat he were fulled þ*at* ilke niȝt ⁝ & ymad cristenmon. 1084
þe prelat dide al so he hiȝt ⁝ & plungede hi*m* sone þer-on.

He is baptised, and his name changed to Florens, but he is always known as Ferumbras.

¶ þan was cristned sir Firu*m*bras ⁝ a man of gret deffens,
ys name ther y-chaunged was ⁝ & was ihote Florens,
ac þoȝ me tornde þar ys name ⁝ as þe manere was, 1088
Eu*er*e ȝut after a baar þe same ⁝ & men cliped hi*m* Firu*m*bras.
¶ Wan he was *crist*ene man ymad ⁝ on a bed þan was he laid,
þat w*ith* riche cloþes was y-sprad ⁝ & ful faire araid.

Charles' own physicians attend to him.

Charlis clipede ys leches þo ⁝ & ȝerne gan hi*m* praye 1092
þ*at* þai scholde til hi*m* go ⁝ is wounde to enserche & saye.
¶ At is heste þey wente þ*er*-to ⁝ & softe gu*n*ne taste is wou*n*de,
His lyure, ys lu*n*ge & is guttes al-so ⁝ & fou*n*d he*m* hol & sou*n*de.

They declare they can cure him within two months,

þan saide þay to Charlemayn ⁝ þay wolde hi*m* vndertake, 1096
þay wolde w*ith*-inne monþes twayn ⁝ hol & sou*n*d hi*m* make.

at which Charles is pleased.

"Doþ," quaþ he, "þ*at* faire cure ⁝ & siker ynow ȝe beo,
Of ȝour warysou*n* ȝe schul be sure ⁝ wan þat ich it seo."

[leaf 15]

¶ þa*n*ne saide þ^e^ Emperour ⁝ "iherid beo god almiȝt! 1100
Had y now erld Olyuer ⁝ myn herte were al lyȝt:
& myne oþre barons gode ⁝ þ*at* þe Saraȝyns han y-take."
þan set he hi*m* dou*n* drurymode ⁝ & d*r*opede for hure sake.

Meanwhile Oliver and his fellow-prisoners

TOrne we aȝen in tour sawes ⁝ & speke we atte frome 1104
Of Erld Olyuer & his felawes ⁝ þ*at* Saraȝyns habbeþ ynome.
þe Saraȝyns prykyaþ faste away ⁝ as harde as þay may hye,

are hurried on

And ledeþ wiþ hymen þat riche pray ⁝ þe flour of Chyualarye,
By hilles & roches swyþe horrible ⁝ on hur cors þay wente, 1108

to Mantrible,

And er þay come to Mantrible ⁝ neuere þay ne astente.
Ouer þe brigge þay gu*n*ne ride ⁝ þat was ful huge of lengthe,

where they pass the night.

In þe Cite þat nyȝt to abyde ⁝ to kep hem þer in strengthe.
Wiþ hure prisouns þay comen in ⁝ þ*at* were ytake be chaunce; 1112
þe draȝtbrigge was drawe vp after hem ⁝ for drede of þe host frau*n*ce.

Next morning early they start to Aigremont.

Sone þay ryse vp-on þe morwe ⁝ & to Egremoygne þay toke þe way.
God kepe þe prisou*n*s out of sorwe ⁝ for carful þay were þ*at* day!
Wa*n*ne þay come to þe castel ȝate ⁝ hure hornes þay blewe faste, 1116
þe porter alredi was þ*er*-ate ⁝ & let hym in an haste.

The Emir, Balan,

¶ þe heghe Amerel sir Balan ⁝ þat was on his halle an heȝ,

Faste þyder þa*n*ne he ran ⁝ wanne he hymen come y-seȝ, runs to meet them,
& wiþ hem al-so sir Lamaȝour ⁝ a kyng of heþene londe, 1120
& wan þay comen dou*n* of þe tour ⁝ after tydyngges þay gu*n*ne to fonde.
¶ Bruillant, þ^e kyng of mou*n*tmirree ⁝ of is stede hi*m* liȝte adou*n*,
þan amyral þa*n*ne saluede hee ⁝ in þe name of sire Mahou*n*,
þe Amyral of hym axeth sone ⁝ wat tydynge þay had y-broȝt; 1124 and enquires what tidings they bring.
"Tel þou hem me riȝt anone ⁝ and for no-þyng hele þou noȝt.
haue ȝe taken duk Roland ⁝ & Olyuer his felawe,
& wyþ Charlis foȝt wyþ hand ⁝ & hys doþþepers a-slawe?"
¶ "Nay," seyþ he, "by seynt Mahou*n* ⁝ it is noȝt as ȝe sayn; 1128 Bruillant says: 'We have been beaten by Charlemagne, and Ferumbras
We buþ disco*m*fyt & sleyn a-dou*n* ⁝ wiþ þe kyng Charlemayn,
& þy sone sir Fyru*m*bras ⁝ þat fauȝt w*ith* a knyȝt of fraunce,
Be name ne know y noȝt wat he was ⁝ ac þar is betid a chau*n*ce,
þat Fy[rumbras] by hi*m* ys ouercome ⁝ as þay foȝte in felde, 1132
& to cristendom haþ hi*m* nome ⁝ & to Charlis kyng is ȝelde." has become a Christian.'
¶ Wan þe Amyral haþ iherd þe kyng ⁝ in sowenyng gan he falle; The Emir
Ac wan he awok of his soȝnyng ⁝ loude he gan to calle, grieves
& wrong ys hondes & saide, "alas ⁝ ys my sone y-nome? 1136
My ioye ys lost For Fyru*m*bras ⁝ wat man is he bi-come. for Ferumbras,
¶ Alas! what sorwe haþ he don ⁝ þ*at* was so hardy & wiȝt, [leaf 15, back]
þ*at* he was encombred so for on ⁝ to yeld hi*m* to such a knyȝt?
V. hundred y saw aȝen hi*m* gon ⁝ & he slow alle in fiȝt, 1140
& now ys he take among is fon ⁝ y-lost ys al my miȝt.
& if he is tur*n*d to *crist*ene lay ⁝ alas ⁝ þa*n*ne is hit wers,
Leu*er*e me were by my fay ⁝ he were to-drawe wyþ hors."
¶ þe Amyral saide þa*n*ne aȝeyn ⁝ "tel me what is þe knyȝt, 1144 and asks who conquered his son.
þat was so miȝty man of mayn ⁝ to ou*er*come my sone in fiȝt."
Bruyllant saide, "so mot y þryue; þes moste man in siȝt, Bruillant points out Oliver.
þ*at* stent ibounde among he*m* vyue her by-fore ȝow riȝt."
¶ "Aha!" quaþ he, "is þes þe þef? ⁝ þe deuel hi*m* mote for'-gnaȝe,
þat ou*er*com my sone þ*at* was me lef ⁝ & broȝt hi*m* to is lawe! 1149
By Mahou*n*, þat is my god in pref ⁝ ne schal y noȝt be fawe, Balan swears Oliver shall be hanged and drawn.
Er y sen hi*m* haue mischef ⁝ an-hanged & to-drawe."
¶ Wan þay herd hi*m* þrete þ*us* ⁝ þe frenschemen þar þay stode, 1152
Olyuer saide, "help, iesus ⁝ þ*at* boȝtest ous wiþ þy blode! Oliver warns his companions
& felawes," he saide, "co*n*fortiaþ ȝow wel ⁝ & for noȝt þ*at* may be-falle,

not to tell their names, or else

þat non of ous is name ne tel ⁝ auysyeþ ȝow wel with-alle:
for wiste þe Ameral sykerly ⁝ of þe doþþepers þat we were, 1156
for al þe gold in cristenty ⁝ non of ous wolde he spare,

they will assuredly be hanged.

þat we ne scholde to deþe gon ⁝ be hangid & to-drawe,
Ouþer be demembrid euerechoun ⁝ & broȝt of lyues dawe."
1725 ¶ "As þy wil is," saide þay þo ⁝ "we willeþ alle heere." 1160

The Saracens unbind them.

To hem þan wente Sarsyns two ⁝ & ounarmide Olyuere;
þe bond þat is fysage was bounde wyþ ⁝ to stoppen is louely siȝt,
þay ounbounde & is felawes siþ ⁝ þat were al men of miȝte.

Oliver is pale.

¶ þan was Olyuer al colourlees ⁝ for þe blod þat he had schad. 1164

The Emir asks his name.

Wan þe Amyral y-saw al wat a was ⁝ for wraþþe he wax neȝ mad,
And til him a wente anon ⁝ & askede hym what he hiȝt:

Oliver says, 'Angwyron,'

"Sire," said he, "Angwyron ⁝ of france a pore knyȝt,
To serue Charlis in bataille; him self me dobbede riȝt; 1168
y ne haue no þyng with-oute faille; bote wat y may wynne in fiȝt.

and that they are all poor knights.

& my[1] felawes þat her beeþ ⁝ knyȝtes þay buþ fol sure,
Ac þay ne haue namore þan ȝe seeth ⁝ hure hors & hure armure."

'Alas!' said the Emir, 'this is a sorry chance:

¶ "Alas," þan sayde þe Amyral ⁝ "how is þys afare? 1172
For my sone þat y louede wel ⁝ of blisse y am al bare.

[leaf 16] I had hoped these were dukes or earls.'

& now y hopede þat þuse had y-ben ⁝ dukes & Erldlis of fraunce,
& [þay] ne buþ bote demeyne men ⁝ þis is a sory chaunce!
noȝt for þat ȝe schul wel sen ⁝ þat þay schul haue greuaunce." 1176
Quyke he het þay scholde hem flen ⁝ with-oute more distaunce.

Lamasour advises him not to slay them,

¶ þanne saide kyng Lamasour ⁝ þat stod him faste bye,
"y rede þe, sire, for þyn honour ⁝ a-staunche þyn herte hye;
For to slen suche vauasours ⁝ what miȝt hit profetye? 1180

but to imprison them.

Enprisone hem her wiþ-inne þy tours ⁝ & so þer let hem lye."

The Emir agrees, and orders his gaoler to

¶ þe Amyral þo wiþ-drow ys mod ⁝ ys herte was ful of grame;
& clepede ys iayler þer a stod ⁝ brytamoun bi is name:
"Tak," he sayde, "þys vauasours ⁝ & to prisoun þou hem lede, 1184
& pote hem to sorwe out of cours ⁝ y hote þe oppon þy mede.

bind them strongly and surely,

Bynd hem herde wyþ yre & steel ⁝ & pote hem in stokkes of trow,
& loke þay fare noȝt to weel ⁝ bot kep hem harde ynow.
And ȝe, lordes, þat han hem take ⁝ goþ now alle y-same 1188
& helpeþ him for my sones sake ⁝ þat þay ben maked tame.

[1] MS. my my felawes.

& namlich þ*is* ilke chef felou*n* ⁝ þat haþ me þus anuyed, — but especially Oliver.
Lokieþ he be in such prisou*n* ⁝ þat sone he be distruyed."
¶ þan wende forþ þe iayler ⁝ & tok til hym socoure, 1192 — The gaoler
& ladde wiþ hymen erld Olyuer ⁝ & þe oþer barons foure.
Wan þey comen þer the p*r*isou*n* wes ⁝ wiþ yre þay bou*n*de he*m* faste, — binds them, and leaves them without any food.
& left hem þer al mete-les ⁝ & so fro þeym þay paste.
¶ Wan þey wern in prysou*n* þare ⁝ þay criede & made hure mone, 1196 — They lament and pray.
And saide, "lord, how schul we fare ⁝ in prisou*n* her al-one.
As þow seest boþe fer & ner ⁝ sittyng on þy trone,
help ous, lord, whyle we buþ her ⁝ & kep ous f*ra*m our fone!"

FLoryppe on hure chambre seet ⁝ þ^e^ Amyral is doȝtre dere; 1200 — Floripas, the Emir's daughter, hears the cries,
Sche was a mayde fair & swet ⁝ & hurde hure dulful bere,
& þe grete noyse sche herde also ⁝ þ*a*t among he*m* y-maked was.
Sche clepede hure maydens to hur þo ⁝ wyte sche wolde þ*a*t cas.
Florippe, þat maide fair & gent ⁝ hur maidens þan tok anon, 1204
& out of chambre dou*n* sche went ⁝ þar þ*a*t folk gan gon. — and goes to find out the reason.
Wan sche cam þar þay were ⁝ sche askede of on & on,
Why þat noise was maked þere ⁝ amonges he*m* eu*er*echon.
¶ On ansuerede as it was ⁝ & told hure al & some: 1208 — She is told of her brother's conversion, and the capture of the French knights.
How hur broþer Fyru*m*bras ⁝ cristen man was bi-come,
& how þ*a*t þilke stronge knyȝt ⁝ þ*a*t wan hy*m* in bataile
Wyþ four othre men of myȝt ⁝ wern put þo þer in baile:
And how þay criede, & made hure mon ⁝ as þay in p*r*isou*n* sete. 1212
Sone sche leuede he*m* echon ⁝ & þan iayler gan sche mete, — [leaf 16, back]
For hur*e* broþ*er* sche gan to wepe ⁝ ac sone sche had ido. — She weeps for Ferumbras, but not long.
¶ Wiþ hure maydens at an hepe ⁝ to þe iayler is sche go;
Sche takeþ a syde Brytamou*n* ⁝ a conseil, & gan hi*m* frayne: 1216 — Then she asks Brytamon, the gaoler, who his prisoners are.
& askeþ what buþ þay barou*n* ⁝ in prysou*n* sche herde pleyne.
"So Mahou*n* ȝyue me gode chau*n*ce ⁝ ma dame," gan he sayne,
"Hit buþ kniȝt*es* out of frau*n*ce ⁝ þ*a*t were wyþ Charlemayne. — He tells her;
þus buþ þaye þat han ou*n*do ⁝ þy brother, sir Fyru*m*bras; 1220
& many of oure þay habbeþ al-so ⁝ y-sleyn on many a plas.
On þer ys amonges he*m* þer ⁝ a bacheler fair of syȝte, — and that one of them is the fairest he had ever seen.
In þ*is* werld ne saw ich er ⁝ so fair y-schape a kniȝte.
He conquerede sir Fyru*m*bras ⁝ in batail þar þay fiȝte, 1224
now haþ he in p*r*isou*n* herde gras ⁝ & more til hi*m* is tyȝte."

She asks to speak with them.

¶ "Brytamou*n*," þa*n*ne saide sche ⁝ "let me wiþ hem speke a þrowe
For to wyte wat þay be ⁝ & hure couyne y-knowe."

He says it can't be done.

"Dame," said he, "for drede of gyle ⁝ y ne dar noȝt þ*at* it be so : 1228
þy wyt wolde turne w*ith*-inne awhyle ⁝ haddest þ*ou* leue þar-to.
þy fader me for-bed al-so ⁝ þ*at* for þyng þat miȝte be-falle

His orders are strict.

þat to no man ne schold y þe dore vn̄do ⁝ w*ith* hymen to speke or calle;
& y wil don ys co*m*maundiment ⁝ þy speche ys al in vayne. 1232
For þe ne wil y noȝt ben y-schent ⁝ i tel þe in certayne."

'Thou vile rascal,' said she, 'thus to answer a lady!'

¶ "Wat! harlot gadelyng," saide sche þan ⁝ "mote þ*ou* be heȝe an-honge!
How answerest þow a iantail wo*m*man ⁝ þ*at* budeþ þe no wronge!
þ*ou* schalt abye it · if y can ⁝ ȝe ȝut or come oȝt longe. 1236
þe meede þ*at* þ*ou* schalt her for han ⁝ wel sone þ*ou* schalt afonge!"

She winks at her attendant,

¶ & þan sche preynte w*ith* hure eȝe ⁝ oppo*n* hur cha*m*berere þar sche stod.
¶ þ*at* mayde was boþe wys & sleȝe ⁝ & knew ful wel hur mod,

who runs to her chamber,

In-to þe chambre sche sterte anheȝe ⁝ re*n*nyng as sche wer wod, 1240
& tok vp a st*r*ong staf þ*at* sche seȝe ⁝ hwych was herd & god,

returns with a staff, and gives it to her mistress.

Vnder hur mantel sche hidde þe staf ⁝ & turnde aȝe wel faste
& hym to hur lady sone sche ȝaf ⁝ & to-ward þ^e^ p*r*isou*n* sche paste.

They try to break open the prison door.

Wa*n*ne sche was þe dore affore ⁝ sche gan be-holde aboute, 1244
& sayw þer no man þ*at* was bore ⁝ w*ith*-inne ne w*ith*-oute,
Saue Brytamou*n* abod þe iayler ⁝ þ*at* of hur þan tok wonder.
þe p*r*isou*n* dore þan wend heo ner ⁝ & putte hure staf an vnder
As sche wolde þe dore to-breke ⁝ sche gan þo hebbe & pynge : 1248

Brytamon runs to stop her, but she knocks out his brains with the staff.

þe iayler þan þyderward gan to reke ⁝ to letten hur of þ*at* þynge;
Sche lefte þe dore & wend hi*m* ner ⁝ & lifte vp þ^e^ staf w*ith* mayne,
& so on þe heued sche set hi*m* þer ⁝ þat out sterte al is brayne.

[leaf 17]

"Rest," quaþ sche, "þow sory wyȝt ⁝ god ȝyue yuele chaunce! 1252
now schal y speke my fille riȝt ⁝ w*ith* þ*es* knyȝtes of fraunce."

She unlocks the door,

¶ þe keyes sche tok of hi*m* anon ⁝ & ounlok þe dore an haste:
By-twene hymen þa*n*ne eu*er*echon ⁝ þay lift vp þ*at* bodi faste,

and they throw the body into the pit,

& in-to prisou*n* þay gu*n*ne he*m* gon ⁝ w*ith* þ*at* cors vnwraste, 1256
& in þe dupe pit þ*er* þay wer on ⁝ sone þas hit caste.

which frightens the prisoners.

¶ þan were þus prisou*n*s alle ⁝ of þe fallyng i-pot in fere,
So harde amonge*n* he*m* hit gan falle ⁝ þay wende þe deuel it were.

Floripas sends her maid for a torch.

Florippe het a damesel briȝte ⁝ hastelich gon & fette 1260
A gret torche & hym aliȝte ⁝ sone wiþ-oute lette.

þe damesel dude ase sche hiȝt ⁝ & com aȝen ful sone,
& broȝte a torche brennyng briȝt ⁝ & sperde þe dore anone.
¶ Florippe hure drow to anoþer part ⁝ & þar an dore ou*n*lek*es* 1264
þat drow to þe putte ward ⁝ & dou*n* in the pyt sche strek*es*. — She goes down and asks the French who and whence they are.
Wan sche to þe prisou*n*s was y-come ⁝ of hymen sche asked þare,
What þay buþ þat þar buþ nome ⁝ & wa*n*nys þ*a*t þay ware.
¶ "Damesel," saide erld Olyuere ⁝ "as god me ȝyue god chaunce, 1268 — Oliver answers they are French knights, — 2 1 c
We buþ kny ȝtes alle y-vere ⁝ y-born in douce fraunce,
And buþ Charlis men þe Emp*e*rere ⁝ & vnder his liegeaunce.
þe Ameral haþ y-put o*us* in p*r*isou*n* here ⁝ & doþ ous gret g*r*euaunce.
We buþ her wel herde y-bou*n*de ⁝ w*ith* gyues & cheynes grete, 1272
Lyggyng on þys pittes grou*n*de ⁝ w*ith*-oute drynke & mete.
By god þ*a*t made þis werlde rou*n*de ⁝ me were leu*e*re my lif for-lete
þan her to þolie þe stronge stou*n*de ⁝ þer wormes doþ ous ete.
For honger our bodies waxeþ feynt ⁝ & þolieþ moche pyne, 1276
War-for damesel as þov art gent ⁝ ȝyf ous su*m* what to dyne." — and begs her to give them some food. Floripas promises to do so
¶ Flo[rippe] tok wel gret pyte ⁝ of þys iantaile kny ȝte,
& þus þanne answerede sche ⁝ "ȝow be-symeþ to beo men of miȝte,
ȝe schul ha mete, so mote y the ⁝ & drynke y-now at riȝte: 1280
Ac arst þow schalt sykery me ⁝ & þy t*r*euþ^e surly ply ȝte,
þ*a*t þ*o*u for me schalt don a þyng ⁝ þat y schal the saye, — if they will do one thing for her.
& ther-to ben myn helpyng ⁝ by the power þ*a*t þ*o*u maye."
"Cert*es*," said Olyuer, "my derlyng ⁝ y wil don at þy paye, 1284 — Oliver says he will do whatever she wishes:
y nolde þe faile, be heuene kyng ⁝ in payne þar-for to daye.
ȝyf y schal for þe fiȝte ⁝ ȝyf me mete & drynke,
& suþþ^e arme me at my riȝte ⁝ & y wol for þe swynke;
& if y schal þa*n*ne gon & mete ⁝ wyþ þe Sarsyns þ*a*t buþ abowe 1288
Doggedlich y schal he*m* grete ⁝ swetyng for þy loue, — he will fight any number [leaf 17, bk] of Saracens.
þoȝ þer be of hem two hundred ⁝ y wil slen he*m* helue."
þat mayde þan gan wax awondred ⁝ & þoȝte by hur selue
þat he was doȝty man ynow ⁝ suche dedes to fulfille. 1292
Flo[rippe] saide, "sir, for þy prow ⁝ y p*r*a*y* þe hold þe stille. — Floripas begs him to be quiet,
To au*a*unt þe her in þis plas ⁝ it is ful gret folie,
It miȝte hermye ȝow alle in cas ⁝ if my fader miȝt it spie." — lest her father should hear him.
¶ þan hi*m* spak sir Berard ⁝ þe erld of montdisdier, 1296 — Then Berard
þ*a*t was þe fairest kniȝt of regard ⁝ of alle þe doþþeper;

says that if she will be their friend they will do anything for her.

"Comly mayde of kynges kende ⁝ þe corteyst þat i knowe,
Fayr of face now beo our frende ⁝ and we schul ben þyn owe;
& For þy loue þat art so hende ⁝ we schul boþe ryde & rowe, 1300
& þylke þat buþ to þe ou*n*kende ⁝ þay schulleþ be broȝt ful lowe."
¶ "Certis," saide þat faire flour ⁝ "y þanke þe swete wyȝt,
þow couþest wel louye p*ar*amour ⁝ me semeþ a lady briȝt."
"ȝea for soþ," quaþ scot Gwylmer ⁝ "ȝe habbeþ aredid ariȝt, 1304
In many a lady fer & ner ⁝ his loue haþ he y-pyȝt."

Then Floripas

¶ þa*n*ne was þat mayde fayn ⁝ wan sche wiste hure wille.
After Maumecet hur*e* chamb*er*layn ⁝ þa*n*ne sche sente stille,

sends for an anvil, tongs, and sledge-hammer, and orders the knights to be unbound.

& het to brynge w*ith* hi*m* anon ⁝ anuylt, tange & slegge. 1308
& sone he com wyþ euerechon ⁝ & broȝt he*m* on is rigge.
"Ou*n*do þis prysou*n*s on & on" ⁝ Florippe til hi*m* gan sigge,
"þey schulleþ out of þis sory won ⁝ & her no lenger ligge."
¶ Maumecet couþe ful wel þ*at* craft ⁝ & put hi*m* anon þar-to: 1312

This is done, and the knights get up and follow Floripas, by an old disused passage,

Of al hure chaynes he haþ hi*m* raft ⁝ & ek hure vetres ou*n*do.
Sone þay stode oppon hure fete ⁝ and god þay þankede þo.
And þe damesele fair & swete ⁝ w*ith* hur*e* sche made he*m* go,
¶ By an old for-sake ȝeate ⁝ of þe olde antiquytee 1316
Sche made þys barou*n*s passye ate ⁝ þe damesele þ*at* was so fre.
Maumecet þe torche afforn hi*m* baar ⁝ brennynge fayre & briȝte,

to her chamber,

And ful pryuyly ladde he*m* þar ⁝ in-to hure chambre riȝte.
FLorippe is in-to Chambre gon ⁝ pryuiliche & stille, 1320
& þys kniȝtes wiþ hure ecchon ⁝ as it was hur wille.
Wan þay were wyþ-inne ibroȝt ⁝ aboute þay gu*n*ne be-holde
So riche a chambre & so y-wroȝt ⁝ ne saw þay neu*er*e on molde.

the walls of which are of precious stones, the windows of jasper,

¶ þe walles of þe chambre were ⁝ araid for þe nones, 1324
y-maked of ful riche gere ⁝ of coral & riche stones,
þe wyndowes wern y-mad of iaspre ⁝ & of oþre stones fyne,
ypoudred wyþ perree of polastre ⁝ þe leues were masalyne,

the beams and rafters of cypress,

Al þe coples cipres were ⁝ & þe raftres wer al-so, 1328
And þe bases þat hem bere ⁝ wiþ golde were bi-go:

[leaf 18] and the ceiling of silver gilt. It is built on a rock over the sea, and in it Floripas

þe celynge w*ith*-inne was siluer plat ⁝ & w*ith* red gold ful wel yguld.
ne sawe þay neu*er*e by-fore þat ⁝ a place so faire ybuld.
þe chambre stod oppon þe se ⁝ amidward a roch of stone: 1332
þer-inne duelte þ*at* maide fre ⁝ as chef of al þ*at* wone,

& w*ith* hure maide Ioyaunce ⁝ þe kyng*es* doȝtre of Floyre, — lives with fifteen maidens.
Clarymou*n*de & mayde Floraunce ⁝ & þ*at* fayre may Baudoyre,
& oþre maydens elleuene ⁝ burdes briȝte on boure; 1336
xv. þar were of hem ful euene ⁝ duellyng in þat toure.
¶ Ful noble was þe ryche aray ⁝ þ*at* in þe chambre was.
þ*at* vessel was of golde gay ⁝ þ*at* scholde be tyn & bras.
þe dossers were of ryche pal ⁝ y-brouded al wiþ golde, 1340 — The curtains are of rich cloth, embroidered with gold.
& þe beddes of sente þorw-out-al ⁝ as þarto falle scholde.
¶ To a wyndowe wente þ*es* barou*n*s fre ⁝ & ther þay loked oute, — The knights look out of the window at the sea,
þay seȝe þe waȝes of þe se ⁝ harde to-gadre route.
As þay auysede a-boute ou*er*al ⁝ þe wardes þat þer wore, 1344
þe wawes walwede a-geyn þe wal ⁝ a sper schaft lengþe & more.
"Parfay," þan saide erld Berard ⁝ "þys tour is strong to wynne, — and admire the strength of the tower.
For any kyng it were ful hard ⁝ wyþ assaut to comen inne."
¶ þe wyle þis barou*n*s ley out þan ⁝ & tolde hur*e* tales rou*n*de, 1348
To Flo[rippe] com hure maystres gan ⁝ þat hiȝte Maragounde, — Floripas' governess asks who the knights are.
"Doȝt*ere*," sche saide, "wat men buþ þeese ⁝ þ*at* þ*o*u hast of p*r*isou*n* y-broȝt?
þy fader loue þow schalt lese ⁝ for hymen as y ha þoȝt.
þe longe man wyþ þe pale fas ⁝ þat ys erld Olyuer 1352
þat ou*er*com þy broþer Fyrumbras ⁝ ful wel y knowe hym þer:
þat other wyþ þe crollid her ⁝ þat stent hym faste by, — She recognises the knights,
þat ys Berard of mountdisdier ⁝ & þe þridde ys Aubery:
þe ferthe þat stent hymen bytwyn ⁝ þat is Scot Gwylmere; 1356
þe fifthe ys Geffray Langeuyn ⁝ of france a doþþepere.
ne schal y neuere ete no more ⁝ bi Mahou*n*, þ*at* ys my lord, — and declares she will tell the Emir.
Or y ha told þy fader fore ⁝ þy doyngge euery word."
¶ Wan þat mayde y-hurde hure speke ⁝ chaunged was al hure blee; — Floripas runs to the window,
Til a wondowe sche gan to reke ⁝ þat lay out to þe see; 1361 — and leans out;
& atte wondowe sche lynede out ⁝ hure angre sche þoȝte awreke.
Hure maistresse þanne sche clipede aloud ⁝ & bad hur w*ith* hure to speke. — then calls her governess to her,
Marigou*n*de compþ til hure renne ⁝ & hure hed til hire gan layn, 1364
Flo[rippe] stod vp & preynte þenne ⁝ to-ward hure Chamberlayn, — and winks at her attendant,
& aȝen sche laid hur there ⁝ & fur out sche bent hure þo,
& to whyte what hure wille were ⁝ hure maistrasse dude al-so.
¶ þyderward þ^e^ Chamberlayn hym faste ran ⁝ þ*at* hur cast y-knew ful wel, [leaf 18, bk]

who seizes the governess, and throws her out of the window.

& By þe legges lifte he þe schrewe þan ⁝ & schef hur out ech del. 1369
þan ful doun þat olde trate ⁝ in-to þe salte see,
& Flo[rippe] þat was þanne þer ate ⁝ turnþ hure in faire aȝe,
& sayde: "Maumecet my mate ⁝ y-blessed mot þou be 1372
For aled þow hast muche debate ⁝ to-ward þys barnee."

The knights are delighted.

¶ Wan þys Frenschemen wiste of þis ⁝ al how it stod ariȝt,
In herte þay hadde ioye & blys ⁝ & þonked god almiȝt.

Floripas bids them be of good cheer.

Flo[rippe] þanne til hem wendes ⁝ & spak til ȝam & saide: 1376
"Confortyeþ ȝow, my leue frendes ⁝ & buþ noþyng amaiede,
Syþe ȝe buþ her on þis clos ⁝ at my owe ledyngge;
Ne drede ȝow noþyng of ȝour fos ⁝ bot leteþ away mornyngge."

She sees blood on Oliver, and asks if he is wounded. Oliver says yes.

¶ Sche caste hure eȝe on Olyuer ⁝ & saw him al be-bled; 1380
þat mayde þan hym neȝed ner ⁝ & askede war he hed
On his body any wounde ⁝ & Olyuer sayde, "ȝee!
Wyþ swerdes and speres scharp igrounde ⁝ y haue take three."
¶ "Parfay," saide þat burde briȝt ⁝ "þou schalt be hol anon, 1384
& recuuer y al þy myȝt ⁝ maugre al þy fon."

She gives him a warm draught, which

Sche fet him a drench þat noble was ⁝ & mad him drynk it warm,
& O[lyuer] wax hol sone þas ⁝ and felede no maner harm.
Muche him wondred of þat cas ⁝ & þan gropede he euery wounde, 1388

heals every wound.

And founde hem þanne in euery plas ⁝ ouer al hol & sounde.

Then she gives them food

¶ & þan she dude hem to drynke and ete ⁝ of þe beste þat miȝte bee:
& seruede hem alle at þe mete ⁝ & tauȝte þat sche was free.
Sche confortede hem with Al hure miȝt ⁝ & bad hem be glad & blyþe,
And hy hure þankede faire aplyȝt ⁝ & ete & dronke swyþe. 1393

and rich clothes.

¶ Wan þay had ete & dronke ynow ⁝ þe bord sche het arere,
Ryche garnymentȝ forþ sche drow ⁝ & by-tok hymen for to were.

Floripas then

þan said she: "lordes wel ȝe knawe ⁝ þat y haue do myche for ȝow
Suþþe y haue ȝow of prysoun drawe ⁝ agayn my fader prow: 1397
y do hym wrong ȝow to saue ⁝ Syn Olyuer þat her ys now
My broþer in batail ouer-come haueþ ⁝ & is worschip þer-with oundow.
y knowe O[lyuer] swyþe wel ⁝ he ne may noȝt to me be hud, 1400

asks Oliver if he will keep the promise he had made her.

noþeles ne drede him neuer adel ⁝ for me ne schal he be kud.
Now wolt þou Oliuer þat couenant holde ⁝ hwich þov me be-hete?
As þow saidest þat þow wolde ⁝ wanne þow in prysoun sete."

Oliver asks what she wants done,

¶ "ȝe," said he, "þat wil y do ⁝ do say me now þy wille." 1404

"þat wil y noȝt," quaþ sche þo ⁝ "til þou me han sakred tille."
þan O[lyuer] huld vp his hant ⁝ trewely for to holde — and swears to do whatever she wishes.
By is power þat couenant ⁝ þan spak she til hym & tolde,
þat a knyȝt þar was of fraunce ⁝ þat sche hadde longe y-loued; 1408 — [leaf 19] Then she says she has long loved
hwych was icomen of gret lyaunce ⁝ & a noble knyȝt aproued.
þe knyȝt *þat* was so gret of fame ⁝ was cosyn to kyng Charlou*n*,
& Gy of Borgoyne was þe name ⁝ of þat bolde baroun. — Guy of Burgundy, whom she had seen at the taking of Rome, when he slew Lucafer, king of Bandas.
"Wan þe Amyral my fader, Sir Balan ⁝ waste Rome Citee, 1412
þar saw ich þa*n*ne þat noble man ⁝ to don a dede free.
Lucafer of Bandas ⁝ a kyng of gret renoun,
On a stede y-armed was ⁝ and rod to þat Baroun,
And bar til hym wiþ a spere ⁝ to ha sleyn hi*m* in þe feld; 1416
& þe knyȝt þe strok away gan bere ⁝ manlich wyþ is scheld.
þe iantail kniȝt þan drow ys brond ⁝ & ȝaf hi*m* a stroke wiþ mayn,
þat hors & man adou*n* he wound ⁝ & leye þer-on þe playn.
Fro þat day in-to þys ⁝ myn herte haþ he yraft, 1420
Ne kepte y neuere more blys ⁝ were he to meward laft.
Wolde he be my worldly make ⁝ & weddy me to wyue, — If he will marry her, she will be baptised at once.
For his loue wold y take ⁝ cristendom al so blyue.
As þou art a trewe knyȝt ⁝ do & help now wat þou maye." 1424
Olyuer saide: "bi god al-miȝt ⁝ damesele y schal a-saye." — Oliver says he will do all he can.

NOw let we be þis Barou*n*s ther ⁝ speke we of other þyng. — X
Olyueris fader, þe duk Reyner ⁝ com to Charlis kyng, — Meanwhile Reyner tells Charles
Ther he was amo*n*g is host ⁝ & spekeþ on hys resou*n*: 1428 — 226
"For þy sake my so*n*ne ys lost ⁝ þat was a bold baroun,
To mo[r]ȝe erly wan it is day ⁝ to sechen hym wil y fonde, — that he is going to seek for Oliver.
& bote ich hi*m* aȝeward gete may ⁝ for sorwe y go to schonde."
¶ Wan þe Emp*e*rour haþ hurd hi*m* speke ⁝ of hi*m* he toke pyte, 1432 — Charles
On is fet sone gan he reke ⁝ & Roland þan clipeþ he:— — runs to Roland, and tells him that
"Cosyn," saide he, "þoȝ hit be so ⁝ þat hit falle in drede,
A message for me þow most do ⁝ *þat* toucheþ a mannys dede:
To Egremoygne-ward schelt*o*u fare ⁝ to morwe wa*n* it is day, 1436
To þe Amyral Balan þat is thare ⁝ and belyfþ on þe false fay. — he must go to Balan, and demand with threats the surrender of Oliver and his companions.
Loke for noþyng þat þow ne spare ⁝ to tellen hi*m* as y say.
On myn half say hi*m* *þat* he me restare ⁝ þat he haþ mystaken away,
And specialiche myn barouns free ⁝ hot hi*m* in myn helue, 1440

þat he hymen hastelich ȝelde aȝee ⁝ as he wol saue hy*m* selue.
And if a doþ noȝt as y say ⁝ & tarieþ *þer* wyþ to longe,
y wil do take hym on a day ⁝ & on galwys heȝe an honge."

Naymes ¶ þan hym spak duk Naymou*n* ⁝ that was his cou*n*seyller, 1444
A gret lord was he of renou*n* ⁝ & of fr*a*unce a doþþepeer.

remonstrates "Certis, sire, ȝe buþ noȝt sleȝ ⁝ to sende til hi*m* Roland:
By-þenk þ*at* he ys þy cosyn neȝ ⁝ and al þyn other hand.

[leaf 19, bk] Duk Ro[land] is a man of myȝt ⁝ þe doȝtyeste þ*at* lyþ to fraunce; 1448
þanne the to lese suche a knyȝt ⁝ it were a[1] sory chaunce.
Myn herte me ȝifþ þ*at* ȝif he went ⁝ and takeþ þ*at* iornee,

that they will never see Roland again. Then said the King, 'He shall not go alone, thou shalt go with him.' þ*at* þ*o*u ne seest hy*m* no more v*er*ament ⁝ & *þer*-for auyse þe."
"Wel dep*ar*dieux," quaþ þe kyng ⁝ "ne schal he noȝt gon al-one; 1452
Wend þow wiþ hym, my derlyng ⁝ my message schul ȝe done."

Basyn intercedes, ¶ By-fore þe kyng com duk Basyn ⁝ þe þridde doþþeper,
& of is speche by-þoȝte hi*m* ⁝ & neȝede Charlys neer.
"Sir," said he, "me þynkeþ now ⁝ be þat ȝe goþ aboute, 1456
þ*at* riȝtself willes þou þenkst ou*n*dow ⁝ þe beste of al þy route."

and Charles says, 'Thou, too, shalt go.' "Certis," quaþ Charlys, "and þ*o*u schalt gon ⁝ wyþ hymen & be þe þridde,
þ*at* schal my message to þe Amyral do*n* ⁝ and do now as y bidde."

Then Richard of Normandy protests, ¶ þan com forþ a doþþeper ⁝ Rychard of normaundye, 1460
And sayde to þe kynge ther ⁝ "sire, þow dost folye
In suche a message for to sende ⁝ of al þy lond þat prys,
To don hi*m* sle ther & to schende ⁝ amonges þyne enymys."

and Charles says he shall go with them as their guide. "Aha" ⁝ quaþ kyng Charlemayn ⁝ "now is þis wel by-þoȝt, 1464
þ*at* Rolond ne is felaws twayn ⁝ þe contreye ne knoweþ noȝt.
þ*o*u schalt ben hure iantail gyde ⁝ & my furþe Messager;
For þ*o*u knowest by eu*er*y syde ⁝ þe contreys fer & neer."

Then starts up Terry of Ardane, and remonstrates, ¶ Vp a sterte after þane ⁝ a doþþeper of fraunce, 1468
þe duk Terry of Ardane ⁝ A baro*u*n of gret lyaunce.
"Sir," said he, "what hast þow ment ⁝ wilt þow þyn barons spille?
If þay goþ, þan buþ þey schent ⁝ þay comeþ þe no more tille."

and Charles says he shall be the fifth. "Wel depardieu," quaþ Charlis þo ⁝ "greyþe þe on þy gere, 1472
þow schalt be þe .v. þ*at* schal go ⁝ my message for to bere."

Then Ogier ¶ Vp þan aros oppon ys fet ⁝ sir Ogier þe Denys,
& spak to Charlis thar a seet ⁝ & sayde on his deuys;

[1] MS. y.

"Sir," saide he, "y ȝow praye ⁝ as ȝe buþ of kyng*es* flour, 1476
Al þys doynge leteþ away ⁝ & kepeþ ȝour honour.
For if ȝour barou*ns* þat buþ fre ⁝ wendeþ in þat message,
In aunt*ur*e ys hure comyng aȝe ⁝ fram þat sory vyage."
Charlis saide to hym þan ⁝ wyþ a stordy chere; 1480
"y knowe þe for an hardy man ⁝ & of my lond a pere,
Such a message for to don ⁝ ne ys non bettere here.
Go þou al-so w*ith* hem ecchon ⁝ & be my messagere.
Cryst of heuene ȝow alle saue ⁝ my messagers alle sixe! 1484
& ȝut þe vij schulle ȝe haue ⁝ ȝour felaschip to make wixe."
¶ Sir Gy of Borgoygne stod faste bye ⁝ þe vij. doþeper ⁝
Charlis on hym caste ys eyȝe ⁝ & bad hi*m* come neer:
"Sir Gȳ," quaþ Char[lis], "y loue þe wel ⁝ for þow art of my blod,
& euere y hope þat y schel ⁝ for þow art wys & god: 1489
A doȝty knyȝt & hardy ynow ⁝ to don al ma*n*nys dede,
& canst ful wel as y trow ⁝ gon in such a nede.
þar-for Gyou*n*, by god of heuene ⁝ wyþ *þes* othre þou most gon; 1492
þan haue y barouns seuene ⁝ my message wel to don."
¶ þe nyȝt hure neȝehede faste ⁝ þe day was neȝ ago,
þe lordes buþ þan a-paste ⁝ wyþ-oute more a-do.
þys messagers agayn þe morwe ⁝ a-rayd he*m* for hure message. 1496
god saue hem alle fro sorwe ⁝ þay takeþ an hard vyage!
¶ On þe morwe wan it was day ⁝ & þe larke by-gan to synge,
þys messegers come in god aray ⁝ alle by-fore þe kynge;
Wel y-armed þorw-out al þyng ⁝ eu*er*echone þey ware, 1500
& toke hure leue of Char[lis] kyng ⁝ on hur*e* message forþ to fare.
Char[lis] bi-tok hymen god almiȝt ⁝ þe heȝ kyng of heuene.
Hure way toke þay þ*an*ne riȝt ⁝ to Egremoygneward ful euene;
To þe Amyral ward, sire Balan ⁝ on ys castel þar he lay. 1504

begs him not to send them.

Charles says he shall go too.

Then he turns to Guy of Burgundy,

[leaf 20]

says he shall be the seventh.

The knights get ready.

At daybreak

they take leave of Charles and start to Aigremont.

L Many was þe iantail man ⁝ þat for hymen bad *þat* day,
þat god hem *gra*untede *gra*ce & miȝtes ⁝ to aȝe come in god aray:
& forþ hem wendeþ *þes* noble knyȝtes ⁝ & takeþ hure iornay.
Ete we now þys lordes fare ⁝ god leue hym wel to spede! 1508
And t*ur*ne we aȝen þar as we ware ⁝ & of þe Amyral y wol rede.
For his sone, sir Fyru*m*bras ⁝ & is Sarsyns *þat* wern a-slawe,
Sory & wroþ ynow a was ⁝ riȝt al so sayþ þe sawe.

Meanwhile the Emir

summons seven kings to his presence,

Vij. kynges þo made he come ⁝ afforn ys owe presaunce; 1512
Peynymes þei were alle & some ⁝ & vnder his liegiaunce.
Among hem seuene on þar was ⁝ þat was chef of alle,
Ys name hote Moradas ⁝ þay comen to þe Amyralle.
¶ Moradas askede for wat nede ⁝ þat þay wern of sent. 1516

and tells them

þe Amyral ansuerede for a dede ⁝ "y-hyreþ now þantent.
Lordlynges, wel ȝe wyteþ alle ⁝ how Char[lis] þe kyng of *fra*unce
now is oppon my lond afalle ⁝ w*ith* prude & g*r*et bobaunce,
And he þenkþ my lond conquerere ⁝ & to don ous alle schame. 1520
Bot arst y þenke hy*m* affere ⁝ & alle hise to grame.

to go to Morymond and bid Charles

Wendeþ þer-for to Morymond ⁝ y-logged þer he lys,
And siggeþ to þe *crist*ene hon̄d ⁝ Char[lis] of parys,

[leaf 20, back]

Ys *crist*ene fayþ þat he for-sake ⁝ and be-lyue on Mahone, 1524

to give up Ferumbras, and become his vassal.

& hastelich myne amendes make ⁝ & ȝylde aȝeyn my sone,
& eke al þe realme of fraunce ⁝ þat he hur holde of me,
þorw-out al in god liegeance ⁝ for euere-more in fee:
& *þat* he fle fro þanne a-way ⁝ & lete my lond in pees. 1528
& yf he ne doþ noȝt as y say ⁝ þat neuere ne wil y sees,
Til y haue hi*m* distruyed ⁝ & alle þat y fynde of his;
for he me haueþ so sore anuyed ⁝ wendeþ & siggeþ hi*m* þys;
& ȝif ȝe meteþ w*ith* any cristen man ⁝ baroun outher knyȝt, 1532
lokeaþ þat ȝe legge hem an ⁝ & sleþ he*m* a-doun wyþ myȝt."

'This is a dangerous errand,' said Sir Moradas,

¶ Sir Mora[das] saide to þe Amerel ⁝ "þys message ys muche to drede.
þys frensche men buþ boþ lyther & fel ⁝ wan þay hereþ oȝt of quede,
& if we schul don þys message ⁝ we ne comeþ noȝt alle aȝeyn. 1536

'nevertheless we will do it.'

We wolleþ noþeles do þat vyage ⁝ *þer*-fore to ben a-sleyn.
þat y ne say it for no drede ⁝ ȝe mowe it wel deuyse,
Do we wolleþ wel þy nede ⁝ w*ith*-oute any feyntyse.
Me selue þy message y wil abede ⁝ in such a man*er*e gyse, 1540
þat, bot y be taken oþer dede ⁝ an hundred hit schulleþ a-gryse.
Wiþ my swerd scherp[1] y-grounde ⁝ hure crounes wol y schaue;
2320 &, bot if my sawe soþ be founde ⁝ maugre mot y haue."

The other six said they too would go.

¶ þe sixe saide þay wolde al-so ⁝ & faste þay made bost 1544
þat to Char[lis] þay wolde werche wo ⁝ & eke to al is host.
Sone þay wern araid ariȝt ⁝ þus vij kyngis y-vere,

[1] MS. schrep.

In stedes þat were fair of siȝt ⁝ & eke on riche armere.
Alday þai riden & noȝt ne aliȝt ⁝ to don þat ilke cure, 1548 They ride all day till they come to Mantrible, and on the next morning,
Til þai come to Mantrible at niȝt ⁝ & wolde abyde þere.
On þe morwenyng wan it was day ⁝ forþ wende *þes* kynges seuene,
To morymond-ward þay toke þe way ⁝ as he lay ful euene.
Faste þay passede ouer al þe weys ⁝ þey knew ful wel þe cost; 1552
Ne sparede þay hulles, noþer valeys ⁝ bote prikede forþ *with* bost.

As þese frensche men come ryde ⁝ on message fro Charloun, as the French ride along,
Duk Naymes gan be-holde a syde ⁝ & saw he*m* & hure penoun. Naymes espies the Saracens, and says,
"Mercy god," quaþ naymes þan ⁝ "now buþ we betraied; 1556
ȝonder y se come many a man ⁝ y-armed & wel araid.
Hit semeþ sarasyns as be siȝte ⁝ *þat* prikeaþ as wynd & rayn;
Willeþ we wiþ hymen mete & fiȝte ⁝ o*per* ȝe wollaþ *tur*ne agayn?" 'Shall we fight them, or retire?'
"Sir duk," quaþ Rolond, "what eyleþ þe ⁝ *per* ne buþ noȝt xxx^ti^ þare; 'There are
Ne .xx^ti^. neyþer, ful wel y se ⁝ why makest *þo*u such a fare? 1561 [leaf 21]
Mete we w*ith* hem on cristes name ⁝ & gowe to hymen afrou*nt*. not 20 of them,' says Roland,
We schulleþ hastely make tame ⁝ alle þilke heþene hound." 'we shall soon tame them.'
þay prykede hure stedes w*ith* hure spores ⁝ & þan þay ru*nn*e away;
Ne spared rigges noþer vores ⁝ til þay mette þat pray. 1565
¶ Wan þey come to-gadre neȝ ⁝ & Moradas þe kyng hem mette; When they come near the Saracens
A cryede to hymen wel an heȝ ⁝ & þus he hymen grette: Moradas challenges them.
"If ȝe lyueþ on þe heþene lay ⁝ Mahou*n* ȝov saue & kepe: 1568
& if ȝe ben *crist*ene men of fay ⁝ y diffie ȝow al þe hepe."
¶ "Sarsyn," saide duk neymou*n* ⁝ "haue þou muche maugree, 'We are messengers,' said Naymes.
We wendeþ on message f*ra*m Charlou*n* ⁝ to þe Amyral of nubbee.
þow scholdest no messager bere a dou*n* ⁝ for al þyn heȝ degree." 1572
"ȝus," quaþ he, "be Seynt Mahou*n* ⁝ & ȝut y ȝow diffye aȝee. Moradas defies them.
Wolleþ ȝe ȝou defende ⁝ ouþer ȝe wolleþ flen?"
"ȝea, so god me mende" ⁝ þe duk hi*m* sayde aȝen;
"Hwych of ȝow wil wyþ me fiȝte" ⁝ saide þe Sarsyn þan. 1576
"y am," quaþ Naymes, "al-redy i-diȝte ⁝ a-ȝeyn þe for to gan." Naymes accepts the challenge.
¶ "Fy," quaþ Moradas, "wat ert þow ⁝ *þat* telest of me so lyte? Moradas says he is too old.
For such a doȝeyne[1] y make auow ⁝ y nolde noȝt ȝyue a myte.
Al for elde ys hor þyn her ⁝ hit semeþ wel by siȝt: 1580
Send me anoþer þat ys my peer ⁝ on hi*m* to kyþe my miȝt.

[1] MS. doþeyne.

A doȝty iolyf bacheler ⁝ a ȝong man & a wiȝt,
þat is of body fresch & fier ⁝ wiþ such on wold y fiȝt."

Then he orders his companions to stand back.

¶ *þa*nne bad he to þe company ⁝ *þat* wiþ hi*m* were þare, 1584
þat non of he*m* ne come hi*m* ny ⁝ how so it by hi*m* fare.
"For al *þes cristen*e conquere y schal ⁝ þis day me self al-one,
& hymen presenty to þe Amyral ⁝ to-morwe or it be none."

Roland is indignant, seizes a spear and

¶ Wan Ro[land] hurd hi*m* how he spak ⁝ for angre a wax neȝ wod:
A tok a spere wiþ-oute lak ⁝ & rod til hi*m* wyþ mod; 1589
"Whar to makest þow al *þat* bost, Saraȝyn?" Ro[land] sede.
"Or þow passye out of þys cost ⁝ me self schal do þy nede.

charges him.

War now of me, ich þe diffie" ⁝ & bar til hi*m* is spere, 1592
And he anoþer tok an hye ⁝ & scherply til hi*m* gan bere.

Their spears are broken,

So harde þay acoupede on hur scheldes ⁝ *þat* broke buþ boþe hure schafte,
& þe peces fulle on þe feldes ⁝ þe hedes on þe tre by-lafte.

and they draw their swords.

Now haueþ þay hure speres tynt ⁝ hure swerdes out þay twyȝte, 1596
[leaf 21, back] On helmes & scheldes ful many a dynt ⁝ ayþer til oþer areȝte:
So harde þey hywe on helm & scheld ⁝ *þat* þay al to-rente,
Me miȝte y-sen in tal þe feld ⁝ how þe sparkes by-fore out-wente:
þe cercles *þat* were on hur helmes set ⁝ of perre y-mad & golde, 1600
þey bern he*m* dou*n* wiþ-oute let ⁝ ne miȝt þay noȝt w*ith*-holde.
What halt hit muche her-of to telle ⁝ to drecchen[1] ous of our lay?

Roland cleaves Moradas through his helmet.

Ro[land] ate laste wyþ hy*m* gan melle ⁝ & taȝte hi*m* a sory play.
Roland smot hym on þe helm an heȝ ⁝ & laid hit a dou*n* w*ith* mayn,
Helm & coyfe ther wyþ a clef ⁝ þorw-out heued & brayn. 1605
His auentaile ne vailede hi*m* noȝt ⁝ *þat* þe swerd ne clef hi*m* *þa*nne,
Til it hadde in-to is bodi i-soȝt ⁝ by-nythe is brest a spanne.

His followers

¶ Wa*n*ne his felawes *þat* y-sye ⁝ *þat* Moradas þe kyng was ded, 1608
Loude þay cryede & skryȝte an hye ⁝ "Mahou*n* wat is þy red?
How schulle we now ous selue gye ⁝ now ous lackeþ our hed?
þus *crist*ene hou*n*des schulleþ sore abye ⁝ auengy we hym," þay sed.

charge at Roland to avenge their leader.

¶ Agayn duk Ro[land] *þa*n com þys route ⁝ wyþ hure swerdes drawe,
& heweþ til hym al aboute ⁝ to hauen hem *þa*nne a slawe. 1613

Roland cuts Lambrok's head off, and

& Ro[land] ȝerne hi*m* gan defende ⁝ wyþ durendale is brond,
And st*ur*ne strokes til hymen he slente ⁝ *þa*nne wiþ boþe ys hond.
Rolond smot þe kyng Lambrok ⁝ wan he was ameued, 1616

[1] MS. dracchen *altered to* drecchen.

In þe necke ſ þat wyþ þat strok ſ A wypede of his heued.
A-noþer strok þan a gerte ſ to Colbrant þe kyng *with* mayn,
& þorw-out is helm & ys coyfe hi*m* herte ſ & [al] for-clef is brayn.
¶ þe foure oþre floȝen faste ſ wan þay seȝen hem falle, 1620
Ac þys frenschemen an haste ſ aȝe requilled hem alle,
& wan þay hadden hymen *with*-inne ſ alle þay sloȝe ſ saf on.
On was clouen in-to þe chynne ſ another to þe brust-bon;
þe þridde was styked *with* a sverd ſ þe furthe a-scapede away, 1624
And prykede faste to þe furd ſ þar *þat* þe Amyral lay;
Til he com to Egremoyne ſ neuere þat he ne blan:
þan wente he wiþ-oute ensoygne ſ to speke wiþ Balan.
¶ Wan *þat* þe Ameral y-saw hi*m* come ſ þilke heþene kyng, 1628
þan way aȝen hi*m* haþ he nome ſ & askede what tydyng.
"Cert*es* sire," sayde þe kyng ſ "suche tydyng*es* haue y broȝt
þat willeþ lyke þe noþyng ſ by *þat* þow art by-þoȝt.
ȝester day, so mote y thee ſ as we ryde forþ ryȝtes, 1632
Wiþ seuen glotou*ns* mette we ſ *þat* buþ of Char[lis] knyȝtes:
Al þyn Messagers þay han a-slawe ſ saue me *þat* am a-scaped,
To schewe to þe þorw my sawe ſ how *þat* ous is hapid.
¶ þey vij. þe vyage han vndertake ſ hiderward f*ra*m Char[lis] kyng,
To þe a message for to make ſ & hiderward buþ now comyng. 1637
Hure wyle miȝt þow now wel ȝylde ſ beo þai hider i-come,
Al quike y rede þan let he*m* hylde ſ þe glotou*ns* alle & some."
¶ "Alas!" saide þe Amyral þan ſ "now am y broȝt in care, 1640
No lengre lyue y ne can ſ of blisse y am al bare.
Furst y loste Fyru*m*bras ſ my sone *þat* was me dere:
& now haue y lost kyng Moradas ſ a knyȝt *with* oute pere:
And othre kynges manye ſ & muche of my socour; 1644
Now my folk*es* doþ þus wanye ſ y-lost ys myn honour."
Eue we her þan Amyrel ſ liggyng in sorwe & care;
& of þis barou*ns* y wil ȝow tel ſ þat to hymward buþ a-fare.
Wan þe vj. kynges wern y-sleyne ſ & þe vij^e^. was a-go, 1648
þan were þay alle in wittes tweyne ſ what was best to do.
Duk Naymes þe furste was ſ þat spak of þys entent:
"How mowe do, lordes, in this cas ſ þat we buþ now y-sent?
If we goþ now to þe Amyrel ſ certis we buþ y-schent. 1652

cleaves Colbrank's skull.

The others fly, but the French overtake them, and slay all, save one.

The Emir asks what tidings he brings.

The messenger tells him what has happened, and that the French knights are on their way with a message from Charles.

[leaf 22]

The Emir laments his knights and Ferumbras.

The French knights consult.

Naymes advises them

to return,

Turne we aȝe, y rede wel ꞉ & telle we how it stent."

but Roland declares he will

¶ "Nay," quaþ Roland to þe duyk ꞉ "þan [wer] we yuele spedde ;
Leuere me were to han be syk ꞉ liggyng on my bedde.
If god send grace my wit to helde ꞉ & my owe lif to saue, 1656
And durendale my swerd to welde ꞉ by-fore þis as y haue,

never turn back till he has delivered the message to Balan.

Turne aȝeynward y ne schal ꞉ for no mannis speche,
Til y ha spoke wyþ þe Amyral ꞉ whar ich hym euere seche :
& lokeaþ ȝe lordes do al-so ꞉ to kepe ȝou out of blame : 1660
& certis, sirs, bote ȝe do ꞉ ȝe doþ ȝow selue schame.

He proposes that they

¶ And take we þe heuedes of þys Sarsyns ꞉ & lede we with ous þader ;
Euerech trossye on at his dyuys ꞉ to þe arsoun of his sadel.
we willeþ hym lede forþ boldely ꞉ with ous wiþ-oute affray, 1664
& if þar is any þat spekeþ oȝt by ꞉ say we it is our pray.
& wan we comeþ to þe Amerel ꞉ al-so mot y waxe,

each present a head to Balan.

y schal him presenty[1] fair & wel ꞉ þe heuedes alle sixe."

2115?

Naymes dissuades them, but

¶ "Ro[land]," quaþ neymes, "why spekestou so? þou ert of heȝe parage,
Wilt þou þe selue & ous a slo ꞉ þorw such a fol outtrage ?" 1669

Terry supports Roland, and

"Be dure god," quaþ Terry þo ꞉ "it wil be riȝt god rage,
Riȝt as he wil let it be do ꞉ for þat is vassalage."

[leaf 22, bk] each takes a head.

¶ Euerech of hymen þan tok an hed ꞉ as it dyuysid was, 1672
& forþ þay riden wyþ-oute dred ꞉ god help him for is gras !

Naymes

Duk naymes be-fore þaym gan to fonde ꞉ & afferrom lokede þo :
þan saw he Mantryble afforn him stonde ꞉ & þe brigge þat lay þar-to.

points out Mantrible, and says it is Aigremont.

"By-holdeþ now, syrs," quaþ duk Naymoun ꞉ "þe ȝondre faire Citee :
Me þynkeþ þat þat is Egrymoun ꞉ þer we scholden bee." 1677

'Nay,' says Richard, 'it is Mantrible, with its bridge

"Nay," quaþ Richard of normaundye ꞉ "soþely y þe sigge,
Hit ys Mantryble þat þow sye ꞉ wyþ þe grete brigge.
A þes half Mantrible þe grete Citee ꞉ ys þe brigge y-set, 1680

of marble with sixty piers.

Al of marbre y-mad ys sche ꞉ wyþ a quynte iet.
Sixty pers þar buþ þar-on ꞉ þat buth grete & rounde.
þe werste piece of hem ecchon ꞉ cosnede a þousant pounde.
Oppon ech pere þar stent a tour ꞉ enbataild wyþ queynte engynne, 1684
Twenty knyȝtes of gret honour ꞉ mowe wel beo loged ynne.

The bridge is 100 yards long,

þe syd walles þat on þe brigge stondeþ ꞉ buþ an hundred pas of lengþe ;
Bot how dup sche ys no man ne fondeþ ꞉ þe ryuer is so gret of strengþe.

[1] MS. prensenty.

þe brigge ys of fair entaylle ⁝ on brede fourty fete. 1688 and 40 yards wide.
An hundred knyȝtes wyþ-oute faille ⁝ þer-on affrount mowe mete.
.x. cheynes þar buþ ouerthwart adrawe ⁝ in stedes dyuers y-set, Ten chains are drawn
As heuye as twenty men drogy mawe ⁝ ys euerech wiþ-oute let, 1691 across it.
In tyme of nede þe chaynes buþ bent ⁝ & on othre tymes buþ oundo.
Wo wer him þat wyþ-inne went ⁝ ȝyf he þar hadde a fo.
Oppon þe tour aundward riȝt ⁝ þar stondeþ a iuwel gay, Upon the tower
An egle of gold þat schynaþ briȝt ⁝ so doþ þe sonne on may.
þar is þe wacche y-mad aniȝt ⁝ wyþ sarsyns of gret aray ; 1696 the watch is set.
Many ys þe gode cristene kniȝt ⁝ þat þar haþ be don of day.
þe fairnesse þar-of no man ne wot ⁝ to telle it al on sonder.
þe dotouse ryuer me calt flagot ⁝ þat raply renneþ vnder : The river is called Flagot.
A geant ys maked briggeward ⁝ þat symeþ þe fend to see ; 1700 A giant is keeper of the bridge.
Wyþ an hache an honde heuy & hard ⁝ þe brigge ay kepeþ hee.
þe geant ys so wonderly wyȝt ⁝ and so pereillous on ys pray, So mighty is he that
þat þoȝ þar come an hundred kniȝt ⁝ þar forþ to take þe way,
Bot if þay don as he wol riȝt ⁝ wyþ-oute more delay, 1704
Hasteliche wil he wiþ hem fiȝt ⁝ & don hem out of day. he would be a match for 100 knights.'
for wham he may with þe hache arede ⁝ þoȝ he be i-armed wel,
He clefþ him doun to þe gurdelstede ⁝ ouþer is body þorw echdel."
Euerech til oþer þanne sede ⁝ "ther by-gynneþ luther haunsel, 1708 The French are frightened, but
To don þe Message þat we buþ bede ⁝ to Balan þe Amyrel."
¶ "Lordes," quaþ Ro[land], "now hauy cast ⁝ to speken wiþ þat hounde. Roland says he will tackle the giant [leaf 23]
To knowe ys wil y wil him tast ⁝ & drecchen him a stounde.
Til ȝe alle be wel apast ⁝ & þan iwil him ȝyue a wounde 1712
Wyþ durendal by godes fast ⁝ þat he ne schel neuere be sounde." and slay him.
¶ "Nay," quaþ Naymys, "by myn hed ⁝ so ne schalt þow noȝt ; 'Nay,' says Naymes,
If þou dudest as þou sed ⁝ it miȝte be dure aboȝt.
Ac wan we seeþ him doþ after my red ⁝ & makieþ it noþyng toȝt, 1716 'leave him to me.'
& y wille ouercome þe qued ⁝ wyþ lesynges þat y ha þoȝt."
¶ Alle þay duden þanne assente · to þat ' þat he gan sigge, They agree,
& forþward faste on hure way þey wente ⁝ & entrede on þe brigge. and ride on to the bridge.
þe Briggeward was y-redy ther ⁝ at entre of þe ȝeate, 1720
Wyþ an hol hundred of sarsyns fer ⁝ þat y-armed stode þar-ate. Naymes tries to cross,
¶ Duk Naymes furst gan to entre ⁝ þe brigge aforewarde, but the bridgeward
Ac þe Briggeward sone him hente ⁝ by þe brydel harde ; seizes his bridle.

& sone he askeþ wyþ-oute ensoygne ⁝ wyderward he was boun 1724

Naymes says "Sir," saiþ naymes, "to Egremoygne ⁝ þys day if me mown."
"Was men buth ȝe," sayde he agayn ⁝ "þat comeþ in such aray?"

they are on a message to Balan. "We buþ," quaþ he, "with Charlemayn ⁝ þe emperour, for soþ to say.
To Egremoyne we moste on his message ⁝ to þe Amyral sir Balan. 1728
Let ous noȝt of oure vyage ⁝ y praye þe, gode man."

'Ye must first pay a toll,' said the Saracen, ¶ "ȝe mote furst," quaþ þe Saraȝyn ⁝ "syþþe ȝe þyder fondeþ,
For þe truwage make fyn ⁝ þat to þis brigge longeþ."
& N[aymes] hym answerede sone ⁝ "do tel me wat is þe trow, 1732
& ful longe or hit beo none ⁝ þy pees schal wel be dow."
¶ þan Ansuerede þe wardeyn ⁝ "hit is noȝt lyȝt to fynde,
Ac noþeles y-hure me seyn ⁝ and haue it on þy mynde.

'of 100 maidens, Of grete hertes refet at al ⁝ y asky of ȝow an hundred, 1736
& clene maydens faire smal ⁝ al-so manye y-sondred.

100 falcons, An .C. of gyrfacouns y asky bo ⁝ y-muwed ouer ȝere,

and 100 white steeds; and for each hoof of your horses a carbuncle stone.' & an hundred of whyte stedes al-so ⁝ þat neuere no sadel bere.
For ech fot of ȝour stedes ⁝ þat ȝe now rydeþ on, 1740
ȝe mote al-so her paye nedes ⁝ a charbuncle ston.
Quyclych payeþ þys truwage ⁝ þat ȝe han i-hurd me sigge,
And wendeþ forth on ȝour viage ⁝ ouer þys iolif brigge.
& þoȝ ȝe now wolde leue hit ⁝ & turne aȝe as ȝe come, 1744
For-gon ȝou tidde þerfor ȝour heued ⁝ & þer-of nemaþ gome."

Naymes says it shall be paid, that their baggage is following, and there he will find all he requires, ¶ "Wel, deparadieu," nemys said ⁝ "al þys y knew be-fore,
of Al þyn askynge schaltou beo ipaid ⁝ siþþen it nys no more.
Oure harneys comeþ her be-hynde ⁝ wiþ to hundred men araid: 1748
With hymen schalt þou al þyng fynde ⁝ þat þov hast to ous y-said;
Gyrfacouns y-muwed & white stedes ⁝ & hertes of gresse y wene;

[leaf 23, bk] And louely ladies on hure wedes ⁝ maydeyns þay buþ clene.

and besides, coffers of gold and precious stones. þey bryngeþ al-so cofres fyld ⁝ of golde & precious stones; 1752
Tak y now þer-of wat þou wylt ⁝ and let ous gon at ones."

The keeper agrees, and lets them pass. ¶ "y grante wel," saide he þo ⁝ "suþþen þay schulleþ paye."
þe rayne þanne let he go ⁝ & let hem gon hure waye.
After him alle þan toke þe way ⁝ & Ro[land] gan lawe smere, 1756

As they cross Roland sees a Saracen leaning over the bridge; And lawyng to Naymes gan he say ⁝ þat he was a gret lyere.
¶ As þay ouer þe brigge gunne ryde ⁝ Ro[land] him lokede aboute,
A Sarasyn saw he ful of pride ⁝ ouer þe brigge þat lyned oute;

A boȝ adou*n* on þat tyde ⁝ and cauȝte hym by þe snoute, 1760 stoops down, and pitches him over.
& cast hi*m* on þe ryuer vnryde ⁝ & folghede þo forþ þe route.
¶ "Alas," quaþ Neymys, "wat man is þys ⁝ alas! why fareþ he so? 'Alas!' says Naymes,
Hys heȝe herte & his hardynys ⁝ schel brynge ous alle in wo. 'you will bring us into trouble.'
y had leu*ere* þan myn hors y-wys ⁝ were we fayre ago, 1764
Or we wern a-spyed of þys ⁝ god kepe ous *fra*m oure fo!"
¶ þay wern þa*n*ne ful sore agaste ⁝ þe Citee to wende þorwgh,
Noþeles þa*n*ne þai p*r*ikede faste ⁝ til þay wer passed þe borwgh. They ride on,
til þey wer comen to Agremou*n* ⁝ neuere þey ne astynte. 1768
& bi-fore þe castel þay liȝte adou*n* ⁝ & at þe ȝeate in þay wente. and arrive at Aigremont.
¶ Wyþ a sarsyn þan þai mette ⁝ þus barou*n*s gode & lel,
And askede of hi*m* wiþ-oute lette ⁝ war was hure Amyrel. They enquire where Balan is.
þe sarsyn hym answerede þer ⁝ þat faste þar-by was he, 1772
Sittynge on a grene erber ⁝ & talkede wyþ kynges three.
¶ "Lorlynges," saide naymes þa*n*ne ⁝ "delyuerieþ me þe wryt, Naymes says
þ*at* Char[les] sente to sir Balanne ⁝ for y wol presente hit.
y wolde fayne be þe furste ⁝ to tellen hi*m* oure message, 1776 that he will deliver the message;
Leste þe Amyral don ous burste ⁝ for any of oure outrage."
¶ "Let of, sir duk," Sir Ro[land] sede ⁝ "whar-to spekest þow so? but Roland says
þyn herte ys naȝt to such a dede ⁝ me self y wil hit do.
y schal be þe furste of alle ⁝ þat our message schal a-bede, 1780 he will be the first to tell it,
Wat so eu*ere* þar-of falle ⁝ y ne leuet for no drede
þe lettre þat ys til hym wryte ⁝ takeþ hi*m* me, y praye,
& þe heuedes þat we of smyte ⁝ ȝusterday by þe waye;
& als ȝe alle schul sen it wel ⁝ boldelich wil y gon, 1784
& y wil hymen to Amyrel ⁝ presenty vp anon: and will present the heads to Balan.
y schal it don apertely ⁝ be god þat me haþ boȝt:
For drede of hi*m* ne his maygny ⁝ nel ich spare noȝt."
Al was til hym þo by-take ⁝ be hure co*m*mun assent, 1788 They give him the heads, and enter the arbour.
& þat present to Amyral make ⁝ in-to þe erber þa*n* þay went. [leaf 24]
¶ þe A[myral] þan þay founde þer ⁝ co*n*selyngge w*ith* kynges þre,
And wyþ hymen a gret power ⁝ saraȝyns of hure meyne,
Ac noþeles þey of fraunce ⁝ affore þe Amerel ȝude 1792
And Ro[land] wiþ sterne co*n*tina*n*ce ⁝ ys message þ*us* gan bude: Roland delivers his message
GOd þ*at* ys our Sauyor ⁝ þat al þyng knowþ & seeþ, 'God save Charles
Saue Char[les] þe Emperour ⁝ & al þ*at* wiþ hi*m* beeþ!

and the devil take thee, and all thine.

& þe Amyral þat sittest ther ⁝ þe deuel þe for-drawe, 1796
And alle þat buþ wiþ þe her ⁝ & lyueþ on þ^e false lawe:
For þov mayntenest þef reyuours ⁝ her neȝ to þyn honde,
To gon aboute & robby ous ⁝ þat walkaþ on þy londe.

Yesterday seven robbers of thine tried to rob us, but they were sadly deceived.'

¶ As we ȝusterday at pryme ⁝ hiderward comen euene, 1800
on þe gate we mette of þyne ⁝ stronge þeues seuene.
þay þoȝte ous þar haue be-reyued ⁝ of our hors & of our gere,
Ac þay were foule deceyued ⁝ hure heuedes þay lefte there;
& if þou ne miȝt me þar-of ilyue ⁝ be-hold her war þay beeþ." 1804

He throws down the heads,

a caste þe heuedes by-for him blyue ⁝ þat he & hyse hit seeþ.
¶ "Herkne ȝut more," said he þan ⁝ "þe cause of oure comyng.

and says, 'We have been sent to demand the holy relics

We buþ y-sent[1] to þe, Balan ⁝ be Charlis, þe Comly kyng.
By ous sente he þe to sayn ⁝ to warnye þe by-forn, 1808
þe nayles þow scholdest him ȝelde aȝeyn ⁝ & eke þe croune of þorn,
& þe oþre relyqes þat buþ fre ⁝ þat þou hast away y-born
Out of Rome ys owe Citee ⁝ & elles þow gest a torn.

and the five knights.

¶ þov scholdest hym ȝelde aȝe also ⁝ ys barouns þou hast y-take, 1812
And out of þy prisoun let hem go ⁝ & for hymen amendes make.

And if thou refuse we will

& certis he sayþ bote þow do ⁝ after þat is lettre spake,
He wol þe chacy as ys fo ⁝ & werche þe sorwe & wrake.
Whar ere þou be founde in londe ⁝ of hym þou miȝt be adrad, 1816

take thee and hang thee.'

for þe tyȝd be-take wyþ honde ⁝ & to parys þou worst y-lad,
And thar þanne þe tyȝd be an honge ⁝ ys auow he haueþ y-mad.
So schel he quyte þe þy wronge ⁝ & þer-of wil y be glad."

Balan is enraged, swears he will have vengeance,

¶ þe Amyral wax þan wod & wroþ ⁝ wan he haþ herd him speke; 1820
& be Mahoun he swor ys oþ ⁝ þat he wolde ben awreke,
Of þilke þat slowe kyng Moradas & ys oþre kynges fyue:

and specially on Roland.

& namlich of him þat so hardy was ⁝ to fore him so to stryue, 1823
& presenty til him with such outrage ⁝ þay heuedes bi-fore him selue,
& so vylenly beode ys message ⁝ & schamy hem in euery helue[2].

[leaf 24, back] He orders him to stand aside,

He het Roland þan stonde a-side ⁝ ther him self al-one,
Til he hauede y-herde þat tyde ⁝ þe speche of euerechone.
& be Mohoun þan swer þe schrewe ⁝ þat he nolde ete no bred, 1828

[1] MS. of y-sent.

[2] *This line at the bottom in the margin:—*
for þy schrewed sake as he sayde & to ous spake.

Til he were al to-hewe ⁝ for þe message þat he abed.
"ȝif þow dost so longe faste" ⁝ Rolond to hi*m* sede,
"þyn herte þanne wil ouercaste ⁝ & ake wil þyn hede."
¶ Duk neymys com forth þan ⁝ & by-fore Balan ȝude, 1832 and then Naymes courteously delivers Charles' message to Balan.
And in þe fairest manere þat he can ⁝ þe Message he gan abude;
"Now list to me, sire Amerant ⁝ & tak it to non outrage,
War-for we buþ to þe y-sent ⁝ þoȝ y telle my message.
Charlys kyng & Emp*er*our ⁝ sente þe to sayne, 1836
þat þ*o*u scholdet wyþ honour ⁝ ȝelde vp til hi*m* aȝeyne
þe ryche relyqes þat þov toke ⁝ in Rome ys owe Cytee:
& al-so þow scholdest loke ⁝ þ*a*t is barons were sent aȝe,
þ*a*t þow hast to þy prisou*n* take ⁝ & liggeþ among hur*e* fone: 1840
& his amendes þ*o*u scholdest make ⁝ of þe harmes þ*o*u hast hi*m* done:
Outher such word he þe sent ⁝ þat he nel neuere a-stynte,
Or he þe habbe wyþ strengþe y-hent ⁝ outher slawe þe w*ith* swerdes dynte." Balan tells him to stand aside till he has heard the others.
"Wel," said he, "y knowe ys wille ⁝ fairer þ*o*u abust þy tale. 1844
Let anoþer ys message telle ⁝ & stond þ*o*u þer by þy fale."
¶ þa*n* com forþ hym bi-fore ⁝ Rychard of Normaundye; Richard of Normandy
A strong knyȝt & a wel icore ⁝ was he wiþ-oute lye:
"Herkne," said he, "sire Balan ⁝ Ameral of nubbye: 1848 repeats the message.
& y wil her as y can ⁝ my message to þe ou*n*wrye.
¶ Charlys þe noble kyng of fraunce ⁝ sendeþ to þe tydynge,
þ*o*u scholdest leue þy false creau*n*ce ⁝ & belyue on heuene kynge:
þ*o*u also ȝelde hi*m* þe croune of thorn ⁝ & ys othre relyqes dere, 1852
þat þ*o*u dudest a-way be born ⁝ in Rome thar thay were;
A*n*d eke ys barouns þat buþ y-take ⁝ þow scholdest he*m* ȝelde aȝeyn;
And suþþe to hi*m* amendes make ⁝ for hymen þ*a*t buþ y-sleyn.
Outher certis for þy wronge ⁝ he doþ þe now to seyn, 1856
þow worst ful heȝe an honge ⁝ wyþ-inne þ*e*s moneþys tweyn."
"ȝea ⁝ haue þow yuele g*r*ace" ⁝ þe Amyral sayde an hye, Balan
"þ*o*u semest me by thy face ⁝ Rychard of Normaundye.
He þ*a*t slow myn owen Eem ⁝ þe kyng of Mandralye; 1860
Were þ*o*u he by þys leem ⁝ sone þow scholdest dye.
Now haue y herd three of ȝow ⁝ þat wolde i were in bale.
Go thow to þy felawes now ⁝ & þe furthe let telle ys tale." tells him to join Roland and Naymes, and let the fourth tell the message.
¶ þan com forþ a doþþepeer ⁝ duk Basyn of Genueys, 1864 [leaf 25]

Basyn delivers the message.

& to þe Amyral he wente ner ⁝ & til hym þus he seys:
"Wost wat word he þe sente ⁝ Charlis kyng by ous.
As þou ne wilt be y-schente ⁝ to ȝelde hi*m* his barons,
And þe scherpe croune of thorn ⁝ & þe nayles three, 1868
War wiþ cristes flesch*e* was torn ⁝ on þe rode tree;
& if þou tarie longe ⁝ her-wyþ þou worst y-schent
Heȝe þow worst an honge ⁝ such word he þe sent."

Balan tells him to stand aside with Roland, and let another speak, and after him Terry, of Ardennes, a stern, grim man, fiercely repeats it.

"ȝea, trupt" ⁝ quaþ þe Amyrale ⁝ "y set noȝt by þy sawes. 1872
let come þe fyfþe & telle ys tale ⁝ & go þou to þy felawes."
¶ þe duk of Ardane, sire Terry ⁝ sterte forþ on is fet:
Wyþ a st*ur*ne look & hardy ⁝ is herte was ful gret:
Ys berd was long, & al whyt hor ⁝ a was [a] grymly freke. 1876
His brest he bend vp as a bor ⁝ & to Amyral gan he speke:
"Now list to me, þow Saraȝyn ⁝ þat makest so gret bobaunce,
What word þe sende Charlemyn ⁝ þe noble kyng of fraunce.
Charlis þe kyng of fraunce ⁝ þe sende þis tydynge, 1880
To leue þy false creaunce ⁝ & belyue on heuene kynge;
& ȝelde hi*m* þou scholdest þe croune of þorn ⁝ & þe nayles three,
Hwych þou & þyne away han born ⁝ of Rome is owe Citee;
& ek ys barou*n*s þ*a*t þou hast y-take ⁝ þou scholdest he*m* sende a-gayn,
& ys amendes fayre make ⁝ for þilke þow hast a-slayn: 1885
And ellis for þy wronge ⁝ or come þ*us* monþes twayn,
Wel heȝe þou werst an honge ⁝ he sendeþ þe þus to sayn."

Balan is frightened at him,

¶ þe Amyral herknede hym ful wel ⁝ how he tolde ys tale: 1888
A-fryȝt he wax of hym su*m* del ⁝ so grym a was in gale:
"þow semest bet," quaþ Amerel ⁝ "a deuel gonde in dale,
þan a man of flesch*e* & fel ⁝ so grym þou art a fale.

and asks him what sort of a man is Charles.

Ac noþeles woldy of þe fayn ⁝ wyte wyþ-oute strif, 1892
Wat maner man ys Charlemayn ⁝ & how he let his lif."

Terry tells him that he is a noble and religious man,

Terry hi*m* ansuerede þan ⁝ at schorte wordes & rou*n*de:
"Charlis ys a noble man ⁝ nys nowar is per y-founde:
He loueþ god almiȝty wel ⁝ & eke al holicherche. 1896

and that with one blow of his fist he could knock out a man's brains.

þat day come neu*er*e ne schel ⁝ þ*a*t [he] ne wil almys werche.
Gode knyȝtes wil he haue ⁝ goynge w*ith* hym aboute.
Were a her so god me saue ⁝ þan wer þou broȝt in doute;
W*ith* ys hond a wolde þe ȝyue ⁝ a such on on þ^e luste 1900

þat al þy breyn scholde clyue ⁊ al aboute ys fuste." [leaf 25, back]
¶ Wan þe Amerel herd him sigge so ⁊ in ys herte wax he wroþ ; Balan is angry, vows to hang Terry.
"þou ferly freke," saide he þo ⁊ "of o þyng say me soþ ;
And y wer now on þy mastrye ⁊ as þou art her in myne, 1904
Tel me be waye of companye ⁊ how wostou þan do by me."
"By þe cristendom þat y fong" ⁊ quaþ Terry þanne sone,
"þou scholdest be ful heȝe an-honge ⁊ þis day ȝut or none."
"So schalt þow beo þe self" ⁊ saide þe Amyrel þanne : 1908 and calls the sixth.
"Go stand ther in þat other helf ⁊ & let come þe sixte manne."
¶ þan com forþ a doþþepeer ⁊ Erld Ogier þe Deneys, Then comes Ogier, and delivers the message.
& to þe Amyral he neȝeþ neer ⁊ & til him þan he seys :
"Charlemayn, kyng of fraunce ⁊ sente þe word be ous, 1912
þow scholdest, wiþ-oute more distaunce ⁊ ȝelde him his barouns,
& þe scherpe croune of þorn ⁊ & þe oþere reliqes dere,
þat þow & þyne away han born ⁊ of Rome ther þay were
& cristendom þou scholdest fonge ⁊ & leue þy foule entent ; 1916
& amendie hem of þy wronge ⁊ of al þyng þou hym hast offent.
& if þou tariest oȝt to longe ⁊ þan certis ert þow schent,
He þe wil don heȝe an-honge ⁊ & such word he þe sent."
"y haue y-hurd .vj. of my fon" ⁊ saide þe Amyrelle, 1920 Balan calls for the seventh knight.
"Do let come þe .vij. anon ⁊ and is tale let hym telle."
¶ Wyth þat com sterte þe gode Gy ⁊ þat duk was of Borgoygne, Guy of Burgundy next delivers the message.
þat bore was in normaundy ⁊ y-norschid in Sessoyngne.
He comeþ by-fore þe Amyrel ⁊ & ys message abed him þere, 1924
Riȝt as y ȝow now telle schel ⁊ ȝif ȝe me wolleþ here :
"Charlis, þat is of fraunce kyng ⁊ & of Rome Emperour,
Hoteþ þe þorw alle þyng ⁊ to leuen ⁊ þyn errour ;
& hoteþ þe þat þou for-sake ⁊ þy false god Mahone, 1928
& to cristendom þat þov take ⁊ and belyue on godes sone.
Such word al-so he sendeþ þe ⁊ Charles þe Emperour,
þat þou him scholdest sende aȝe ⁊ ys knyȝtes of honour[1] ;
And ȝelde • aȝe þe croune of thorn ⁊ and the naylles three, 1932
War-wiþ cristis flech was torn ⁊ on þe rode tree ;
& þe other relyqes ryche ⁊ wyche þov him hast y-raft ;
Oþer ellis certis he wil þe syche ⁊ whar þou euere be laft ;

[1] MS. hononour.

& take þe as a proued þef ⁝ an do þe wel heȝe an-honge. 1936

and advises him, if he loves his life,

& þer-for if þy lif is lef ⁝ ne tarie þou noȝt to longe :
Y wil þe techen how þow may ⁝ abaty al þys strif ;

[leaf 26]

& loke þou do as y þe say ⁝ if þou wilt haue þy lyf.
Al þy cloþes þou schalt of don ⁝ with wyche þou art y-shrid, 1940
& eke þyn hosyn & þyn schon ⁝ let don of þer myd ;

to go barefoot and bare-headed,

Lef þou sengle on þy scherte ⁝ & bar-fot þou most go,
Al open-her, & eke oungerte ⁝ and be-for Char[les] com þow so,

and beg mercy from Charles.

Wyþ a rop aboute þy nekke ⁝ to Char[les] so wend an hye, 1944
& loke þat þou þan mukly speke ⁝ & to hym mercy crye.
& þus schalt þou gete þy pees ⁝ & esye al þy lond :
& elles ne wol he neuere cees ⁝ til þow beo broȝt to schond."

The Emir is fearfully angry, and swears

¶ þe Amyral gan waxe wonder wroþ ⁝ wan he herd him speken : 1948
By Mahoun þanne swer he ys oþ ⁝ þat sone a wolde be wreken
Of hymen þat hadde ys kynges slayn ⁝ & dryuen him so to schonde.

he will hang them all.

He swor he scholde neuere beo fayn ⁝ til þey were alle an-honge.
¶ þe ȝeates were þanne sone y-schet ⁝ & þe draȝt-brige vp y-drawe ;
Sone he þoȝte wiþ-oute let ⁝ þus barouns lete don of dawe : 1953

He and his Council

þe Amyral bende ys browes rowe ⁝ & clepede is consaile :
Kyng Sortybrant & oþre ynowe ⁝ ther come wyþ-oute fayle.

consult what is to be done with the knights.

"Barouns," sayd he, "þanne sone ⁝ telleþ me ȝour purpos : 1956
What is þe beste wyþ hem to done ⁝ þat buþ now her enclos,
þat habbeþ þus my kynges slone ⁝ & foule oundo my los ?
Whar-for to ȝow y make my mone ⁝ eniugieþ ȝe my foos."

They advise

¶ Sortybrant spak þat word for alle ⁝ wan þat þay were assent : 1960
"Sleeþ hem wat so þer-of by-falle ⁝ þat is our iuggyment.

death by torture,

Hastely doþ þey be to-hewe ⁝ & sleeþ hem wyþ such turment ;
& so þow schalt hemen alle schewe ⁝ þat þay buþ al mys-went.

and afterwards to go to Morymond and attack Charles.

& þar-after schalt þow wende ⁝ to Morymond wiþ þyn host, 1964
And take þe kyng þat is ounhende ⁝ Charlys for al þis bost ;
& discoumfitye þar his ferde ⁝ þat wiþ hym dar abyde.
þan do an-honge him wyþ þe berde ⁝ Char[lys] for al ys pride.
& þus þow schalt a-wreke þe ⁝ of alle þyn enymys." 1968

Balan is pleased, and orders Oliver and the others to be brought

"By Mahoun," þanne sayde he ⁝ "þys ys a god deuys.
To my Gayhol goþ anon ⁝ & þe fyue þat buþ ther
Bryngeþ hem out euerechon ⁝ to hure falawes her.

þys day ne wol y on myn halle ⁝ drynke whit wyn ne red, 1972 — that they may all be hanged together.
Til y [haue] seen þe glotou*ns* alle ⁝ on schentfule deþe be ded."

FLorippe, his doȝtre þe cortoyse ⁝ in chambre þar sche was, — Floripas hearing the noise comes to the hall,
In the paleys y-hurde noise ⁝ & þyder sone she gas;
And er sche cam strauȝt in-to halle ⁝ neue*r*e heo ne stente, 1976 [leaf 26, back]
& forþ sche þraste among he*m* alle ⁝ & to hur fad*er* ryȝt heo we*n*te.
By þᵉ hond she tok hi*m* euene ⁝ & drow hym by þᵉ oþr*e* helue,
& askede of hi*m* what were þay seuene ⁝ þ*a*t stode þar by he*m*-selue. — and asks her father who the knights are.
¶ "Doȝtre dure," þan saide he ⁝ "as Mahou*n* me auau*n*ce, 1980 — Balan tells her,
H*i*t beþ kniȝt*es* y-sent to me ⁝ fr*a*m charlis kyng of fraunce;
Myne kynges þay han a-slawe ⁝ hyderward as þay come,
& avoweded wel wiþ hure sawe ⁝ & p*r*esented þe hedes to me.
And ȝut were þay noȝt apaid þ*er*-by ⁝ bote wolde me greue more, 1984
Hure message þay abode dispitously ⁝ & schamede me ful sore,
Now, dure doȝtere, myn Al-one ⁝ wat ys þy gode red — and asks her what she advises him to do with them.
Wyþ myn enymys for to done ⁝ þ*a*t habbeþ ido þis qued?"
¶ þan hi*m* ansuerede þ*a*t faire mayde ⁝ sleȝ sche was & sad: 1988 — She recommends that they be
"So þ*a*t ȝe þer-of be a-paide ⁝ my red schel sone be rad;
Doþ þ*a*t hy be faste y-bounde ⁝ sonderliche eu*er*echon,
& suþþen y-cast to þe grou*n*de ⁝ euerech by hym on;
& þanne wyþ swerdes sherp y-grou*n*de ⁝ let hewen he*m* flesch & bon, — hewn to pieces.
þ*a*t no lym be laft y-sounde ⁝ & chaste ȝe so ȝour fon." 1993
¶ "By Mahou*n*, doȝtre," saide he ⁝ "parforny y wol þy red, — Balan declares he will follow her advice.
Ne schal no mete synke on me ⁝ or þ*a*t þaye beo ded.
& ek hure felawes for wham þay come ⁝ of pryson y wil do fecche,
& þay schulleþ haue þe selue dome ⁝ nel y no lenger drecche." 1997
¶ "Fader," quaþ sche, "let beo þyn haste ⁝ it is wel neȝ þe non, — Floripas says, 'It is now near noon,
Hit were ful longe ȝow to vaste ⁝ or þis were al y-don.
Takeþ hem to me al þe hepe ⁝ and goþ ȝe to ȝour mete, 2000
And sykerliche y wil he*m* kepe ⁝ þe wyle þ*a*t ȝe doþ ete. — I will take care of them, and after thou hast eaten it can be done.'
After [þe] mete fol wel moȝe ȝe ⁝ al þys þyng ful-fille.
Now, fader, as ȝe louyeþ me ⁝ doþ ȝe as y telle."
¶ "Doȝtre," saide þe Amyrel ⁝ "þy cou*n*seil ys god & hende; 2004 — Balan agrees,
So tak he*m* to þe & kep he*m* wel ⁝ til y to þe sende."
þan hi*m* spak kyng Sortybran ⁝ wordes wel ou*n*kende: — but Sortybran
"þow ert a-sotid, as y am man ⁝ þy doȝtre wil þe schende.

By-þenk þe wel of þat brayde ⁝ þat touchide duke Myloun; 2008

warns him that Floripas will betray him, for

How ys doȝtre hym betrayde ⁝ þat hyȝte Saramoun,
Wan sche tok out Godefrayde ⁝ þat was in his prysoun.

[leaf 27]

þe Duk þanne þay yuele arayde ⁝ to deþe þay duste him doun,
& she hym wedede after þan ⁝ þat was hure fader fo. 2012

women are not to be trusted.

(Many ys þe manlich man ⁝ þat þorw womman ys by-go.)

Floripas becomes pale with rage, abuses Sortybran,

¶ Wanne þat mayde y-hurde þys ⁝ for wraþþe she was neȝ wod,
For angre sche wax al pal y-wys ⁝ & spak til him with mod;
"Say, þow gadelyng horesone ⁝ lecher, & stronge þef! 2016
To speke yuele euere ys þy wone ⁝ Mahoun ȝyue þe euele þref!
Wy woldest þow letten wiþ þy speche ⁝ þat ys my fader lef?

and threatens him.

If y may lyue y wol þe teche ⁝ a torn þat schal þe gref."

Balan quiets her.

¶ "Doȝtre," quaþ Balan, "y þe pray ⁝ now let al þat be stille, 2020
& tak þys prysouns & go þy way ⁝ for haue þou schalt þi wille."
"As ȝe willeþ," sche gan say ⁝ þe barons sche wendeþ tille:

Floripas leads the knights

"Now comeþ wyþ me," quaþ þat may ⁝ "ȝut haue ȝe her non ille."

¶ Wyþ hure þan way forþ þay nome ⁝ þorȝ-out halle & bour, 2024

to her chamber.

Til þay in-to hure chambre come ⁝ þat y-buld was on a tour.
Wan þay weren alle yn y-paste ⁝ þe mayde & þay yfere,
Florippe het schitte þe dore [faste] ⁝ & welcomedem with gode chere.

Roland sees Oliver, runs to him, and kisses him.

¶ Roland y-saw erld Olyuer ⁝ & ys herte wax glad anon, 2028
Wel sone þo he neȝed him ner ⁝ & to hym gan he gon.
Ro[land] kuste him louelich ther ⁝ & þonked god al-on,
þat he haþ founde him hol & fer ⁝ thar among his fon.

Oliver enquires after his father.

Olyuer þanne gan a-spye ⁝ what is fader doþ; 2032
& Roland sayde; "sykerlye ⁝ for þe he ys ful wroþ.
þer nis no murgȝþe þat may him gayne ⁝ y say þe verament,
Til he may hure word certayne ⁝ by þe al how it stent."

¶ Wan þay were ther alle y-same ⁝ þes doȝopers xij. of fraunce, 2036

Floripas says, that

Florippe þat maide hadde ioie & game ⁝ to sen hure contynaunce.
To hem com þan þat iantail may ⁝ & corteisly spekeþ hem tille:
'Lysteþ now, Lordes, wat y schal say ⁝ & perfornyeþ ȝe my wille.

if they wish to escape, they must promise to do one thing for her.

ȝif ȝe þynkeþ to askape away ⁝ þat my fader ȝow ne spille, 2040
To me ȝe mote sykery ȝour fay ⁝ my purpos to fulfille:
& þat is ⁝ to do me haue a þyng ⁝ þat al myn herte ys on."

Naymes promises to

"We wolleþ," quaþ Naymes, "be heuene kyng ⁝ so þat we mowe it don;

So þat þou ous sykerye affore ⁝ to help ous in this clos, 2044 do whatever she wishes.
þat non of ous ne beo for-lore ⁝ her among our fos."
þar-to sche sykerede þanne hure fay ⁝ to help hem be hure miȝte,
In alle wyse þat sche may ⁝ to daye for þar riȝte. [leaf 27, back]
¶ & þanne tok sche þat swete wyȝt ⁝ duke naymes by þe honde : 2048
"Tel me," sche saide, "þy name ariȝt ⁝ as þow art freo to fonde." She asks Naymes his name.
þe duk aunswerede þat mayde free ⁝ humelich & fayre :
"Damesel, certis me clepeþ me ⁝ duke neymys of Bauayre. He tells her.
Char[lis] consailer am y pryue ⁝ y-sent on his message." 2052
"By Mahoun, sire," saide sche ⁝ "þou madest an hard vyage."
¶ þanne to Richard of Normandy ⁝ wente þat burde briȝt, Then she asks Richard's name;
& prayedem faire & corteysly ⁝ to tel hure what he hiȝt.
"Certis y wol ȝow telle my name" ⁝ sayde he, "with-oute lye, 2056
In fraunce men calleþ me, ma dame ⁝ Richard of Normaundye."
"ȝe ⁝ Mahoun," quaþ sche, "ȝyue þe schame ⁝ for þyn oncortesye! and reproaches him for having slain her uncle.
Myn vncle þow slowe a kniȝt of fame ⁝ Corsible of Mantrie.
Ac suþþe þou art now on þis clos ⁝ among þes fair ferede, 2060
y wol þe kepe fro þy fos ⁝ haue þov none drede."
¶ To Rolond þanne tornde þat mayde ⁝ þat was so gret of fame : She questions Roland next.
"Ia[n]tail kniȝt," til him sche sayde ⁝ "tel þov me þy name."
"Ful fayne," sayde þe noble knyȝt ⁝ "wil ich, swete dame. 2064 He tells her who he is,
Ro[land][1] my name is callid riȝt ⁝ wan y am at hame;
And Char[les] suster sone y am ⁝ y-comen of heȝ parage;
And to þy fader fro him y cam ⁝ to bryngen him message."
þan hur spak þe[2] damesel ⁝ "myn herte now waxeþ liȝt, 2068
þat þyng now hope y gete wel ⁝ on wham myn herte ys piȝt."
Wel corteysly þanne aboȝede she ⁝ & to help hure gan him praye.
"Tel me þy wil," þan sayde he ⁝ "& y wol do what y maye." and asks what he can do for her.
¶ þan hure spak þat burde briȝt ⁝ "herknyaþ my chesoun : 2072 Floripas tells him she loves Guy of Burgundy,
In Charlis companye ys a knyȝt ⁝ as fers as any lyoun;
Gwy of Borgoygne ys name ys riȝt ⁝ y-called in euery toun;
On hym for-soþe my loue ys liȝt ⁝ for he ys god baroun.
Wan þat my fader sire Balan ⁝ be-segede Rome Citee, 2076 since she saw his prowess at Rome.
þar saw y þat doȝty man ⁝ to done a dede free :
Lucafer þe kyng of Bandas ⁝ a strong kyng of renoun,

[1] [Duk] Roland my name is riȝt. [2] [þat] þe.

In a stede y-armed was ⁝ & rod to þat baroun.
Lucafer egrelich wyþ a spere ⁝ mette hym in þe feld, 2080
& Gy þe strokes awey gan bere ⁝ manliche with ys scheld.
Gyoun þanne adrow is brond ⁝ & ȝif him a strok with mayn,
þat hors and man a-doun it wond ⁝ & leye þer on þe playn.
Riȝt fro þat day in-to þis ⁝ myn herte haþ he y-raft. 2084
[leaf 28] y-now y hadde of ioie & blys ⁝ were his to me-ward laft;
Wolde he be my worldly make ⁝ & wedde me to wyue,
For his loue wold y take ⁝ cristendom þanne blyue.
As þow art a trewe knyȝt ⁝ & for doȝty baroun y-knowe, 2088
Help me to haue þat worldly wyȝt ⁝ & y[1] wil ben is owe."

Roland laughs, says he knows Guy well, and that he is close to her at the moment.

¶ Rolond aunswerede hure & low ⁝ "dame, by god of heuene,
y knowe Gyoun wel ynow ⁝ he ys my cosyn euene;
Fuliche ne is he noȝt now fram þe ⁝ vj fet y-mete in brede." 2092
"For þy cortesye þan ȝif hym me" ⁝ F[lorippe] to hym sede.
"Dame, þy wille schal be don ⁝ as y am trewe kniȝt.

He tells Guy to take her, but Guy refuses without Charles' consent.

Com now forþ, sir Gyon ⁝ & tak þys burde briȝt!"
þan Ansuerede þat baroun ⁝ þat wyuy nolde he noȝt, 2096
With-oute assent of kyng Charloun ⁝ þat had him vp i-broȝt.

Floripas is enraged.

¶ Wan þat maide hym vnderstod ⁝ on herte she wax ful wroþ:
For angre sche braid hure wel neȝ wod ⁝ & by Ma[houn] swor hur oþ,
þat bote if Gy to wyue hure take ⁝ þat sche had loued so longe, 2100
Ecchone þay scholde for is sake ⁝ or euene beo an-honge.

Roland persuades Guy,

¶ þan hym spak duk Roland ⁝ to Gy[2] ys cosyn free,
"Tak thys damesele by þe hand ⁝ as þow louest me."
"As þow wolt y wol done" ⁝ saide þe kynde kniȝt. 2104

and they are betrothed.

By þe hond þanne he tok hur sone ⁝ & be-treuþede þat swete wiȝt.
þan wern þay glad boþe ȝonge & olde ⁝ & comforted wel apliȝt:

Floripas

& Flo[rippe] hure handes gan vp holde ⁝ & þankede god almiȝt:
"Lord," sche saide, "y þanky þe ⁝ þat al þyng sest & wost, 2108
now þou hast y-sent to me ⁝ þat þyng i louede most.

says now she will be baptised.

& now wil y for þe loue of hym ⁝ my false fay for-sake,
& eke my fader and al my kyn ⁝ and cristendom to me take."
Loueliche þay wente to-gadre þo ⁝ & cussede i-same an haste, 2112

[1] MS. & ⁝ & y. [2] to [Gyoun].

To fermye loue by-twene he*m* two ⁝ & to makye he*m* stedeuaste.[1]
Wa*n* þ*at* F[lorippe] þ*at* swete þyng ⁝ so y-co*m*forted was } a.
A dore sche openeþ & let he*m* in ⁝ in-to a pryue plas. }
War sche tok out of a shryn ⁝ araid of riche golde, 2116
þe relyqes p*re*ciouse & fyn ⁝ þ*at* y ȝow ere-of tolde.
Furst sche tok out þe croune sterk ⁝ þ*at* crist on is heued let;
& suþþe þe nailles þ*at* wer scherp ⁝ þ*at* p*er*cede hi*m* honde & fet;
þ*an* after sche tok a cloþ of gold ⁝ þ*at* was þ*er*-for arayde 2120
& oppon þat cloþ ase heo wold ⁝ þ*es* reliqes fayre layde.
"Be-holdeþ, lordes," sayde sche þan ⁝ "& buþ now murie & glad;
þis ys þat tresour whar-for ȝe han ⁝ trauayl[2] & tene i-had;
Which þ*at* my fader let bere away ⁝ of Rome as ȝe knowe, 2124
& haueþ y-kept hit in-to þis day ⁝ eu*er*e as for ys owe.
Fyru*m*[bras] þat my broþer ys ⁝ to me þys þyng be-toke,
& be-fore al þyng bad me kepe þys ⁝ & faste hit her by-loke.
& now ȝe haueþ þar-of a siȝt ⁝ & whar hit is y-knowe. 2128
Wyþ ȝow ȝe take hit be day or nyȝt ⁝ & holdeþ hit as ȝour owe.
¶ þis barou*n*s þanne hir þankede alle ⁝ wan þay y-knewe hir wille;
& Adou*n* þay gu*n*ne[3] falle ⁝ knelyng on þe erthe stille.
þay worschepede hem þa*n*ne w*ith* al hure miȝt ⁝ & kussede*m* eu*er*echone;
& þan wente sheo þe burde briȝt ⁝ & tok he*m* vp anone, 2133
& laide hem in-to þe schryn aȝeyn ⁝ & dude hure þar sche was.
þan were þys lordes glad & feyn ⁝ & þankede godes gras,
þat þay hadden fou*n*de þore ⁝ þe relyqes ryche and fayre, 2136
For whicche þay hadde þar byfore ⁝ ben in gret dispayre.

Then Floripas brings out the crown of thorns, and the nails, and lays them on a cloth of gold.

[leaf 28, back] 'See here,' she says, 'the relics for which you came.

Take them now and keep them.' The knights worship the relics, and then replace them in their shrine.

NOw leue wil y þ*is* matere ⁝ of þys Barouns stille,
And t*ur*ne aȝeyn þar y lafte ere ⁝ & of þe A[myral] y wil telle.
þus wyle was he on halle sittyng ⁝ w*ith* is puple atte mete,
þan com þer an heþene kyng ⁝ rydynge atte ȝete; 2141
A wykkeder man þan he was on ⁝ nas non on al hure lawe:
Many was þe cristene mon ⁝ þat he had broȝt of dawe.
Kyng Lucafer of Bandas ⁝ cleped was he of alle. 2144
he liȝt hi*m* dou*n*, & forþ a gas ⁝ spedylich in-to halle,
& byfore þe Amyral þa*n*ne he goþ ⁝ & by-gan hi*m* fort-affrayne:

Now I will tell of the Emir. While Balan is at meat, comes a Saracen King.

Lucifer of Bandas, is his name.

[1] [ÞAn was Florippe on hure bour ⁝ murgher þa*n* sche was, } b.
þe barou*n*s sche ladeþ wyþ hono*ur* ⁝ in-to a pryue plas.] }
[2] [muche] trauayl. [3] Adou*n* þay gu*n*ne [ecchone].

He asks Balan if it is true that

"Sir," saide he, "ys þis soþ ⁝ on contre þat men sayne?
y hurde telle a wonder cas ⁝ suþþen þat y slep uake, 2148

Ferumbras has been taken prisoner.

þat þy son Fyrumbras ⁝ conquerid was & take.
þe beste knyȝt of is hond ⁝ oueral he was y-holde
þat was knowed in any lond ⁝ for to do dedes bolde."

Balan says, yes,

¶ "ȝea, for-soþe," quaþ þe Amyrel ⁝ "& þat ys al my tene: 2152
Taken ys he, y wot it wel ⁝ and y-lost for euere y wene,
þys ȝonder day at morymond ⁝ conquered for soþ was hee,
With a þef, a cristene hond ⁝ þar many men dide hit see.

but that his conqueror has been taken with others, [leaf 29]

Hys conquerour ys a bold baron ⁝ & on of Charlys route, 2156
Ac now lyþ he in my prisoun riȝt ⁝ & oþre mo wel proute.
And now buþ come oþre al-so ⁝ vij bolde bachelers,
þat han me muche schame ido ⁝ & y-slawe my messagers,
Fram kyng Charlis as þay were sent ⁝ to meward on message. 2160
Ac alle þay schullen sone be schent ⁝ for hure foul outrage;
neuere ne wil y ete more ⁝ or þey be dede ecchone.
þe oþre al-so þat come bifore ⁝ þe same way schulleþ gone." 2163

and are in charge of his daughter.

¶ "Whar buþ þe messagers, y wolde hem sen" ⁝ sayde þe heþen kyng.
"In my doȝtere bour þar þay ben ⁝ sche haueþ hem in kepyng."

'That is foolish,' says Lucifer, 'I will go and see them.'

"By Mahoun," saide Lukafer ⁝ "þat ys wel gret folye;
For wommanes wyt goþ her & þer ⁝ in hymen ys noȝtt affye.
By þy leue y wol go ner ⁝ of hymen y wolde aspye, 2168
Of Charlis purpos wat hit wer ⁝ þat makeþ so gret maistrye."

Balan gives him leave.

¶ "Go forth," saide þe Amyrel ⁝ "& gret wel my doȝtre dere,
& bid hure þat sche wardye wel ⁝ þe messagers þat buþ þere."

Lucifer hurries to the chamber of Floripas;

Lucafeer turnd him & faste gas ⁝ & spedde him til þe tour, 2172
þar as Flo[rippe] chambre was ⁝ ibuld wiþ gret honour.
He put him-seluen on a cas ⁝ whar-for agat a schour,
þat turnd him þar after to harde gras ⁝ to schennes & dolour.
¶ Kyng Lukafer of wham y spake ⁝ was a wykked man; 2176
To þe chambre so harde he rake ⁝ þat þyderward he ran;
Ac wan he com þe dore to ⁝ ys herte was so gret,

he bursts the door in with his foot.

þat he dedeynede to clepe, "oundo" ⁝ bot ran to wiþ is fet:
So harde he bot here in þat haste ⁝ þe kyng þat was so strong, 2180
þat þe henges boþe barste ⁝ & þe stapel þar-with out sprong.
& þoȝ þe dore were strong & huge ⁝ wiþ þe strok sche fleȝ

Out of þe Hokes & *fram* hir sege ⁝ x. vet y-mete wel neȝ.
¶ Wan Flo[rippe] y-saw þe dore vn-do ⁝ al chaungede hure hew & mod : — Floripas in alarm tells Roland this is her intended husband.
To Rolond sche spak & playned hi*m* to ⁝ þar-of how it stod ; 2185
" þis is he þat fader myn ⁝ ordeyneþ my lord to be ;
In al heþenis ys no Sarsyn ⁝ wikkeder þan is he ;
Wiþ is hond oppon o day ⁝ at rome in ȝoure Citee, 2188 — At Rome, but for Guy,
he slow þer þat it y say ⁝ hundredes[1] mo þan þree.
nad[2] my spouse *þat* her is ⁝ þar i-born hi*m* dou*n*
Lyues nolde he haue ilaft y-wys ⁝ no criste man in þe tou*n*. — he would have killed every Christian.
& now haþ he[3] my dore y-broke ⁝ ous alle in dispyte ; 2192
y pray ȝow þar-fore al þus y spoke ⁝ ys t*ra*uail *þat* ȝe quyte."
¶ Ro[land] answerde þat mayde anon ⁝ & bad sche scholde be stille, — Roland says he'll make him suffer. [leaf 29, back]
" For þat torn or *þat* a gon ⁝ ful sore hi*m* schal a-grille,
neu*ere* ne brak he dore non ⁝ *þat* dude hi*m* so mykel ille." 2196
W*ith* *þat* com he among is fon ⁝ w*ith* a ful wikked wille. — Lucifer feels
¶ þar fond he *þes* lordes alle ⁝ in arm*ure* araid ariȝt ;
& F[lorippe] w*ith* þe middel smalle ⁝ *þat* þa*n* was sore affriȝt, — jealous because Naymes has Floripas by the hand.
Duk naymes stod next hur by ⁝ & had hure by þe honde. 2200
þe kyng þar-of hadde envy ⁝ & comeþ by hymen stonde ;
& þoȝ duk naymes were al hore ⁝ he was ful wel ymaked, 2880
ys helm was don of by-fore ⁝ & ys heued was þo al naked ;
ys berd was huge & straȝte along ⁝ & Lukefer þo ga*n* taket, 2204 — He seizes Naymes by the beard,
And wyþ his fyngres *þat* were strong ⁝ harde gan he schaket.
By þe berde as he hym held ⁝ a askeþ wiþ-oute drede :
" Wa*n*nes ert þow, olde cherld ⁝ & what makest *þou* in þis *þede* ? " — and asks him what brings him there.
¶ " Y am of Bauere," þan saide he ⁝ " & haue þar herytage ; 2208 — Naymes tells him who he is.
And am Char[lis] consayller pryuee ⁝ y-sent hider in message.
& alle þus oþre *þat* ȝe her see ⁝ buþ lordes of heȝ parage ;
Dukes, & erldis, & barons in fee ⁝ & holdeþ by baronage.
A message ous sente Charlis kyng ⁝ to þamyral *þat* is so bolde, 2212
& for we told it noȝt at is lekyng ⁝ he pot ous her in holde.
Let of my berd, y pray þe now ⁝ suþþe y haue þe tolde."
" y nelle," quaþ he, " y make auow ⁝ to Ma[houn] *þat* stont in golde. — Lucifer refuses to let go till he has told him how the Christians pass their time.
Tel me furst by þy lay ⁝ wat doþ ȝour men of fraunce ; 2216
Of hure disport & ek hure play ⁝ what is ȝour mest vsaunce ? "

[1] MS. huddredes. [2] nad [ibe]. [3] he [her].

Naymes says first they hear Mass and after

¶ "þe manere of he*m*," þan sayde he ⁝ "is erly gon to cherche,
& afte*r*-ward ech man on his degree ⁝ after his stat þay werche.
þo þ*at* lordes buþ of þe lond ⁝ in som tyme of the ȝere, 2220

some go hawking, some hunting, some to jousts and tournaments; others play chess,

þay takeþ hure facouns faire an hond ⁝ & fareþ to ryuere;
& Su*m*me a deer honteþ of he*m* þar went ⁝ & some to fox and hare;
& to ioustes and tornyment ⁝ wel mo þ*er* wendeþ ofte þare.
þo þat willieþ to leue at hame ⁝ pleyeþ to þe eschekkere, 2224

or draughts,

& su*m*me of he*m* to iew-de-dame ⁝ & su*m*me to tablere:
Su*m*me þay vseþ a maner of play ⁝ to caste wel a spere;

and some fence.

And so*m*me for to sckyrme assay ⁝ w*ith* sverd & bokelere.
þys buþ þe games of my contre ⁝ þ*at* y þe telle here." 2228
"ȝea ⁝ alle þese buþ noȝt worþ a stre" ⁝ þan saide Lucafere.

'I will teach you one of our games,' says Lucifer.

¶ "We haue a game in this co*n*tray ⁝ to blowen atte glede.
þov schalt lerny þat ilke play ⁝ as Ma[houn] me helpe & spede."

He drags Naymes by the beard to the fire,

[leaf 30]

þan was þer on a chymenay ⁝ a gret fyr þ*at* brente rede, 2232
þan duk drow he be þe berde gray ⁝ & to þe fyr a doþ hi*m* lede.
¶ þan lawede Ro[land] on Olyuer ⁝ & to hym gan to saye:
"þow schalt sen god game her ⁝ suffrie we hem to playe."

seizes a burning brand and burns Naymes' mouth.

Lucafer þa*n*ne tok op an-haste ⁝ þe brennyngest bronde a couþe, 2236
& to neymes-werd blew he so faste ⁝ þ*at* þe fir ful on is mouþe.
"now tak þ*o*u þe brond," saide he þan ⁝ "& blowe to me þ*o*u fonde."
"y wil," quaþ naymes, "as y can" ⁝ & tok hym of his honde,

Naymes seizes it

Naymes þa*n*ne w*ith*-oute ȝede ⁝ & hadde þe kyng wiþ-inne, 2240
& to þ^e^ schrewe he huld þe glede ⁝ & blew toward is chynne:
So harde leid he þer-on is onde ⁝ þ*at* sone þe lye out rende,

and burns half his beard.

& in-to ys berd sone it sprong ⁝ & o syde þer-of hit brende.
¶ Lucafer þanne wax neȝ wod ⁝ & drow out a schort fachou*n*, 2244

Lucifer smites at Naymes,

& smot to neymys þar a stod ⁝ & þoȝte haue born hym dou*n*;
Neymes was war & sterte a-syde ⁝ & let þe strok to pace,

who with a blow of his fist kills him.

& w*ith* his hand ȝyf hi*m* a strok ou*n*ride ⁝ wiþ-inne þe neckes space;
Such on a gurt hi*m* w*ith* is fuste ⁝ þ*at* sondrede al þe liþ, 2248
& ys necke þar-wiþ a-two to-duste ⁝ & ys eȝene floȝe out þar-wyþ.
þat bodi ful dou*n* amidde þe fyre ⁝ w*ith*-oute any more delay:
"now rest," quaþ Naymes, "þou proute syre ⁝ þ*o*u playest a sory play."

Roland laughs and compliments Naymes.

¶ þan hi*m* lawede duk Rolond ⁝ & to naymes saide an haste: 2252
"ȝea faire hure falle þ*at* ilke hond ⁝ þat so can foles chaste;

He wende wiþ is ferete ꝛ haue do þe vylonye,
And now is fallen is nytyte ꝛ in-to ys owen eye."
¶ "Syre," quaþ Flo[rippe] "he louaþ þat fyr ꝛ let hym enchaufye ynne,
ȝute naþ he no desyr ꝛ to aryse and go þenne. 2257
For he hopede haf wedded me ꝛ of him he hadde enuye,
þer-for in his iolyte ꝛ he cam to make maystrye."
To Duk naymes saide heo þan ꝛ "leue sir, faire þe falle, 2260 Floripas thanks Naymes for delivering her,
þow hast delyuerid me of þe man ꝛ ich hatede most of alle."
[NOw buþ þay delyuered of Lucafer ꝛ hur enymy þat was a schrewe. Byfore þes barouns þan Flo[rippe] ther ꝛ hure purpos gan thus schewe.[1]]
"Ac lusteþ now alle . what y schal say ꝛ & warny ȝow for ȝour prow : and then tells the knights her plans.
ȝe buþ her[2] in yuele aray ꝛ and in gret peril now. 2265
þe Amyrel my fader as he can ꝛ arayeþ him for þe nones, She points out their danger,
To destruye ȝow sone euerech man ꝛ & for-hewe ȝow flech̄ & bones.
þys dom to day y demed[3] was ꝛ longe by-fore þe none. 2268
now helpeþ ȝow silue on þes cas ꝛ or ellis ȝe buþ for-done.
ȝour helmes makieþ alle faste ꝛ hastilich on ȝour heued, and recommends them to arm,
& ȝour scheldes on ȝow ȝe caste ꝛ for noþyng ȝe ne leuet:
Wan þay seþ ȝow armed wel ꝛ þe more þey wil ȝow drede. 2272 [leaf 30, back]
Goþ out[4] of þis chambre snel ꝛ & doþ now as y rede;
Secheþ þis paleys ouer al ꝛ boþe in lengþe & brede, and kill all whom they can find.
& lokieþ ȝe ne spare gret ne smal ꝛ þat he ne go to dede,"
¶ þat counseil þoȝte hem alle god ꝛ & þanked hur lasse & more. 2276 They
Hure helmes þay duden oppon hure hod ꝛ þey alle þat þer wore[5]
[Wherfor þay duden oppoun hure hod ꝛ hure helmes lasse & more;[6]] arm themselves,
Hure scheldes on hem fast þai caste ꝛ euerech of þes barouns,
& of þe chambre out þay paste ꝛ as hardy as any lyouns. 2280 and start off
Hure swerdes þan þay a-drowe ꝛ þat wern scharp y-grounde,
& alle þe Sarsyns þay a-slowe ꝛ þat þay afforn him founde. and slay all whom they meet.
þan wente þay in-to þe heȝe halle ꝛ þar þat þe lordes sete,
& þoȝte þar to slen him alle ꝛ sittyng atte mete. 2284
Roland cryede an heȝ "mountioye" ꝛ wan he be-huld þay scoute: Roland cries out 'Mountjoy;'

[1] These 2 lines crossed through.
[2] MS. [Y warne ȝow] ȝe buth [now]. [3] MS. dememed.
[4] MS. out out. [5] This line written over a line erased.
[6] This line in margin at bottom of page.

Many sarsynȝ þan huld he*m* coye ⁝ þat raþ*er* wer fers & proute.
Ac þis barou*n*s laid he*m* on ⁝ wiþ swerdes al aboute,
And to-hewe hem boþe þarȝ flechs & bon ⁝ þ^e moste dol of þe route.

he kills Corsyband;

¶ Ro[land] ȝaf a strok w*ith* mayn ⁝ to Corsyband þe kyng, 2289
& clef ys body euene a-twayn ⁝ w*ith* þ*at* stronge spryng.

and Oliver slays Coudryn.

Olyuer smot kyng Coudryn ⁝ & gert hi*m* in-to þe brayn.
Many was þe proute Sarsyn ⁝ þ*at* þar was þa*n*ne a-slayn. 2292
for Al so furde þis xij. barons ⁝ by þat foule[1] hepe,
Also wolde so many lyou*n*s ⁝ among so many schepe.
þe mete þ*at* was ful richly raied ⁝ in disches of golde fyn,
Wel sone it was a-dou*n* i-leid ⁝ & schad was al þe wyn. 2296
þe coupes of gold were treden a-syde ⁝ al w*ith* mannis fet,
And alle þe sarsyns þat wolde abyde ⁝ þar þai lore þ*at* swet.

The Saracens jump out of the windows,

þe Sarasynȝ þ*at* þo wer laft on lyue ⁝ faste þay gu*n*ne fle,
& ful out at þe wyndowes blyue ⁝ be twye & ek be three, 2300
& su*m*me fulle out ouer þe wal ⁝ in-to þe dupe dongou*n*,

over 100 fall into the dungeon, and break their necks.

& breke hure nekkes to pieces smal ⁝ so heȝe þay fulle adou*n*.
Wel an hundred out þar þraste ⁝ þanne in þilke wyse,
þ*at* wiþ þe fallyng þai to-braste ⁝ & neu*er*e ne miȝte aryse. 2304

Balan flies,

¶ þe day hym was ful neȝ agan ⁝ & come was neȝ þe niȝt,
þan dude þe Amyral Balaan ⁝ turne hi*m* to þe fliȝt;

pursued by Roland;

Roland hi*m* folghede as wilde & wod ⁝ w*ith* is swerd a-drawe,
þat þo al baþid was on blod ⁝ of Sarsyns he haþ slawe. 2308

[leaf 31]

¶ A*n*d heȝ dude hy*m* þa*n*ne ascrye ⁝ & sayde: "now kep þyn hed,
Torn to me, ich þe diffye ⁝ her riȝt þ*o*u schalt be ded."

he jumps out of a window. He falls 20 fathoms into the mud.

þe Amerel vm-til a wyndow ran ⁝ & þar lep out þ*at* syre.
Wel xx^ti feþme ful he þan ⁝ of dupnisse . vmtil A myre. 2312
Duk Ro[land] after hym slent ⁝ w*ith* his swerd to slen hi*m* þanne,
Ac on a marbre ful þe dent ⁝ & smot þ*er*-on a spanne.

Roland is wrath at his escape.

Bote wan þ^e A[myral] was scapid hi*m* so ⁝ þ*at* Ro[land] hym[2] ne lauȝte,
Angry wax he þer-for þo ⁝ & þe deuele þan hym betauȝte. 2316
¶ "Felawe," saide sir Olyuer ⁝ "ys he ous now a-scapid?"
"ȝe, for-soþ," saide he ther ⁝ "ac oþer-weys y hadde y-schape hit,
Miȝte ich hi*m* ones habbe araȝt ⁝ w*ith* my swerd y-grounde; 2319
ys heued schold ich hi*m* habbe y-raft ⁝ ouþer ȝeue hi*m* deþes wounde."

[1] þat [mykle]. [2] MS. hyn.

NOw habbeþ þes frensche lordes stoute ⁝ conquered þ^e stronge tour, Now the French hold the castle;
And habbeþ a-slawe & dryuen oute ⁝ þe Sarsynȝ with vygour.
þay schutte þe gates & vp þay drowe ⁝ þe draȝtbrig al with gynne:
Wolde god þat þay had y-nowe ⁝ of vytailes þer wiþ-inne; 2324
For in þ^e contre þer with-oute ⁝ vitales geteþ þay none but they have no provisions.
Bot if þai moȝe be so stoute ⁝ to geten hem of hure fone.
¶ þe Amyral þat was so riche ⁝ ys falle doun fram an heȝ,
And walwede þanne on þe dyche ⁝ & was y-sowe wel neȝ. 2328 Balan is nearly suffocated in the mud, and cries for help.
Ase loude so he þanne miȝte ⁝ to ys men criede he there:
"Helpeþ me, myne men so wiȝte ⁝ & elles y daye here;
Bote if ȝe me helpe vp to drawe ⁝ þe raþere out of þis fenne,
Wiþ colde chile ich worþ a-slawe ⁝ ne go y neuere henne." 2332
¶ Wiþ þat cam renne sire Bruyllant ⁝ þe kyng of mountmirree, He is drawn up out of the mud,
& þe kyng of combres, sir Sortibrant ⁝ is conseyler þat was pryuee;
& op þay drowe . sire Balan ⁝ þe Amyral of þe dyche:
þat so on þe fenne þo was by-gan ⁝ þat a semede þe diuel ileche. 2336
Wanne þat he was vppe þo ⁝ & stod oppon ys fet,
for sorwe made he muche wo ⁝ & mornyng eke gret;
& saide: "alas! for Lucafer ⁝ þat was so strong a kniȝt, and laments for the loss of his knights.
& for my barons þat wern her ⁝ so noble men &[1] wiȝt! 2340
þe flour of Chyualarie now haue y lost ⁝ [al] for þe loue of one,
In wham y trust to alre most ⁝ & heo me haþ by-gone."
¶ "Sire," þan saide Sortybran ⁝ "y-lif me betre eft-sone, 'Believe me
Ho þat ne wol bi conseil dan ⁝ som tyme hym schal mone." 2344 [leaf 31, back] another time,' says Sortybran.
¶ "By Mahoun," þan swer þe Amyrel ⁝ sykynge al for tene, Balan
"Er xv. dawes y wil ful wel ⁝ of hymen y wreke bene.
doþ now & leteȝ myn hornes blowe ⁝ quiclich and anon, orders his men to
þat myne men mowe iknowe ⁝ what þay schulleþ don. 2348
þe tour we wollaþ anon asaile ⁝ & awreke ous of our fon." attack the castle,
"It is now," quaþ he, "sanȝfaile ⁝ to late þer-to to gon, but Sortybran advises him to wait till the next day.
þe day him is a-go ful ny ⁝ y rede ȝut þat ȝe leue
Til to-morwe þat þe sonne be hy ⁝ ne schal hit no-þyng greue. 2352
By þat þy barons wolleþ be come ⁝ & beo assembled here."
"y grante," quaþ þamyral, "al & some ⁝ god counsail is god to lere. Balan assents.
Alas ⁝ for my gode felawe ⁝ Lucafer þat me ys wo.

[1] & [so].

þes frensemen hi*m* habbeþ a-slawe ⁝ now wot y wel it ys so. 2356
Ac to Mahou*n* y make auov ⁝ to wham ys al my chere,
To morwe we wolleþ w*ith* strengþe y-now ⁝ by-gynne þe sege here;
& fro þat time[1] she ys by-gu*n*ne ⁝ ne schal heo neu*er*e be laft,
Til þe tour aȝen be wonne ⁝ wiþ strenþe ouþer be craft. 2360

He vows vengeance on the French and Floripas.

& þa*n* schulleþ þay þeues stronge ⁝ þ*at* þus me habbeþ agreued,
Beo to-drawe and eke an-honge ⁝ & al-so for-gon hure heued.
& my doȝtre þe foule scoute ⁝ þanne schal heo beo for-brent,
For hure couyne to-ward þ*at* route ⁝ & hure anbettyment. 2364
þey mote nedes wiþ-oute faile ⁝ sone ȝeld op þe toure
For þay ne haueþ noȝt vytaile ⁝ to lyue w*ith* dawes foure.
Of Charlemeyn ne his ferede ⁝ nabbeþ þay non help, y legge;
y knowe it wel he wol drede ⁝ Mantryble for þe brigge." 2368

Next morning the Saracens assemble.

Amorwe be non þyd*er* wern .y-come ⁝ so many Sarsynȝ wyȝte,
þat þe feldes wer keuerid alle & some ⁝ w*ith* scheldes & helmes briȝte.
þe Ameral þyderward haþ hi*m* nome, to þ^e^ feldeward þa*n* ful riȝt;
& wan he sawe þ*at* huge trome ⁝ his herte anon gan lyȝte. 2372

The Emir tells them what has happened.

þan þe Amiral hem tolde w*ith* tristour ⁝ by hi*m* how [it] is y-went
& of þis barons on þe tour ⁝ how þay hi*m* habbeþ y-schent.

The Saracens swear to avenge him.

þay sworen þa*n*ne ȝunge & olde ⁝ to hym by com*m*u*n* assent,
þe syge scholde be þer iholde ⁝ to ȝer ȝyf nede by stent. 2376
þe sarsyns þan gu*n*ne vaste bulde ⁝ hure pauylons þar w*ith*-oute.

Their camp is 6 miles round.

þe logyng of þat gret host fulde ⁝ vj. mylen to gon aboute.
Now god helpe þe frensche men ⁝ þay aren in grete drede;
y not how þay schul a-scape þen ⁝ þat hy ne goþ to dede. 2380

The French are not afraid,

NOw buþ þus barou*n*s of honour ⁝ al-one þ*er* enclos;
Wyþ Sarsyns biseged[2] in þe tour ⁝ an .C. þousand fos;
Of hem alle þat þar were ⁝ drede had þei none,

[leaf 32] but they are short of provisions. Balan induces Maubyn

[Ac] þe vytailles lacked there ⁝ hwyche were neȝ agone. 2384
¶ þe Amyral clypede to hi*m* þan ⁝ Maubyn of egremolee;
A s[uch þ]ef as he was an ⁝ was non in his regnee.
"Maubyn," saide þe Amyral ⁝ "wolt þou hit vndertake,

to scale the wall, and steal his daughter's girdle,

To steȝe out ouer þe castel wal ⁝ wa*n*ne þe nyȝt gynt blake, 2388
& p*r*iuyliche stalke in-to hur bo*ur* ⁝ my doȝter þ*at* lyþ þere,
& stele þe gurdel of honour ⁝ þat she ys woned to were?

[1] MS. tine. [2] bisegeged.

& brynge hi*m* me hol & sound ⁝ wan þov hast don þy dede;
And þov schalt haue an hundred pou*n*d ⁝ of golde for þy mede. 2392
for if y may þat gurdel dure ⁝ fro hure so take away,
To wynne þe tour þan am y sure ⁝ w*ith*-inne þis þridde day.
for whyle heo haueþ þat gurdel fyn ⁝ no hu*n*ger ne may he*m* deere. — which is a talisman against hunger.
Stel me þe gurdel, gode Maubyn ⁝ ne spare þov for no fere." 2396
¶ "Sire, my lord," þan saide þe þef ⁝ "let me þar-wiþ al-one; — Maubyn agrees.
y wol do þe haue þ*a*t þe ys lef ⁝ to-morwe or it be none.
þis nyȝt wil y my myster kyþe ⁝ & do an hardy dede."
þe A[myral] þankede hi*m* þa*n*ne swyþe ⁝ & sayde "Ma[houn] þe spede!"
¶ WAnne þe day hi*m* was afalle ⁝ & tyme was come to walke, 2401
Maubyn toward þe Castel walle ⁝ pryuyliche gan hym stalke: — At night he scales the wall
Sone he cam out ouer dych ⁝ wiþ wyles þat a couþe,
In al þe werld nas þef hi*m* lych ⁝ by norþe ne be souþe. 2404 — (never was there such a clever thief);
Wan he cam to þe castel wal ⁝ oppon wend he by sleȝþe,
Wyþ a laddre of lethere & crokes smal ⁝ sone had he þe heȝþe.
Comen ys he wiþ-inne þe tour ⁝ þe paleys he þorw saȝte;
Atte laste he cam to Florippe bour ⁝ as þe deuel [þan] hi*m* taȝte, — he reaches the chamber of Floripas;
þe chambris dore þat was y-schyt ⁝ sone he haueþ oundo. 2409 — and opens the door with a talisman,
Wyþ a charme oundude he hit ⁝ and in he[1] wente þo.
And fyndeþ þe barons in bedde ibroȝt ⁝ & hymen he charmeþ so, — with which he also charms the knights to sleep.
þat hy ne myȝte a-wakye noȝt ⁝ for wele ne for wo. 2412
Wyþ a charme he makeþ fyr ⁝ & a candlee he attendeþ;
And to haue is desyr ⁝ to Floripe bour he wendeþ.
þa*n*ne þe þef by-gan be-holde ⁝ þe chambre al aboute, — He searches for the girdle,
And fond hure þer þ*a*t burde bolde ⁝ liggyng vnder shroute. 2416
Slepyng was þ*a*t ladi softe ⁝ þe þef hi*m* bar ful stille,
And to & fro wende he ofte ⁝ or he hauede ys wille:
Ate laste þan gurdel he fond ⁝ liggyng at hure hede. — and finds it lying at her head.
Mahou*n* he þonkede þan of is sond ⁝ & gurd hi*m* w*ith* þat wede, — He puts it on,
¶ Gy of Borgoyne hure druwerye ⁝ wakyng þe ȝute was hee, 2421
& out at a wyndowe þan gan lye ⁝ þat lay to-ward þe see;
Of þat host to be-holde þe huge aray ⁝ & of sarsynȝ þe semblee.
þe wyle þe þef þo dude is pray ⁝ þat yuele moste he þee! 2424
¶ Wan he haueþ þ*a*t gurdel so ⁝ mo maystries wold he fonde;

[1] MS. he [ys ago].

[leaf 32, back] and then attempts to ravish Floripas.

To lye be þat burde þoȝte he þo ⁝ & to don hure schame & schonde.
þe cloþes þat wern on hure bed ilaid ⁝ araid al wiþ þe beste,
Alle haþ he wiþ is hondes braid ⁝ doun be-nyþe hure breste. 2428
þan liþ sche þer, þat swete þynge ⁝ as whit as wales bon;
ys feye blod him gan to pynge ⁝ and ful on hure anon,
And hent hure by þe middel faste ⁝ & gan to kisse þat free. 2431

Floripas awakes and cries out.

Florippe a-wok and cryde an haste ⁝ "now, lordes, helpeþ me!"
"Al þy cryyng is on waste" ⁝ saide þe þef aȝee;
"y nam of hymen noȝt agaste ⁝ þei mowe noȝt helpe þe."

Her maids run to her,

¶ Hure damesels with þat cry a-wakede ⁝ & vp of hure bed þay ras,
Al affraied þay sterte al nakede ⁝ til hure þar sche was: 2436

but are frightened and run away.

þe þef to hem þan tornd is fas ⁝ þat was so blac so cole.
þan runne þai away & saide alas ⁝ & wende þat deuel he wore.
By þat had he hur legges oundo ⁝ & saide, "so Mahoun me saue,
Wheþer þov wile now ouþer no ⁝ þy maydenhed schal y haue." 2440

Guy hears her cries,

¶ Gyoun þat on þe turet was ⁝ þorw grace iherd hure crye,
he torneþ him sone fro þat plas ⁝ & þyderward gan hym[1] hye;

hurries to her assistance,

& wan he saw him wyþ yule gras ⁝ how he on hure gan lye,
"þef," saide he, "by godes fas ⁝ aȝeld þe, þov schalt dye." 2444
¶ þan wax maubyn sore afferd ⁝ & lep out of þe bedde;
Ac Gy wiþ þat adrow is sverd ⁝ & a strok on him a ledde,

and cuts Maubyn down.

þorw is heued, chyn, & berd ⁝ þat sverd adounward fledde,
& in-to þe breggurdel him gerd ⁝ þan ful he adoun & bledde. 2448
¶ þan sche spak þat burde briȝt ⁝ þat al naked was saf hir cerke;

Floripas thanks him.

"Wel worþ þat hond, my swete wiȝt ⁝ y þankie þe for þy werke,
ne haddest þou come to me now riȝt ⁝ & mad him of þy merke,
A schame for euere had he me diȝt ⁝ now her al on þe derke." 2452

Guy tells his companions what has happened.

¶ His felawes awakede he þan & tolde ⁝ how he haþ founde a þef
þat was come in-to þat holde ⁝ hem alle to repref;
& how þe þef þer riȝt scholde ⁝ haue leyen by ys lef,
Nad he come þo as god wolde ⁝ & distorbed þat myschef. 2456

They all wonder how he got in, and what he came for.

& how he haþ sleyn him a tolde him al ⁝ þan wondrede þai myche þer
How he miȝte come oun þe wal ⁝ & into hure chambre,
Ac [sikernesse] nad þey non ⁝ his comyng whi yt was,
But vp þey sterte euerechon ⁝ & be-held him on þe fas. 2460

[1] hym him.

þan lai he þar so blac so pych ⁝ ys bodi was neȝ to-hewe.
"þes ys," quaþ Ro[land], "þe deuel ilych ⁝ delyuery we *ous* of þ^e^ sch*r*ewe."
þai leid on hi*m* hande þan an haste ⁝ & to þe wat*er* gate hi*m* bere
& into þ^e^ see *per* hi*m* caste ⁝ & bede pleye þere. 2464 They cast him into the sea; but, alas,
Alas ⁝ þe tyme þ*at* he was bore ⁝ for þe damage þ*at* þer was þo:
For þo was þe gurdel þ*at* he com fore ⁝ y-lost for eu*er*e-mo. the girdle was on him, and is lost.
þ*at* gret damage ho may restore ⁝ þ*at* þa*n*ne was þar ido.
þoȝ he kyng ouþer Emp*er*our wore ⁝ to litel had he þar-to. 2468
¶ Bote wan þe frensche men vnderȝyte ⁝ by þe gurdel how it was, [leaf 33]
Sory þai wern, ȝe mowe wel wyte ⁝ for þat foule cas. They are grieved, but since there is no help,
Ac wan þai seȝe þ*at* of þ*at* þyng ⁝ recuuerer non þar nas,
þay lefte þanne hure mornyng ⁝ & þankede godes gras; 2472
And confortede þat maide gent ⁝ þat was so faire of siȝte,
And to hure beddes aȝen buþ went ⁝ & rest he*m* þer al niȝte. they return to bed.
¶ þan erlich oppon þe morwe ⁝ wan þe sonne hure schon, In the morning the
þe amerel & is host w*ith* sorwe ⁝ armede hymen ecchon, 2476 Saracens prepare to attack the castle.
In gode & wel sykere wede ⁝ y-mad of fair entayle;
And ȝurne þo þai gu*n*ne hem spede ⁝ þe frensche men for tassaile.
¶ þe A[miral] calleþ sir Bruyllant ⁝ þe kyng of mou*n*tmyrreeȝ, Balan calls a Council.
& þe kyng of Comble, Sir Sortybraunt ⁝ & othre of his pryueeȝ:
"Herknyaþ, lordes of honor" ⁝ saide he, "what is my þoȝt. 2481
Our þef ys slawe on þe tour ⁝ now he ne comeþ noȝt,
If he wer now lyues man ⁝ afore þis had he come."
"ȝea, for-soþ," saiþ Sortybran ⁝ "he is ded or nome. 2484
Let blowe þyn hornes riȝt anon ⁝ we wolleþ assaile þe tour."
"now to," quaþ þe A[miral], "euerechon ⁝ myne barou*n*s of honour."
Hure hornes þai gu*n*ne þo to blowe ⁝ ful many at one blaste, The attack begins.
þe Sarsyns þa*n*ne þyderward drowe ⁝ to assaile þe tour an haste. 2488
Hure engyns þa*n*ne þay arayde ⁝ & stones þar-wiþ þay caste, They hurl stones at the castle.
& made a ful sterne brayde ⁝ wiþ bowes and arbelaste.
Wel scherpe doþ þay by-gynne ⁝ to assayle þe grete tour;
Ac *þes* barons þat buþ wiþ-inne ⁝ defendieþ he*m* wyþ vygour. 2492 The knights fear nothing but want of food.
W*ith* stones & tres þat þay cast out ⁝ oppon hure fon þat day, They kill more than 100 Saracens.
Mo þan hu*n*dred of hure rout ⁝ þay affulde ded on þe clay;
Of noþyng certis doþ (?) þay drede ⁝ bot of liflode one.
Ac now failled boþe wyn & bred ⁝ vatailles habbeþ þay none. 2496

þe damesels þat woren of gret honour ⁝ for hungre þai fulle y-sowe,
So dude Flo[rippe] briȝt on bour ⁝ whar-for was sorwe ynowe.

Hunger begins to be felt: Guy of Burgundy proposes to his companions

¶ G[y] of Borgoyne hure nywe spouse ⁝ confortede hir wat he maye;
for hure is herte was angwischouse ⁝ & to his felawes gan he saye:
"Lordes," said he, "ȝe wyteþ wel ⁝ þat we buþ her enclos, 2501
Herde by-syged wyþ þe Amyrel ⁝ & of oþre þat buþ our fos:
And now is this þe þridde day ⁝ þat oure vytails failed;
Our bred, our wyn ys al away ⁝ & harde we beþ asailed. 2504
On myn herte me ys wo ⁝ þat þys wymmen waxeþ feynte,
þey buþ so mate þay mowe noȝt go ⁝ so honger haþ hem teynte.

[leaf 33, back]

& if þat hy among ous here ⁝ for hungre scholde dye,
For ous a gret repref it were ⁝ in euery companye. 2508
Leuere me were, bi god almiȝt ⁝ in my body be wounded sare,
þan to sen þys burdes briȝt ⁝ for hunger þus forfare.
Teche we þar-fore in dede ⁝ þat we buþ men of myȝte,
and do we now on our wede ⁝ & araie we ous to fiȝte. 2512

to make a sortie against the Saracens, to obtain food.

& wende we out of þis stronge tour ⁝ to-ward þe Sarasyns;
And gete we ous vytailles with honour ⁝ among our enymys.
Certis, come we hymen among ⁝ somme [vytaille] schulle we haue;
Ouþer þey schullen don ous wrong ⁝ al so god me saue. 2516
Wat so þei ben þat letteþ ous oȝt ⁝ vytailles þar to vacche,
non of ous ne sparie him noȝt ⁝ strokes þat þai ne lacche.
Teche we þar to oure fos ⁝ þat vytailes gete we konne,
And cesse we neuere of our purpos ⁝ or we ha summe y-wonne, 2520
Wer-wyth þes damesels of honour ⁝ hure lif þar-with mown lede,
Til we haue other socour ⁝ of Charlis and is ferede.

Better it is to die fighting than from hunger.

For betere is ous forto die ⁝ amonges our fos in fiȝte,
þan her-inne clynge & drie ⁝ & daye for hunger riȝte." 2524

Then says Floripas:

¶ þan spak Flo[rippe] þat burde briȝt ⁝ to hymyn euerechone:
"Ful litel ys ȝour god of myȝt ⁝ þat vytailes ne sent ȝov none;

'Had ye worshipped Mahomet, ye would have had food ere now.'

Hadde ȝe worschiped our godes free ⁝ as ȝe ȝour han done,
Of vytailes had ȝe had plente ⁝ maugre al ȝour fone." 2528

Roland asks to see her gods.

¶ Roland hure ansuerede & saide ⁝ "damesele, were þat soþ,
We wolde þanne do be rayde ⁝ ȝe þoȝ þay ben ous loþ.
Damesele if ȝe wolde ous lede ⁝ to þe godes of wham ȝe spake
þanne scholde ȝee seen in dede ⁝ what worschip we wolde he[m] make."

¶ Of þat word was sche wel paid ⁝ & þe keys sone sche hente, 2533 Floripas
& *with* þis lordes *þat* buþ for-said ⁝ to þe maume*r*ye þo sche wente.
To þe Synagoge wan sche cam ⁝ þe dore heo haueþ ou*n*do, leads them to the shrine,
þan wei by-fore þan sche nam ⁝ & þay come after þo. 2536
¶ Flo[rippe] drow a ridel þan ⁝ þat stod be-fore þe frount, draws a curtain and shows them Termagaunt, Mahomet, Jupiter and Iouyn and Appolyn,
þan sawe þay þar Sir Ternagan ⁝ & eke hure god Mahount:
Iubit*er* al-so & iouyn ⁝ stode þar hym*e*n by-syde,
& eke hure god appolyn ⁝ araid wiþ grete pryde. 2540
¶ þe mametes *þat* þai seȝen þare ⁝ bi-fore hure aldre siȝt,
Euerchone y-maked ware ⁝ of gold þat schon ful briȝt, all of gold and precious stones.
y-poudred wiþ stones preciouse ⁝ *þat* wern *þer*-on i-piȝt.
þay schyne þer in tal *þat* house ⁝ so doþ þe candeliȝt. 2544
þan was þar at hure fete ⁝ of encenȝ a fair dentee,
And of balme þat smylleþ swete ⁝ & spycery gret plentee.
¶ "Ih*es*u lord," quaþ Olyuere ⁝ "fro wan comeþ al þis gold? [leaf 34] Oliver wishes he had all that gold.
now wold it god *þat* it were ⁝ þar as me self it wold." 2548
¶ þan hym spak sir Richard ⁝ þe duk*e* of normaundie, Richard says one would satisfy him.
"I kepte no more to my part ⁝ bot iouyn wyþ-oute lye,
y wolde do þar-*with* to werche ⁝ in Rowan my Citee,
And make newe þe heȝe cherche ⁝ in worschip of þe trynitee." 2552
¶ þanne sayde Duk Roland ⁝ "þe tale to fulfille, Roland thinks that if Charles had the rest he might
Char[lis] scholde haue þe remenant ⁝ miȝt it be at my wille,
Tharwiþ miȝt he þanne an haste ⁝ restore Rome Cytee,
þat þamyral Balan waste ⁝ somtyme wiþ ys meygnee; 2556
& do make vp Seynt petris churche ⁝ *þat* þe Sarsynȝ han yule arayd, rebuild St Peter's.
And othre gode werkes werche ⁝ *þat* god schold ben on apayd."
¶ Floripp*e* to hymen saide þen ⁝ "ȝe spekeþ gret folye, Floripas tells them they should pray to the idols.
If ȝe doþ as wyse men ⁝ mercy ȝe hem crye, 2560
& prayeþ he*m* ȝerne *þat* hy ȝov spede ⁝ as þay buþ gode and hende,
& alþyng þanne what ȝe ha nede ⁝ to ȝow wolleþ hy sende."
¶ "Damesel," saide duk Gyou*n* ⁝ "my prayer ys now ido."
"For gode," saide erld Ogerou*n* ⁝ "so ys myn al-so; 2564 Ogier says they are asleep, so
Ac þay slepeþ alle so vaste ⁝ þay mowe ous noȝt y-here:
y wil þar-for teche a caste ⁝ to a-wakye he*m* alle yfere." he'll wake them.
Ogier Deneys adrow is brond ⁝ & smot to sire Mahou*n*d, He breaks Mahoun to pieces.
þat al to pieces he to-wond ⁝ & ful dou*n* on þe grou[n]d. 2568

Oliver smashes Termagaunt, Olyuer tok vp ternagan ⁝ & casten aȝe þe wal,
þat legges & armes brek him fram ⁝ in-to peces smal.
and Richard Richard, þe duk [of] normandye ⁝ a drow is swerd wel fyn,
the other two. & al to-hew þe oþre twye ⁝ iubiter & appolyn. 2572
Roland says ¶ "Parfay," þan saide duk Rolond ⁝ to þat maide briȝt,
those gods are not very strong. "þyne godes buþ naȝt in hond ⁝ Wel litel ys hure miȝt,
for now þay buþ a-doun afalle ⁝ þay mowe noȝt vp aȝene."
Floripas is converted and "þat is soþ," saide þat briȝt in halle ⁝ "& þat is now wel y-sene,
If ich hem worschipie after þis ⁝ maugre mot y haue. 2577
for þay mowe noȝt her y-wys ' hem-selue fram herme saue;
begins to pray to Jesus, Ac y by-seche þat god of miȝt ⁝ þat diede on þe rode,
Hwich of marie þat mayde briȝt ⁝ while tok flechs & blode, 2580
Ase wisly as y lyue riȝt ⁝ a[nd] dayde for mannys gode:
þat Sone sum socour to ous diȝt ⁝ & helpe ous of liflode."
but faints with hunger. nad sche þer noȝt of hure bone ⁝ fulich y-mad an ende,
Or heo for hunger had forgone ⁝ hir wit & ek hur mende. 2584
[leaf 34, back] A soȝenyng þanne ful hure oppone ⁝ & gan to walwe & wende.
"Alas!" saide þay euerechone ⁝ "wo is ous for þis hende!"
Roland lifts her up, ¶ Ro[land] tok hure vp wel softe ⁝ & conforted hure wat he maye,
& for hure þanne sykede he ofte ⁝ & til þe oþre gan to saye: 2588
"In myn herte me ys wo ⁝ þat our frend gynt feynte;
Sche is so mat sche may noȝt go ⁝ so hunger hur haueþ enteynte,
& if sche þus among ous here ⁝ for hunger daye scholde,
For ous for euere repref hit were ⁝ for heo is trewe & holde. 2592
Me were leuere, be swete iesus ⁝ beo iwounded neȝ þe dede,
þan to sen hure fare þus ⁝ for defaute of brede.
& now is þe þridde day a-gon ⁝ þat our vitaile gunne to slake,
& bred ne wyn ne haue we non ⁝ þat we hure mowe take, 2596
and proposes to adopt Sir Guy's advice, and sally out in search of food. Hure to conforty wiþ-in þis nede ⁝ ne non of þe burdes alle,
þer-for do we by Gȳ is rede ⁝ & vitailles ous schulleþ falle.
¶ Fare we out of þis castel her ⁝ vnto þe Saraȝyns,
Ous to gete vytailes ther ⁝ amonges our enymys. 2600
& wan we comeþ hem among ⁝ somme schulle we haue,
Ouþer elles þay schulleþ don ous wrong ⁝ al-so god me saue.
What so þay be þat letteþ ous oȝt ⁝ our purchas for to make,
for godes loue ne sparieþ noȝt ⁝ hure crones þat ȝe ne crake. 2604

& if y þys day forþward spare ⁝ Sarasyn ouþer torke,
for euere mot y þan for-fare ⁝ for my dayes werke.
þer-for, lordes, on þys porpos ⁝ let ous now so by-gynne,
þat we mowe þar of our fos ⁝ such vytailes ous y-wynne, 2608
Wer-with þis damesels & we ⁝ mowe oure lyues lede,
Or we mowen bet y-socoured be ⁝ wiþ Char[lis] & ys ferede."
Alle þe oþre barouns free ⁝ assentieþ to þat dede: All the knights approve of the advice, and quickly arm themselves, and mount.
Now dure god in trynyte ⁝ grantye hem wel to spede! 2612
SOne þanne were þes barouns diȝt ⁝ in ful sykere wedes,
In aketouns, helmes, & brynyes briȝt ⁝ & on styþe stedes.
þe Castel ȝate was opened þo ⁝ & þe draȝbrigge lete adoun,
& were in poynte forþ to go ⁝ þan spak Ro[land] to Naymoun, 2616 Roland wishes Naymes to remain and guard the gate,
& prayde hym tabide þare ⁝ to kepe þat entree,
þe wyle þay made þat ilke fare ⁝ & þyder wer comen a-ȝe.
¶ Neymys answerede & sayde, "nay ⁝ why wiltou me mysbede? but Naymes refuses.
ȝut am y bold in myn aray ⁝ to don a mannis dede." 2620
"ȝe," quaþ Ro[land], "by my fay ⁝ þou art wel god at nede,
þow schalt forþ wiþ me þis day ⁝ þe betre þat ous may spede,
And duk Terry her schal leue ⁝ for he ys doȝty man." [leaf 35] Then Roland orders Terry to remain;
Wan Terry hit herde, him gan greue ⁝ bot noȝt ne saide he þan. 2624
Wan Ro[land] hit a-perceuede & seȝ ⁝ þat he gan waxe wroþ;
In is doynge he was ful sleȝ ⁝ & til him sone he goþ.
"Terry," saide he, "as þou art me lef ⁝ ipraye þe on godes name
þat þou ne take it noȝt to gref ⁝ þoȝ þou be laft at hame. 2628
Our on mot nedes leuen her ⁝ to kepe þis entree;
y pray þe kepet gode vere ⁝ til þat we comen a-ȝee."
Ouneþe Terry wolde assente ⁝ to Abiden for þat nede; he agrees, but with reluctance.
Noþeles þis lordes buþ for y-wente ⁝ crist of heuene him spede. 2632
¶ Forþ now prikeaþ þis bolde barouns ⁝ wiþ a wel hardy chere,
Al so fers as any lyouns ⁝ was euerech on is manere; The knights sally out.
Wel y-armed on sikere stedes ⁝ hure armure schon ful briȝte;
Don þay þenkeþ doȝty dedes ⁝ longe or come þe nyȝte. 2636
Toward þe Saraȝynȝ þay prykede faste ⁝ & þe sonne schon ful liȝte.
¶ þe A[myral] a-perceyuede hem þan an haste ⁝ & awondrede him of þat siȝte; The Emir sees them,
Til him þan clipede he Sortybran ⁝ and Bruillant of mountmyrreeȝ:

"Telleþ me," quaþ þe A[myral], "if ȝe can ꝛ what maner men buþ þeeȝ,
þat comeþ hiderward so boldely ꝛ prykynge on þis grene." 2641
"Hit buþ," quaþ þay "ful sykerly ꝛ frenschemen wiþ-oute wene,
þat buþ now comen out of þe tour ꝛ & þenkeþ *with* ous to fiȝte,
& for to do þe deshonour ꝛ or we ben fullych diȝte." 2644

and orders the assembly to sound.

¶ "Let blowe oure hornes," quaþ þe A[myrel], "y hote ȝow riȝt a-non,
þ*at* myn host may come w*ith*-oute dwel ꝛ to fiȝte aȝen my fon."
þa*n* miȝte men many hornes here ꝛ of latou*n* y-mad, & bras:

The Saracens arm in haste,

Wel sore þe Sarysyns affraid were ꝛ wan þay herde þ*at* blas. 2648
Hure armes þai toke to he*m* for fere ꝛ to aray he*m* in þ*at* cas:
A schrewed lessou*n* scholde þey lere ꝛ so*m*me of ȝam sone þas.

but are not ready for the French,

¶ þus Barou*n*s fulle on he*m* ful sone ꝛ or þay wern y-diȝte:
& Ro[land] cride "mont-ioye," anon ꝛ & smyteþ on wiþ miȝte. 2652
þay laid on þanne wiþ herte & wil ꝛ st*ur*ne strokes & grete;

who kill more than 1000 of them.

& to hewe þe Sarasyns boþe bok & bil ꝛ here herte blod mad þey swete.
W*ith* hure swerdes sherp y-grounde ꝛ þai kuld hem & dude he*m* wo;
A þousant þay aslowe w*ith*-inne a stou*n*de ꝛ & ȝut y wene wel mo.
¶ Wel fauȝt þanne duk Rolande ꝛ wyþ durendale ys sverd adrawe:
He hew of heuedes, armes, & haunde ꝛ of þe Sarasyns þ*at* were on mawe.
And so hym dude þe erld Olyuer ꝛ alle þ*at* he miȝte a-reche,
A kulde he*m* dou*n* afforn hi*m* ther ꝛ & was hur*e* laste leche. 2660
& eu*e*rech of al þe frensche ferde ꝛ þar þay bere hi*m* so
[leaf 35, back] þ*at* eu*e*rech haþ slawe wyþ dent of swerde ꝛ an .C. w*ith*-oute mo,
So þat þe furste schak was ouercome ꝛ of hure enymys.

Clarion, king of Gryes, comes up with 15,000 Saracens.

Ac þa*n*ne com frechs a ferly gome ꝛ Clariou*n* þe kyng of Gryeȝ, 2664
xv þousant in-to þe feld ꝛ broȝte he of Sarsyn,
Wel araid wyþ sper & scheld ꝛ and in armure god & fyn.
Cosyn was he to Balaan ꝛ ys soster sone a was,
In paynye was þer þan no man ꝛ þat in wraþþe þerst sen ys fas. 2668

Roland cries for help,

¶ Wan duk Ro[land] y-saw hi*m* come ꝛ w*ith* so many men of miȝtes,
To is felawes a cride al & some ꝛ "now helpeþ, hende knyȝtes,
Teche we now wat men we byþ ꝛ & gete ous vytailes here,
þat we mowe ous fede þar-wyþ ꝛ & þe wymen þ*at* buþ our fere." 2672
W*ith* þ*at* drow he ys gode sverd ꝛ and to Templer gan he ryde,

cleaves his skull,

& þorȝ þe heued he hi*m* gerd ꝛ wyþ a strok þat tyde:
A-noþer a smot þat was hi*m* neȝ ꝛ & wel hi*m* gan a-rede,

And gurd hi*m* fro þat heued an heȝ ⁝ in-to þe gurdel-stede. 2676
þan laid he on wiþ miȝt and mayn ⁝ in eche syde aboute;
So many he haueþ of Sarsyns slayn ⁝ þ*at* þe oþe*re* by-gu*n*ne he*m* doute
& floȝe þanne out of is way ⁝ wan þay knewe ys miȝte;
So doþ þe larke on someres day ⁝ þe sp*er*hauk þ*at* is in fliȝte. 2680
¶ þan asscriede duk Roland ⁝ sir Berard of mou*n*disdier:
"Berard," said he, "let go þyn hand ⁝ & tech he*m* þat þou art her,
And by my trowþe fande y schel ⁝ to don al my power,
& ho-so wil noȝt now do wel ⁝ for-sake he þys myster." 2684
¶ þe speche þ*at* Ro[land] to Berard made ⁝ gerte here hertes sprynge,
þay laide on þ*e* Sarsyns strokes sade ⁝ as herde as þay miȝt flynge.
Faste þay foȝte þ*a*nne eu*e*rechon ⁝ & laide hure fon to grou*n*de,
& to hewe hem boþe flechs & bon ⁝ & ȝaue he*m* deþes wounde. 2688
So many of he*m* thar had for-heawed ⁝ Roland & is route,
þat al þe feldes þoȝte y-strawed ⁝ of dede men al aboute.
¶ þan turde hymen þys bachelers ⁝ & seȝe comynge there
xxiiij^tt^ of faire somers ⁝ whiche þat heuy bere, 2692
Wyþ vytaylles boþe gode & fyne ⁝ icharged alle þay worne;
Boþe wiþ bred & wiþ wyne ⁝ wiþ flour & eke wiþ corne;
Wyþ grys, & gees, & capouns ⁝ wyþ veneȝon & wyþ oyle,
Wiþ motou*n*, & bef & bakou*n*s ⁝ and othre gode ȝytayle. 2696
Kyng heruer of Goran ⁝ þe vitailes hadde y-sent
To þe heȝe Amyral sir Balan ⁝ þyder þ*a*nne to present,
Be neȝentene vitaillers ⁝ þat of þat syde were,
þat þ*a*nne dryuen þey somers ⁝ to þe A[miral] as y said ere. 2700
¶ W*a*nne þe frenschemen y-seȝe he*m* come ⁝ aȝen he*m* hy toke þe waye,
& by-trappede he*m* þanne al & some ⁝ to wyte what ladden þaye.
Ac wanne þe barouns it i-knewe ⁝ what þay in lode hadde, 2703
þe Sarsyns þanne þay alto-hewe ⁝ & þe vytailes w*ith* he*m* þay ladde.
¶ Wyþ þat come out þe Sarasyn[y]s ⁝ þat rathere were noȝt a-raid;
xxx. þousant of stoute paynymys ⁝ in armis wel a-said.
þey wern y-armed in-to þe teþ ⁝ & araid wel for þe fiȝt.
Wan þis barou*n*s hymen seeþ ⁝ somdel þay wern afriȝt. 2708
To Duk naymes & Scot Gwylmer ⁝ þan Ro[land] gan to crye:
"Dryueþ forþ þe vytailles ther ⁝ [ȝond] to dure an hye,[1]

and puts his men to flight.

Roland then perceives Berard, and challenges him.

The French see 24 pack-horses loaded with provisions of all kinds,

driven by 19 attendants.

They slay the escort and

carry off the provisions.

[leaf 36]

Then come 30,000 Saracens.

Roland tells Naymes to drive on the convoy

[1] to [þe tour] an hye.

while he and Oliver protect them.

And y me-self and Olyuer ⁝ wyþ þys oþer part
Wolleþ come be-hynde her ⁝ & kepe þe rereward. 2712
now spede ȝow þat ȝe were ⁝ as ȝe loueaþ ȝour honour,
Wyþ hors & al þat ilke gere ⁝ wyþ-inne þe ȝonder tour."

The Saracens rally and pursue them.

¶ Alle þe Sarsyns þat were þanne ⁝ by-gunne hem to relye
& after hem faste come renne ⁝ & by-gunne hem to ascrye; 2716
Ac Ro[land] tok his companye ⁝ & let þe Somers pace,
And torneþ to hem-ward boldelye ⁝ to mete hem in þat place.
Nov help hem þe heȝ kyng of heuene ⁝ þat art of miȝtes most!
Ne were þer þo bot kniȝtes neȝene ⁝ to fiȝte aȝen þat host. 2720
¶ þey fulle to-gadre atte laste ⁝ & by-gunne a newe fiȝt;
þe barouns layde on hem vaste ⁝ wiþ swerd faire & briȝt,
Of alle þe route was þar non ⁝ þat þe frensche a-raȝte ariȝt,
þat þai ne cloue hym flechs & bon ⁝ & dryuen hem doun with miȝt:

The French are hard pressed.

In a playn þat was ful fair & grene ⁝ þat lay þar neȝ þe tour, 2725
þe frensche men to muche tene ⁝ was mad þat harde schour.
¶ þe Saraȝyns þanne atte laste ⁝ wan þey seȝe þat cas,
Glayues scherpe þai gunne caste ⁝ & dartes y-feþered wiþ bras. 2728

Basyn is killed.

Duk' Basyn, a doþþeper of fraunce ⁝ þorȝ þe heued i-gerd þer was,
& ful doun ded þar by chaunce ⁝ þan saide þe frensche "alas!"

They begin to give way.

¶ Duk Ro[land] & erld Olyuer ⁝ þan þay bleynte a syde,
& so he dude þe gode Ogeer ⁝ & Gy wolde noȝt abide, 2732
For drede of the lancynge þat com ther ⁝ of speres þat fulle ounryde
þorȝ þat so war-of þ^e frensche wer ⁝ dyscomfyted neȝ þat tyde.
¶ þan cam Clariouⁿ þe sturne kyng ⁝ & loude hem gan ascrye: 2735
"Falleþ on hem þai buþ fleoyng ⁝ we schulleþ hem haue an hye."

Guy challenges Clarion.

Gyoun turde til him hys stede ⁝ and sayde þo, "þow schalt lye,
Arst y schal þe make blede ⁝ her riȝt ich þe diffye."

His horse is killed;

¶ þe whyle þat Gyoun drow ys brond ⁝ & þat word had spoke oneþe,
þar com a dart to hym fleand ⁝ & herte his hors to deþe. 2740
þe gode knyȝt þanne him ful a-non ⁝ and eke ys stede of prys;
& wel sone þer fulle him vppon ⁝ an hundred of Sarsyns.

he is taken prisoner.

þan was þar þat stronge baroun ⁝ among is fon y-take.
þe Sarasyns dude his helm a-doun ⁝ & maked is hed al nake, 2744
His handes þanne þay toke riȝt ⁝ & layden him be-hynde,

He is bound,

And ase faste as tweyne miȝt ⁝ wiþ a corde þay dude him bynde,

And suþþe þe schrewes toke a clout ⁝ to don hi*m* more tene, [leaf 36, bk]
& byndeþ ys eȝene þar-wiþ about ⁝ for he ne schold noȝt sene. 2748 and blind-folded.
¶ þanne made sir Gy. a dulful mon ⁝ & sayde, "welaway,
A, Ihe*s*u lord, wat schal y don ⁝ y am i-lost þ*is* day!
Alas ⁝ Char[les] vncle myn ⁝ & kyng i-crouned free, 332
Now y knowe wel-a-ffyn ⁝ þy message schendeþ me." 2752
Clariou*n* saide to þe kniȝt ⁝ "þow syngest an ydel songe,
þis day schalt*o*u ben yuele y-dyȝt ⁝ & to morwe heȝe an honge."
¶ Wan þe oþre barons it wyste ⁝ þ*at* Gy was so y-take,
Wat þay miȝte do þay nyste ⁝ bot gret sorwe þay gu*n* make. 2756 The knights
Alle þe vitaylles þay hauede nome ⁝ þan þai lete he*m* gon, let the convoy go,
& gadrede he*m* to-gadre alle & some ⁝ to help ech oþer anon. but Oliver throws
Ac arst erld Olyuer hi*m*[1] bi-þoȝte ⁝ wan he he*m* leue schel, a barrel of wine,
Of a somer þan he cauȝte ⁝ of wyn a ful barel, 2760 3 loaves,
& of[2] bred loues three ⁝ y-mad of flour of whete; four capons,
& Capou*n*s y-bake al-so tok he ⁝ foure in þilke hete, three peacock pies,
& iij. pecokkes y-bake on past ⁝ & a syde of venyȝou*n*; and some venison,
& þese vytailles ther haþ he cast ⁝ in-to þe dych adou*n*, 2764 inside the moat.
& to his felaschipe hi*m* is adrawe ⁝ wiþ hymen for ta-byde,
Hwich þe Saraȝyns þ*at* were ou*n*mawe ⁝ angryde in eu*e*ry syde. The Saracens drive them back,
þe frensche men þai hadde y-dryue; wel neȝ þe tour þ*at* stou*n*de,
So hard batail þai hadde he*m* ȝyue ⁝ w*ith* wepnes scherp y-grou*n*de.
¶ Ac wan þay neȝede so neȝ hure strengþe ⁝ hure hertes sp*r*onge vp ageyn, but they rally.
þay dryuen hem aȝen an aker lengþe ⁝ þe Saraȝyns in þe pleyn;
& in þe reculynge þat þay made ⁝ an hundred of he*m* wer sleyn,
Wyþ sturne strokes þe frensche hade ⁝ ȝyuen hi*m* in-to þe breyn. 2772
þe Sarsyns þan lefte þat discou*m*fit ⁝ & to þe tour þay buþ ago.
Olyuer þ^e^ vitails noȝt for-ȝyt ⁝ bot after wente þo.
To þe tour þai come to-gadre an haste ⁝ & spedilich in þey wente, They retire inside the castle,
& After hymen made þe gate faste ⁝ & þ^e^ draȝbrig vp þay bente. 2776 and draw up the bridge.
Sory men þay aliȝten alle ⁝ of hure stedes þan adou*n*,
For þe meschef þat was by-falle ⁝ on Basyn and Gyou*n*.
¶ Of þe paleys þan com adou*n* anon ⁝ Flo[rippe] þat burde briȝt, Floripas enquires
& to Rolond sche ys agon ⁝ & askede of hi*m* ful riȝt: 2780 after Sir Guy,
"War is he, myn owene spouse ⁝ Gyou*n*, þe gode kniȝt?

[1] hi*m* [wel]. [2] of [bulted].

Now y sen hym noȝt in þis house ⁝ a-gon ys al myn hiȝt."

and when she ¶ "Damesele," said he wiþ-oute faile ⁝ "to sayn soþ of þy make,
Hit ne may beo no consail ⁝ þe Saraȝyns hi*m* habbeþ itake, 2784
& Duk Basyn we han y-lore ⁝ among þe Sarsynȝ blake.
& ȝut for Gy me greueþ more ⁝ cert*is* for þy sake."

[leaf 37] hears of his capture, faints, and ¶ Wan Flo[rippe] of ys takyng herde ⁝ for sorwe sche saide, "alas!"
Sche wrong hur haundes & foule ferde ⁝ & sowened in þ*at* plas: 2788
And wan sche out of sowenyng ros ⁝ loude sche gan to crie:
"Alas⁝ ys Gyou*n* wiþ is fos ⁝ alas! for sorwe y dye.

threatens, if Guy is not within 2 days rescued, to give up the castle. Certis bot y haue Gy aȝen ⁝ wiþ-inne þis dawes twye,
þis ilke tour schal iȝelde ben ⁝ þe þridde day be Marye. 2792
Alas⁝ heo saide, & welawo ⁝ to longe y lyue in londe,
Now is he. fram me ago ⁝ þat scholdbe myn hosbonde.
Alas! loue, wo dost þou me ⁝ þov sturest al my blod.
Alas! Gyou*n* þe loue of þe ⁝ wil do me waxe wod." 2796
Wiþ þ*at* ful sche þat burde briȝt ⁝ in sowenyng dou*n* aȝeyn,
And wa*n*ne þ*at* maide speke myȝt ⁝ wepynge sche gan to sayn:
"Now ic certis neȝ for-ȝete ⁝ þe Angwys þat i hadde
thre dawes for defaute of mete ⁝ so sorwe me haueþ be-stade." 2800

¶ þan had Ro[land] þe noble kniȝt ⁝ gret pite of þat mayde,
Roland promises to resoue Guy. And confortede hure wiþ al is myȝt ⁝ & tok hur op & sayde:
"Now damesele, by god almiȝt ⁝ so þow be wel a-paide,
þow schalt hi*m* haue to-morwe or niȝt⁝ þ*at* þe cok hym graide." 2804

¶ To Ro[land] þan sche gan abowe ⁝ almost dou*n* til his fete,
& þankede hi*m* wel faire i trowe ⁝ of is confort swete.
Oliver produces the provisions he had taken. þanne hi*m* saide erld Olyuer ⁝ "we buþ in yule aray,
þ*at* we ete any mete her ⁝ þis ys þe þridde day; 2808
& þus damesels for-werneþ al ⁝ þ*at* me greueþ werst:
& we ous self buþ feynt & pal ⁝ for hungre & for þerst.
Al ȝour mornyng leteþ now ben ⁝ & murȝhere let ous make,
of þys vytailles þat ȝe sen ⁝ whyche y haue y-take. 2812
Her-of mowe we take our fille ⁝ þa wile þai wolleþ leste,
& mo þ*er*-after gete we schulle ⁝ & take we her-of þe beste."
þe othere hi*m* þankede þanne anon ⁝ for he was so hende,
And toke þe damesels wiþ he*m* ecchon ⁝ & in-to þe paleys gu*n*ne þay wende. 2816

To þe mete þay set he*m* þere ⁝ & ete & dronke hure fille.
Now torne we aȝen þar we were ⁝ & of Gy y wil ȝo*u* telle.

The Saracens conduct Guy to Balan's tent.

PE Sarasyns ledeþ forþ Gyou*n* ⁝ harde & faste y-bounde,
To þe Amyralis pauylloun ⁝ þei come wiþ-inne a stou*n*de; 2820
& by-vore Balan, þe Ameral ⁝ þay hym broȝte an haste,
And Gyoun þa*n*ne was teynt & paal ⁝ so longe he hadde yuaste.
Ac of body was he a seemly kniȝt ⁝ of fair schap & of free;
nas þer nowar yfounde in syȝt ⁝ a fairer man þan hee. 2824

Balan asks him his name and race.

þe Amerel het hym sone þere ⁝ to tel hi*m* al þat cas,
Of wat kyn come he were ⁝ & wat ys name was.

[leaf 37, bk] Guy tells him.

¶ And Gy Answerede wiþ-oute ensoyngne ⁝ as he hi*m* stod afforn.
"Ma calþ me Gyou*n* of Borgoygne ⁝ in þ^e^ contre þ*at* y was born.
þe kyng of fraunce Charlemayn ⁝ he ys myn vncle riȝt, 2829
Cosyn al-so y am Germayn ⁝ to Roland, þe gode kniȝt."

Balan recognises him

¶ þan þe Amyrel saide an haste ⁝ "y knowe þe wel ynow:
Hit is twelmonth and more apaste ⁝ to Ma[houn] y make avow! 2832
þat my doȝtre hure loue to þe caste ⁝ & eu*er*e suþþe haueþ y-dow.
Hure loue ys mored on þe ful vaste ⁝ & þat me semeþ now,
By-cause of þe now haue y lore ⁝ myn men of heȝe kynne.

as the cause of all his trouble,

& þe ȝond tour me ys wers þer-fore ⁝ & al my tresour w*ith*-ynne:
By þe haue y þat deshonour ⁝ tel me þ*er*-for anon,[1] 2837

and enquires the names of the others.

Wat men buþ þat buþ on my tour ⁝ & hure names euerechon."

Guy tells him,

¶ "Sire," quaþ Gyou*n*, "by myn hand ⁝ þat schel y · þe telle fawe:
Ther ys ferst Duk Roland ⁝ & Olyuer his felawe, 2840
And ther ys Berard of mou*n*tdisdier ⁝ & Richard of normandye,
And Duk Naymys, & erld Ogier ⁝ & Alorys þe erld of Brye,
& Geffray þe lord of langeuyn ⁝ & eke þe erld Aubry;
Ther ys al-so the Scot Gwylmyn ⁝ & of Ardan þe duk Tery, 2844
Basyn was þe elleuefþe ⁝ þat ȝe han slawe there,
& y me self was þe twelþe ⁝ y-take amonges ȝow here:
Ac ȝut or come oȝt longe ⁝ & Charlis may ride & gon,

and threatens him with vengeance.

Abigge þow schalt þis wronge ⁝ þat þov ous hast y-don." 2848

A Saracen gives him a blow on the mouth.

¶ Wyþ þat a Sarsyn cam forþ sterte ⁝ þat souȝte is owene deþ,
& wiþ ys fuste harde a gerte ⁝ Gyoun agayn þe teþ,
þ*at* endelonges is berde riȝt ⁝ þan[2] ran adou*n* þ*at* blod;

[1] tel þ*er*-for [blif] anon. [2] [þat rede blode.]

And þan hi*m* wax þ*a*t man of mi3t ⁝ for wraþþe wel ne3 wod, 2852
þar-fore to ben alto-hewe ⁝ to wreke hi*m* wolde he fonde;

Guy dashes out his brains with his fist.

By þe nekke hent he þan shrewe ⁝ & heuid vp ys honde,
& þar-wiþ an þe heued hi*m* duste ⁝ & harde gan hit layn,
þ*a*t al aboute is grete vuste ⁝ þan wend out al þ*a*t brayn. 2856

Balan orders him to be bound, but

¶ þe Ameral þanne gan loude crye ⁝ wan he so3 hi*m* falle:
"Byndeþ þan þef," gan he seye ⁝ "þat schameþ þus ous alle."
þe Sarsyns þanne on hi*m* fulle ⁝ alle wiþ herte grete,
& shrewed-liche þai dede hym kulle ⁝ boþe w*ith* honde & fete; 2860
His cote armure þay alto-drowe ⁝ þat he had hi*m* oppon,
& dude hi*m* sorwe & schame ynow ⁝ þ*er* ne spared hi*m* neu*er* on.

[leaf 38] will not have him killed.

¶ þe A[meral] þ*a*nne gan crie an haste ⁝ "y hote 3e sle hi*m* no3t,
Bote byndeþ hym herde & faste ⁝ til y haue my consayl so3t." 2864
þe Sar3yn3 after his heste dide ⁝ [1]Sir Gwy[1] so harde bynde
þat þe blod barst out þar mide ⁝ at eu*er*y nayles ynde.

Balan calls a council.

¶ To hym þan clepede sir Balan ⁝ þe Ameral of nubbee,
Kyng Bruyllant and kyng Sortybran ⁝ ys cou*n*seilers pryuee, 2868
& oþre ynowe he dude al-so ⁝ þat come to hi*m* wel sone
By þe prysou*n* he askede þo ⁝ wat was best to done.[2]

Sortybran advises him to take 20,000 men,

¶ "Sire," sayde kyng Sortybran ⁝ "hast þou gode chere
þy faire tour to gete a3an ⁝ wyþ-oute any where, 2872
And þe frensche distruye þ*a*t buþ þ*er*-aan ⁝ and þees þ*a*t is here?"
"By Mahou*n*, 3ea," quaþ balaan ⁝ "þer-of wold y here."
¶ "þou schalt haue consail god" ⁝ saide þe Sarsyn þo;
"Tak xx^ti^ þousand men of mod ⁝ ate leste way or mo, 2876
þat ben do3ty on hure dedes ⁝ & y-di3t in god armure;
& loke þay haue faire stedes ⁝ þ*a*t ben gode & sure,

and place them in ambush during the night.

þanne do þat þaye in-buched beo ⁝ to-ni3t how so be-tyde,
In þe wode þat þow mi3t see ⁝ 3ond her fast be-syde: 2880
& þan scholtou don þe forchys there ⁝ by-fore þe castel ri3t,
So þat þay wyþ-ynne there ⁝ y-sen hem vp y-py3t,

Then in the morning hang Guy in front of the castle: if the French try to rescue him,

þan wollaþ þay wel vnderstonde ⁝ why þat þay buþ di3t
And to-morwe let þes be þar an honge ⁝ by-for hure alre si3t. 2884
Y wot ful wel þay buþ so prout ⁝ & of hure dedes ou*n*mawe,
þat þay willeþ þanne come out ⁝ to rescuwy hure felawe.

[1]—[1] [þe gode kni3t.] [2] [of hymen] wat was to done.

¶ þan schullaþ our men of hem be-war ⁝ & breken out of þe bossche,
& þov wyþ þyne, & be-trappe he*m* þar ⁝ & take hem at one russche. they will be taken in the ambush.
& þus schalt þov wreke þe of þy fon ⁝ & gete þy tour aȝeyn." 2889
"þus conseil is god & schal by don" ⁝ þe Amerel þan gan seyn.
¶ Wel sone dude þe Amyrel ⁝ after ys counseil riȝt: Balan follows the advice.
xx þousand Sarsyns araide he wel ⁝ & to þat wode he haueþ hi*m* diȝt.
Hure ledere dude he þanne make ⁝ Cornyfer an heȝene kyng; 2893
& þay hit habbeþ vnder-take[1] ⁝ to parfornye wel þat þyng.

ERly on þe morwetyde ⁝ after þat þay were there, In the morning the gibbet is erected, in front of the castle.
þe Amyral wolde no leng abyde ⁝ bot þe Galwys let arere;
By-fore þe tour y-set þay were ⁝ a litel by-syde a cost, 2897
Noȝt fer fro þen buchyment þere ⁝ & neȝ to ys owe*n* host.
And þanne ordeynde he for drede ⁝ an hundred of Sarsyns stronge,
þat scholde Gyoun þyder lede ⁝ sickerliche,[2] & hym an honge. 2900
þay hundred Sarsynȝ after his heste ⁝ harde han hi*m* bounde, Guy is led bound
And þanne aboute ys nekke þay caste ⁝ a rop ful harde y-wounde. [leaf 38, back] with a rope round his neck.
¶ And wan þ*at* ape*r*ceuede þe gode kniȝt ⁝ þ*at* a scholde ben an honge,
ȝerne prayhede he to god Almiȝt ⁝ scholde ys soule auonge. 2904
þys schrewede Sarsyns þ*at* wern ou*n*wraste ⁝ þan ladde forþ Gyou*n*,
To þe Galwis-ward wel faste ⁝ þay enchacede þan baroun;
& wyþ sturne staues þay hi*m* bute ⁝ as þay þo dryuen hi*m* forþ, The Saracens drive him along with blows.
þ*at* after eue*r*ech of hure strokes grute ⁝ ys body al swart y-worþ.
Ac wan Gy y-saw þe galwe tree ⁝ þan gan he wepe stronge: 2909
"Alas ⁝" saide he, "þat y schold see ⁝ þat day to ben an honge.
Alas! myne felawes war buþ ȝee ⁝ wy tarieþ ȝe so longe?
Certis bot if ȝe helpe me ⁝ y her daye now wyþ wronge." 2912
¶ Duk Ro[land] þ*at* ys cosyn was ⁝ at a wyndowe out gan lye, Roland sees the gibbet
Sone saw he be-fore ys fas ⁝ þe Galwys arered an hye,
And many Sarsyns stonde aboute ⁝ araid on hure gere;
Wel y-armed was al þe route ⁝ þan wondrede he wat hit were. 2916
Sone clipede he erld Olyuer ⁝ & ys oþre felawes wyȝte; and calls his companions.
And p*ra*yed he*m* alle come neer ⁝ to seen a[3] selcouþ siȝte.
And þa*n*ne of hymen he gan enquer ⁝ wat þat amounty myȝte,
And wham þay þoȝte an honge ther ⁝ on þ*e* galwys þat þer were diȝte.
¶ þa*n*ne answerede duk Naymou*n* ⁝ & saide on his entent: 2921 Naymes guesses for

[1] MS. vnder-takake. [2] MS. sirkerliche. [3] a [wonder].

whom the gallows is prepared.

"þay wolleþ an honge þar Gyoun ſ sone þay han y-ment.
Ys cloþynge þai han alle of i-don ſ & al naked þar a stent,
Bote we him þe rathere helpe mown ſ thar he worth y-schent." 2924
¶ Wan Duk Ro[land] þat soþe y-knew ſ þanne sturede al ys blod,
ys colour changed & ys hew ſ for angre wax he neȝ wod.

Floripas begs Roland to rescue Sir Guy.

Afforn him sone com knely þat may ſ Flo[rippe] þat was so god,
Hym to helpe sche gan him pray ſ for his loue þat daiede on rod:
"& harneyscheaþ ȝow with-oute lette ſ hastelich þat ȝe be diȝt, 2929
And we wymmen willeþ ȝow fette ſ ȝour stedes araid ariȝt."
"Doþ þanne, damesele, as ȝe sede ſ" quaþ Ro[land] þat was so wyȝt,

Roland calls his companions to arms.

"& we nulleþ spare for no drede ſ to help him with al our miȝt."
¶ "Asarmes!" þanne cride Rolond ſ "asarmes, euerechon! 2933
Gowe army ous wyþ ayþer hond ſ þat we wer þar anon."

Hastily they arm.

Hasteliche buþ þay wel y-diȝt ſ in gode & syker wede,[1] [1] syker [armure]
hwych was clene & fayr of siȝt ſ and fyn ynow at nede. 2936
To ech of hem tok þat swete wiȝt ſ sunderly þanne ys stede,
And wan Ro[land] was on his alyȝt ſ to is felawes þanne a sede:

[leaf 39]

Roland warns them, as they are so few,

¶ "Lordes vnderstondeþ ȝow ſ of wat y am be-thoȝt;
We ne buþ [but] ten her now ſ & mo ne beo we noȝt. 2940
And of þus Sarasyns þer nys no numbre ſ þat ous haueþ by-set,
& hy ous wolleþ foule encombre ſ bote we ous bere þe bet.
þer-for doþ by counsayle ſ y pray ȝow in godes name,

to keep together.

þat non of ous to oþer faile ſ bot hold ous to-gadre y-same; 2944
& þat ech of ous on his helue ſ do al þat a may,
To helpe ys felawe euene him-selue ſ among our fon to day,
& anpeyny we ous our felawe to fette ſ þat ys among ys fos.
& slee we hymen þat willeþ ous lette ſ to don þar our purpos, 2948
For to ben þar alto hewe ſ our non him fancy noȝt.
And egreliche y schal hem schewe ſ somdel of my þoȝt.
And euere draweþ to-ward me ſ wanne ȝow nedeþ meste,
And y wille ȝour warant be ſ þe whyle my swerd wil leste. 2952
And whar any of ȝow be in stour ſ haue ȝe þar-of no doute,
Y schal ȝow come to socour ſ maugre al þe route,
And doþ ȝe al-so euery man ſ helpeþ other att nede."

Floripas urges them to start,

So þey wolde ſ þai sayden þan ſ "crist of heuene ous spede!" 2956
¶ "Lordlynges," saide Floripe þo ſ "ȝe dwelleþ her wel longe;

Bote ȝe þe rathere ben a-go ⁝ my lemman worth an honge."
In-to hure chambre sche renneþ faste ⁝ & þat shryn sche broȝte adoun,
And openede hit bi-for hem an haste ⁝ & tok out þat comly croun
þat was on cristes heued y-set ⁝ on his passyoun; 2961
& þay hit cussede wiþ-oute let ⁝ wiþ god deuocioun.
And suþþe þay blessede *þer* *with* hure face ⁝ & set hit hure helmes oppon.
And þan þay hopede by godes grace ⁝ þe sykerloker þay miȝte gon.
þe ȝeates wern y-oppened wyde ⁝ þe draȝtbrigge þay lete falle, 2965
Euerech þanne by oþrys syde ⁝ wenten[1] out fair *with*-alle.
Floripe, *þat* maide briȝt & schene ⁝ þe ȝeate þan made faste,
& þe draȝt-brigge drow op aȝene ⁝ wan þay were apaste. 2968
¶ þus Frenschemen of douce fraunce ⁝ euene þay toke hure pas,
þe Saraȝyns þo to yuele chaunce ⁝ þar þat þe fourchys was.
By þat was Gyoun vp a-stoȝe ⁝ oppoun þe laddre an heȝ,
& þe rop y-knyt þe tree aboȝe ⁝ & he y-pult out wel neȝ. 2972
ac Ro[land] *with* *þat* cam þyder renne ⁝ sodeynliche on is stede,
And criede[2] to þe Sarsynȝ þenne ⁝ "aȝeld ȝow, ȝe buþ dede!"
Wanne þe Sarsyns y-sawe him come ⁝ ful sore þay were affriȝt,
þe hardieste *þat* were of al þe trome ⁝ polte hem to þe fliȝt. 2976
And þan was Gyoun þar y-laft ⁝ in the ladre *him*-self al-one,
Al ys cloþes were him by-raft ⁝ *with* Sarsyns *þat* buþ a-gone.
¶ þe Sarasyns þanne *with* yule grace ⁝ wel faste þey floȝe away,
And our barouns hem gun chace ⁝ as harde as þay may. 2980
So harde hy hem þanne quaȝte ⁝ fleoyng toward hure host,
þat þe moste part of hem hy caȝte ⁝ & sone abatede hure bost.
Somme of hem þanne þay gerte ⁝ þorȝ þe heued in-to þe tonge,
And summe of hymen þay wer herte ⁝ þorw lyure & þorȝ longe. 2984
Alle *þat* þo miȝte ben of-take ⁝ wyþ-oute tales mo,
Wel sone hur bred was y-bake ⁝ hure lif-dawes wern ago.
Al *þat* company was so by-fraped ⁝ among þes frenschemen,
þat among hem alle þar ne ascaped ⁝ ounebe bote ten. 2988
¶ þanne þe Saraȝynȝ at arst brek out ⁝ *þat* were on þe enbuchyment;
Kyng Cornyfer & al ys rout ⁝ aȝen hem þanne þay went.
Cornyfer hem gan ascrye ⁝ "cowardes, what hav ȝe ment?
For ȝour outrage & ȝour maystrye ⁝ ȝe schulle beo now y-schent. 2992

and brings down the Crown of Thorns, which they kiss,

and they pass out,

and Floripas shuts the gates after them.

Guy is on the point of being hanged,

but Roland

puts the Saracens to flight. [leaf 39, back]

The French chace them, and slay

all but ten. The others break out of ambush.

[1] [þay] went. [2] MS. And [ascriede].

Alle ȝe schulleþ beo an honged hye ⁝ wiþ hi*m* þ*at* ȝunder stent,
& hasteliche ȝe schul dye ⁝ aȝeldeþ ȝow, ȝe buþ hent!"

Roland ¶ Wan duk Ro[land] yhurde hym speke ⁝ for angre a wax neȝ wod,
By-fore ys felawes he gan out-breke ⁝ & modyly til hi*m* rod, 2996

smites at him, but the sword glances off his helmet. And w*ith* durendal ys gode sword ⁝ a strok til hi*m* a sente.
Ac Cornyfer is helm was herd ⁝ & mad þe strok to glente;
þan Cornyfer to Roland werd ⁝ a st*ur*ne strok gan slente:

Cornyfer cleaves Roland's shield, but does not wound him. Ac Ro[land] kepede hym *fra*m ys berd ⁝ & w*ith* his scheld hi*m* hente;
bot þorȝ is scheld þe st*r*ok hi*m* sprong ⁝ and þe schild to-chon, 3001
ac ys habryioun was ful strong ⁝ it ne miȝte no ferrer gon.
God þ*an* þankeþ duk Roland ⁝ þ*at* harm hauede he non.
W*ith* þ*at* heuede he an heȝ ys brand ⁝ & sone a ȝaf hym on; 3004
Oppon is heued w*ith* egre mod ⁝ a strok til hi*m* he ledde,

Roland cleaves Cornyfer's skull, And þoȝ is helm were fyn & god ⁝ þorw-out is heuid it fledde.
þe dynt was smert & forþ hi*m* glod ⁝ & endelong is chyne hym spedde:
At ys breggurdle þ*at* swerd a-stod ⁝ he ful adou*n* & bledde. 3008

seizes his horse, and gives it to Guy. ys stede he sayseþ sone þas ⁝ & forþ-wyþ hi*m* awente,
& til he cam þar galwys was ⁝ neuere he ne astente.
Gy of Borgoyngne þar afond ⁝ y-blyndfalled, and by-bou*n*de,
Hondes & eȝene he hi*m* ou*n*bond ⁝ þ*an*ne w*ith*-inne a stou*n*de. 3012

Guy puts on his [leaf 40] clothes His cloþis leyen þer faste by ⁝ þ*at* Sarsyns hi*m* hadde by-nome:
he shridde hi*m* þ*er*-w*ith*[1] þan hastely ⁝ & cloþed hi*m* al & some[2]
Ro[land] þan tok hi*m* w*ith*-oute lak ⁝ þe stede he haueþ y-wo*n*ne,

and mounts. And Gyou*n* sterte oppon ys bak ⁝ & faire þankedem þ*an*ne: 3016
¶ "Cosyn," saide duk Roland ⁝ "hold þe by my syde,
Til þow haue armys at hand ⁝ to defendy þe wiþ pryde."
"Sir," said he, "as ȝe me bereþ ⁝ y wol do loude & stille."
þe Saraȝyns sone þ*at* cry arereþ ⁝ in tal þ*at* host ful schille, 3020
And þ*an*ne þay prykede[3] among our men ⁝ as þay were wode;
Ac hymen[4] duste dou*n* on þe fon ⁝ wiþ swerdes & axes gode.

A fierce struggle ensues. þanne comencede þat harde fiȝt ⁝ scharper miȝte non bene; 3023
Many was þe helm & brynye briȝt ⁝ þ*at* þar was cloue w*ith* tene;
& many a scheld was þar y-cleued ⁝ & many a man was to-hewe.

[1] [A*n*d dude*n* oppon hi*m*.]
[2] *Over this is written*, & Ro[land] to hym ys come & tok hi*m* þ*at* stede.
[3] MS. prykedede. [4] MS. hy hymen.

of legges & armes honde & heued ⁝ sone þan lay ful þe rewe.
Ro[land] he*n*te kyng Saladyn ⁝ & dude*n* a dede bolde, 3027 **Roland dismounts Saladin,**
for his armure was riche & fyn ⁝ on is lift arm he hi*m* gan volde,
& plyȝte hi*m* of is sadel w*ith* mayn ⁝ & let go way þat hors :
& wiþ is riȝt hond a-brak is necke a-twayn ⁝ & to Gy tok he þ*a*t cors : **breaks his neck,**
"Dispoille þis body," þan gan he saye ⁝ "& arme þe on ys wede, **and tells Guy to take his arms.**
& þanne hast þ*o*u armes gode & gaye ⁝ to helpe þe on þ*is* nede, 3032
And y wil kepe þe if y maye ⁝ þe whyle þov dost þy dede."
þan was he sone in his araye ⁝ & aȝen oppon ys stede.
¶ Wa*n*ne Gy was armed & wel an horce ⁝ þan sp*r*ong vp is herte ;
"Leggeþ on, Lordes," said he, "wyþ force ⁝ & smyteþ st*r*okes sm*er*te ; **Guy declares**
And techeþ hem a lessou*n* of our lay ⁝ for þai buþ neȝ be-vapid, 3037
And y schal tech he*m* wel þis day ⁝ þ*a*t ych am askapid." **he will teach the Saracens a lesson.**
Wan þay herde what he spak ⁝ grete strokes to hy*m*me þay rauȝte,
W*ith* strengþe þay reculede þ*a*t host a-bak ⁝ more þan a boȝe-dr*a*ȝte.
So many of he*m* þay han for-hewed ⁝ as þay reculede aȝeyn, 3041
þ*a*t al þe feld semed y-strewed ⁝ of Sarȝyns þ*a*t þo were sleyn.
Ac þe wyle þat þys was don ⁝ oþere araid hem vaste,
xx^tl^ þousand of hure fon ⁝ to fiȝte w*ith* he*m* an haste. 3044 **20,000 more come on.**
¶ Now buþ þus furste discou*m*fyt ⁝ þe frenschemen doþ abyde.
Duk Naymes þan behuld a syt[1] ⁝ & saw war þay come ryde, **Naymes advises his companions**
Al frechs out of hure pauylou*n*s ⁝ to hymen-ward wiþ pride.
þan spak Naymes to þ*us* barou*n*s ⁝ & saide til he*m* þat tyde : 3048
"Lorlyng*es*, drawe toure strengþe bet ⁝ & lete we al thys ben,
Ouþer w*ith* þ*us* Sarsyns we worþ y-let ⁝ þ*a*t ȝe her come y-sen.
Were we a litel ner þe tour ⁝ þ*a*nne nere we in none doute, **[leaf 40, back]**
þar miȝte we take god socour ⁝ & þe Sarsyns holde w*ith*-oute." 3052 **to retire towards the castle,**
¶ þan spak Ro[land] þe werreour ⁝ wordes þát dude auaile :
"What scholde we now don on þe tour ⁝ w*ith*-oute su*m* vytayle? **but Roland asks what they are to do for food.**
We ne lafte to day þar wa*n*ne we wende ⁝ neyþ*er* wyn ne bred,
Were we ther we wern y-schende ⁝ for hu*n*ger we scholde be ded.
Betere ous ys to daye her ⁝ worschiply agayn our fos, 3057
þan schamly for to asterue þer ⁝ for hu*n*gre on þ*a*t clos :
& þer-for abyde we ase men ⁝ & fiȝte we w*ith* he*m* ȝeare,
& vytaylles we wollaþ maugre he*m* ⁝ gete ous or we fare." 3060

[1] siȝt *altered to* syt.

"Wel depardieux," quaþ þis barouns ⁝ "ounþank habbe þat spare,
& þat we ne prikie to þe pauillouns ⁝ to chalangie ous summe þare."

They charge the Saracen's tents,

¶ þanne þay gunne to pryke vaste ⁝ toward hure logyngge,
And þe Sarsyns aȝen hem anhaste ⁝ as harde as þay may flynge 3064
& þan þus doþþepers of fraunce ⁝ torndem to þat ferde,
Boþe wiþ swerd, axe, & launce ⁝ þe[y] mette hem in the berde.

and a fearful struggle follows.

Faste þay layde þe Saraȝyns on ⁝ wiþ swerdes & axes gronde,
& dussched a-doun to deþe hure fon ⁝ a þousand with-inne a stounde.
þar was cloue ful many a scheld ⁝ & many an helm to-flent, 3069
And many an haberke þat arst wel held ⁝ þan was þer to-rent.

Guy slays all round him.

¶ Gy of Borgoygne þanne a droȝ ⁝ þat swerd þat Saladyn oȝte;
Many a Sarsyn þar-with a sloȝ ⁝ & is takyngge þanne aboȝte. 3072
He leid on Sarsyns al aboute ⁝ strokes styþe and sterke,
Wham so he smyteþ of þe route ⁝ he ȝyfþ him deþes merke.

Floripas sees the battle from the Tower,

¶ Flo[rippe] with hure damesels stoute ⁝ in þe tour þan sche lay,
And at a wyndowe loked oute ⁝ & al þis batail y-say. 3076
Wan sche saw hure lef Gyoun ⁝ þat þanne delyured was,
And doȝtyliche dynged ys foes adoun ⁝ amonges hem as a gas,

and cheers on Sir Guy.

Hure care was gon þanne euerydel ⁝ & toward him sche cryes:
"Wel worþ þat hand þat can so wel ⁝ chastye ys enymyes, 3080
Wer þou, leman, with me her ⁝ riȝt now y wolde þe kysse.
Noþeles now y se þe ther ⁝ recuured ys al my blysse.
ȝut schal my fader þe Amerel ⁝ in þy donger falle y-wisse,
& þan schalt þov him acquyte wel ⁝ of al ys shrewidnesse." 3084
¶ "Gy," said ogier þe Deneys ⁝ "herkne a lytel wyȝt;
Hurst þou noȝt what sche says ⁝ Flo[rippe] þat burde briȝt?
Al hure herte on þe sche lays ⁝ Gyoun, by god almiȝt,
[leaf 41] Bote þov hure louye wel alweys ⁝ certis þou dost ounriȝt." 3088
¶ "My herte," quaþ Gy, "gan vp-sprynge ⁝ wanne ich herd hure speke,
y wot it were hure lekynge ⁝ miȝt y-me selue a-wreke.
& so schal y or þe sonne go doun ⁝ haf at hem her an hye."
þan saide iantail ogeroun ⁝ "smyt on & ich þen-vye." 3092
With þat þay prikede forþ on þe pleyn ⁝ toward þe pauyllouns.
þe Sarsyns relied hymen ageyn ⁝ & meteþ with our barouns.

The fight becomes still fiercer.

& þanne be-gan þe furthe fiȝt ⁝ a sherper was þer non;
þe Sarsyns were to-hewe þar riȝt ⁝ boþe þorȝ fleschs & bon. 3096

þe frensche laid[1] on wiþ swerdis briȝt ⁝ & laide*n* a-dou*n* hur fon,
Alle þ*a*t þai þan alacche miȝt ⁝ þer na ascapede*m* non.
¶ Ro[land] laid on wyþ herte god ⁝ in euery syde aboute,
And baþede is swerd in hure blod ⁝ þay gu*n*ne hi*m* sore doute. 3100 The Saracen fly before Roland.
Alle þai floȝen out of is way ⁝ by wich side so he wente,
for non nas founde þat ilke day ⁝ þ*a*t miȝte w*ith*-stonde is dente.
¶ Gy of Borgoygne to a Sarsyn rod ⁝ þ*a*t hiȝte Cursegreyn, Guy slays the Saracens in every direction.
& wyþ ys swerd þ*a*t wel bot ⁝ a gert hi*m* in-to þe brayn. 3104
Anoþer a slow sone on þe plas ⁝ & þan þridde he smyteþ so,
þat helm & heued & al þat þar was ⁝ he clef hit euene a-two.
þan ferthe he smot þan on ys yre ⁝ & set hi*m* w*ith* al ys mayn,
þat ys hed fleȝ þerfro þe swyre ⁝ ten fet on þe pleyn. 3108
¶ "Cosyn," sayde duk Rolond ⁝ "now þ*o*u berst þe wel, 3640
y-blessid be þy gode hond ⁝ & eke þy Damesel.
For suþþe þe tyme þat hure[2] steuene ⁝ com to þyn ere ariȝte,
Hit was no ned, be god of heuene ⁝ to bidde þe for to fiȝte." 3112
Wel longe haþ þys batail dured ⁝ & muche m*ur*dre of men þ*er* was,
Al þ*a*t þay smyteþ wiþ ax or swerd ⁝ sone to deþe it gas.
¶ Flo[rippe] þat mayde fair & slegh ⁝ at a wyndowe þ*er* sche lay, Floripas from the window reminds the French that the provisions are all gone.
To þys barou*n*s sche gradde an hegh ⁝ as ich ȝow telle may. 3116
"Of[3] oþyng, lordes, beo ȝe war" ⁝ til hyme*n* gan she say,
"Newe vytaille to gete ȝou þar ⁝ þe olde buþ al away."
¶ Olyuer herde þe damesel ⁝ & to his felawes he saide a-non:
"Certis þat maide ous redeþ wel ⁝ our p*r*ofyt for to don." 3120
"Parfay," saide duk Rolond ⁝ "y hurde wel what sche saide.
Go we þer-for wiþ strengþe of hond ⁝ we willen make a braide.
P*r*ike we Euene to þe pauylous ⁝ ne spare we noȝt for fere,
Vytailles for to gyten ous ⁝ if þar buþ any þere." 3124
þa*n*ne þay prykede forþ w*ith* pride ⁝ þ*is* frensche men echone;
þe Sarsynȝ nold he*m* noȝt abide ⁝ bot duden he*m* for to gone. [leaf 41, back]
Ac þus lordes he*m* gu*n*ne to chace ⁝ euene by-fore hire syȝt, The French chace the Saracens,
& duste to deþe riȝt on þe place ⁝ al þ*a*t þay atake miȝt. 3128
þ*is* barons enchacede hur fon so faste ⁝ w*ith* swerdes ig*r*onde briȝt,
Til þay kemen atte laste ⁝ to Amyral ys pauylou*n* riȝt. as far as the Emir's tent
¶ By þat wern þe feldes alle ⁝ of þe Sarsyns y-vewdid wel,

[1] [hew] on. [2] suþþe hure [murye]. [3] [Byþynkeþ] Of.

& were a-flo3en grete & smalle ⁝ and eke þe Amerel; 3132
In-to hure pauylons þay flo3e for fere ⁝ & þe barou*ns* þo3te af*ter* fare,
& maugre hem alle þat þar were ⁝ haue i-had vytailles thare.

when they see 32 pack-horses

Bote þa*n*ne be-hulde þus bachelers ⁝ by-forn hem & se3en come
Two & þyrty grete somers ⁝ y-charged alle & some 3136

laden with provisions,

Wyþ fair flour y-maked of whete ⁝ & wyþ bred and flechs & wyn,
& oþre vytailles smale & grete ⁝ þat were bothe god & fyn.

escorted by 24 Saracens of Mantrible.

xxiiij. Vytaylers ⁝ of Mantryble þat Sarsyns were,
By-fore hymen dryue þay somers ⁝ þat þanne come there. 3140
¶ Smertly wan þay sey3 he*m* come ⁝ a3en hem þay toke þe way,
& by-trapd hem ther al & some ⁝ to wete what ladden þay.
Ac wanne þay it wiste & knewe ⁝ what þay in lode hadde
þe vytailers þay alto-hewe ⁝ & þe vytailles w*ith* hymen þai ladde.

Roland bids Naymes and Terry to drive the convoy within the castle, while he and Guy protect them;

To duk Naymes & to duk Terry ⁝ þan Ro[land] spak & badde, 3145
To dryuen hem by-fore hi*m* spedily ⁝ & noþyng þay ne adradde.
þey twyne hit habbeþ vndernome ⁝ þe somers to brynge enclos,
And þei othere to after come ⁝ & to kep hem f*ra*m hure fos. 3148
To þe tour-ward þey dude hem drawe ⁝ þes lordes þa*n*ne w*ith* p*r*ide,
& Basyn þay founde þ*at* was a-slawe ⁝ on þe way as þay gu*n* ryde.
þe somers buþ alle forth a-paste ⁝ & at þe tour 3eate a-stente.
þus othere toke þat cors an haste ⁝ & to þ*e* tour 3eate þar-wiþ buþ wente.

Floripas admits them.

Flo[rippe] redely was thar-ate ⁝ & let in þuse lordes gente, 3153
And schutte faste a3en þe gate ⁝ & þe dra3brigge vp sche bente.

They have provisions sufficient for three months.

NOw habbaþ þ*us* lordes of honour ⁝ y-maked a fair iornee,
And habbeþ wyþ he*m* þar on þe tour ⁝ of vytails gret plente.
Mete and drynke þay han y-bro3t ⁝ ynow for monþes thre,
þan Amyral þanne ne dradde þay no3t ⁝ for al is g*r*ete poste.
þe castel þay þo3te þanne holde ⁝ boldelich w*ith* honour,
Til Charlis wyþ is barnye bolde ⁝ come hymen to socour. 3160

Balan holds a council.

¶ To is pauillo*n* y-flo3e was ⁝ þe A[miral] & huld hy*m* there,
& Til hym he clepede in þ*at* cas ⁝ of ys *con*seyl þay þ*at* were,
& sayde, "lordes of muche hono*ur* ⁝ what is 3our best co*n*sayle
Of þes frenschemen on þe tour ⁝ þat habbeþ oure vytaille? 3164

[leaf 42]

Bred & wyn þay haue y-now ⁝ & flour al-so y-bake,
& fleschs al-so as y trow ⁝ iij monþes he*m* mury to make.
Wyste Char[lis] þat ys her ny ⁝ by he*m* nov how it stent,

Wel sone he wolde hem socoury ⁝ & þanne were we schent." 3168

¶ "Syre," saide kyng Sortybran ⁝ "assemble þow þyn host, — Sortybran advises
ȝonder to-ward þe Barbygan ⁝ in þys nexte cost.
þy castel of tre þat hiȝt brysour ⁝ þyder þou do hi*m* fette. — the employment of a wooden tower.
& let bryng anon hi*m* by-fore þe tour ⁝ wi*th*-oute more lette; 3172
& pote þer-on · vj hundred men ⁝ þat ku*n*ne bo*þ*e launce & caste,
& othre þat ku*n*ne[1] demayny hem ⁝ wiþ boȝes & arbelaste,
& let þyn oþre Sarasyns ⁝ wan þou hast by-gu*n*ne so,
beo be-nethe wyþ þyn engyns ⁝ & teche what þay kunne do. 3176
& þan let þow þyn hornys blowe ⁝ a þousant at o blaste,
& wanne þe frensche men it knowe ⁝ þay wolleþ beo sore agaste.
þe to*ur* schalt*o*u þa*n*ne assaille ⁝ wyþ schot & cast of gynne,
& sone wynne hi*m* wi*th*-oute faille ⁝ maugre he*m* al wyþ-ynne, 3180
& slen he*m* ther wi*th* st*r*engþe of hant ⁝ & so of he*m* þe wreke."

¶ þan hi*m* answerde kyng Bruyllant ⁝ "of folie dost þov speke. — Bruyllant reminds them that the French are not ordinary soldiers, but the pick of France,
Hit ne buþ," he said, "none Vauasers ⁝ þat buþ þer on þe tour,
Ac it buþ noble bachelers ⁝ of al france þay bereþ þat flour: 3184
þar is wi*th*-inne duk Rolond ⁝ on batail þat is so wyȝt,
And Olyuer wyþ þe harde hond ⁝ þat Fyru*m*bras ouercom in fyȝt:
Thar ys Duk Berard of mo*n*disdier ⁝ on of þe beste of fraunce,
And Terry hys fad*er* þat is wel fier ⁝ a man of gret bobaunce: 3188
In his forest þat hatte ardane ⁝ muche schame ofte he deþ,
He haþ y-beo many a man ys bane ⁝ & a-st*r*ongled he*m* wi*th* ys teþ.
þar is Oger Deneys þe hardy ⁝ & Naymes wiþ þe lokkes hore,
& Richard þe Duk of Normaundy ⁝ þat ofte haþ greued ous sore,
& chacede su*m* tyme þe Amerel ⁝ in rome by-fore þe playn, 3193
& herte hi*m* so þer on þe chel ⁝ þat he was neȝ y-slayn.
And Gy of Borgoyne he is þer ⁝ þat slow Corsebrayn,
And oþer þat buþ noȝt nempned her ⁝ þat wolleþ ous stonde agayn.
Of þe doȝtynisse of þilke men ⁝ ech man ys a-wondred, 3197
hwych þat ys þe worste of hem ⁝ of ous ys worþ an hundred. — the worst of whom is worth 100 Saracens.
Ro[land], Charlis suster sone ⁝ he ys a noble kniȝt,
Ne douteþ he non er[þ]lich gome ⁝ ne be he noȝt so wyȝt: 3200
Muche he hermeþ þe Ameral ⁝ wiþ assautes he hym makeþ.
By oure it is[2] þai libbeþ al ⁝ & maugre our teþ hit takeþ.

[1] ku*n*ne [wel]. [2] is [þat].

Were þer such an hundred ther ⁝ as þay buþ now[1] to fonde,
By Ma[houn] we ne derst noȝt duelle her ⁝ but fle we moste of londe;
Moreover their God helps them, [leaf 42, back] while theirs are asleep.
Hure god doþ euere helpe hem wel ⁝ and þat we sore auynde; 3205
Ac oure ne helpeþ ous no del ⁝ þe sc[h]rewes buþ wax al blynde.
Wel y-fern þay holpe ous noȝt ⁝ y trowe þai slepe vchone,
In al þe anger þat we buþ broȝt ⁝ hylp on hem nys none." 3208

The Emir is enraged,
¶ þan wax þe Amyral wroþ & sede ⁝ "what! traitour art þou wod?
Go out of my siȝt anon y rede ⁝ þow trechour, þow wykked blod!"
A strong staf tok he vp anon ⁝ & smyte hem þanne he þoȝte,
but is appeased by Sortybran,
Ac betwene hem wente kyng Sortybron ⁝ & a-paysede hem as he moȝte.
¶ "Sire," said he, "let ben al þys ⁝ as þou louest me; 3213
& if þer ys oȝt spoken amys ⁝ yt may amended be:
& by-þenk how þyn assaut schal gon ⁝ & of þyng þat may þe vaile.
who recommends an assault on the castle.
Let blowe þyn hornes, y rede anon ⁝ þe tour we wollaþ a-saille: 3216
þys frenschemen ne anduriеþ ous noȝt ⁝ beo we y-broȝt þer-to,
Wel dulfulliche it worþ aboȝt ⁝ þe scaþes þay han ous do."
¶ Sone þer-after þay gunne to blowe ⁝ hornes y-mad of bras:
The Saracens assemble; they cover two square miles.
þe Sarasyns with-inne a litel þrowe ⁝ come as þykke as gras: 3220
Wel two Mile to loke aboute ⁝ a stryde voide þer nas,
þat of þat ilke heþenene route ⁝ al ful was euery plas.
¶ þe Amyral made his engyneour ⁝ þe engyns to sette & bende,
þer-with to breke þe grete tour ⁝ & is fon with-inne to schende. 3224
The assault begins; arrows and stones fly thick.
þanne by-gunne þay to grede & houte ⁝ þe Sarsynȝ sherp & wikke,
And to be-sette þe tour aboute ⁝ & to schete þykke;
And he þat was engyneour ⁝ stones to caste grete,
þat foule verde with þe tour ⁝ so harde þay gunne him mete. 3228
The French cast trees and stones back.
Ac þe frensche þat wiþ-inne ben ⁝ defendede hem for þe nones,
& caste out among hem grete tren ⁝ & wonder heuy stones;
& sloȝe of þe heþemen ⁝ twenty sum tyme at ones, 3231
þat fullen doun ded þer on þe fen ⁝ to-broke boþe body & bones.
The maidens
¶ þe dameseles were boþe kynde & gode ⁝ & armedem in syker wede,
And at þe kernels be hymen stode ⁝ & holpe hem in þat nede;
throw stones from the battlements.
& cast out stones gret & sade ⁝ oppon hem þat wer with-oute, 3235
& gret slauȝt of Sarȝyns made ⁝ with þe help of þe lordes stoute.
þan gan Flo[rippe] þat ientail maide ⁝ Gyon hure lef a-scrye;

[1] now *crossed through.*

"Kys me, gode lef," þanne sche sayde ⁝ "ones for al þys nuye."
Al y-armed as þay wer þan ⁝ a kuste hure as a myȝte : 3239
"Grant mercy," said sche, "swete lemman ⁝ now am y prest to fiȝte."
¶ þan at þe furste þe Assaut by-gan ⁝ sterk & strait to be :
þengyneor cryde to Balan ⁝ "Sir Amyral, lyst to me : — The Engineer says if he had
Let leue al þys balaunsyng ⁝ & castynge of speres & stones :
y-magened y haue a-noþer þyng ⁝ to conquery þe tour at ones. 3244 [leaf 43]
Vyfty þousand of Sarasyns felle ⁝ raply to me þow diȝte, — 50,000 Saracens he'd soon take the castle.
And loke þat þay be y-armed wel ⁝ & þat hy be sur & wyȝte."
"Hit schal be don," quaþ Balaan ⁝ "anon her in þy siȝte." — Balan agrees.
Hastely het he kyng Sortybran ⁝ to arayen hem as he spiȝte. 3248
¶ þe Saraȝyn dude ys heste son ⁝ no lengre nolde he duelle,
So many Sarsyns ches he anon ⁝ & broȝte hem þyder snelle. — He picks out the men,
þe engyneour, yuele most he þeo ⁝ so narwe he him by-þoȝte !
To þe castel þat was ymad of treo ⁝ al þat host he broȝte ; 3252
þat haluendol þan diȝte he ⁝ wiþ-inne forþ to stonde, — half of whom are placed in a wooden tower.
& þat oþer dol wyþ-oute to be ⁝ to schute & caste with honde.
¶ In þat same tre castel ⁝ weren maked stages thre ;
þe heȝeste hiȝt mangurel ⁝ þe middel hiȝt launcepre, 3256
þe nyþemest was callid hagefray ⁝ a quynte þyng to se,
& was diȝt for ys owen aray ⁝ for þer-on wolde he be.
þan þe heȝest stage of al ⁝ fulde he wiþ men of armes, — The topmost story he fills with men ;
To schelde hem by-nyþe wel ⁝ fram stones & othere harmes. 3260
þat wanne þe frensche þyderward ⁝ caste stones oþer tre,
þay scholde with hure scheldes hard ⁝ kepe þe dent aȝe ;
& summe scholde schete to þe frensche rout ⁝ with gunnes & boȝes of brake,
þat þay ne beo hardy to lokie out ⁝ defense aȝen hem to make. 3264
And on þat oþer stage amidde ⁝ ordeynt he gunnes grete, — on the second he places engines for casting wild-fire
And oþer engyns y-hidde ⁝ wilde fyr to caste & schete.
þyder þanne he putte y-nowe ⁝ & tauȝte hem hure labour,
Wilde fyr to schete & þrowe ⁝ aȝen þe heȝe tour. 3268
In þe nyþemest stage þanne ⁝ schup he him selue to hove, — on the lowest floor he goes himself.
To ordeyne hure fyr þar-inne ⁝ & send hit to hem above.
To him-ward þanne tok he Saraȝyns ⁝ an hundred atte leste, — 100 are to attend to the engines,
To come & go to þe engyns ⁝ and seruy hem in þe beste : 3272

while the others shoot.

Al þe remanant of *þe* nu*m*bre ⁝ he ordeyneþ to schute & caste,
þe grete tour fort encu*m*bre ⁝ in þys wyse atte laste.
¶ Now by-gynneþ þay wiþ wrake ⁝ glyues to casten wykke,
And wyþ boȝes eke of brake ⁝ for to schute þykke. 3276
By-fore *þat* was mad a sterne schour ⁝ ac þe werste was comynge,
þey schute wilde fyr to þe tour ⁝ as faste as þay miȝt flynge.

The fire takes hold on the walls.

¶ On þe wal þat fur hi*m* hent ⁝ wiþ-inne a lytel space,
þat he be-gan þar-wiþ be atend ⁝ in an hundred place. 3280
[leaf 43, back] *þat* fyr þat setlede so on þe walle ⁝ ȝerne hit gan to brenne;
þe peces faste gu*n*ne schaly & falle ⁝ & þat fyr to renne.

The French are alarmed,

Wa*n*ne *þis* barons loked out ⁝ & sawe þe wal brennynge
Alle þay saide w*ith*-oute dout ⁝ "her ys hard dwellynge, 3284
Bote we þe raþere don ous henne ⁝ & flen out of *þis* tour,
Sone ous tyd her for-brenne ⁝ wyþ sorȝe & deshonour."

but Floripas cheers them.

¶ þan saide *þat* maide: "leteþ of ȝour pleynt ⁝ & nabbe ȝe none drede,
þys fyr wel sone schal be aqueynt ⁝ ȝe schulleþ it sen in dede." 3288

She throws hot camel's milk, mixed with vinegar, on the fire, and puts it out.

Melk of *þe* camele me fette hur son ⁝ a damesel broȝt it hot,
& þer-wiþ sche mellede vynegre anon ⁝ no lenger sche ne abod;
þar *þat* fyr was setled on þe walle ⁝ ou*er*al *þer-with* sche spreynte,
& wel sone þar-after þay seȝe it alle ⁝ how *þat* fyr a-queynte. 3292
¶ Wa*n* þe Amyral a-*per*ceuede þys ⁝ how þat þe fyr ys fare,
Al ys hope was agon y-wys ⁝ ys herte was cast in care.
"Certis, syre," quaþ Sortybrau*n*t ⁝ "þys ys þy doȝter dede;
In þat sche may sche ys vsau*n*t ⁝ to do þe yule to spede." 3296
"Wel know y," quaþ þe Amyrel ⁝ "þat ofte sche doþ me gyle,
Y hope to Mahou*n* þat ȝute y schel ⁝ ones a-quyte hur wyle."

Sortybrant recommends an assault at the breach,

¶ "Sir," quaþ Sortybrant, "do by my red ⁝ & let þyn hornes blewe,[1]
& hot *þat* þyn assaut be noȝt aled ⁝ and let by-gynne hit newe. 3300
By-hold þe places on *þe* toure ⁝ war þat fyr haþ hente,
þer ne wanteþ noȝt enches foure ⁝ *þat* þay ne buþ þorw brente;
Sone he falleþ me þenkeþ wel ⁝ & þer-for go we þer-to."
"As þov wilt," quaþ þe Amyrel ⁝ "ano*n* let it be do." 3304
¶ W*ith* þat þe same kyng Sortybran ⁝ to þe walles haþ hi*m* nome,
& þanne he hoteþ eu*er*y man ⁝ to þe assaut aȝeward come.
Sone þas men miȝte y-here ⁝ hornes loude blowe;

[1] blowe *altered to* blewe.

L. þousand Saraȝyns were ⁝ y-come wyþ-inne a þrowe, 3308 and leads 50,000 Saracens to the assault.
þat su*m*me to þe engyns wente ⁝ & caste stones sterke;
And su*m*me sp*r*ingols stiþe bente ⁝ & schute gleyues scherpe;
And su*m*me þay schuten arwes wykke ⁝ as faste as þai miȝt fle.
& þe quarels floȝe out þikke ⁝ of arbelastes y-mad of tre. 3312
Grete slabbes of styl & yre ⁝ to þe walles þo wern y-slente;
þe kernels þ*a*t arst wern st*r*ong & suyre ⁝ þ*er*-w*ith* wer broke & schente, The battlements are broken.
& þe brytasqes on þe tour an heȝe ⁝ dulfuly a-dou*n* wer caste.
Wa*n* þay w*ith*-inne hit p*er*ceuede & seȝe ⁝ dedlich þai were agaste.
¶ þan saiden hy þus lordes alle ⁝ "her ys noȝt god to abide, 3317 [leaf 44]
þys tour is now in poynt to falle ⁝ wyþ-inne a litel tide."
Floripe þat mayde fair and hende ⁝ to þys barou*n*s sede: Floripas recommends them to use her father's gold instead of stones.
"Ne drede ȝe noȝt, myn leue frende ⁝ ȝe ne schulleþ haue no nede;
My fader let make þis ilke tour ⁝ strong ynow to kepe; 3321
To putte þar-inne hys tresour ⁝ þat he wold leyn to hepe.
On þys tour ys more gold ⁝ y wot riȝt wel to wisse,
þan half þe kynges han in wold ⁝ þat buþ in al heþenisse. 3324
þoȝw þys asaut wolde y-laste ⁝ þys forty dawes ryȝt, There is enough, she says, to last them for 40 days.
her w*ith*-inne ys gold y-maced faste ⁝ to cast out day & nyȝt;
And suþþe ȝe now þat soþe y-knoweþ ⁝ on defaute ȝe han of[1] stones,
Takeþ þer-of ynowe and þroweþ ⁝ & to-brekeþ he*m* body & bones."
¶ "ȝea, faire þe falle, my wete wyȝt" ⁝ to hure Ro[land] saide. 3329
Gyou*n* wente to hure ful ryȝt ⁝ & swetly kuste þat maide: -
þa*n*ne sche lad þaym by þe hond ⁝ þar þat tresour lay,
& þanne saide duk Rolond ⁝ "her ys a ryche aray." 3332
þay toke op slabbes grete & þykke ⁝ of þe gold þat þar lys, They take great bars of gold and cast them amongst the Saracens,
And caste among þe Sarsyns wykke ⁝ ne sparede þay noȝt þ*a*t prys;
Many was þe Saraȝyn prout ⁝ þat þar-with was affulled, 3335
þe[2] oþere drowe*n* hem ferþer out ⁝ for drede þ*a*t þay nere kulled.
¶ Wa*n*ne þe Sarasynȝ had ap*er*ceued ariȝt ⁝ þ*a*t gold þ*a*t briȝte schon,
To gadrie þat gold þay dude hure miȝt ⁝ & leued þe assaut anon: who give up the assault, and begin to fight over it.
On þe gadryngge þat þay made ⁝ þan þay by-gu*n*ne to fiȝte
And ȝyue eche oþer strokes sade ⁝ wyþ axes & swerdes briȝte. 3340
Ech on oþer gan to hewen ⁝ & eu*e*rech other afulde,
Mo þan a þousent of þe schrewen ⁝ wel sone þer were y-kulde.

[1] [in þe] defaute of. [2] [&] þe.

Balan, in alarm for his gold,

¶ Wan þe Amyral þat y-seȝ ⁝ on ys herte hi*m* gan to greue;
To ys barons he cryede an heȝ ⁝ & het hem þe assaut be-leue: 3344
"And ellis schal her al my gold ⁝ & my tresour beo for-lore,
þat y haue gadred in-to þat hold ⁝ long tyme her by-fore."
þan wende þe[1] grete to wiþ þat ⁝ among þe co*m*munes alle,

causes his men to retire.

And made he*m* cessen of hure debat ⁝ and fro þe asseege falle. 3348
þe su*n*ne by þat was neȝ a-doun ⁝ þe Assege þanne þay y-lafte.
þe Amerel goþ to ys pauylloun ⁝ al murghe was hi*m* by-rafte.

NOw ys þe Amyral aȝen y-wend ⁝ wyþ ys baronye;
W*ith* sorwe was is herte be-trend ⁝ wiþ care & eke anuye.

The French make merry. [leaf 44, back]

And þe barons of honour ⁝ murye gu*n*ne he*m* make, 3353
And ete & dronke on þe tour ⁝ of þe vytailles þay han y-take;
For of vitailes þai hadden þo plentee ⁝ & burdes briȝte & bolde,
To ete & drynke & murie bee ⁝ & to layky he*m* wa*n* þay wolde.

Roland from a window sees the Emir at supper,

¶ At a wyndowe as[2] Ro[land] lay ⁝ lynynge & lokede out, 3357
þan Ameral atte is soper he of-say ⁝ sittynge vnder shrout.
Wa*n*ne he haþ ap*er*ceuede apertely ⁝ þan Amerel & his aray,
To hem he clepede ys company ⁝ & þus he gan to say: 3360
"Lordes, be-holdeþ þan Amerel ⁝ ȝounder out on þe grene,
At is soper ys he me semeþ wel ⁝ it doþ myn herte tene.

and proposes an assault.

Hit were me þynkþ a fair viage ⁝ to letten hi*m* of his p*ur*pos."
þan saide þe other barnage ⁝ "fonde we to greue our fos." 3364

They arm, and start.

¶ Sone were þys noble barou*n*s ⁝ y-armed in sykere wedis,
& as fers as any lyouns ⁝ þay sterte vp-on hure stedis.
þe damesels duden vp þe ȝeate ⁝ & þe draȝtbrigge lete adou*n*,
And þay fareþ out þer-ate ⁝ stoutelich ech barou*n*. 3368

Balan sees them, and calls for help.

Balan hymen ap*er*ceyueþ anan ⁝ as þai come on a mede;
Of þe siȝte agrise he gan ⁝ and wax neȝ wod for drede.
Aspayllard of nubbye clepede he þan ⁝ & þus til hi*m* he sede:
"Do Cosyn anon þyn Armys aan ⁝ & aray þe in syker wede. 3372
Lo whar þay comeþ stout & bold ⁝ þe frensche men of þe tour;
þay þenkeþ make our soper cold ⁝ þai casteþ he*m* to þat labour."
"Al redy, sire," Aspaylard sede ⁝ and armede hym þa*n*ne anon,
And sone haþ he take ys stede ⁝ & sm*er*tly he was oppon: 3376
Ys scheld he takeþ in þat nede ⁝ launce ne kepede he non,

[1] þei (?). [2] [þanne] as.

A dart takþ he in his hond for drede ⁝ & forþ he ys a-gon.
¶ Roland was þe furste of alle ⁝ þat rod afforeward, — Aspayllard charges Roland.
þe Sarsyn þoȝte hi*m* for to quelle ⁝ & launceþ til hi*m* þe dart; 3380
þe dart was cast w*ith* such a mod ⁝ þ*at* þorw ys scheld it schet,
Ac ys haberke was fyn & god ⁝ & ellis he had be ded.
Ro[land] brak þe schaft away ⁝ & smertliche to hym arod, — Roland aims a blow at him,
And þoȝte hi*m* smyte on þe hed an hey ⁝ ac þe dent a glod; 3384
On ys stede ful þe dent ⁝ by-side þe for arsou*n*,
þorw þe necke þ*at* swerd hi*m* went ⁝ & þe Sarsyn ful adou*n*. — which wounds his horse.
¶ þe Sarsyn was doȝty ynow ⁝ sone he vp aros,
& hasteliche ys swerd adrow ⁝ and aȝe til hi*m* a gos. 3388
To han i-broched Ro[land] þorw ⁝ a-caste þo his porpos,
Ac Ro[land] þanne til hym a-bowȝ ⁝ & fuld hi*m* on is armes clos. — Roland seizes him,
Wan he had hi*m* on is armes lauȝt ⁝ wiþ-oute more a-do
Vp a drawe þ at o drauȝt ⁝ & set hi*m* by-for hi*m* þo. 3392 — sets him before him, [leaf 45]
¶ Roland tornd hym þanne aȝeyn ⁝ & ys felawe dude al-so, — and rides back to the castle.
Toward þe tour al on þe pleyn ⁝ as harde as þe hors may go.
Wan þe Amyral þys of-seȝ ⁝ his herte was cast in care,
To is baronage he criede an heȝ ⁝ & pr*a*yede hymen after fare: 3396
"If my neuewe goþ þus a-way ⁝ by Mahou*n* ȝe buþ to blame;
Helpeþ þ*er*-for now wat ȝe may ⁝ þat y ne take no schame."
Op a-sterte þe route anon ⁝ & hure stedes þai be-strydeþ,
And as faste as þe hors may gon ⁝ after hem þay rydeþ. 3400 — The Saracens pursue them;
¶ Ac wan þe frensche baronage ⁝ y-saw he*m* after haste,
þey turnde to hemen wiþ sturne vysage ⁝ & adrowe hure swerdes faste: — they turn
& w*ith* hure fon þan þay fouȝte ⁝ & ȝeue he*m* strokes sare.
þilke companye þo ful dere aboȝte ⁝ þat þay come þare; 3404
Mo þan .v. hundred þar þay sloȝe ⁝ of þat foule maynee, — and slay more than 500,
& þe remanant he*m* wiþ-droȝe ⁝ & for drede tornde aȝee. — and put the rest to flight.
þus barons toke þan way ful riȝt ⁝ aȝenward to þe tour;
Ate ȝeate fond hy þat burde briȝt ⁝ þ*at* let he*m* in wyþ honour: 3408
þe ȝeate þ*a*nne þay made faste ⁝ þe draȝtbrigge vp droȝ sche.
þe Saraȝyns þay habbeþ sore agaste ⁝ & þay buþ in sauete.

[1] NOw buþ þus barou*n*s of honour y-come aȝen in-to þe tour;
Flo[rippe] þay gu*n*ne calle, 3412

Aspayllard is given in charge to Floripas.

To hure þay by-toke Aspayllarde, And prayede hure kep hi*m* in syker warde For þyng þ*a*t miȝt be-falle.

To þe soper þan wente þay alle þen, þe lordes, & eke þe ientail wyme*n*,
And made he*m* murie þ*a*t niȝt. 3416

A-morwe wanne þe sonne hure schon, To-gadre þay assemblede he*m* euerechon, Lordes and burdes[2] briȝt.

¶ þ*a*nne spak Richard of Normaundy To þe barons þat stode hym by:
"Herknyaþ for ȝour honour; 3420

Wel ȝe wyteþ we buþ her enclos, Hard by-seged wyþ our foes,
& wyth st*r*engþe & gret vygo*ur*."[3]

of o þyng lordes[4] beo ous sure, Her mowe we noȝt longe dure,
Bot ous come socour. 3424

Richard advises to send to Charles,

Sende we þer-for to þe E*m*perer, þat he come w*ith* his power
& delyuery o*us* of þe to*ur*."

but Naymes thinks it is impossible.

¶ Naymes ansuerede in his avys: "Hit nere bote folye, be seynt Dynys,
A Messager til hi*m* to schape, 3428

For al þe contre wyþ-outen lys So ful by-gon wyþ enymys,
þat non ne schold he*m* scape.

[leaf 45, back] þer nys non her ich vndertake, þat þilke Message ne wil for-sake
þat of ys lyf ys fayne, 3432

& ho-so nolde · a dude folye; For neu*er*e we ne scholde hi*m* sen wiþ ye
Til ous come aȝayne."

Floripas recommends them to enjoy themselves,

¶ Til hymen þanne þat mayde sede: "Of ȝour enymys haue ȝe no drede,
þys tour ys strong & god; 3436

And ȝe han her boþ day & nyȝt, Fiftene damesels fayr & briȝt,
And comen of kynges blod;

Euerech of ȝow chuse his owe, And lyue we our lyf on murȝe aþrowe,
Wyle we buþ her enclos." 3440

and Roland agrees with her.

þanne saide Roland to þat fry: "Damesele, þow spekest ful cortesly,
Maugree habbe alle our fos!"

[1] *In the MS. the lines are arranged thus:*

Now buþ þus barou*n*s of honour
Y-come aȝen in-to þe tour } Flo[rippe] þay gu*n*ne calle.
To hure þay by-toke Aspayllarde
And prayede hure kep hi*m* in syker warde } For þyng þ*a*t miȝt be-falle.

[2] [among þys] burdes. [3] & wyth[-outen any socour]. [4] [Ac] of o þyng.

¶ Roland of hure gan asky þan, Of wat kynde was comen *þat* ilke man
þat on hure warde was, 3444
Wham þay toke þe niȝt before & wat done (?) man *þat* a wore,
To telle hym þat cas.

¶ "Sire," quaþ sche, "y wil þe telle: Neȝ sibbe is he to *þe* Amyrelle, **Floripas proposes to put Aspaylard to death,**
Ys soster sone he ys; 3448
ȝif ȝe my fader willeþ greue ariȝt, Al to-heweþ hym on ys siȝt,
& þan lest he ys blys."

¶ "Nay, noȝt so"! þan saide Naymou*n*, "So ne schal it noȝt be don, **but Naymes says to keep him as a hostage.**
no profyt to ous it nere: 3452
He schal be kept, by swete iesous, For to a-quytye on of ous,
If he wer take there."

¶ þanne sayde þe[1] duk Terry: "To ligge *þus* her ys gret anuy,
& be-seged as we bene; 3456
Sende we þer-for, ich ȝow rede, To Charlis ase Rychard sede,
To help ous out of *þis* tene."

¶ þa*n*ne sayde Ogier þe Deneys: "Hit nys bote trufle *þat* þou seys,
So god me mote auau*n*ce, 3460
For among ous alle her ys non, *þat* in þat message now darste gon
for al *þat* gold of fraunce."

¶ "ȝus," quaþ Roland, "y wil it do, If ȝe rewardieþ it shel be so, **Roland is willing to venture on message to Charles.**
& take my way or none. 3464
Y nel spare for no fere *þat* y ne schal þat erant bere
& make hym come sone."

¶ þan spak Naymes and sayde, "nay, Certis, syre, þov noȝt! ne may **[leaf 46]**
Gon out of oure ferede: 3468
And *þe* Saraȝyn*ȝ* wern[2] y-ware þat þov were fro henne afare
þey wolde ous noȝt adrede."

¶ þanne saide þe Scot Gwylmer: "y wolde fayn, by seynt Rycheer, **Guylmer says he will go,**
Wende on *þat* vyage." 3472

"Nay," quaþ Berard, "verement, But leteþ me fare be ȝour assent, **and then Berard.**
& do *þat* ylke message."

¶ þanne hymen bad þe duk Gyoun þat he moste wende to Charloun
And beo hure messag*ere*. 3476

Flo[rippe] aunswerede þar-to anon, "nay! leteþ anoþ*er* þat message don, **Floripas refuses to let Guy go**

[1] þe [oldé]. [2] wern [þar-of].

For he schal leue here."

Richard says he will go himself, as he is of little use,

¶ And þan spak Richard of Normandie, & sayde þus to þe companye:
"Sirs, ȝe knoweþ wel 3480
þat y am su*m*del stryken on age, And haue a sone of my parage
þat is boþe wys & fel:
þoȝ þe Saraȝynȝ smyte of myn hed, He ys myn ayr after my ded
To broke myn heritage. 3484
& þe*r*for yf ȝe assentiaþ to, At al perils wil y go
To Charlis in ȝour message.

and, besides, Charles

¶ þer ys al-so anoþer thyng War-for y scholde do þis doyng
By-fore a-nother man: 3488

had promised

þe furste tyme þat Charlys kyng Made me to hymward beo leuyng,
Charlys be-het me þan,

to rescue him if he should be taken.

þat if me happede þorw any cas þat y wer p*r*isoned in any plas,
wyle ich wyþ hi*m* were, 3492
A sholde delyu*er*y me out of prisou*n* Wyþ strenghþe of hand ouþer raunsou*n*, Coste hit noȝt so dere.
A*n*d therfor am y bold ynow, By þis two skyles þ*a*t y say ȝow,
To faren on ȝoure message: 3496
For þoȝ y be taken he schel me ȝelde, A*n*d eke my sone ys neȝ of Elde
To fonge myn herytage."

They all agree,

¶ Of Richardis skyles þay toke reward, & alle þanne assentede at nessche & hard, þat Richard scholde wende, 3500
Suþþe he hadde desyr þer-to; No man betere miȝte it do,
for he was t*r*iwe & hende.
To hi*m* þa*n*ne saide Duk Roland: "Suþþen þow wilt þ*us* take an hand,
þyn oþ þov schalt ous[1] make, 3504
þ*a*t þou ne schalt spare nyȝt ne day Til þov ha don þy iornay,
Bot þov be ded or take."

[leaf 46, bk]

¶ Richard hit graunteþ w*ith*-oute let, And sone þe relyqes wern y-fet,
& Ri[chard] swer his oþ.[2] 3508

and consult how he is to get away unseen.

þan þay be-speken how he myȝt Sleȝlych a-scape out of þe syȝt,
þ*a*t þe Sarsyns ne dud hi*m* loþ.[3]
¶ Richard hym-self sayde þan: "þe beste red ys þat y can,
þat we be on armes diȝte, 3512

[1] schalt[her] [2] [& he swor at hure deuys]. [3] [of hure enymys].

& to-morȝe on þe spryng[1] of þe day Euene to þe pauyllou*n*s take þe way
As we wolde fiȝte,
& wanne we comeþ among he*m* þare, ȝee scholleþ ȝeue he*m* strokes sare,
& sodeynlych falle he*m* on. 3516

Richard suggests that the others should make an attack on the Saracens,

þe wyle þay entendiaþ to ȝowward Y schal take out to anoþer pard
& prykie fro he*m*[2] anon :
And þe wile ȝe fiȝteþ w*ith* þ*at* host y schal ben a-passed al þ*at* cost,
& al out of hure siȝte ; 3529

and meanwhile he will steal off in the other direction.

& þan schal y holde my iornee, þe wayes y knowe of þe contre,
boþe be day and niȝte.
And so þ*at* god me graunty grace, þe brigge of Mant*r*ible saf to pace,
Wher-of ys most my drede,[3] 3524
þan schulle ȝe be wel c*er*tayn þ*at* y schel brynge ȝov Charlemayn,
To soc*ur*ry ȝow on þys nede."
¶ For pyte þan wepte ȝong & olde, þe wyle þat Ric[hard] ys tale tolde,
of he*m* þay wern wel fayne. 3528
To ihe*s*u crist þay gu*n*ne to praye Scholde sped hym wel on his iornaye,
An send hi*m* saf aȝayne.
þan Ri[chard] araid he*m* al þat day, On þe morȝenyng to wende is way,
Wa*n*ne þe day hym spru*n*ge.[4] 3532
¶ Duk Roland & Erld Olyuer, þilke niȝt kepte þe wacche þ*er*
Til þe larke su*n*ge.[4]
By þat wern þay alle y-dyȝt, And wel araid in armis briȝt,
To horce þan wente þay bolde. 3536

In the morning they prepare to sally out,

Bot wan þay wiste how it stod, Clene þanne þay t*ur*nde hure mod,
hure p*ur*pos þay myȝt noȝt holde.
For þe Amyral was y-come w*ith*-oute And had be-set þe brigge aboute
W*ith* strengþe and w*ith* gynne ; 3540
And had ordeynt hi*m* þer to lyn Wiþ .xxx^{ti}. þousant of Saraȝyn
To holde hymen þo w*ith*-inne.

but find the bridge beset with 30,000 Saracens.

¶ Wan þay knewe al þat cas, Sory ynow hure eu*e*rech was, [leaf 47]
þan nyste þay wat do more ; 3544
Bote stablede hure stedes vp aȝeyn, And in-to þe paleys þan tornde ageyn
& kepte he*m*-selue þore.

[1] & [erlich in] þe spryng[gyng].
[2] [a-way fr*a*m hymen].
[3] [hwych ys wel muche to drede].
[4]—[4] [spronge] & [songe].

þanne dude þus barou*ns* of honour Holde hem so wyþ-inne þe tour,
Y-armed as þai were. 3548

They are kept in the tower 8 weeks.

Viij. wykes boþe ny3t & day þat host by-fore þe 3eate lay,
& kept hem w*ith*-inne þere.

One day the Emir goes hawking,

¶ þan fel þar-after as it be scholde, Oppon a fair day *þat* þe A[myral] wolde
To þe ryuer an haukyng fare; 3552

He takeþ wiþ hi*m* his grete barouns, þat host he lefte ate pauyllou*ns*
þe assege to kepe thare.

He made hi*m* murie al þilke day, For vilentyne he fond ynow & play
On ryuer and on lake. 3556

To ys host a dro3 hy*m* a3en þ*e* ny3t, Glad in herte, & murye, and ly3t,
for þe game he haþ y-take.

so that no watch is set.

þat ny3t as it ful by cas, þe brigge-warde for-3ete was,
þorw[1] mur3þe of ys play. 3560

The French seeing this,

þys barons were ful sone i-di3t, & out ate 3eate þey rydeþ ry3t,
In þe sprynggyng of þe day;

By þat þe Amyrel was aryse, And cryede faste to alle hyse,
þat þay scholde hem di3te, 3564

& let hem spede for his hono*ur*, & go to þe briggewarde of þe tour
þat was for-3yte *þat* ni3te.

¶ Sone þer-after w*ith*-inne a þrowe, þe Sara3yns by-gu*n*ne hornes blowe,
& dude on hur armes faste; 3568

attack the Saracens who are unprepared,

Ac er þay wern o3t helf y-dy3t, þus barons come oppon he*m* ry3t,
& hymen ascryede an haste.

On hymen þay gu*n*ne to falle anon, And delte strokes ful god won,
Wyþ swerdes sherpe yg*r*onde. 3572

and kill 300.

Wel iij. hu*n*dred þay habbeþ a-slawe, & y-bro3t of lyues dawe
of sarsyns wyþ-inne a stonde.

¶ Sone þar come a3en hem route xxx. þousant of Sarasyns p*r*oute,
Araid þo for to fi3te. 3576

þe frensche þanne hem dro3e apart, And made a bekenynge to Richard,
To take ys way forþ ri3te.

[leaf 47, bk] Richard seizes the opportunity and starts.

¶ Ri[chard] tok leue & rod a-way. Now god hi*m* helpe *þat* best may!
þay by-tok hi*m* god almy3te. 3580

& sone *þer*-after þay gu*n*ne w*ith*-dra3e, Lytel & lytel as þay mawe

[1] [þor3].

Of Rychard haue a sizte.
Þe Sarzyns comeþ after repe[1], Al so harde as þay mowe lepe,
To slen hem þey wolde be fayn. 3584
Ac a litel by-fore þe castel zeate, Wel nez þe brigge þat lay þer-ate,
þys lordes tornde azayn;
& þan þay by-gunne azen hem fizte, With sherpe swerdes y-bornsched bri3te, & mad hem many a wonde, 3588
& layde hem an . boþe bak & syde, & with strengþe of strokes þat wer ounride þay slowe hem doun to gronde.
þar hadde þe Sarazyns yule grace, For of dede men lay fuld þe place,
& þoþre[2] by-gunne to fle. 3592
þan were þe zeates y-opened wyde, þe frensche men hadde þe betre syde, The French re-enter the castle and shut the gate,
& tornd hem to þe tour aze.
þe zeates schutte Duk Naymoun, & Ogier let þe brigge adoun;
& wan al was faste y-sperde, 3596
An hez þan wente þus barouns stout, And at þe wyndowe loked out and watch Richard from the castle.
By Richard how it ferde.
¶ þan sezen alle þys barouns þat he was passed þe pauyllons,
By a fer contraye. 3600
zerne þan prayed hy to god Al on, þat day to kepe him fram ys fon
& spede hym in is waye.
¶ Wan Ri[chard] was so fer a-past, þan was he noþyng agast
Of þat host be-hynde, 3604
Ac sone þer-after, as y schal rede, Sykerly wende he to han be dede,
nad he non oþer mynde.
¶ Richard prykede forþ an haste, Ase harde as he may þraste, He rides as fast as he can,
nowar he ne abideþ; 3608
Bot euere he prykeþ on ys way, Ne spareþ he mounteyne ne valay,
Bot prykyng forþ[3] he rydeþ.
¶ As he was prykyng ouer an hul A wykked cas þer him byful, but his horse breaks down.
ys sted wax al ateynte: 3612
Wan þe duk y-saw þat cas, A wrong his[4] handes & said, "alas!"
& to god he made is pleynte.
"Ihesu lord," þan saide he, "þat syttest on þy maieste, [leaf 48]
And seest boþe fer & hende; 3616

[1] rape *altered to* repe. [2] & oþre. [3] Bot [rennyng so]. [4] MS. is his.

Saue me ȝif þy wille be, þat no Saraȝyn haue poste
þys day me to schende.
As wys as y noþyng her ne *cra*ue, Bote fayne y wolde my felawe saue,
After our co*m*mun deuys. 3620
As y am to he*m* treuþe ypliȝt Char[les] to brynge þider riȝt,
To distruye þyn enymys."
Wyþ ys riȝt hond a blessid hi*m* þan, And prykeþ ys stede & forþ he nam
Agayn þe hulle an heȝe. 3624

By this time the sun is shining,

By þat þe So*n*ne hure briȝte schon, & Richard was noȝt so ferred ys fon,
þat hy hym þo ne seȝe.

and Bruyllant spies him.

¶ Bruyllant, þe kyng of mou*n*tmyrre, Toward þe montaynes lokede he,
& aparceuede hym sone þas. 3628
To kyng Claryou*n* þat stod hi*m* by, hwych was þe Amerel ys cosyn ny,
þa*n*ne he tolde þat cas:
"Sire," said he, "be seynt Mahou*n*, ȝonder out rydeþ a bold baro*un*;
To Char[les] he ys y-sent 3632
by þys maufesours of þe tour hem to fette to hure socour,
þar for ys he went."
¶ Wa*n*ne þe kyng hym vnderstod, His herte wax angry & ful of mod,
& was ful heghe y-pyȝt: 3636

Claryon arms himself,

His armes he askede anon w*ith* cry, & hy were broȝt wel hastely,
& sone þan was he dyȝt:
& þan hi*m* was broȝt ys gode stede, þe beste fole þan man miȝt fede,
& sone he hi*m* be-strod; 3640
On hym miȝt he on somers day Prikea an hu*n*dred myle of way,
Rennyng eu*er*y fot.

and pursues Richard

Ys scheld þan heng he aboute ys swyre, And forþ he prykede w*ith* gret yre
After duk Rychard. 3644

with 30,000 Saracens.

After hym folwede & schoke bost xxx^{ti} þowsant on an host,
y-Armed w*ith* scherp & hard.
God of heuene Rychard kepe! After hi*m* prykeþ al þe hepe,
To slen hi*m* þay han he*m* tyȝt. 3648
Ac þe kyng hem passede w*ith*-inne a wyle, Forn hem þe mou*n*tance of two myle,
So heȝe is herte was piȝt.

Richard

¶ Ri[chard] forthward prikede vaste Al the wyle *þat* hors miȝt laste,
Ne spareþ he hi*m* no þyng. 3652

¶ Ac a tor*n*de*m* w*ith*-inne a tyde, A*n*d þa*n*ne y-saw he. war com ride [leaf 48, bk] sees the Saracens pursuing him,
Claryou*n* þe st*ur*ne kyng,
& fer after hym þe grete route þat helede þe contre al aboute,
So huge was þ*at* meygny. 3656
Ac þe. A[merel] cosyn, Clariou*n* þ*e* kyng, Comeþ by-fore faste brochyng, Clarion in front,
On ys stede of Araby.
Of quente entaile was is stede, Al y-fracled wyþ whit & rede, on a piebald steed,
ys tayl was blak so cole; 3660
ne saw he neu*er*e be-fore þ*at* day Hert ne hare so renne a-way, as speedy as a deer.
So dude þ*at* iantail fole.
þe sadel þat þo was hi*m* oppon W*ith* gold was fret & p*r*etious ston, His accoutrements are adorned with gold.
& þe harneys was of golde. 3664
Brydel & paytrel & al þe gere Wiþ fyn gold y-harneysed were,
Purtreyd riȝt ase he wolde.
¶ þe Sarasyn þ*at* opon hi*m* set After Richard p*r*ikede ket,
Sittynge on þ*at* stede; 3668
þat hors was swyft & ran awaye, and faste gan neye and loude braye,
Al-gate ase a ȝede:
And noȝt for þat a goþ so fast þat Richard ys a-take ate last,
& þe kyng hi*m* gan ascrye, 3672
And saide—"abid & torn to me, Ferþer-more schalt þou noȝt fle, He calls on Richard to turn.
her riȝt schalt þov dye.
What wendest þ*o*u, false feloun, Bere þy message to Charloun,
Socour of hym to hane? 3676
y make auow to seynt Mahou*n*, þ*o*u bryngest neu*er* eft til hi*m* resou*n*,
Me self schal be þy bane."
¶ Wan Richard þe Saraȝyn vnderstod, þorw-out ys body sturede ys blod, Richard pretends to be afraid of him.
& to hi*m* gan he saye: 3680
"y praye þe, Sire, chaunge thy mod, y ne dude þe neu*er*e herm ne god,
let me noȝt of my waye.
Lef now, syre, as þow art free, And let me han non harm of þe,
& eft it schel be ȝolde." 3684
"By Mahou*n*," saide þe kyng aȝee, "y nolde þe lete lyues bee
for a þousend pou*n*d of golde."
A rideþ to Richard wyþ a spere, & þynkeþ hi*m* þorȝ þ*at* body bere,
& on þe scheld hym smot; 3688

Clarion cuts through his shield,

Þorȝ-out ys scheld & is habreioun, Plates, & iakke & ioupoun,
Þorȝ-out al it ȝot.

[leaf 49] grazing his side.

By-Twene ys scherte & is syde Passeþ þe dent of þat sper oun-ryde,
Of ys skyn a litel hit nam. 3692

Richard gan grope to þat gerse, And wan he felede hit was no werse,
god he þankede þan.

¶ Ac wan þe duk y-seȝ ys blod, Egre he wax & heȝ of mod,
& til þe kyng a wond, 3696

Richard smites Clarion on the helmet.

& smot hym on þe helm above, & þoȝt is hed han to-clove
Wyþ ys gode brond;

Ac þe helm was so hard y-wroȝt, þat he miȝt entamy him noȝt,
Wyþ no dynt of swerde. 3700

Ac wan Ric[h]ard þat vnderstent, Sone aȝaf hym anoþer dent,
And on þe nekke him gurde,

He severs his head from his shoulders,

And smot hem þan with such an yre, þat helm & heued wyþ al þe atyre
In-to þe feld it fleȝ. 3704

dismounts, and takes his horse, letting his own go.

þat body a putte a-doun god spede, & lefte his hors and tok þat stede,
& lepeþ on him an heȝ.

¶ Now ne dar he noþyng drede Of þat hyndere falurede,
þat comeþ after gon; 3708

for conquered he haueþ a stede, Ne saw he neuere no such at nede,
To saue him fram ys fon.

þan lokede he on hym þat was hys, For þat stede ful wo hym ys,
and saide þanne on is speche: 3712

4165 "now Haue gode . my gode morel, On many a stour þou hast seruid me wel, Crist ich þe by-teche!

And god ȝut, if þy wille beo, Send me grace þat y mote þe seo,
On crysten mannes welde." 3716

With þat he prykeþ forþ on ys way, & þat host compþ after with gret effray, To encombry hem on þe felde.

The Saracens find the body of their leader.

¶ Ac as þes Sarsyns prykede faste þay founde hure lord þar ate laste;
His hed lay on a forwe, 3720

ys body was tornd ouer-thwart þe way, Fro þat heued ten vet fram hyt lay; þan made þay muche sorwe.

They lament over him.

Wan þay seȝen hym so by-stad Alle þay waxen sore of-drad,
An[d] gunne him sore be-mene. 3724

Ferrer ne draste þay noȝt for fere, Bote a-liȝte & wronge hure handes þere,
And saide, "alas!" for tene.
"Alas," þay sayde, "why wolde he so Hym-self allone þus fonde ys fo,
With-oute ous þat with hym were?"
Richardis stede þanne þay saye Rennyngge a-streyey þar on þe waye, — They try to catch Richard's steed,
To take him þan þoȝte þay þere.
¶ þan þay be-trappede hym alle aboute, Ac for non hem with-oute doute [leaf 49, back]
ne wil he noȝt be cauȝte: 3732
Wan any of hem þat hors cam neȝ, A caste be-hynde & arered an heȝ,
And fulde al þat a rauȝte. Not in F.
Fyfty stedes a-doun a fulde, & ten þer-of to deþe a kulde, — but he kills ten of their steeds, and escapes.
On þat same out-rage. 3736
þe stede þan tornde him as he cam To þe tour of Egrymoygne þan way a nam,
Maugre hure vysage.
¶ Wanne a cam þe pauylons neȝ, þe Amyrel wel sone him of-seȝ, — Balan seeing him, thinks Richard has been killed.
& sayde þan on his sawe, 3740
& swer til hem þat stode him by, þat Clarioun his cosyn sykerly
þe messager had a-slawe:
"Wel certeyn am y þar-of," he sede, "Lo! whar ȝond comeþ ys stede;
Let take hym ich ȝow praye." 3744
þanne Sarsyns runne aboute him faste, Ac wan þay seȝe how he gan[1] caste,
þay let hym gon ys waye;
þorw-out þat host þe stede him ran Al riȝt to þe tour þat he com fram, — The horse comes to the gate of the castle.
& at þe ȝeate a stente. 3748
þe lordes þat on þe toure were Wan þay seȝe hym þay hadden fere,
& sone a-doun þay wente:
þe brigge[2] was sone y-lete adoun, þe ȝate openede duk Neymoun, — Naymes lets him in.
Ogier tok in þe stede. 3752
& wan þay had mad fast aboute & y-stablyd þe stede, þan al þe route
Sore þay gunne hem drede,
For ech of hem wende on is part þe Sarsyns had sleyn duk Richart. — The French fear that Richard has been slain.
þey swere by Peter & paule: 3756
þat by hys stede þay knewe þat cas, Warfor þay prayde god kyng of gras
haue mercy of is saule.
¶ Wan þat Flo[rippe] y-saw hem wepe, Gy, hure lemman, & al þe hepe,

[1] gan [to]; *the* to *inserted, but crossed through.* [2] þe [ȝeate draȝt] brigge.

In herte hur gan to greue. 3760
of wepyng ne mi3t sche abstene hur' no3t, Til eu*e*rech fayre sche þan by-so3t, þ*a*t nycete for to leue:

Floripas tries to cheer them.

"Lordes," sche saide, "leueþ al þys, Ther is non of 3ow þ*a*t wot to wys. Wather he ys quyk*e* or ded.[1] 3764
þer-for leteþ al 3our mornyng*e* For 3e hyre betere tydyng, & þ*er*-to y leye myn hed."[2]

¶ þus Floripe, þ*a*t mayde of gret honour, Confortede þe barou*n*s on þe tour W*ith* hure wordes gode: 3768

[leaf 50] Hure wordes lekedem eu*er*chon, & fro þa*n*ne þay buþ an-he3 agon & to a wyndowe þan þay 3eode;

From a window they see the Saracens

¶ As þay were thar & loked out, þay sawe þa*n*ne come at o rout þe Sarsyns faste ride, 3772
þat hadde y-chaced Richard dou*n*, Wan he aslow kyng Claryou*n*, þat was so ful of pryde.

bearing the body of Clarion

þat body þay bro3te among he*m* þo, & Sar3yns wente to & fro, And made a wonder deel. 3776

to Balan's tent.

þat body forþ þai bryngeþ so, & euene[3] to þe pauyllou*n*s þay gu*n*ne go, & meteþ w*ith* þ^e^ Amyrel.

¶ "What how now," saide he þan, "Haþ Clariou*n* my cosyn aslawe þ^e^ man? þe messager ys he ded?" 3780
"Nay," quaþ on, "þe deuel hi*m* drawe, For he haþ my lord a-slawe, lo, her ys body and hed!"
Wan þe Amyral hym ded y-se3, Sorwe 3ede ys herte ne3, & angry ynow he was: 3784

The Emir swoons four times,

Four sithes he ful a-dou*n* y-sowe, & oþre dules made ynowe, & ofte cryede, "Alas!"
"Alas," said he, "my cosyn dere, Al my confort for-soþ þow were, Wo ys me for þy sake! 3788
For þow were eu*er*e god & kende, Y praye to Mahou*n*, as he ys hende, þat he þy saule take."
þe Sara3yns þ*a*t þa*n*ne aboute hym were A gret dul þay made there, For þat kyngis deþ. 3792

[1] Wather he ys ded [or quyk*e*].
[2] [Tell*e*n more sykerk*e*]. (About 20 other lines in this page have been rewritten.)
[3] MS. eueuene.

þan stode þus barou*n*s of honour, & lokede þyderward out of þe tour,
& al þys hyreþ & seeþ.
¶ Rolond askede þan ful ri3t, Of þat burde fair & bri3t, and Roland asks Floripas
Yf sche couþe hym telle, 3796
Whar-for was mad þat gret mornyng Amonges þe Sara3yns olde & 3yng, what it means.
As hy þar herden alle.
¶ Florippe ansuerede & sayde, "3ys, Y can 3ow sayn wel why it ys, She tells him.
war-for y am wel fawe: 3800
Certys al ys for Clariou*n* kyng, þ*a*t was my fadres owe derlyng,
þat Rychard haueþ a-slawe.
He was a noble werreour, Of al heþenisse was he flour,
Me nyste nowar ys pere. 3804
Certis now waxeþ 3our honour, He was my fadres beste socour,
& ys cosyn dere.
¶ Whar-for now buþ alle glad, Ri[chard] ys lyues, buþ no3t a-drad, [leaf 50, back]
And haþ y-don þys dede; 3808
Conquerid haþ he of kyng Claryou*n*, An hors þ*a*t is worþ many a toun,
No-war nys such a stede."
Wanne sche haueþ hure tale y-tolde, þan gu*n*ne þaye alle waxe bolde,
þat wern þo on þe tour. 3812
Olyuer sayde to þe company: "Now mowe we beo þ^e more hardy
To byden her socour."
And alle þan þankede god almy3t, þat Rychard was þ*a*t day so wy3t, They all thank God.
þat do3ty kyng to slee, 3816
And prayede god, þe he3e iustys, Scholde scheld hi*m* fr*a*m ys enymys,
& send hym saf A3ee.
RYchard hym prykeþ on ys way, Ne spareþ he hulle ne valay,
Bot al-way ry3d p*r*ikyng. 3820
Conquered had he such a stede, þat of ys trauayl ne doþ he drede
How fer a-go rennyng.
þe Ameral þanne ful angry was, He clepede til hym Malyngryas, Balan orders Malyngryas, his messenger, to go
þ*a*t was ys Messager, 3824
And saide to hym, "beo wys & snel, And tak þe dromodarye þ*a*t goþ wel,
& gr*a*yþe þe on þy ger;
To Mantrible anon most þou fare, Quikly loke þat þ*o*u be þare, at once to Mantrible.
As swyþe as he may gon. 3828

þyn spores loke þat þou ne spare, þe dromedary ys swifter þan þe hare,
He bryngeþ þe þar anon.

and caution Agolafre, the keeper of the bridge,

& go to Agolafre, þe Briggeward, And aske of hym on my part,
Why he dude so ille, 3832

To lete passye þe Messagers þat holdeþ my tour & my doȝtre fers,
Al agayn my wille.

If y may lyue, by myn heued, Hym schel beo betre han y-leued,
for þat was folye gret. 3836

Tel hym al-so al þat cas Of Clarioun þat my neuewe was,
In wat manere he is ded,

& how A Messager haþ hym slayn þat [1]wendeþ to fecche[1] Charlemayn,
if he may pasye there; 3840

[2]& ys y-sent by þus glotouns Charlis to fecche & his barouns,
To schende ous alle here.

[leaf 51] For if he þe Messager [3]leteþ pace,[3] Charlis [4]wol me of londe chace,[4]
& brynge ous alle ful lowe. 3844

not to let any stranger pass the bridge.

Thar-for say him þat he be-war, And lete noman pacye thar,
bote if he be knowe.

[5]And[5] if þar comeþ any ounknowed[6] man, Sone þat he ben take þan,[7]
& hyder to me y-send.[8] 3848

Say hym on payne of ys heued, þat þys þyng beo noȝt be-leued,
As he ne wil be y-schend."

¶ "Syre," sayde þe Messager, "Sone certis y wil be ther,
& speke wiþ agolofre, 3852

The messenger say he can run faster than ride.

& ȝour erand to hym[9] abeode: Ac ride wil y noȝt in thys neode,
y þank ȝow of ȝour profre.

To renne an .C. myle on my fete, Ne schal noman y-se me swete,
On hulle ne in valay. 3856

[1—1] [wende oute now to.]
[2] *Added in the margin below:—*
To socoury þys glotouns on my tour þat habeþ y-don me deshonour
& ous to schende here.
[3—3] *over* 'thar pase may.' [4—4] *over* 'schal come on ous sum day.'
[5—5] *altered to* (?) 'if þat.' [6] *over* 'stronge.'
[7] *over* 'War-for in myn half hat hym þan.'
[8] *Over this line, crossed through, is* 'þat he be sone y-take,' *and underneath is* 'to passe þat passage.'
[9] & [to hym] ȝour erand [wel].

Or þe dromedarye scholde be diȝt, Y schal gon on my fote ryȝt,
Wel neȝ half þe way." 3280

¶ þe Messager ys sone forþ afare, & renneþ swyfter þan þe hare; — He starts and soon overtakes Richard,
Rychard he haþ of-take. 3860
Malyngryas hi*m* drow a-part, & þus ascryede þar duk Richard,
"þow schelt noȝt o*us* a-scape."
& forþ he renneþ al so swyft, As foul þat fleþ on þe lift, — passes him,
Mantrib[l]e til he cam to. 3864
& þan to þe brigge tok he ys pas, Straȝt to þe brigge-ward þar a was,
On þ^e^ brigge sto*n*dy*n*ge þo.
¶ Wa*n*ne he afforn hi*m* was y-come, Ys erande abed he al & some, — and delivers his message to Agolafre.
Riȝt as y schal ȝow saye[1]. 3868
"þe Ameral me hauaþ to þe y-sent, To wyte what was þyn entent
To don hym such affraye,[2]
þe messagers for to leten þ^e^ brigge pace,[3] þat Charlys sente by manace,[4]
[5]Hyderward hy*m*[5] to scaþe; 3872
þat han w*ith* strengthe conquerd is to*ur*, And holdeþ ys doȝtere wiþ deshonour, & hermyeþ he*m* late & rathe.
¶ And now compþ on of he*m* prykyng, F*ra*m þe othre y-sent to Charl*is* kyng, & ys by-stole awaye. 3876
By Mahou*n*, pautener, þe tyd abigge,[6] For[7] þay passede so þe brigge[8]:
He sent þe so to saye.
For Clariou*n* [9]þe kyng[9] he haueþ a-slawe And y-take ys stede aȝen þe lawe,[10] hys better nys nowar non. 3880
Toward Charl[es] wolde he wende, And bryng hym hider my lord to schende, And to dist*r*uye ous ecchon. [leaf 51, back]
Wharfor þe Amerel ys wonder wroþ, & by Ma[houn] haþ sworn ys oþ,
& þow hi*m* lete pace, 3884
Whar þov beo founde, fer or neȝ, þ*a*t þow schalt be an-honged heȝ,
þe tyȝd non oþ*er* grace."
¶ Wan Agolafre haþ herd hym speke, For angre þat he ne drast hi*m* wreke, — Agolafre is furious at the message,
A skuntede als a bore:— 3888

[1] *over* 'sigge'. [2] *over* 'To kepe betere þ*us* brigge.'
[3] '& whan þou letest pace' *over*. [4] *over* 'Charl*is* messagers w*ith* yule grace.'
[5—5] 'þ*us* ȝond*er* day' *over*. [6] *over* 'ful wo.' [7] For [þ*o*u].
[8] *over* 'for þou let hem pacy so.' [9—9] 'hys neuew' *over*.
[10] Other lines added, but are too indistinct to make out.

"Go out of my siȝt," to hi*m* he sede, "How dost þow, harlot, þyn erand bede? & seo þ*o*u me no more.

and threatens Malyngryas.

By Mahou*n*, my lord, þat sit in trone, Bute þ*o*u þe rathere ben agone, Myn axe þ*o*u schalt y-knowe." 3892

Agolafre sone þo[1] tok an horn, & quiklich in-to a tour he orn & loude þan gan he blowe.

By þat he hauede y-blowe a blaste, On þe toun[2] þay bute tabours faste, & made noyse horryble. 3896

20,000 Saracens assemble.

To armes[3] Sarsyns ru*n*ne an haste, & xx. þousant sone[4] þ*er* paste of þe Citee of Mant*r*ible.

¶ þe draȝtbrigge was wel sone arered, Many a Sarȝyn þar was a-stered, þ*a*t Ry[chard] wente aȝene.[5] 3900

Now god of heuene helpe Rychard! þar mot he pace þorw þe hard, for he not wyder flene.

Richard from a hill sees the Saracens.

As Ri[chard] hym comeþ on an hulle an-heȝ, þat host of Sarasyns he of-seȝ, Houynge on a mede, 3904

In armes briȝte & sykere wedes, Sittynge vcchone on faire stedes, & þan hym gan a-drede.

He is in doubt what to do.

"Lord," he saide, "for þy god-hed, What ys now my beste red? of blisse y am al bare: 3908

If y come among þys fered, Wel y wot y lese myn hed; Wyder-ward may y fare?

And if y me take to þe ryuer ward[6] þe strem ys so stil & hard,[7] þ*a*t[8] þer me tyd adrenche: 3912

& if y to þe tour now torne agayn,[9] þe saraȝyns me wolleþ sle certayn, y not now[10] wyder blenche.

Ihe*s*u, my lord ful of myȝt, þ*a*t al þyng canst boþe dele & diȝt, pyte of me þ*o*u haue[11]! 3916

[leaf 52] Al þat þou dudest on me make, [12]In-to þyn hondes ich her[12] by-take F*ra*m com*b*rym*e*nt þ*o*u me saue!"

[1] MS. þas, *with* þo *over it.*
[2] [In þe toune].
[3] 'armes [þa*n*ne].'
[4] [of he*m*] sone.
[5] þat [come] Ry[chard] aȝene.
[6] And y me take to þe [wilde] ryuer.
[7] [Schamlich tyd me dye ther.]
[8] [for] þ*a*t.
[9] & if to þe tour [wolde] torne agayn.
[10] noȝt *corrected to* now.
[11] *Here follow* 2 *long and* 2 *short lines, almost illegible.*
[12]—[12] *over* 'body & saule ich þe.'

¶ þan tornde hi*m* Richard al so hot, Toward þe Ryuer þ*a*t hiȝt Flagot, — He turns towards the river;
& þyderward p*r*ikeþ faste. 3920
þe Saraȝynȝ of hym hadde siȝt, And ryde after as foul on fliȝt, — the Saracens ride after him,
to taken hy*m* þay þoȝt an haste.[1]
Ac furst and afforeward alle Prykede a cosyn of þe Amyralle, — headed by Mandysee,
Me calde Mandysee; 3924
Hys hors was lyȝt & faste ȝed[2], And bar a sterre on his for-hed[2],
A noble sted was hee.
¶ þe Sarsyn þ*a*t[3] was ryche & p*r*out, By-fore alle othere he prykeþ out,
& [4]haueþ of-take Richard,[4] 3928
& het hym abide & gan to crye, "Claryou*n* ys deþ þov schalt abye, — who calls on Richard to turn and fight.
Torn to me coward."[5]
Richard tornde til hym anon, & adrow ys sverd, þ*a*t briȝte schon, — Richard cleaves Mandysee's skull,
& gurde hi*m* on þe heued; 3932
Such a strok þat dupe wod, þorw-out helm, heued & hod,
Al he haþ for-cleued.
þe Sarsyn sone ful doun ded, & Ryc[hard] By þe rayne tok þat sted,
To haue hi*m* was hy*m* lef. 3936
Til þe ryuer p*r*ikede Richarde, And þe Saraȝyns come prykynge after harde, — and hastens towards the river, pursued by the Saracens.
Cryynge—"tak þe þef!"[6]
¶ Now y-come ys he to þe ryuere, By-syde a treo & a stod hi*m* þere,
þat water to by-holde, 3940
& saw þe ryuer was dup & brod, And ran a-way as he were wod,
ys herte gan waxe colde.
¶ Richard tok herte & þenche gan, þat nedelich a most entrye þan — He determines to swim the river,
In & passe þat ryuere, 3944
Ouþer he moste turn aȝee, And fiȝte agayn al þ*a*t maygne,
þ*a*t after hi*m* come there.
To ihe*s*u þ*a*nne he bad a bone:—"Lord, þ*a*t madest su*n*ne, mone,
Lond & water cler, 3948
Kep me þys day f*ra*m my fone, & if y þys ryuer potte me one, — and commends himself to god.
þ*a*t y ne a-drenche her:
& such grace þow me sende, þat y may saf to Charlis wende,
& telle hy*m* my porpos, 3952

[1] [& þan gan Richard haste.] [2] ȝede *and* hede *marked for correction.*
[3] [for] þat. [4—4] [& a take Richardou*n*.] [5] [felou*n*.]
[6] [wi*th* gr*e*t effray] (*the line riming with this, altered.*)

[leaf 52, back] So þat he may come wyþ socour, And delyuery ys barons of hono*ur*,
þat liggeþ among þy fos."

A milk-white doe appears, ¶ Nad he noȝt þat word ful speke, Er þ*a*t þar cam an hert forþ reke,
As wyt ase melkys fom. 3956

and swims across. Ryȝt euene by-fore duk Rychard þat best[1] hym wente to watre-ward,
& fayre by-fore hym swom.

Wa*n*ne þe duk þat wonder y-seȝ, & þe sarsyns þ*a*t þo wer come wel neȝ,
W*it*h bost & noyse gret, 3960

Richard takes courage, and leaps into the river, Wyþ is riȝt hond þan blessede he hym, And þoȝ þe ryuere were styf
& grym, Wyþ boþe hors in a schet;
Ys stede was an hors of prys, & bar þe kniȝt at al dyuys,
Swy*m*mynge w*it*h ys felawe. 3964

the deer leading him. þe hert þat was so fair of siȝt Ouer þe Ryuer swam ful riȝt,
& Ry[chard] doþ after-drawe.

¶ Ys fon hym folȝede to þe water cler, Ac wan þay come to þe dupe
Ryuer, þ*a*t wilde was & thro, 3968

The Saracens are afraid, Entrye þa*n*ne ne darst hy noȝt, For þe ryuer hi*m* ran so toȝt;
Sory men were þay þo.

and turn to cross by the bridge. To þe Citee þa*n*ne þey prikede aȝeyn, & fyndeþ mandisee þat was
a-sleyn, As ȝe hurde of are. 3972

þat body þay lefte stille ligge, & prykede ȝerne ou*er* þe brigge,
To mete w*it*h Ry[chard] þare.

¶ Agolafre wax wonder wroþ, To þe drauȝtbrigge before[2] he goþ,
& quyclich let hur dou*n*: 3976

"Barou*n*s," quaþ he, "now p*r*ikeaþ faste, þe Messager þ*a*t ȝe hadde an
haste, & sleþ þ*a*t foul felou*n*."

They hurry over the bridge. þan miȝte men many Sarsynȝ seen Ouer þe brigge an-horce fleen,
p*r*ikyng as þay wer wod; 3980

By þat was Richard þe ryuer past, And prykeþ hym f*ra*m ys fon an
hast, As ys nede by-stod.

Nad he noȝt p*r*iked of þ*a*t contray, Fro þe ryuere a myle way,
Er he a-liȝte a-dou*n*. 3984

Richard sees them coming, þan saw he comynge on o valay þat host of Saraȝynȝ þe hol aray
To take he*m*[3] were þay bou*n*.

[1] [þe hert.] [2] [sone.]
[3] hȳ *altered to* hē!

Hastelich aȝen on ys stede he wond, þe sterrede he takeþ on ys hond,
& leteþ he*m* boþe renne. 3988
He prykeþ he*m* forþ wyþ such an eyr, þ*a*t at eu*e*ry stape sprong out [leaf 53]
þ*a*t fyr, þ*a*t þay made þ*a*nne.
þe Saraȝyns prykede after faste, Ac al hure trauail a-way þay caste, but is soon out of sight,
For he passede hur*e* siȝt. 3992
& wan þay seȝe it nolde noȝt be, Wroþ & sory þay tornde aȝee,
As þay come ful riȝt.

Forþ þanne rideþ Rychardou*n*, Stouteliche as a bold baroun,
ne douteþ he for no man, 3996
Prykynge ouer hulle & pleyn, Til he cam to Charlemeyn, and never stops till he comes to Charlemayne.
neu*e*re ne astente he þan.
Lete we Richard of Normaundy Prykye forthward on ys wey,
& of Char[lis] y wol ȝov telle, 4000
þ*a*t lyþ at Morymond w*ith* ys baro*n*s, Wel y-loged ther on
pauyllouns; now lysteþ to þis spelle.

Muche hym awondreþ Charlys kyng þ*a*t he ne hureþ no tydyng Meanwhile Charles wonders that he hears no tidings of his knights;
of his baro*u*ns hende, 4004
hwyche he had to þe Ameral sent; For hymen ys he in gret torment,
Sorwe hym gan betrende.

¶ Charlys clypede ys barouns, And scheweþ til hymen ys resons and calls a council.
On þis manere & sede: 4008
"Lordes," said he, "me ys ful wo þ*a*t my doþþepers buþ þus a-go,
y drede lest þay be dede.
If þay lyuede[1] y wot to wysse Of hem y scholde ha herd or þysse,
& now y ha lost he*m* so. 4012
Alas þ*a*t euere y saw þis day! þe flour of chyualrye ys away,
& my worschip is a-go!
fayne y wolde þe croune op-ȝelde, Her by-fore ȝow on thys felde,
ne kep y hure bere nomare." 4016
Wyþ þ*a*t A wepte wyþ is eȝen, & wan þe frensche hit herde & seȝen, They all lament for the knights
Wel sory ys frendes ware.

¶ Gweynes ys traytour þ*a*t þ*a*r was þo, Wanne he herde hym speke so save Gwenylon, the traitor,
On herte hi*m* leked þ*a*t cas: 4020

[1] If þay [were lyues].

Of ys sorwe a was ful fayn, And of þe baroun*s* þ*a*t scholde be slayn,
Glad ynow a was.

who advises Charles to

Affore þe kyng i-come ys he & sayde, "Charlis,[1] now herkne me,
& do by my saying: 4024

[leaf 53, back]

þyn host liþ her ful yuele araid, And holdeþ hym ful yule apaid
Of þy longe bydyng.

retire to France

Let awarnye þyn barouns þat þay don vp hure pauyllou*ns*,
Eu*e*rech on ys side, 4028

because the Saracens are preparing to avenge Ferumbras,

And trussyam þ*is* day & aredy make, & to-morwe let ous our iorne take,
Hamward aȝen to ryde.

¶ þe Ameral haueþ y-gadred ys host In tal heþenys by euery cost,
And þenkeþ ryde on þe; 4032

For ys sone, sir Fyrumbras, þat among ous her co*n*quored was,
He þenkeþ Auenged be.

þow ne hast no power now an-honde, His grete assemble to wiþ-stonde,
Wan þay comeþ to fiȝte. 4036

And þoȝ þow woldest aȝen hym fonde, þay buþ on hure owene londe,
þow gost to grounde riȝte.

and Roland and the others are dead.

And namliche suþþe þ*a*t þay buþ dede þat scholde ben our help at nede,
Hardy ys he & feer, 4040

And wol come hider & on ous falle, þe to slen & eke ous alle,
þat he may fynde her.

þer-for, sire, do by my rede, To-morwe erly a wel god spede
Ham-ward let ous drawe. 4044

And þenk eft-sones to auenged be of þe Amyral þ*a*t haþ y-wreþþed þe,
& þyne men a-slawe."

Charles cannot answer him for grief,

¶ Wan he haþ told ys resoun Char[lis] caste his heued adou*n*,
& haþ al tornd ys mod; 4048

So wo hym was on is þoȝt þat he ne myȝt hem answerie noȝt,
for al þe worlde god.

Gret deel hit was hym to seen, How he gan þo to wepe aȝeen,
þat noble conquerour. 4052

Wan he by-gan to w*ith*-drawe ys mod, To hi*m*-self said he þar a stod—
"now falleþ al myn honour,

[1] & sayde [to] Charlis.

þe whyle y hauede me aboute Myne doþþepers bold & stoute, but laments over his knights.
Olyuer & Rolond, 4056
In tal þe worlde men dude me doute : Whar þat y come wyþ my route,
y hadde þe heghere hond :
þanne me dradde me fer & ner,[1] And was ycleped conquerer,
In tal þe worlde aboute. 4060
And now buþ hy fro me gon, Whar-for waxeþ[2] bold my fon, [leaf 54]
þat arst dude me doute :
And yf y þuse viage leue þus, Men willeþ seyn, by swete iesus,
My myȝt ys me bereued ; 4064
þan haue ich y-lost al my renoun : As lef me were her stope adoun,
& lete gurd of myn heued."
¶ þe Emperour stod & hym by-þoȝte, How þat he answerye moȝte,
& þus he sayde þo : 4068
"What sigge ȝe, lordes of renoun, By þe conseyl of Gweneloun? Charles asks the advice of his nobles.
Wat rede ȝe for-to do?
If y me thus turne in-to fraunce, Wyþ-oute takynge of vengeance,
Hit is to me gret schame. 4072
Men wolleþ sayn þat buþ wyse þat it ys al my feyntyse
& putte on me þe blame."
¶ þan hadde þe traytour cosyns thare, Geffroun, Dautefuelle and Gwenylon's friends support him.
Malkare, Hardree and Alorys, 4076
Gerard, Hugoun and Gwylmare, And mo þan hundred othre þat ware
ys cosyns oþer alyes,
& alle were traytours to Charlemayn ; þay come forþ & gunne to sayn
Afforn hym þar a stod : 4080
"Leue Syr kyng, as þow art free, Do now as Gweynes redeþ þee,
for it ys for þy god.
Gweneloun ys boþe god & wys, And haþ y-rad the at oure deuys,
As it wil best auayle. 4084
þer buþ .xx. þousent among ous her þat willeþ no ferþer wyþ þe þis ȝer
Putte hem to trauayle,
And þat ys for þov hast y-lost þylke þat scholde help ous most,
Ro[land] and Olyueer, 4088

[1] [boþe] fer & ner. [2] MS. waxex.

And þyne oþre barouns stoute, To wham alle we wern woned aloute,
for þay were so feer."

¶ "By dure god," saide Charlys þan, "ȝe loueaþ me lytel euery man,
þat redeþ me in þis maner. 4092

If y þus schamlich schal torne agayn, Luu*e*re me were be ded certayn
On þys felde her."

Rayner warns him not to trust them.

¶ þe erld of Genyue, syre Rayner, Sayde þa*n*ne to þe Emperer:
"Syre, be my liegeance, 4096

[leaf 54, back] þ*o*u ne dost noȝt ase þe wys If þow y-lyuest sir Alorys,
oþer any of his lyaunce.

Ys consail dude þe neuere god, Ne non þ*a*t y knowe of al is blod;
haue it wel in mynde. 4100

Hy buþ fals in dede & þoȝt, Hure co*n*sail to þ^e^ nas neu*e*re noȝt,
& þat þ*o*u schal wel vynde."

Alorys threatens

¶ þan hym spak sir alorys: "Rayner, þ*o*u spekest al amys,
By god omnipotent; 4104

And þat þow scholdest a-bigge sare, If þe kyng hem-self ne ware
Her now in present.

and abuses Rayner.

What þow art ful wel we knowe; Y-come þow art of ku*n*ne lowe,
And Garyn þy fader also: 4108

In þe werld nad he lond ne rente, Saf þat þ*a*t he wiþ falshed hente,
& dude men þer-for wo.

Neu*e*re ne was he w*ith*-oute strif, Bot ay wykke[d]liche lyuede ys lyf,
On þefþe & robberye: 4112

And al ys lygnage in euery syde, For robbours þai were y-kud as wyde
As any man myȝte a-spye."

Rayner is enraged, and knocks him down.

¶ þe duk þan wax al ful of grame, Wa*n*ne he spak of is fader schame,
And strok til hym w*ith* yre; 4116

& on þe chekegurd hym w*ith* ys hond, þ*a*t wyþ þe strok to gronde a wond,
And tomblede on þe myre.

"þow lyest, rybaud," saide he þan, "My fader was kud a trewe man;
god ȝyue þe yule chaunce! 4120

And alle þat buþ of ys blode Trewe men þai ben i-holde & gode,
þorȝ-out þe realme of f*r*ance."

Gwenylon's friends cry

¶ Wan ys proutekyn y-sawe þ*a*t cas, Hautefuelle, hardre, & Sir Malcras,
& oþre a þousent neȝ; 4124

What of alyaunce, wat of blod, þan þay ascryede hy*m* as þay were wod, out for revenge.
"Asarmes!" swyþe an-heȝ.
þat kun was wykkede on hi*m*-selue & armede hymen blyue on eche helue,
boþe ȝonge & olde. 4128
And so he dude eke þ^e duk Rayner, And al is frendes þat he had ther,
þ*a*t þoȝte w*ith* hy*m* to holde.
Mykel was þe noyse þat þan aras: Ac Gweynes partye þe more was, Gwenylon's party is the larger,
& miȝtyer of power. 4132
Ac wan þ*a*t hol host y-saw þ*a*t cas, Hit ful to þe duk Rayner þorw gras, but all the soldiers join Rayner.
For loue of Olyuer.
¶ þan þay þoȝte to-gadre han set, ne hauede Fyru*m*b*r*as hymen y-let, [leaf 55]
þ*a*t hymen wente betwene; 4136 Ferumbras and Charles interfere.
& þe kyng among hem went, & hoten hem by co*m*maundyment,
þ*a*t þay lete it bene.
¶ Wan þys noyse al cessed was þe kyng stod vp in the plas,
& clypeþ til hym Rayner, 4140
Gwenelou*n*, hardree & Alorys, And othre mo of þys p*a*rtys
& sayde in þys maner:
"ȝe doþ me, lordes, wel muche ounriȝt, þat buþ hardy her on my siȝt, Charles
Do me þe vylonye, 4144
Her on my presence to profry fiȝt. Bote it be amended, by god almiȝt,
ȝour su*m*me it schal abye.
¶ Alorys," said he, "þys was þy werk*e*, Cast of hasteliche þyn hauberk*e*, orders Alorys to disarm and
& þyn helm of þe þ*o*u take, 4148
And by-fore Rayner sete þe on kne, And on hys mercye pote þ*o*u þe, apologize to Rayner.
and is amendes make."
¶ "Syre," quaþ Gweynes, "it schal be do, Siþþe ȝe hoteþ þat hit
beo so, We wollaþ make ys pays." 4152
"ȝea, be god," quaþ hautefuelle, "Do now Alorys wiþ-oute duelle,
Riȝt as þe kyng hi*m* says."
¶ Alorys ou*n*armed hi*m* þa*n*ne an haste, And on is knes andressede Alorys does so,
hi*m* vaste, Be-fore þe duk Rayner; 4156
þe amendes a profrede hi*m* for-to make, At heȝ & low what he wold take, and they are reconciled.
& so þay acorded ther.
¶ þe kyng gan asky aȝenward þo, Whaþer þay hym radde a-byde or go
Aȝenward in-to f*ra*unce. 4160

"Ac wel y may wyte[1] if y do so y potte me-selue in sorwe & wo
& to gret greuaunce."

Hauteville advises him to follow the counsel of Gwenylon,

¶ Hautefuelle hym answerede agayn: "Herkne, sire, what y schal sayn,
y wil ȝou noȝt be-swyke. 4164
Ful wel ȝe know þys ech del þat euere y haue iloued ȝow wel,
& Gweynes my sone doþ yke.
Ho-so consaile ȝow her to abide, He loueþ ȝow litel at þys tyde:
þenchesoun y wol ȝow say. 4168
Þy puple ys her enpayned stronge, For þay han y-laye her þus longe,
y-armed boþe niȝt & day:
[leaf 55, back] Al our bodyes waxeþ sore, So longe we habbeþ armes bore,
And buþ so heuy so led. 4172
Do[2] as Gweynes redeþ þe, And faire let ous turne aȝe,
þys ys þe beste red.
And wan we comeþ in-to oure helue,[3] þan mowe we þar reste ous selue,
An ten ȝer ate leste. 4176

and take time to recruit his army.

By þat willeþ hy *þat* now buþ ȝonge Be ful waxe & be bold & stronge,
To helpe þe in þe beste:

Then he can return

& þan miȝt *þou* gadry a-ȝen þyn host, And come ageyn in-to þys cost,
W*ith* nobleye & bobau*n*ce, 4180
& do wreche for duk Rolond, & for þyn oþre barou*ns* strong,
& take þy vengeance;

and recover the sacred relics.

& eke þyn relyques wynne aȝee, þe croune of thorn & þe nailes three,
þ*at* buþ away i-bore; 4184
& þe oþre relyqes al & some, Hwyche þay habbeþ þe be-nome,
þat we buþ *tra*uaild fore."
¶ þan was Char[lis] ench*an*ted so W*ith* þees *tra*ytour, and othre mo,
Gwenelou*n* & hardree, 4188

Charles gives orders for a return to France.

þat he hem graunteþ *þat* same daye To trossy hur harneys & hem
araye, To torn he*m* hom aȝee.
þo were þys traytours glad & blyþe, In tal þat host þay wente swyþe,
And warnede mest & leste, 4192
Euery man to makye hym ȝare, & trussye his harneys hom to fare,
After þe kynges heste.

[1] 'knowe' *over* 'may wyte.' [2] Do [now].
[3] 'contre' *over* 'helue.'

¶ þan waxe sory þe gode barou*ns*, þ*at* þay scholde don op hure
pauillo[u]ns, By þe conseil of losengers: 4196
& namliche þe gode duk Rayner Muche bemeneþ . ys sone Olyuer,
& alle þe doþþepers:
Noþeles suþþe þ*at* it was so, After þe kynge þay moste do,
& gu*n*ne to trussye vaste. 4200
þay fulde sakkes, & trossede males, To Charyotes þay drowen þe
g*r*ete bales, & þykke he*m* in þam caste.
¶ Wan þay were araid al & some, And an-horce wern þe grete gome, All are ready to start
And þ^e^ kyng an-horse was, 4204
þa*n*ne he be-þo3t hy*m* al aboute, & how he sente ys barou*ns* stoute;
ofte he sayde, "Alas!"
& "Alas[1]!" said he, by-forn hem þar, "þat[2] y eu*er*e y 3ut croune bar, Charles laments over the loss of his knights.
þis is [3]a deeful þyng[3]! 4208 [leaf 56]
þat suþþen myn barou*ns* buþ þus y-slayn, & y thus[4] wrecchedly schal
torne a-gayn, Wiþ-oute [5]wrech takyng[5]:
þar as y ha be arst mykel of tolde, For a coward y worþ y-holde,
boþe in tour and bour[6]. 4212
Alas! alas! cold ys my red; Why lybbe y now þ*at* þay buþ ded,
þat huld vp myn hono*ur*?
Alas! for Roland, my Cosyn dere; Were he lyues wiþ me here,
A wolde no3t suffry þys, 4216
þat y thus scholde me torne a3ene, Wiþ-oute ve[n]iaunce of my tene,
Hit farþ now al a-mys:
For now y haue hym for-go, And myn oþre barons al-so,
þorw [7]my folye dede[7]. 4220
Whar-for certis me ys wo." Wiþ þat word sowenede he þo, He swoons and nearly falls from his horse.
As he sat on ys stede;
Of is hors had he falle adou*n*, Nadde y-ben þe soco*ur* of his barou*n*,
þat vp þer gu*n*ne hi*m* holde 4224
ys trewe baronye be-mend hi*m* sore, & Ro[land], & Olyuer wel mychele
more, & þe oþre barou*ns* bolde,
¶ Wan þe kyng of Sowenyng awok*e*, þe way to france þan he tok*e*, They start.
As he lay forþ ri3t. 4228

[1] & [þan.] [2] [Alas] þat. [3—3] [a foule meschance.] [4] y[now].
[5—5] [any vengeance.] [6] MS. tour. [7—7] [myn o3e fol dede.]

Richard appears galloping up at full speed,

Þe kyng gan loke þanne a-syde, & saw whar Ric[hard] com [1]*þat* tyde,[1]
*P*rikynge by-fore his sy3t,
And sat on þat noble stede, *þat* al so swyftlyche þanne 3ede,
So swolwe doþ on fly3t. 4232

Þe sterrede on ys hand he ladde, þat he of Mandysee wan & hadde,
þat[2] he hym slow in fy3t,

with his sword drawn.

& bar a naked swerd an honde. Þe kyng made ys stede a-stonde,
And by-huld hym faste; 4236
Hym semede þan it was a kny3t, þat was y-come out of fy3t,
And su*m*del was agaste.

¶ Þan . clypede he hemen *þat* were most Worthyest barons of al ys host, of Ienyue[3] þe duk Reyner, 4240

Charles orders a halt.

Raol Mou*n*tferant, & duk howelle, And bad hi*m* a-wyle w*ith* hi*m* duelle, & *þat* host a-reste ther:
"For y seo 3under comeþ a kny3t, Prykyng so doþ þe foul on fly3t,
On a ful iolif stede; 4244

[leaf 56, back]

Lord þe stede þat he goþ ly3t, Another a lede þan honde ri3t,
þat semeþ god at nede.

He recognizes Richard.

By ys rydyng it[4] semeþ me, Richard of Normandye it mi3te be,
þat berþ *þat* swerd an hand. 4248
Now ihe*s*u, þat ert heuene kyng, þys day sende me god tydyng
Of my neuew Roland,
And of Olyuer, my derlyng, þat þay mote be 3ute lyuyng,
& my othre barou*n*s wy3te." 4252
By þat *þat* host arested was, Rychard cam prykande ne3 þe plas
& by-fore hym þa*n*ne ali3te.

Richard rides up to Charles,

¶ Anon, ri3t as þe kyng hym se3, Quyklich þa*n*ne a rod hym ne3,
& sayde til hym [5]ful 3are[5]: 4256

who asks him about the other knights.

"Iantail kny3t, comen of kynde free, Of Roland my neuewe tel þou me,
How ys it by[6] hym afare;
& of Gy of Borgoygne, & of Olyuer, And of al myn othre doþþeper,
buth 3ut[7] on lyue." 4260
"3ea, sire, wyþ-inne þis þridde day y lefte hymen murye & in god aray,"
Said Ri[chard], so y thryue;

[1]—[1] [*p*rikyng] *þat* tyde. [2] [Wan.] [3] 'Alre furst' *over* '[&] of Ienyue.' [4] [as] it. [5]—[5] [þare.] [6] [of.] [7] [War þay beo.]

On þe stronge tour of Egremou*n*t, þar buþ þyn barou*n*s alle hol & sond, Saf Basyn þ*a*t is aslaye[1]: 4264 — Richard tells him how they are besieged by Balan, and

þe Ameral be-segeþ hyme*n* þer-yn Wyþ an hu*n*dred þousant Sara3yn, Be ni3tes & be daye[2].

þe Amyrel haþ sworn by ternagan þ*a*t neu*e*re ne wil he departie þan, for no3t þ*a*t may betyde, 4268

Til þay be-take in dispyt of þe, And an-honged he3e on þe galwetre, eu*e*rech by oþres syde.

þar ys w*it*h-ynne wyþ hymen there, Flo[rippe] þe Amyralis do3tre dere, — how Floripas has the relics under her charge,

A burde on boure bri3t: 4272

Sche haueþ þe relyqes on hure warde, For whyche þ*o*u hast y-trauaild harde, longe tyme day & ni3t.

¶ þyn barons þat buþ of gret honour, þat so buþ be-seged on þ*a*t tour, þey sendeþ þe word by me, 4276

þat þow scholdest come w*it*h þyn host And [3]delyu*e*ry he*m* out of þ*a*t cost, As þ*o*u art hende & fre;

& if þou wolt so: as god me saue, Al þyn relyqes þow my3t haue, — [leaf 57] which Charles can have.

þat y spak of eere: 4280

And discou*m*fitye þow schalt þan Amyrel, And al ys Sara3yns, y wot ful wel, þ*a*t now buþ w*it*h hi*m* þere.

And wan þou hauest so y-done, Conquere þ*o*u schalt after sone þ^e^ reame of heþene Spaygne." 4284

þan was glad Charlis kyng, Ne herde he neuere no tydyng — Charles is delighted at the news,

War-for he was so fayne.

NOw ys Charlis glad & blythe, And þonkeþ god an .C. sythe — thanks God

Of þat gode tydynge. 4288

By seynt Dynys a swor ys oþ, þat Gweynes & hyse scholde be wroþ, — and vows vengeance on Gwenylon.

for hure compassynge:

"Hit ys no þyng on hymen ylong þat y ne hadde y-lost Rolond, & myn barons[4] hende. 4292

þay buþ wel ful of felonye, & þ*a*t þay schullen eft-sone abye, bote þay hemen[5] amende.

y þanke þe, Ri[chard]," quaþ Char[lis] kyng, "For certis þow hauest wiþ þy tydyng y-bro3t myn herte of care. 4296

[1] [aslawe.] [2] [dawe.] [3] And [wiþ strengþe.]
[4] 'oþre barou*n*s' *written over.* [5] bot [if] þay.

He determines in the morning to start to Egremont.

Al niȝt we wolleþ reste ous her, And to-morwe, wan þe day ys cler,
þyderward wille we fare,
And y make auow to my lord seynt Ion, If y may lyue til moneday non, lyuerance wil y make; 4300
And þe Amerel schal lese ys hed, & al his sarsyns schulle be ded,
þat y may of-take."

Richard says the Saracens cover 12 square miles,

¶ "Sire," quaþ Richard, "he ys ful strong, & haþ be-set þe contre long,
Wyþ Sarsynȝ al aboute: 4304
four myle in lengþe spredreþ is host, And thre on brede by euery cost,
With-inne & wyþ-oute.

and that he will have to cro-s the bridge at Mantrible,

And a thys syde Egrymoygne a iornee þar is a brigge of gret fertee,
A Citee [1]ys set *þer*-bye[1]: 4308
Mantrible þe Citee ys y-called, Wyþ marbre fyn ys he walled,
& abatayld *with* toures hye.
Vnder þe brigge þan flet flagot, On hi*m* ne may durye schip ne bot,
So sterneliche he hi*m* re*n*neþ: 4312
Of brede ys he a gret boȝe-schot, & thre spere-schaftes dep ech grot,
As many man it wel ke*n*neþ.

[leaf 57, back] A þys syde þ^e^ tou*n* þat ryuer rend,[2] & þe brigge [3]þar ouer[3] stent,
Whar forþ we moste pace. 4316
Oþer passage ne ys þar non bote by *þat* brigge y-mad of ston,
nys *þer* no*n* oþer *grace*.
amydde þe brigge þar stent a tour y-buld aboȝe wyþ gret honour,
Wyþ brytaskes many & fale: 4320

which is kept by a giant,

In þar on dwelleþ þe briggeward, A geant ys he of an yuel part,
Many man he bryngþ on bale.
Vnder þe tour buþ ȝeates two, Whar þorȝ men mote nedes go,
þat wolleþ pacye þere: 4324
þar stondeþ algate an hundred kniȝtes, þat passage to kepe by dayes & nyȝtes, *With* þ^e^ geant *þat* ys portere:

Agolafre the bridge-ward.

Agolafre hatte þe proute geant, Fro hennes in-to Cyuyle grant,
nys þar anoþer swych. 4328

[1—1] *written over* 'by-ȝonde *þer* stonde' *and under* 'nas neu*er*e Cyte str*en*gre walled ymad w*ith* ma*n*nis ho*n*des.'
[2] *over* 'þe ryuer ys red & raply rend.'
[3—3] *over* 'ys peryllo*us* þat.'

He ys [1]a Sarsyn of wonder gret strengþe,[1] xv. fet he [2]haueþ in lengþe,[2]
& ys as blak so pych:
Ne saw y neuere non hym lyke, He semeþ ful wel þe deuels chyke,
y-sprong of þe pyt of helle. 4332

Under him are 10,000 knights.

Alwey he haueþ · on ys baylye x. þousant kny3tes ful hardye,
To don al at ys wille.

Charles must use some stratagem to pass the bridge.

Ac of o þyng, sire, by-þenk þe,[3] þou passest no3t thar wyþ no strengþe, Bote sle3þe helpe þar-to. 4336
For non assaut helpeþ no3t, þe brigge-warde ys so strong y-wro3t,
Hit were no3t worþ a slo.
If we schullen pasye that ryuer, 3e mote leue with 3oure power
On a-buchement as y schal sigge: 4340
In a wode þat ys þer faste by, Half a myle it ys ful ny,
by-twene him & þe brigge:
And y schal take þe wey forþ ri3tes, And haue wyþ me of 3our kny3tes
.V. hundred gode y-kudde. 4344

Richard proposes a plan,

Ry3t as marchant3 wille we ryde, Wel y-armed an-vnder our gonels wyde, & swerdes sherpe y-hudde.
þe somers schulleþ by-forn ous gon, Wyþ grete pakkes euerechon,
As it were marchaundyse; 4348
And we wolleþ fayre after ryde, As marchauns scholde with litel pryde,
And pacye in þis gyse.
& wan we buþ wyþ such a gynne þe brigge-3ates al wyþ-ynne,
þan wol y blowe myn horn; 4352
þan come 3e with 3our company, And takeþ þe brigge with maystry, [leaf 58]
& þe Citee þat stent afforn."

with which Charles is pleased.

¶ "A! lord," sayde Charlys þan, "þat Richard ys a noble man,
god 3yue hym gode chaunce! 4356
Ho mi3te our passage betere araye? No man for-soþ at my paye,
by-twyne þis & fraunce.
Of ys counsayl am y apayd; Hit schal be don as he haþ sayd,
Be dere god almy3te." 4360
þan he het on ſ blowe an horn, And þat host abod be-hynde & forn,
& logede hem þar alny3te.

[1—1] *over* 'myche in wonder strong.' [2—2] *over* 'ys long.'
[3] [now] by-þenk þe.

The army halts for the night at Morymond.

OPpon þe val of Morymond Abydeþ þat host hol & sond,
Fayre oppon a grene. 4364
A-morwe wan þe day was liȝt, Charlys comandeþ þat euery wiȝt
Sone beo y-armed clene.

In the morning Richard picks out 500 men.

Wan þay wer y-armed alle at riȝtes, Charles het Richard chuse his knyȝtes
þat he wolde lede; 4368
And Richard dude as Char[lis] saide & ches .v. hundred, & hem a-raide
On gonels oppon hur wede.
Hyre sarplers dud he with hay be fild, & bonde hem to hure sadels gyld,
To keuery hure[1] ryche araye. 4372

Their arms are hidden, and they appear as merchants.

Hure swerdes durnely so ben y-hid, & ase Marchans þat wern ounkyd,
So þey wentte hure waye.
Charlis takeþ wyþ hym his host, And folȝeþ after[2] wiþ-oute bost
to mantrible-ward ful riȝt. 4376
þat day ȝaf Richard or a ȝede To duk Rayner þe sterrede stede,
þat was so god & liȝt.

Richard rides in front

¶ Rychard ryȝd forþ wyþ ys knyȝtes þat warn arayd after hure ryȝtes,
Riȝt as marchans scholde. 4380
By-fore þe kyng [3]þay prykede þere,[3] Y wol ȝow telle now what þay were,
þe gretteste of þay bolde.

with Duke Howel, Duke Rayner, and Raoul of Amiens.

þe furste was Richard of wham y tel, þe secunde of Nauntes þe duk Howel,
Duk Rayner þe þridde was; 4384
þe furþe was Raol of Mans ; þe stronge; To seche al fraunce brod & longe,
A betre knyȝt þer nas.
þuse prykeaþ faste forþ by-fore, V. hundred knyȝtis in al þay wore,
Hure somers lefte þay noȝt. 4388

[leaf 58, back] [þat þay ne dryue by-forn hem euerechon][4]

Each drives a packhorse laden.

þat ech of hem ne drof forþ on, With pakkes y-charged euerechon,
Wyþ harneys y-fillid toȝte :
Now Agolafre beo hym wel y-war, Bote he kepe him þe betre þar,
At þe entree of þe brigge. 4392
For þe trew þat he wol craue, An yuel torn tyd þe haue,
Myn hed þer-to y legge.
¶ þys knyȝtes prikeaþ forþ on hure way, þe somers þei dryue be-forn hem ay,
& vaste forþ þay wente, 4396

[1] To keuery [þat].
[2] after [hem].
[3]–[3] [þan] prykede [þay] þere.
[4] *Crossed through.*

And beren þ^e pakkes on hure rig, Til þay come euene to þe bryg,
nowar þay ne astente.

And Charlis ys to þe wode y-come, And enbuschedem[1] þar with ys trome, 4400
An hundred þousant kniȝtes.

Charles places 100,000 men in ambush.

þe oþre were ate brigge þan & by-hulde how þ^e ryuer ran,
And oþre ferly syȝtes.

¶ And wan þay hadden al be-holde, þe sturne Ryuer, & þe brigge bolde, 4404
& þe toures þat stode oppon:

þey sayde þat terme of al hur age, ne hurde þay neuere of no passage,
So grysly to lokye on.

Some are frightened at the river and the bridge,

Saide Richard—"þat is soþ, Ac loke on þ^e medwe war Sarsynȝ goþ,
A þousant [2]þer buþ[2] & mo, 4408

Wel y-armed on þe beste assyse, Hure purpos y can noȝt deuyse,
Ne wat þay þenkþ do."

¶ þan saide howel—"þys ys hard, Parfay ich am ful sore affard,
god of heuene ous lede!" 4412

"Lordes," quaþ Ry[chard], "buþ noȝt agast, Ac holdeþ forþ ȝour way an hast,
& boldelich doþ ȝour dede:

but are encouraged by Richard,

And wan we comeþ to þe brigge-gate, Hwat so þay beo þat buþ þer-ate,
Doþ as y schal sayne. 4416

Holdeþ ȝow stille, and spekeþ noȝt, but leteþ me telle as y ha þoȝt,
What so þay speke agayne.

who tells them to keep still and leave everything to him.

And ȝif we mowe pacye so, þe draȝt-brigge & þe ȝeates two,
þan ys tyme to flyte. 4420

þan Casteþ ȝour gonels[3] of anon, & drawe we to our wepnes euerechon,
& let se ho can smyte."

¶ Raol Delamans sayde þan: "Muche maugre mote he han,
þat any of hem spare." 4424

With þat þay gunne[4] hem for-to haste, And dryue forth þe somers faste
Ouer þe brygge thare.

[leaf 59] They arrive at the bridge.

¶ Agalofre, þe voule gome, Ful wel of-seȝ þus knyȝtes come,
Wyþ hure somers fayre. 4428

Out of þe tour þan cam he doun, And set hym on an heyȝ peroun,
y-mad as a chayre.

Agolafre descends from the tower.

[1] enbuscheden [hem].
[2–2] [Sarsyns.]
[3] Casteþ ȝour gonels [þanne].
[4] MS. gunme.

An Axe had he þan an-honde, A shrewedere[1] wepene for-to fonde,
Was neuere non yfounde. 4432
Three fet of brede was þe blad, Of style y-tempred ful wel y-mad,
þe hylue wyþ yre y-bounde.

He is a hideous man

745.

þe Sarsyn was an hudous man, By-twyne ys to browen was a span
largeliche of brede; 4436

with great eyebrows and deep-set eyes.

Ys browes were boþe rowe and grete, & ys nose cammus, ys eȝene depe, & glystryd as þe glede.
Suþþe þe werlde furst by-gan, Nas neuer ȝut so lodly man,
y-mad of flehs & felle. 4440

He seems a devil come straight from hell.

Was he noȝt a godes helf[2] þe deuel he semede al hym-self,
y come þo riȝt · of helle.
þe Amyral hadde y-loued hym long, For he was so wonderly strong,
And doȝty þer-to of dede. 4444
Constable he mad him of ys lond, And tok hym þe briggewarde an hond, For al men schold hym drede.
¶ God saue þe crystene company! Wan þay come þe Sarsyn ny
Ry[chard] rod by-fore: 4448
þan Agolafre stert vp-on ys fet, And askede of Ry[chard] al so ket,
Wyder-ward þat þay[3] wore:

Agolafre demands their business.

"& weþen art þou? þov ladde prout? And wyderward schal þis grete rout of Somers wiþ þe ware? 4452
And wanne buþ þaye þat comeþ her ryde, On heȝe stedes & gonels wyde? Tel me what þay are."

Richard tells him they are cloth merchants,

¶ Ry[chard] ansuerede þe proute Sarsyn, On Arragounneys speche god & fyn, And saide, "we buþ Marchaund; 4456

on their way to the Emir,

Of drapreye we ledeþ gret fuysoun, And wolleþ þer-wyþ to Agremoun,
to þe Amyral of þis laund.
He þenkþ hold an huge ryot, Of Mahoun, & iubiter, & Margot,
Wyþ-inne þis forteniȝt. 4460

[leaf 59, back]

And cloþye he þenkeþ ys barouns fre, For þe loue of oure godes thre,
þat buþ ful myche of myȝte.
And we han her scarletes & grene, & cloþes of tarse, & of sulk ful schene, & cloþes eke of golde. 4464

[1] MS. sherwedere. [2] a godes [of godes] helf. [3] ward [he].

On al paynee buþ rycchere non þan we han her & þat god won,
bygge he*m* he so wolde.
Of such chaffar as we haue, So þ*a*t we mowe come saue,
fro he*n*ne to þe Amyrel, 4468
þa*n*ne schal he on þe beste chuse, And þoȝ we a-boute hym schullen luse,
he schal haue ys del.
Tel me, sire,[1] þ*er*for now, Of þys passage what ys þe trow,
And how we moȝe ous quyte." 4472

and asks what toll has to be paid.

Agolofre ansuerede hy*m* agayn :—"Of þys brigge y am wardayn,
& receuo*ur* of myche & lyte :
Ac her passede wyþ-inne a wyle, Crystene men þ*a*t[2] dude me gyle,
þat come fr*a*m Char[lis] kyng ; 4476

Agolafre says he has been cheated once by some Christians

To þe Amyral þay wente . on god aray, My trew þay sayde þay wolde pay
At hur*e* aȝen comyng.
þay schulleþ beo an-honge[3] on helle, For þay be-trayede þan Amerelle,
& dryuen hi*m* of ys tour ; 4480
And holdeþ hym ȝute aȝen þe riȝt, & ys doȝtre eke, a burde bryȝt,
And doþ hi*m* deshonour.
And now haþ þe A[meral] by-leyn he*m* þer, W*ith* an hu*n*dred þousand of Saraȝyns fier,
Sherpe men at nede : 4484

who are now besieged by the Emir,

Ac on of hem þys ȝunder day, Ase a þef her be stal away,
Oppon a noble stede.

but one had escaped.

My Cosyn a-slow, a man of mod, And tok ys stede sur & god,
And passede þ^e^ ryuere. 4488
þe deuel hi*m* halp þ*a*t he nas dreynt ! By-for þ*a*t was neu*er*e non so queynt,
þ*a*t passede*n* on þ*a*t manere.
Wolde it, Mahou*n* and ternagan, þ*a*t he were her þe same man !
ys blod scholde sone a-kele : 4492

Devil take him!

Wiþ myn axe y wolde ! ȝyue hi*m* on, And to-cleue hym þorȝ flechs & bon,
Dou*n* riȝt to þe hele.

[leaf 60]

And now is þe A[myral] sore afryȝt, For þe doynge of þilke knyȝt,
þ*a*t passed þo þes ende, 4496
Leste he go to þe Emperour, & brynge hym hyder to socour,
Hym & hys to schende.

[1] me [luue] sire. [2] men [seuene] þ*a*t. [3] an-honge [ȝute].

And the Emir has given orders to let no stranger pass,

Whar-for he sente me er þan, þat y ne lete her no man
Pacy þys passage, 4500
Were he erld oþer baroun, Bote if y seȝe ys facioun,
Oþer knewe him by vysage:

and therefore Richard must show his face. 'Willingly,' says Richard.

& þar-for schawe me þyn anon." "Gladly," quaþ Richard, "so mot y gon,
haue þou none doute. 4504
What do ȝe felawes? comeþ neer & ȝour vysages schewyeþ heer,
euerechone aboute."
With þat Richard preynte ys eȝe, Oppon ys feleschip þat was him neȝe,
Hure purpos to by-gynne. 4508

He with Howel, Raoul and Rayner ride on to the bridge.

þe gate Ri[chard] hym neyȝeþ neer, So dude Howel, Roal, and Reyner
þe draȝtbrigge ride with-ynne.
¶ Wan Ago[lafre] hit seȝ he sayde with cry: "Draweþ ȝow abak, ȝe doþ foly,
oþer ȝe schullaþ a-bigge. 4512

Agolafre raises the drawbridge,

Y wil noȝt þer passye her no mo." Sone to þe cheyne sterte he þo,
& vp adrow þe brigge.
¶ Now buþ þay foure with-inne ther; With-outen houede þe somer,
& al hure[1] companee. 4516
Agolafre com forþ wiþ ys hache: "Ribaux," saide he, "ich ȝow attache,

and calls on them to surrender.

Aȝeld ȝow anon to me.
Ho made ȝow so hardy men, þe draȝtbrigge for-to come wyþ-yn,
& þe ȝeates bothe, 4520
Bot it were at myn assent? þer-for to prysoun ȝe schulle be send,
Ne beo ȝow noȝt so loþe.
& þay wyþ-oute schulle be dede; For ȝour folye þat ys hure mede,
Or ich euere reste. 4524

[leaf 60, back]

And on þe morwenyng y wil ȝov[2] sende To Amyral balan þat ys my frende,
to don with ȝou is beste.
Doþ of ȝour govnes ech man a-sonder, & y wil se ȝour wede an vnder,
As Ma[houn] me helpe & rede. 4528
Me semeþ ȝe buþ wel ful of wyles, And habbeþ by-þoȝt ȝow of sum gyles,
to do sum wikked dede."

He seizes Howel.

To howel he sterte him þan with mod, & tok hym faste by[3] þe hod,
þer nas non oþer bote; 4532

[1] & [þat oþer]. [2] [morȝnyng y schal ȝow.] [3] faste [þanne].

Bote thre syþes a bar hym þa*n*ne aboute And al is hod to-taar to cloute,
& cast hy*m* to ys fote.

¶ "Certis," quaþ Roald, "y soffry to long, To se my cosyn haue þys wrong,
So mot y þe & þryue!" 4536

Hasteliche he adrow ys swerd, And agolofre on þe heued a gerd,
As harde as he may dryue: — Raoul smites him on the head.

Ac for þ*a*t strok had he non hoȝe For he was þanne to-be-toȝe
body & heued y-same 4540

W*ith* an hard crested serpentis fel, On which non eged tol ne may no del
W*ith* no strok entame.

¶ Hure gonels þey cast of þan ecchon, & adrewe hure swerdes w*ith* þ*a*t anon
raplych at o route: 4544 — They all throw off their cloaks

And þan þay laid on þ*a*t foule wyȝt Sturne strokes w*ith* al hure myȝt,
In tal ys body aboute. — and attack Agolafre.

Ac al hure strokes ne greuede hi*m* noȝt, þe serpente skyn was so harde y-wroȝt,
þ*a*t no man myȝt hit pers. 4548

[þan hadde þay þ*er*of wonder gret[1]]

& þa*n*[2] þay awondrede of hi*m* ecchon, þ*a*t for al þe strokes þ*a*t þay gerde on,
þat hym nas noȝt þ^e^ wers.

¶ Agolafre ful egre gan[3] to waxe, & wel anheȝ he heuede ys axe,[4]
& [5]to Roal a smot w*ith*[5] mayne: 4552 — Agolafre aims at Raoul with his axe, but

Ac he failede of ys stroke, & þe axe ful on a stilp of oke, — misses him,
þat bar [6]vp ther a chayne[6];

þe strok was so herd yset, þ*a*t þorw þ*a*t treo & þe cheyne gret,
vj. fold y-layd a-boute, 4556 — and cuts through one of the chains of the bridge.

As liȝtliche as hit had ibeo wax, ran þe strok þa*n*ne. of ys ax
Chayne & tre þorȝoute.[7]

¶ "A lord," sayde Reyner þan, "þys ys a deuyl and no man, — [leaf 61]
Certis as y leue: 4560

Ho scholde a-stonde ys sory strok, Wa*n* he smyt her þorȝ an ok,
& no strok may hi*m* greue?"

[1] *crossed through.* [2] [Greteliche]. [3] [þan] gan.
[4] *over* 'to Ro[al] agerte w*ith* ys axe.' [5]—[5] *over* 'strok*e* w*ith* al ys.'
[6]—[6] *over* 'an yre chayn.'
[7] *Added in the margin*:
W*ith* þ*is* on ys oþre side he say A gret bar of yre.

With þat [1]be-huld he faste bye,[1] A gret barre of yre saȝ he lye,[2]
neȝ hym þar be-syde.[3] 4564

Rayner seizes a great bar of iron

Reyner þo [4]putte vp[4] hys brond, And tok vp þe barre *with* boþen
ys[5] hond, & wente til hym *þat* tyde

and knocks him down.

& gerd hy*m* þer-Wyþ[6] on þe molde, þat ys legges gu*n*ne to volde,
& bursten euene atwo. 4568

The bridge quakes with his fall.

þat deablet ful *with* *þat* strok[7] So harde þat al þe brigge schok,[8]
And þ^e^ ryuer dude al-so.

¶ Wel sone [9]was þys y-knowed wyde,[9] [10]& þe Saraȝyns armede he*m*
on eu*er*y syde,[10] Boþe *with* scharp & hard[11]; 4572

More than 10,000 Saracens assemble.

& wyþinne a wyle þer wer y-dyȝt, Mo þan ten þousant [12]of Saraȝyns
wyȝt,[12] & drowe he*m* þyderward.

Richard sounds the signal for Charles,

¶ Rychard tok þa*n*ne ys horn & blew, & Char[lis] y-hurd hit & wel
y-knew þ^e^ aue*n*ture *þat* was befalle: 4576

whose men break out of the ambush.

Of ys enbuschyment þa*n* brak he out, And cryede "montioye!" al
aloud, & sone þai come out alle.

Sone was ech man on ys stede, And prykede vaste to *þat* nede,
þe riȝt way as þay nome. 4580

Richard lets down the bridge.

Ri[chard] þe brigge let falle þan adou*n*,[13] And hys falawes [14]beþ entrede
euerech one,[14] or *þat* g*r*et host hym come.

¶ þan come þe Saraȝyns of þe Citee route, And þoȝte wyþ force
dryuen he*m* oute, & þe brigge aȝen vp-drawe: 4584

Ac þay wyþ-stode he*m* al wyþ strengþe, And reculede hem þar an
acres lengþe, & many þay habbeþ aslawe.

¶ Wan[15] Charlys to þe brigge ys[16] come, Wyþ ys hol host al and
some, þe brigge þay toke a-rank. 4588

þat day Gweynes bar hym wel, And ys kynnesmen, swykel and fel,
[17]Of Char[lis][17] to gete he*m* þank*e*.

þay were þe furste men of myȝt, *þat* potte þe Saraȝyns to þe flyȝt,
Al þoȝ þay kome late.[18] 4592

[1—1] *over* 'lokede he vp a-syde þaar.'
[2] *over* '& saw þar liggeng an yre wroȝte (?) bar.' [3] *over* 'a gret on & ou*n*ryde.'
[4—4] *over* 'dude yn.' [5] ys *added.* [6] [Wyþ þe barre a smot hi*m*.]
[7] ful [dou*n* at þat draȝte]. [8] brigge [quaȝte].
[9—9] *over* 'þe tydyng gan to sprynge.' [10—10] *over* 'In-to Cyte of þys doyngge.
[11] *over* 'Touchyng þe briggward.' [12—12] [in armys bryȝt.]
[13] [By þat let Ry[chard] þe brigge falle.]
[14—14] [entrede eu*er*y man*es* buþ alle.] [15] [By þat], *and* [Now ys].
[16] [y]. [17—17] [for]. [18] *crossed* 'So harde þay gunne sayle.'

To þe Cite ȝeate þey chacedem riȝt, Ac þer [1]þey tornde &[1] ȝaf hym fyȝt, The Saracens make a stand in front of the gate.
A litel by-fore þe ȝeate.
[Ryȝt to þe draȝt-brigge þat lay þar-ate[2]]
¶ Charlys [3]gan fiȝte þo[3] wyþ egre mod, And Gweynes al-so þat bi him stod, [leaf 61, bk]
And sloȝe þe[4] Sarsyns kete. 4596
þat day schewede þat traytour To Char[lis] ys lord ful muche honour,
for neuere a nolde hym lete.
¶ Char[lis] lokedem be-hynde ys bak[1], And saw dele þar many a knak, Charles finds that Agolafre has re-covered,
& myche noyse make. 4600
To þat doynge þan tornde he, What yt was he wolde y-se,
& þyderward he gan take.
þan was Agolafre noȝt ded þe ȝet, Ac on his knes he hadde him set,
For his legges nere noȝt sonde, 4604
& had[5] wyþ ys axe a-slawe An hep of frenschemen þat leye arawe, and with his axe has killed a number of the French.
Afforn hym on þe gronde.
¶ Char[lis] was wroþ and angry so[6], Wan he seȝ what he had do,
& þoȝte on þis manere: 4608
"Myȝte þys fend aryse and go, Muche sorwe wolde he do
Among [7]my mayne here[7];"
With þat Char[lis][8] to hym wond, And gurd him a strok wyþ ys He strikes him with his sword,
brond, & on þe heued him sette. 4612
Ac for þat strok had he no dere, For no strok myȝt hym percy þere, but cannot wound him:
[9]þat sory skyn[9] dude him lette:
¶ And þan was Char[lis] wonder grym, And aȝeyn hym renneþ, & then he stabs him between the eyes, and
stokeþ hym By-twene ys browes rowe: 4616
þan ran þat swerd in-to ys brayn, And whan he haueþ him so a-slayn throws him into the river.
to þe ryuer was he þrowe.
¶ Now ys Agolafre[10] ded, & Char[lis] turneþ aȝe þe hed,
& ȝede þar he was aar. 4620
Alle þe Saraȝyns þat he wyþ mette, Bytere & sore he hym grette,
& þorȝ thar[11] body hem bar.
þe paynymes þat were oppon þe brigge, þar me miȝte y-sen hem lygge,
bledynge at an hepe; 4624

[1—1] [þe Saraȝyns.] [2] *crossed through.* [3—3] [fauȝt þanne.]
[4] MS. sloȝe þe sloȝe þe. [5] & had [he]. [6] bo (?) *Altered from* bo *to* so?
[7—7] [ous *þat* buþ here.] [8] Char[lis] [þanne.] [9—9] [þe serpente].
[10] Agolafre [þe wardeyn]. [11] þorȝ [out] hur.

Su*m*me were cloue in-to þe tonge, And so*m*me were styked þorȝ lyure & longe, And many wer ouer y-lepe:

The Saracens fly into the city.

Sone was voydede þe brigge þere Of alle þe oþre þat lyues were, to þ^e citee þaye gu*n*ne flee: 4628

þe ȝeates wern opened aȝen he*m* wyde, & þay floȝe in: & nold noȝt a-byde, & sperede he[m] faste aȝee.

[leaf 62]

[Boþe brigge and baly in-to þe tou*n*-ȝeate, Now buþ þay comen alle þer-ate[1]]

Charles besieges the city for two days.

¶ Charlys þe Citee þo gan asayle, Two dawes hole wyþ-oute fayle, Wyþ al ys grete route: 4632

And þay wyþ-inne defended he*m* wel, Wyþ schutynge & castyng of stones fel, Many þay slowe w*ith*-oute.

¶ Sone . was . al þe contree war, xl. Myle[2] aboute thar, þat Mant*r*ible be-seged was, 4636

Saracens flock thither.

& þe brygge conquered þat was stout: Saȝynȝ þyder-ward þan gu*n*ne rout, to helpe he*m* in þ*a*t cas.

Ere to dawes ful ended ware Fyfty þousant Saȝyns[3] come thare, And entrede in þ*a*t Citee. 4640

Bot if god helpe now Charlemou*n*, Wel late passeþ he þorȝ þat toun, To helpe ys barou*n*s fre.

Round the city the rocks are 100 yards high.

And nowar myȝte he passe be-syde, For þe roche was heȝ an hund*r*ed stryde, Stondyng by þ^e reuer, 4644

And anclosed þ*a*t side so stronge & heȝe, þat bute it were for þe foul þat fleȝe, Passage was non saf þer.

[¶ þe Saȝynen power gan waxe gret[4]]

And þe walles were of Marbreston, Wyþ pykes of yre y-set þer-on, oppon þe crest ful þykke. 4648

Muche was þe noise & þat cry þat þo was maked in þat Cyty, Among þe Saȝyns wykke.

A great giant named Enfachoun comes out, armed with a mallet

¶ þan was þar a geant ful of pryde, And openede þe water-gate wyde, Ys name was enfachou*n*: 4652

A mayl of Ire he bar an honde, Ther-wyþ þoȝte he þa*n*ne to fo*n*de The frensche to dynge adou*n*.

8 feet long.

þat heued þer-offen was wonder gret, & þe hilues lengþe was viij fet of þ*a*t st*ur*ne staue. 4656

[1] *crossed through.* [2] myle [amyle]. [3] [þer] come thare. [4] *crossed through.*

Ys wyf was lyggynge on chylbedde For two chyldren þat sche þo hedde — His 2 children,
Wyþ-inne þ*er*-on a kaue.
þey were noȝt þe ȝut four mo[n]þes old, [A]c seue fet of lengþe hur — not 4 months old, are 7 feet 3 inches high.
ayþ*er* was told, & þre enchen more: 4660
& twey large fet wyþ-oute drede, Wel y-mete & more on brede,
boþe þe childrene wore.
Amyote hure da*m*me, a geau*n*tesse, Had y-kept hem wiþ busynesse, [leaf 62, bk]
Algate in-to þ*a*t day: 4664
A lodluker da*m*me þan sche was on, of hide & hywe, of fleche & bon,
neu*e*re no man ne y-say.
¶ Enfachou*n* ys to þe ȝeate y-come, And haueþ þat mayl an-honde
y-nome, & at þe barers he hym sette: 4668
And sayde, "Char[lis], þou olde wrecche, Woldest þov oure relyqes — Enfachoun threatens Charles.
fecche? By Mohou*n* y wol þ^e^ lette:
And bote þ*o*u þe rathere beo agon, þ*o*u schelt beo ded & þat Anon,
Her riȝt þ*o*u schalt baslawe. 4672
And if Fyrumbras may beo taan, þat ilke false reneyed man,
He worþ honged & drawe."
¶ þan laid he on wyþ myȝt & mayn, And slow al þat hym com agayn,
W*ith* þ*a*t mayl quarree. 4676
Or Charlis tok oȝt myche kepe, Of frenschemen had he slawe an hepe,
þ*a*t tilde vp til ys knee:
þ*a*nne come þe Sarȝynȝ out And defendede þ^e^ barres al about,
& smyte strokes ou*n*ryde, 4680
& ȝyue þe frensche hard batail Ful many þar were w*ith*-oute fail;
A-slawe on ayþer syde.
¶ Charlys þ*a*nne of ys stede aliȝte, & ioyous ys swerd out he twyȝte, — Charles dismounts,
& to þe geant sterte, 4684
And smot hym an-heȝ on þe pan, þ*a*t wiþ þe dynt þat swerd hi*m* ran — and cleaves the giant's skull.
Dou*n* ryȝt þorȝ ys herte;
þe geant fel to grounde an haste, þan were þe Saraȝyns sore agaste
& lefte þe barrers clene, 4688
& to þe ȝeate þa*n* þay wende, And hure ȝeate gu*n*ne defende, — The Saracens retreat.
Wyþ launces & gleues kene.
¶ þe power of hem enpayrede faste, & þ^e^ frensche to þa*m* shute[1] & — [1 *a word erased here.*]
caste, & rebuked he*m* foule w*ith*-ynne. 4692

þan cryede þe kyng wel an heȝ: "now helpeþ lordes, for we buþ neȝ,
our purpos her to wynne."

Four French knights drive them from the gate,

¶ Wanne kyng Char[lis] had y-cryed so, Rychard and Reyner & tweyne mo, Roald was on þer-ate, 4696
& þe furthe was þe duk Howelle, þat þo reculede þe Sarsyns felle,
A gret way fro þe ȝeate.
¶ Now habbeþ þai y-dryue hem in wyþ strengþe Wyþ-inne þe ȝeate an acres lengþe, þe kyng & þys barons foure. 4700

but are themselves shut in

bot god now helpe þis lordes fyue In gret drede buþ þay of hure lyue,
þis lordes of honoure;

[leaf 63] and surrounded.

For þay were be-set a-boute[1] With thre þousant at o route,
fyȝtyng men ful gode[2]; 4704
And an hundred to þe ȝeate þan were y-diȝt To schutten it faste bote þay ne myȝt, So hard þe frenche with-stode.[3]
Ful myche was þanne to done þere or þay moȝte þe barre arere,
þe ȝate to make faste. 4708
Ac Ate laste[4] wyþ myche wo, þe ȝeate þay [5]closede & barred hit þo,[5]
& þan Char[lis] wax agaste.

Charles is almost in despair,

¶ To god kyng Char[lis] prayde þo, Scholde hym saue. & his felawes al-so fram combryment of þo felouns, 4712
& sende hym grace fayre to ascape, To do þe viage þat [he] haþ schape
On helpynge of his barons.

but Richard cheers him.

¶ Wan duk Rychard y-herde hys fare: "Sir Emperour," said he, "lef þy care, & tak þyn herte to þe: 4716
We buþ now her foule be-sterte, Bote if we ben þe betere of[6] herte,
We buþ bot ded for soþe.
¶ Teche we now wat men we ben, For wel ȝe seeþ we moȝe noȝt flen;
ȝeld ous we mote or fiȝte. 4720
& ho-so þis day let take him quycke, In helle habbe he pynes wycke,
Ay þer to brenne liȝte."

Charles fights fiercely.

¶ þat confort dude Charlis god, & gan to fiȝte as he were wod,
& sone haþ sleyn a hundred. 4724
So dude þe foure as men of mod, Nas no Sarsyn þat hymen a-stod,
þat nas to-hewe asounder.

[1] [al] a-boute. [2] [þat schute til hymen & caste]. [3] [it braste].
[4] Ate laste [noþeles]. [5—5] 'barrede & wente þer fro.'
[6] ben [of] þe betere.

¶ "Montioye!" þan Charlis gan to crye *With* ys voys wel an hye, — He utters his warcry,
þat al men miȝte yt here. 4728
Gweynes *with*-oute y-herde þat cry, And of ys lord þan tok pyty, — which Gwenylon hears,
Ys treytour þoȝ a were,
& hasteliche heȝede he hi*m* to þe ȝeate; Ys kynrede hi*m* folȝede & stode þe*r*-ate, A þousand ate leste; 4732
Wel harde þ*at* ȝat þay gu*n*ne assayle, And þay wiþ-inne *with*-oute fayle, defended[1] he*m* in þ^e beste, — and attacks the gate.
And cast out trees & stones wikke, & þay fulle on hur heuedes þikke[2], & dust he*m* to þe erþe adou*n*. 4736
Wan Alorys þe traytour þat y-seeȝ Anger ȝeode ys herte neȝ,
And sayde to Gweneloun:
"Cosyn we doþ gret folye her, To lete ous slen in þys maner, — [leaf 63, bk]
A-mong our fon ou*n*wreste; 4740
¶ And þer-for y rede go we hen, & tak we wyþ ous our kynnesmen, — Alorys proposes to retire,
& let þe othre don hur beste.
Our kyng ys now *with*-inne þe walle, And Reyner of genyue, þ*at* yuel hi*m* falle! & al þat[3] falerede. 4744 — and leave Charles to his fate.
Now schulle we of hymen haue vengeau*n*ce, Ne comeþ þay neu*e*re no more in fraunce, bote þar þay schulle be dede.
& beo we delyuerd of hymen þus, y wot ful wel, be swete iesus,
of þe oþre we buþ awreke, 4748
þat liggeþ at Egremoyne on þe tour; for sorwe her-of and dolour hure hertes wolleþ breke;
& þan mowe we wyþ-oute distau*n*ce Habben al þe realme of fraunce
At oure comaundyment." 4752
"Godes for-bode," Gweynes sede, "þat ich assentede to such a dede, — 'God forbid,' says Gwenylon.
To don hym such t*ray*sement;
for þa*n*ne wer y wers þan any qued, If ich assentede to oure kynges ded, Whar þ*at* y miȝt hy*m* saue.[4] 4756
for Of hym we holdeþ al our fees, We mote hym helpe in werre & pees, [5]*With* þe power þ*at* we haue.[5]"
¶ "Certis," said Alorys, "þow dost noȝ[t] wel, Bote if þou do as y þe tel, & herkne þenchesoun: 4760 — Alorys tries to persuade him,

[1] [&] defended. [2] MS. þilke. [3] *over* 'þay.' [4] [þat ys my lord in lond].
[5] [On al þyng þ*at* . . . . . .]

If Char[lis] [1]be now þar[1] a-slawe, þe othre þa*n*ne y-worþe be don of dawe, þa*t* liggeþ at Egrymou*n*;
& þa*n*ne buþ our enymys [2]alle dede[2]: & þar-for lef þys assaut y-rede,
& tu*r*ne we aȝen to fra*u*nce," 4764

but Gwenylon refuses.

"y wil noȝt," quaþ Gweynes, "be seynt Rycher, y wol hym helpe by my power, As god me ȝyue god chau*n*ce.
As lef me were my hed for-go, As in þys cas to fondye hy*m* fro, to wha*m* we buþ y-swore." 4768
Alorys ys[3] herte neȝ brak atwo Wa*n*ne Guenelou*n* had ansuerede hi*m* so, So wo hi*m* was þar-fore.
þe kynnerede of he*m* to-gadres goþ, And eu*e*rech to oþerward waxeþ wroþ, & made disturbaunce. 4772

The French fall back.

Wa*n*ne þe frensche y-seȝe þys, þe sege þey lefte al clene y-wys þorȝ hure fol distau*n*ce.
¶ Wan sir Fyru*m*bras y saw þa*t* cas

(A leaf being lost here from the Ashmole MS. the missing lines are supplied as before from the original French, ll. 5006—5068.)

[Atant es Fierabras, qui fu moult bien armés; 4776

Ferumbras with reproaches rallies the French,

A hautes vois escrie: 'Où est Karles alés?"
Et respont Aloris: 'Jamais ne le venrés;
Enclos est Karlemaines entre ces grans fossés.'
Et respont Fierabras: 'Et vous ci c'atendés?' 4780
C'est moult grant mauvaisté que vous nel secourez;
Encore en porés estre de traïson retés.'
Il escria: 'Monjoie! baron, or i venés.'

and they force their way into the city.

Quant François l'entendirent, e les ravigorés, 4784
Entresci au berfroi ne se sont arestés:
Là troevent Guenelon, qui moult estoit navrés.
Fierabras fu moult liés quant li pons n'est levés.
A l'asalir s'est bien il et Guenes prouvés, 4788
Et li autre François que il i ot menés.
As haces et as mans ont les portaus fremez;
E les vous en Mantrible par vive poetés.

Then the traitors join them.

Quant li traïtor voient que prise est la cités, 4792

[1—1] [wyþ-inne now ys]. [2—2] [ded ecchon]. [3] ys [his].

Aprés aus s'en entrerent, les gonfanons levés ;
Communaument i fierent o les brans acerés.
Du sanc qui ist des cors i est moult grans li gués.
Paien crient et braient et ullent par ces prés, 4796
Lors maisonz ont guerpies et lor rices cités.
En plus de .C. parties fu Mahom reclamés,
Et l'amirans Balans huciés et regretés :
'Sire, c'or venés tost, et si nous secourés !' 4800
.I. Sarrazins s'en est de .i. grant estour enblés :
Desci à Aigremore n'est ses regnes tirés :
A l'Amirant sera cis afaires contés.
Humais orés chançon, s'entendre le volés. 4804

Mantrible is taken.

A messenger takes the news to Balan.

Au prendre de Mantrible fu moult grans la mellée ;
Maint cop i ot donné et de lance et d'espée.
Quant Amiete oï le cri et la merlée,
Ki gist de .ii. enfans sous une cheminée, 4808
(Ce est une gaiande plus noire que pevrée ;
Grant ot la fourcéure, et la geule avoit lée,
Et si avoit de haut une lance levée,
Les ex avoit plus rouges que n'est flambe alumée ; 4812
Moult est de tout en tout laide et deffigurée).
De ses enfans se crient, dout ele est effraée ;
Se gesine avoit faite, nouvele ert relevée.
Uns Sarrazins li a la nouvelle contée, 4816
Que ses sires ert mors, qui l'avoit espousée,
Et li fiers Karlemaines a la ville peuplée.
Quant Amiote l'ot, si est d'ire embrasée ;
Ele saut de son lit trestoute escevelée ; 4820
Sa crigne li couvroit trestoute l'esquinée.
Devant lui esgarda, s'a une fauc trouvée.
Ja, taut com ele ert vive, n'est prinse cele entrée ;
De la gent qu'ele ocist a fait grant aünée. 4824
'He ! Diex, dist Karlemaines, sainte Virge honnerée,
Là voi une diable plus noire que pevrée.
De mes hommes ocist et fait grant lapidée ;

Amyote, the giantess,

hearing of her husband's death,

seizes a scythe, and kills several of the French.

Charles with a bolt from a cross-bow kills her.

Grant damage i arai se longues a durée. 4828
Ki a nule arbalestre, tost me soit aportée.'
Li dus Hoel de Nantes l'en a une livrée
Et Karles l'a tendue, si l'a bien avisée;
Entre les .ii. sourcis a feru la dervée, 4832
Que parmi la cervele en est la fleke entrée.
La gaiande versa, la fleke est tronchonnée;
Par la geule geta mervelleuse fumée.
Et François ont desus mainte piere getée. 4836

The French enter the city.

Ains puis n'i ot pasage ne porte devéée,
Ains s'en entra dedens la compaigne honnerée.][1]

[leaf 64]

NOw haþ Char[lis] [2]þe citee y-take[2] & sleyn echoñ[3] boþ whit & blake[4], þat [5]noble was & feer.[5] 4840

Charles remains in the city two days.

To dawes soiourned he & two nyȝte, þe Citee [6]for to araye & dyȝte[6],
After ys owe maner.
Alle þay habbeþ þar-ynne aslawe[7] þat lyued on þe heþene lawe[8],
þat þay moȝte of-take[9]: 4844

In it he finds a large treasure,

Muche was þe tresour *þat* þay founde þan, of gold & syluer & rychе stan,
& monaye whyt & blake.
¶ A tour þar was of a gret Array, In whych þe Amyral ys tresour lay,
Gold wyþ-oute nombre. 4848

which he divides amongst his knights.

Char[lis] hit delede wyth ys hond Among ys barons al þat a fond,
Aboȝen erthe and vndre.
[10]To alle men he delde[10] ynow plentee [11]to euery man after hys degre[11]
[12]On þe tou*n* and there[12]. 4852
[13]& þa*n*ne þay soȝte þe tou*n*[13] aboute, þay[14] founde þe Caue [15]þar-w*ith*oute[15]
þar þe childrene were,

[1] *On the top crossed through is:—*
In-to ryuer ful þo þat qued þe remaynant of þe Sarȝyns ded
Delyured of gret & smal.
[2—2] *originally* 'ytake þat Citee.' [3] [& dryuen out alle].
[4] [Wyþ þe hilpe of ys baronee] 'þa*n*ne reste he þer & to refresschie his barou*n*.' [5—5] *over* 'erst were yn þe tou*n*.'
[6—6] *over* 'to riȝte in his maner.' [7] *over* 'þan Charlis het to hys route.'
[8] *over* 'þe Citee to pyle al aboute.' [9] *over* '& þe pylage to hem take.'
[10—10] [Al þay hadde]. [11—11] ['Of þe tresour þat founden hee.']
[12—12] *over* '*In-to þe leste* aknam(?).' [13—13] [þan as þay wente þat tour].
[14] [And]. [15—15] *with*-oute [doute].
— [he lefte noȝt].

Whyche *þat* oȝte þe geauntesse, *þat* Char[lis] aslow in distresse,
& schet hure þorȝ þ^e^ molde. 4856

They bring the giant's children to Charles.

þe chyldren *þat* were boþe gret & touȝt, By-fore **þe kyn**ge þay were y-broȝt,
to don *with* **hem** what a wolde.

¶ Wan þay come to Charlis syȝt, **A blessede** hym-selue anon ryȝt,
As he to batail scholde; 4860

& sayde þanne on ys sawe, He nolde noȝt þay were a-slawe,
for a som*ers* charg[e] of golde:

They are baptised,

þe kyng het anon riȝt þan, To an archebisschop *þat* hiȝt Herman,
y-folled *þat* þay were. 4864

under the names of Roland and Oliver.

þe Archebysschop fullede boþe anon, & Roland **þanne** he het *þat* on,
& *þat* other Olyuere.

All this happened on the 20th of May, A.D. 980.

¶ þys was don on þe moneþ of May, Wan þe foules syngeþ on þe spray,
& erbes waxeþ grene: 4868

after þe ȝer . *þat* our lord was bore, Nyȝen hondred & four score,
þe twentyþe day y wene.

þat þe tou*n* of Mant*r*ible conquerid was, And þe brigge [1]y-wonne þorwe his[1] gras.
& þa*n*ne þe þridde day, 4872

After þe kyng had take ys reste,[2] Of ys barons clepede he þe beste, [leaf 64, back]
& þus til hem gan say:

On the third day Charles proposes to leave Raoul and Howel at Mantrible

¶ "Lordes, & frendes, what redeþ ȝee? Wham schal y leue[3] þys Citee
to kepe: of al my*n* host, 4876
þe whyle y wende on my vyage To socoury myn othre baronage,
þat lyþ on þe ȝondre cost?"
"Sire," quaþ Richard, "be seynt Ion, þay buþ rewarded riȝt anon,
Hy *þat* schullaþ duelle. 4880
Roald Delamans *þat* on schal bee, And howel of Nauntes anoþer ys he,
Certys by my wylle."

¶ Char[lis] sayde, "by god almyȝt, þow it hauest dyuysed ariȝt,
After my*n* owe lykyng. 4884
þus barou*n*s buþ gode and suffysau*n*t For-to take such þyng an hant,
god ȝyue þ^e^ his blessyng!"
Sayde þay þanne to þe kyng: "If we her schulleþ beo leuyng,
more folk moste we haue, 4888

[1]—[1] [al-so þorw godes]. [2] 14 *lines added very indistinctly in the margin.*
[3] leue [in].

of ȝour baronage & ȝour gret power For-to leue wiþ ous hoer,
þe Cite for-to saue."

with 700 knights and

"ȝe schul haue," quaþ Charlemayn. Vij. C. he[1] delyuerede to he*m* þayn, Til he*m* wiþ-ynne a-stonde.[2] 4892

all the wounded.

And eke þe wondede men al-so, To soiourny there wyþ hem tho,
Til [3]þay were hol & sounde.[3]

¶ þe Emp*e*rour þanne het an haste[4] þ*a*t ys host were arayd faste[5].
To [6]wende on ys iornee[6]. 4896

þan were þe tabours faste y-bete,[7] As þ*a*t host hi*m* lay in euery strete[8]
of þ*a*t faire Citee[9].

The army prepares to start; they

Hure harneys þay gu*n*ne to trossye þan[10], Baro*un*, & kny*ȝ*t, & euery man[11]: bote no*ȝ*t w*ith* he*m* þay nadde[12] 4900

take provisions, but

Bot bred, & wyn, & flechs, and oten, þer-of þay toke as þay wer hoten,
god plente þer-of þay ladde.

no baggage.

Ac al hure harneys leuede þay þer, Cloþys, & pauylou*n*s, and oþer ger,
And armede*m* [13]on hure wede.[13] 4904

And fayre þay ryde out of þe tou*n*: Oppo*n* blanchard rod[14] Charlou*n*,
[15]þ*a*t was ful god at nede.[15]

¶ þan Char[lis] gan to loke aboute, And be-holdeþ al ys fayre route,
þ*a*t spradde þo al þ*a*t cost: 4908

On ys herte god[16] þankeþ hee, þat sent hym on erthe such postee,
To gou*er*ny such an host.

"Glad," hym þo*ȝ*te, "may ich bee, Suþþen y haue al þys barnee,
At my co*m*mandyment." 4912

[leaf 65]

[17]þan þankeþ he god eft of ys sond, & croycede ys fysage w*ith* ys hond,
& rod forþ in þ*a*t entent.

Balan has gathered over 100,000 men from 15 different countries.

NOw haþ þe Amyral gadrid ys host On fyftene londes of dyuers cost, To C. þousant and mo.[18] 4916

[1] vij. C. [kny*ȝ*tes]. [2] *over* 'til he*m* of kny*ȝ*tes gode & kene.'
[3—3] *over* 'he come a*ȝ*ene.' [4] *over* 'Charlis het blowe hys bugle þen.'
[5] *over* 'forto awarny þer-wyþ ys men.' [6—6] *over* 'remuwe þan an haste.'
[7] *over* 'Sone þan were his hornes blowe.' [8] *over* '. . . . . puple he*ȝ*e & lowe.'
[9] *under* 'gu*n*ne to di*ȝ*t he*m* faste' *over* [Araid he*m* foþward faste].
[10] *over* 'Forþ ward þay di*ȝ*t he*m* þo with he e.'
[11] *over* 'In hure viage smale and gret.' [12] [ladde]. [13—13] [hymen at ri*ȝ*tes].
[14] [ys stede] *and* [þe stede]. [15—15] [Amidde-ward alle ys kni*ȝ*tes].
[16] [þane] god. [17] *over* '& eu*er*e he þewede to blowe bost, *and* [þ*a*n by-gan he]. Til he hadde tydyng.'
[18] *over* 'to hu*n*dred þousant *of Sar*ȝ*yns wel fytyng' *and* ('*of dyu*er*se cost*').

And Charlys wyþ þe hore berde An hundred þousant hadde on herde, *And Charles has 100,000 men.*
þanne w*ith* hym to go.
Duk Richard þe Au*au*ntwarde ladde, And Reyner of Genyue þ*at* oþer
hadde, As þ^e^ kyng it wolde. 4920
Richard þe contree y-knew ech del, þat host he ledeþ & gyeþ hit wel,
þyderward þ*at* þay scholde
¶ [1]A Saraȝyn þer was & to þe Amerel[1] ys he come & telleþ[2] þys
doynge al & some, & saide on his resoun,[3] 4924
In Mantryble how Charlys haþ by gu*n*ne Agolafre aslawe and wiþ
strengþe y-wo*n*ne þe brygge & eke þe tou*n*.
¶ Wan þe Amyral y-herde of þ*at* cas Almost for sorwe wod a was, *Balan, in a rage at the capture of Mantrible,*
& weþ & gan to crye, 4928
And sayde, "Mahou*n*, þow art myswent, for now am y vndon and
schent, þ*o*u art noȝt worþ a flye.
Wyckede god, þou dost amys, Suþþe þow wilt suffrye þys,
My worschip to wyþdrawe. 4932
Fyru*m*bras my sone dude ful wel Wan he for-sok þe euery del,
þer-of may he beo fawe.
þow schalt abye, so mot y go, For þow woldest consentye to
to do me þ*at* vylonye." 4936
An axe a seȝ afforn hym stonde And tok hur anon on ys honde, *smashes his idols.*
And goþ to þe Maum*er*ye:
þe ymage of Mahou*n* y-mad of golde Wiþ þe axe smot he oppon þe
molde, þ*at* al þ*at* heued to-flente. 4940
Sortybran of Combles com wyþ þaat, "Let of," sayd he, "þou oundost
þy stat;" & of hym þe Axe he he*n*te.
¶ "Sire," he said, "þow dost folye, To do Mahou*n* such vylonye *Sortibrant stops and reproaches him.*
Ase þ*o*u dadest here; 4944
For þ*o*u hauest y-schent ys face, Do makye hym betere þan a wace,
& amendem in þ*at* manere."
Saide þe Amyrel, "me þenkeþ ille þat he suffreþ my worschip spille
in tal þys cou*n*tre wyde, 4948
& suffrede Char[lis] þe brigge to pace, Mantrible to take & myn men
to chace, & to slen he*m* be eu*er*y syde."

[1]—[1] *over* [þan to hym þer cam]. [2] [þ]at] tolde [hym].
[3] & saide [hym] on his [sawe].

[leaf 65, back] ¶ Sortybran sayde to þe Ameral þan: "Hastelyche, syre, let sende a man þat soþe for-to aspye, 4952

Sortibrant advises Balan to send a spy to find out if the news is true:

þat or þay neȝy to neȝ þys cost þat þow mowe come wyþ þyn host,
& fiȝte with hem an-hye.
þan schal þov þy worschip gete aȝe, And slen þe beste of þat meygne,
& take þe Emperour, 4956
& lete don hym þanne an-honge,[1] & wyþ hym þus þeues stronge
þat lyggeþ on þy tour.
And yf Fyrumbras may be take, þat haþ ys fayþ & ous far-sake,
let hym þat hed for-gon. 4960
& Florippe þy doȝtre þat ys ounkynde, To a stake þan let hure bynde,
And bren hure þanne anon."
¶ þan þe Amyral hym vnderstod þat ilke consayl þoȝt hym god,
& saide it scholde be don. 4964
Toward Mahoun he humblede him þan, And after þe conseyl of Sortybran An aspye he sent anon.

and after to make another attempt on the tower.

To þe A[myral] Sortibran þo cam & sede "Let assembly þyn host, y rede,
ȝond be-fore þe tour; 4968
& we schul fonde wyþ strengþe & gyne, If we mowe þe tour y-wynne,
or þaym come socour.
And if hit[2] falleþ so by cas, þorȝ Ma[houns] help . & ys gras[3],
þat we mowe him wynne: 4972
Or þe comyng of Charlemayn þe traytours per schulle be sleyn,
& we be-leue with-ynne.
And beo þov on þy tour aȝee Of Char[lis] schalt þov noȝt ȝyue a stre,
for noȝt þat he may do." 4976
"By Ma[houn]," saide he, "þou sayst ful wel, And by þy counsail do y schal, How so it euere go."

Balan orders another general assault.

¶ þe Ameral het his hornes blowe,[4] & þanne wente to armes heȝe & lowe, Sarsynȝ & persaunt; 4980
& þyder þan fette þe grete engyns Wel two hundred of Sarsyns,
by heste of þe Amerant.
A gret saut þay[5] gunne to make, Summe þar schute wyþ boȝes of brake, & summe wyþ gunnes grete; 4984

[1] [h ȝ ·] an-honge. [2] [yt] hit.
[3] [þorȝ þe help of Ma[houn] & þorȝ ys gras]. [4] [þanne] blowe.
[5] [þanne] þay.

& *with* þengyns su*m*me caste stones, Mo þan twenty su*m* tyme at ones
flo3e out at one hepe.

The Saracens make a breach in the wall.

So harde þay þrewe a3en þe wal *þat* þe stones percede þor3-out al,
forty *with*-inne a stonde, 4988

And succh a gappe þay made þer-on þat a cart onlade myȝt yn gon, [leaf 66]
had it beo nee3 þ^e^ grou*n*de.

¶ Ate þe wyndewes þanne stod Rolond & ys felawes by-syde hi*m* on eyþer hond, Wel y-armed at o rout; 4992

The French begin to fear for their safety.

& þay se3e Sa[r]3yns myne þe wal, Wyþ pykoys & howes gret & smal,
& wern al-most þor3-out.

þus barou*n*s by-gu*n*ne hym þanne to doute, A*n*d casten to-gadre al aboute, To kepe he*m* wyle þay mou*n*. 4996

[1]Stones & trees þan out þay caste & þe Sarsyns þer-wyþ quellede vaste,
& made he*m* tu*m*bly adou*n*

¶ þe Ameral gan to crye þan: "Help now, Mahou*n* & Ternagan,
þat buþ my godes of my3te! 5000

And lordes," a sayde, "now helpeþ 3ee, And sone we shulleþ han god entree, As 3e schul sen wyþ si3te.

Balan cheers on his men to the assault.

3yf we mowe now þe tour conquere 3our worschip 3e wy*n*neþ & me [2]for ere To be 3our frend at nede. 5004

& þay þat doþ me þys deshonoure Hy schulleþ be an-honged or da3es four, & þat schal be hire mede."

¶ þay assaillede hem þanne wyþ many a gynne, & wyþ strengþe þay þo3te þe tour y-wynne, of castynge & mynyng eke. 5008

And þaye þat þarto hardy were Laddres to þe walle bere,
for al þe dupe deke,

Some place ladders against the walls.

And sette þe laddres vp by þe walle þat was so broken & to-falle,
As ich 3ou raþer tolde, 5012

Wyþ þe dyntes of þe stones: & þar þay gu*n*ne gon op at ones
Two hundred of he*m* y-tolde;

Ac þus lordes defendede he*m* welle, And huld hem out *with* strokes felle, y-3yue *with* swerd & launce. 5016

þan nyst þay no3t what ys þe best for þ^e^ Sarsyns wer euere y-lyche prest, to dou*n* hem al greua*n*ce.

[1] [And caste out stones & heuy trees], *crossed through.*
[2] [& my loue].

Oliver proposes that they shall make a sally.

¶ "What wille we don, my gode felawes?" Said Olyuer þanne on ys sawes, "We buþ on grete drede: 5020
We buþ her felawes tene, þat buþ doȝty men & kene,
to don al mannes dede.
Wende we out of þys clos,[1] & go we fiȝte wyþ our foos,
ȝonder out on þe felde. 5024

[leaf 66, back] More worschip ous ys to daye þare, þan her by-twene þis walles bare
With deshonour ous aȝelde."

200 Saracens scale the walls,

¶ By þat were stoȝen vp wyþ vygour An hundred Sarsyns oppon þe tour, þat þay ne miȝte noȝt flitte. 5028
þar þe wal was broke þay stode affrounte, And laide to frensche strokes rounde, þat hure haberkes ritte.
Ac þis barons hymen gunne mete, Wyþ scharpe swerdes & axes grete,
& ȝeuen hem deþes wonde; 5032

but are thrown down by the knights.

þer was non of hemen alle þat sone nas fulled doun of þe walle,
Ded riȝt to þe gronde.
¶ Florippe, þat fayre mayde of prys, Clepede Neymes for he was wys,
And Geffray of Laungeuyne, 5036
And Terry of Ardane sche dude also, & to hymen sayde þat burde þo:
"Herknyaþ, frendes myne:

Floripas advises them to appeal to the Sacred Relics,

Wolle ȝe lordes," sayde sche, "þe ryche relyqes eft-sones y-se,
þat y ȝow schewede ones. 5040
þe betere y hope ȝow may spede, & þe sykerer ben on al ȝour dede,
Hab ȝe hem seȝe eft-sones."
¶ "ȝea, for gode," sayde þay þan, "Faire þe falle for alle wymman
For þy gode profre!" 5044

and fetches the casket

þanne hure tornde þat mayde briȝt þar as þat schryn hym was ful riȝt,
& tok it out of a cofre:

and shows them to the knights.

y-come sche ys aȝen wel sone, & afforn hem þer sche hit haþ oundone,
& schewed hymen Aparenly. 5048

They kneel to them and pray for help.

Wan þe barouns had y-seȝen hem alle, On hure knes þay duden falle,
& cryde god mercy.
¶ þat burde bryȝt þanne tok hem out, & knelyng þay kussede alle about
þe relyques with gret honour; 5052

[1] [peryllous] clos.

& p*ray*ede god þorw vertue of hem Schold sauye hem thar fro heþ^e^ men,[1] & sende he*m* sone soco*ur*.

¶ And y-herde hure orysouns: þ^e^ wyle þay were on deuociou*ns*, Sareȝyns wer vp a-styȝe, 5056

Wel two . C. at o trome, & an-heȝ to þ^e^ wyndowes wer y-come, & in y-lepe wel nyȝe: 5058

Some 200 Saracens scale the walls up to the windows,

þ^e^ to*ur* þay hauede y-take þo Nadde duk Naymes y-lope he*m* to, As hit ful þorw grace, 5060

W*ith* þe releq*u*es þ*at* he þo bar Riȝt to wyndowes [þ]er þay war, & schewede he*m* on hur face.

þorw þ^e^ vertue of þat syȝt þe Sarsyns þa*n*ne gu*n*ne waxe affriȝt, þ*at* abide þay ne durste, 5064

[leaf 67] but at sight of the relics they fall headlong and are dashed to pieces.

Bote fullen a-dou*n* of þe walle, & so heȝe þay fullen alle, þ*at* hur*e* bodies al to-burste.

"Lordlynges," quaþ neymes, "now mowe we knowe, þat þys buþ crystes relyqes owe, by þ*is* myracle here: 5068

þat day we seeþ þys tresour fyn ne dar ous adrede of no Sarsyn to don ous any dere."

¶ þys lordes were þanne conforted[2] wel, ne dradde þay noþyng þan Amerel ne non of al þe hepe; 5072

For þe relyques þat þay haue Hem þoȝte þay were þan al saue, He*m*-selue f*ra*m he*m* to kepe.

Duk naymys þys relyq*u*es custe aȝene, & bitok hem þat mayde [briȝt[3]] & schene, & sche he*m* gan vp volde 5076

Naymes returns the relics to Floripas,

On a cloþ of tarse, ryche & fyn, & suþe sche polte he*m* on þe schryn, & bar he*m* vp an-holde;

who replaces them in the casket.

And þan sche t*ur*nd aȝe ful ryȝt, Y-cloþed in golde þ*at* schon ful briȝt, To þ*us* lordes cam sche there, 5080

And Gyou*n* tok sche by þe myddel þan, & cust hy*m*, & saide, "my dure lemman, beo now of gode chere."

¶ At þe wyndowes as þay lokede out,[4] þe Amyral þat stod among his rout.[5] be-hulde hire[6] þ*at* mayde fel. 5084

Wan he hur saw wel sore hym nuyde,[7] And sone þyd*er*ward [8]þus he cryde,[8] "Doȝtre, y-se þe wel;

Balan sees Floripas at

[1] MS. for heþemen men. [2] MS. corforted. [3] *crossed through.*
[4] [þa*n*ne lokede þay]. [5] [& by-hulde þan Amyral and al ys rout].
[6] [So dude*n*]. [7] [Wan þe Ameral hure seȝ hym gan annuye].
[8—8] [he cryde anhye].

Certys y dude gret folye, Wan ich me dude on þe affye
To kepe my prysou*n*s. 5088

the window and threatens her.

þe loue By-twene ȝou ! schal y breke, And of þe y schal beo a-wreke
& of alle þ^e ȝond glotons :
For þy dede þ*o*u schalt beo brent, And þay traytours schulleþ be schent,
Demembr*e*d lyme & lyþ." 5092

Floripas abuses him and shakes a staff at him.

Florippe a staf on hur hond sche tok, & hym aȝen hure fader schok*e*,
þywyng hy*m* þan þar-wyþ.
¶ þe Amyral hys hornes let blowe þan, And þe assaut al nywe by-gan,
Sherply þa*n*ne an-haste. 5096
Eyȝte & fourty Saraȝyns Made he go þo to þengyns,
Stones þ*er*-wyth to caste.
Aȝen þ^e tour þay þrewe stones, Mo þan twenty floȝe out at ones
of þen-gyns as we rede : 5100

[leaf 67, back] The Saracens make a breach 24 feet square.

Wyþ such an ayr fulle þay þan þat of þ^e tour þay affulde a pa*n*
four feþeme on lengþ^e & brede.
¶ þe barou*n*s þa*n*ne gu*n*ne waxe a-gaste, To þ^e maum*er*ye Ro[land]
wende an-haste, And Olyuer, and Ogeer, 5104
& to þe mamettes þay buþ a-gon, Of golde y-maked and ryche ston,
þat was briȝt & cler ;

The French throw the Saracen idols amongst their enemies.

W*it*h þe ymages grete & þykke Slen þay þenkeþ þ^e Saraȝyns wykke :
Ro[land] tok vp Mahou*n*, 5108
And Olyuer tok vp ternagan, & Ogier Margot tok vp þan,
& bere he*m* to caste adou*n*.
¶ To hure defense þay buþ a-gon, & eu*er*ech hi*m* dressede to caste anon,
& eymede þarto ymone : 5112
On þe þyckeste presse þ*at* þa*n*ne was þere, þay cast out þe mamettes
alle yfere, & a-filde þ*er*wiþ hure fone.

The Emir faints at the sight.

¶ Wan þe A[myral] y-saw ys godes to-flend, For sorwe was he ful
neȝ y-schend, Sykynges a made ynowe : 5116
And sowȝnede, & wep, & ys hondes wrong, "Alas !" & "welaway !"
was ys song, & ful a-dou*n* ofte y-sowe.
¶ Sortybrant[1] confortede hi*m* þan,[2] And bad hym stonde vp as
a man, & lete of care and wo. 5120

[1] Sortybrant [of Combles].
[2] *under, partly crossed through ;* 'þan hym *con*forted kyng Sortibran.'

Tho[1] was þe assaut y-leuyd clene, for þe Amyral was so fol of tene, — The assault ceases.
And ne miȝt noȝt tendy *þer*-to.
"Ay! Mahou*n*," quaþ þe A[myral] "whar ys þy myȝt? Why wolt
*þ*ou suffry þys ounriȝt, *þat* þay doþ þe þis[2] day? 5124
þyne fon me schendeþ & þe al-so, And *þ*ou ne takest no kepe *þer*-to,
þy miȝte ys al away."
¶ þan hym spak syre Sortybrant: "Wyt þat þe selue, syr Amyrant,
y schal þe saye why: 5128
Bred & wyn, & corn plentee, & gold, & syluer haþ he send[3] þe,
lordlyche to lyue þar-by;
Ac *þ*ou hym hauest foule myssayd, Whar-for he ne ys noȝt wel apayd, — Sortybrant declares
of[4] þyng *þat* he þ[e] ȝaf. 5132 — Mahoun is angry.
And ȝut nast *þ*ou noȝt amended his harm, Of *þat* *þat* *þ*ou breke hi*m*
heued & arm ȝester*d*ay wyþ a staf:
Suffre þar-fore til ate laste, *þat* ys malencolye ben apaste,
þat he berþ to þe.[5] 5136
[6]þan schal *þ*ou[6] haue al þy wille Of hymen *þat* haueþ i-don þe ille,
& *þat* *þ*ou schalt wel see.[7]"
¶ þe whyle þay speke of þys matere, Com þe deuel amonges hem there, — [leaf 68]
On lyknysse of Mahou*n* þere[8]; 5140 — The devil, in the form of Mahoun, tells
& sayde þa*n*ne [9]to þe Amerel[9] Wordes *þat* wern [10]y-her[d] ful wel[10]
to alle *þat*[11] þar were[12]
¶ "Balaan, beo now glad & blythe, & tak þyn host to the swythe, — Balan to lead his men again to the assault.
& assayle aȝen þe tour; 5144
For þay wyþ-inne buþ neȝ of-þraste: þe tour *þ*ou schalt y-wynne an-
haste, & come to þyn honour."
þan wax he glad & dude al-so[13] & his hornes het he blowe þo[14] — Balan does so.
And so þay dude anon. 5148
An hard assaut þo by-gan, non scherpere y-saw þer neue*re* man,
y-mad of flesche & bon.
¶ Hure grete engyns þan þay bende, And grete stones þar-wyþ þay sende
to þe heȝe tour: 5152

[1] [þan]. [2] þe [nyȝt &]. [3] [y-]send. [4] of [al] þyng.
[5] [& þan schalt *þ*ou wel see]. [6—6] [*þat* *þ*ov schalt].
[7] [What so þay eu*er*e be]. [8] [þe] lyknysse of Mahou*n*.
[9—9] [al aloud]. [10—10] [y-lust about]. [11] MS. to alle *þat* al *þat*.
[12] [to þe A[merel] in his resoun]. [13] [þan wax Balant glad ynowe].
[14] [& het me scholde ys hornes blowe].

þe[1] walles to-breke, & al to-crusschede, Ou*er*al þar þe stones dusschede,
comynge w*ith* vygour:

Some try to mine the walls; others bring up ladders.

Myno*urs*[2] ȝude & mynede þe wal, þe[3] heȝe tour to maky hym fal,
& su*m*me laddres bere, 5156

& aboute þe wal þe laddres lede. God of heuene þe baro*un*s spede!
In gret p*er*il þan þay were.

¶ þe assaut was huge and perillous, And þe cry oryble and hydous,
þ*at* þe Saȝyns made. 5160

Sixtene pieces [4]wer fulled to ground Of þe walles þat er were sond[4]
Wyþ stones & slabbes[5] sade.

Some 300 Saracens scale the walls, but

Saȝyns on laddres [6]gu*n*ne vp steȝe,[6] Wel thre hundred [7]þan an heȝe,[7]
To þe [8]gappes buþ þay[8] come, 5164

& castem to entry in-to þe tour. Ac þys barons of gret honour
Aȝeyn hem buþ ynome;

W*ith* swerdes & axes scherp y-grounde þay affuldem[9] w*ith* deþes wonde,
þar-to were þay bou*n*[10]: 5168

are thrown down and dashed to pieces.

Ech on oþer þan gan dou*n* falle, & breke hure nekkes to peces smalle,
So dupe þay fulle adou*n*.

¶ "Lordes," sayde þ*a*nne þe gode Ogyer, "We ne buþ bot ten[11] al-one heer,
to defendye al þ*is* flette: 5172

Ac of al fraunce her ys þe flour, Do we þ*at* no man in deshonour
of cowardyse ous moȝe[12] arette.

By-holdeþ þys tour, þat er strong was, To-broken ys now in twenty plas,
wyþ go*n*nes & cast of gynne.[13] 5176

[leaf 68, back] Ac by hym þ*a*t flechs of Marie tok, þe wyle þat lyf syt on my bok,
ne comeþ þ*er* none w*ith*-inne:

þe whyle y may wylde w*ith* myn hond Corteyn my swerd, þat gode brond,
so Sarsyns [14]schal y[14] so cloute, 5180

þ*at* a cartful y schal sle me-self; A*n*d doþ ȝe al-so on ȝoure be-helf,
& holde we hymen w*ith*-oute."

¶ Ro[land] ys swerd þan gan be-holde, And Olyuer hys þat was so bolde,
þ*at* boþe blody ware. 5184

[1] [þ*at*] þe. [2] [And þe] Myno*urs*, &c. [3] [Of] þe.
[4—4] [of þe walle þe engynno*urs* hadde afilled al].
[5] [Wyþ hure stones]. [6—6] [wern vp a-stoȝe]. [7—7] [oun y-loȝe].
[8—8] 'holes were y-.' [9] affuldem [& ȝyue].
[10] *over* 'þay laid þo on þer helmes rou*n*de.' [11] ne bot ten [men].
[12] [eft]. [13] [& sone þay þe*n*keþ hym wy*n*ne]. [14—14] [wol y].

þan was þar non of al þe wacche þat ys herte ne by-gan to cacche,
& to fiȝte mad he*m* ȝeare.
By þat were Saraȝyns stoȝen vp al frechs, And wer come inward at hard & neychs At a pan þ*a*t was broken; 5188
Ac þys lordes hymen potte a-gayn, And habbeþ hem sone fylled & slayn
& þat hole aȝayn y-stoken.
¶ "A lord," sayde Florippe þan, "Sone worth ych a lost wo*m*man, Wel neȝ þe tour ys take. 5192 Floripas begins to lament,
Wo worth þe tyme he was arerd, Of my deth y am afferd,
Lordes, for ȝour sake."
¶ Gwy of Borgoygne sayde þan: "Ne say þou so no more, lemman, Y pray þe for þyn honour." 5196 but is comforted by Sir Guy.
"Syre," sche saide, "y drede stronge For we dwelleþ her so longe,
& [1]þar compþ ous no socour.[1]
Y hopede le*m*man, by my lyf, To han y-beo þy weddid wyf,
& be cristned for þy sake. 5200
þan scholdest þow of al þ*is* lond be kyng, And y þy quene, my swete þyng, & þy worldy make."
Tharwyth sche made a long sykyng, And hadde þan y-falle in sowenyng, Nad olyuer hure vp y-take. 5204
þan was non þat mornynge nas Wanne þay hurde þ*a*t fayre of fas,
How dulfully sche spake.
Duk Naymes þo gan loky out,[2] & saw comyng þ^e^ g*r*ete rout of Charl[is] w*it*h his host 5208 Naymes sees Charles coming with his host;
On a mou*n*teyne wyþ gret bobance; þe baner knew[3] he ful wel of frau*n*ce þ*a*t drowe toward þ*a*t cost.
¶ "lordlynges," sayde Naymes þan, "bliþe beþ & glade eu*er*y man,
& lustneþ god tydynge:[4] 5212
þat host of f*ra*unce y seo her come Ful wel y haue it vndernome, be þe baner þ*a*t y seo brynge. and tells the others.
þe baner ys yborn be-fore þe ferde, & þ*a*t host hym cometh afterwerde,
Al armed on armes briȝte. 5216
þay spedeþ faste on hure maner, Wel fayne þay wolde þ*a*t þay wer her, [leaf 69]
yt semeþ me be syȝte.

[1—1] *over* 'soco*ur* comeþ þer non.' [2] [As] Duk Naymes þo loky[d] out.
[3] [saw]. [4] [god tydyng i wil ȝow schewe]

Of þat cost al þe feldes þay buþ al feld *with* spers & scheldes,
And wyþ men of myȝte. 5220
þe Saraȝyns schulleþ to-morwe haue A carful iornee, as god me saue,
Longe or come þ^e^ nyȝte."
¶ þan hur spak [1]þat made ȝyng[1]: "y þonke god of þys tydyng[2],
& marie þy[3] moder dere[4]." 5224
Gwy tok sche be þe middel þan & custe hym: & sayde, "gode le*m*man,
now am ich hol & fere."
¶ Now buþ þys barons alle blythe, & to þe wyndowes þay wente swythe,
& þyderward gu*n* be-holde. 5228
Char[lis] and ys host come[5] þay seȝe, þe[6] baner of france y-bore
an-heȝe, þan waxen hy ful bolde.

The spy tells Balan that Charles is coming

¶ To þe A[merel] þe aspye aȝen ys went, [7]Of wam y tolde[7] þat was
y-sent To aspyen how it ware, 5232
And telleþ hym how þat Charlemayn Wyþ ys host hym comeþ agayn
W*ith* hym to fiȝte ȝeare.[8]
¶ þanne hym askede þe Amerel: "Wyþ how many comeþ þe fauterel
Wyþ þe hore berde?" 5236

with 100,000 men.

"Sir," quaþ he, "þar buþ y-tolde An hondred þousand of knyȝtes bolde
Comyng on ys ferde."

Sortibrant says they have twice as many.

¶ Sortybrant sayde, "þ*er*-of no drede, þow hast þe doble on þy ferede,
Ay[9] tweyne aȝen he*m* one, 5240
And þay habbeþ þe wrong & we þe riȝt; To-morwe we schulle wyþ
hym fiȝt, & disco*m*fytye hymen echone."

Charles halts in sight of the Saracen camp,

CHarlys rod forth wyþ ys host, Til he cam neghȝ þe cost,
Thar þe Ameral lay; 5244
& wanne a saw ys pauyllouns Abide bad he hys barouns,
No ferþer nolde he þat day.
The nyȝt was come, þe day was gon, þe Emp*er*our hi*m* liȝt a-dou*n* anon,
Vnder an Aychs y wene, 5248

and they pass the night under arms.

þat stōd þe same playn oppon, þ*er* þ*at* þe Amer*el* his[10] host lay on,
y-loged on a grene.

[1—1] [Florippe þe free].
[2] [ȝea: ih*c*su god, now þank y thee].
[3] [ys]. [4] [of þys tydyng here].
[5] [þan] come. [6] [And] þe. [7—7] [þat ȝe hurde er].
[8] [þare]. [9] [eu*er*e]. [10] [&] his.

¶ Thar herborghede þe kyng & ys barou*n*s, Wyþ-oute tentes oþer
pauyllou*n*s, Al þ*a*t ilke ny3te. 5252
For at Mantrible þay hadde y-laft Tentes, pauyllons, & al þ*a*t craft,
þ*a*t þ*er*-to scholde be di3te.[1]
¶ Ne dude no man þar of ys gere, Bot al ny3t leyen y-armed ther [leaf 69, back]
On armes of god entaile. 5256
Hure stedes þai fedde w*ith* otes & bred, & hym-self dronke whit wyn
& red, & eten of hure vytaile.
¶ On þe mor3nyng wan þe day hi*m* sp*r*ong, Charlis 3eode ys host
among, & het þay scholde*n* di3te, 5260
Boþe man & hors on such aray As þay wende at al asay
beo syker ynow to fi3te;
& þan behuld he aboute þe plas, & clepede til hi*m* sire Fyru*m*bras,
& þus he spak hi*m* tille :— 5264

In the morning Charles orders his men to prepare for battle:

"Fyru*m*bras, y loue þe for-þan þ*a*t þ*o*u art bycome a criste-man
by þy gode wille:
Wolde þy fader cristendom take y Wolde hi*m* kepe for þy sake,
lost-les on euery syde: 5268
Harm ne schold he haue non, On body ne catel, by seynt ion,
for al þe worlde wyde,
Notheles he haueþ y-do me wrong, My messag*er*s i-holde in prysou*n*
strong, þ*a*t y sent hym yore; 5272
Ro[land] and othere þat buþ me luf; & þo3 y now do hym gref,
Beo no3t wroþ þ*er*fore."

Charles says that if Balan will become a Christian his treatment of the messengers will be overlooked,

¶ þanne hy*m* ansuerede Sir Fyru*m*b*ra*s: "Send to my fader in þys
cas, Ys wille to wyte & knowe, 5276
If he wolde assenty þar-to; Leuere me were hit my3t be so,
þan al þ*a*t god y owe."
¶ "Y g*ra*nte wel," q*ua*þ þ^e Emperer; W*ith* þ*a*t he clypede duk
Reyner, & Rychard of Normau*n*dye, 5280

[1] *In a faint hand at the bottom:—*

Wan þe Amyral hym haþ y-herd
Of ys tydynges he wax afferd
þe assaut he lefte sone.
& gon a3en to hir lougyng *
Til þay hadde † of hym warnyng
What þay scholde done

* & het ys host go to hure logyng. † [herde].

And askede of he*m* wham þay wil rede þ*at* he schold sende on þat nede, To þe Amerel of nubbye:

and wishes Gwenylon to take this message to the Emir,

"If ȝe lordes willeþ assenty þar-to, Gweynes schal myn erau*n*t do, for he ys fers and fel; 5284

At þe takyng of Mantrible tou*n* He bar hym as a bold barou*n*, & prouede hi*m* þar ful wel."

¶ Gweynes iherde þe kynges sawe, And sayde a wolde wende fawe, & p*er*fornye wel þ*at* nede: 5288

to which all agree.

& þaye[1] assentede on hym ȝeare þ*at* Gwenes schudde to Ameral fare, þ*at* erand for-to bede.

[leaf 70]

¶ To hym[2] þanne saide þe kyng of f*ra*unce: "Arme þe wel for alle chaunce, þyderward er þ*o*u wende; 5292

Charles gives Gwenylon his instructions.

[3]For þoȝ þe[3] Amyral[4] be our fo, Til hym þe message þ*o*u most do, þat y schal þe sende.

Say hym þ*at* he his lay for-sake, & to cristendom hi*m*-silue take, & lyue on god Almiȝte; 5296

& þ*at* he delyuery me my barou*n*s bolde þat he haþ kept on ys holde, long tyme aȝe þe riȝte,

And[5] delyuery me vp on god aray þe Relyqes þ*at* he bar away, In Rome my Citee gret; 5300

þe nayles three, & þe croune, þat perschede cryst on ys passyou*n*e, On hefd, honde, and fet:

And if he wil assenty þar-to, non harm þa*n*ne ne wyl y do To hym ne non of hys. 5304

And yf a wil noȝt: as god me saue, Vengeaunce of hym wil y haue, & loke þ*o*u say hym thys."

¶ To Charlis þa*n*ne saide Gweneloun: "þy message schal be wel y-don, Sone w*ith*-oute drecche." 5308

Gwenylon arms himself,

Ys helm on is hed sone he caste, And let hi*m* lacye wel & faste, & ys swerd me dude hym fecche.

A lep vp þa*n*ne on ys hors of werre, And takeþ til hym scheld & sperre, St*r*ong & god at nede. 5312

and goes on the message alone.

Oþer felaschip ne takeþ he non, Bot rydeþ forþ hym-self al-on, To do þ*at* hardy dede.

[1] [þa*n*ne] þaye. [2] [Gweynes]. [2—3] [To] þe.
[4] Amyral [Balan]. [5] And [al-so].

¶ As Gweynes hym *p*rikede[1] ou*er* þ^e^ feldes, He meteþ[2] Sarsyns w*ith*
speres & scheldes, þ*at* kepte þ^e^ wacche þan: 5316
þay askede of hem þanne an-haste, Why he prykede so wonder faste,
& wyder he þoȝte gan.
¶ "Y am a Messager," quaþ Gweneloun, "Y-send to[3] þe A[meral]
by Charloun;" & þ*an*ne þay lete hym fare. 5320
Neu*er*e ne astente he after þan, Bote prykeþ hym forth be-fore Balan,
yn-to ys pauylloun ȝeare.[4]
Gweynes was boþe hardy & wys, To þe Ameral spak he his avys, When he arrives at
ne sparede he for no doute. 5324 Balan's tent
"Balan,"[5] said he, "to me entende. Charlis kyng to þe me sende, he delivers the message.
to wham þou most aloute.
Mahou*n* he hoteþ þat þow for-sake, And ano*n* riȝt to folloȝt take,
& by-lyue on god almiȝte. 5328
Ys baro*n*s als þou scholdist hi*m* ȝelde, And þe relyqes þ*at* þou dost [leaf 70, bk]
helde, Al agayn þe riȝte.
& if þou assentist to þys sonde, He ne wol no þyng of þy londe,
bote lete þe in pes & reste; 5332
& euere he wol the worschip do, & Fyru*m*bras þy sone wol al-so,
þe wyle ys lyf wil leste.
& bot þou her-of make þy fyn, He diffieþ þe and alle þyn,
for w*ith* þe wil he fiȝte, 5336
& discou*m*fity þe her & þy ferede, & putte þy body to schentful dede,
for þy grete onriȝte."
¶ Wa*n*ne þe Ameral hym vnderstod, A clew ys heued, and riȝte ys Balan stamps
hod, & starede w*ith* ys eȝene w*r*onge, 5340 and fumes with rage,
& prau*n*cede & blew as he were wod, & miȝt noȝt speke for his heȝe
mod, or was after longe.
And þan saide he to Gweneylloun: "How wer þou so hardy, st*r*onge and asks Gwenylon
feloun, come armed on þy stede, 5344 how he dares bring such
By-fore me her on my pauylloun, & þus vylayn[i]che on þy resoun
þy message to me abede? a message,
By Mahou*n*, on wham my be-lyue ys an, þou ne comest neu*er*e," saide
Balan, "to Charlemayn aȝene." 5348

[1] prickede [þan]. [2] meteþ [wyþ]. [3] y-send [be] to.
[4] [þare]. [5] Balan [spak].

and orders his barons to kill him.

To his barou*n*s þan cride he loud—"To-hewe*þ* þes messager *þat* ys so proud, Wyþ swerdes scherpe & kene."

¶ Gweynes þa*n*ne hym gan to doute, Wanne he saw to hym-ward route Sara3yns st*r*onge & smerte; 5352

Gwenylon draws his sword, and slays Bruyllant,

A drow ys sweord & smot Bruyllant, *þat* was kyng of Mountmyrrant, euene in-to þe herte;

þe Sara3yn þat was of gret renou*n* At þe Amyral is fet hym fel adou*n*; & Gweynes t*ur*nde hy*m* þa*n*ne, 5356

and then gallops away as fast as he can,

And rod out of þe pauylloun þorw al þat host w*ith* gret rendou*n*, As faste as he may re*n*ne.

¶ þe Amyral ran after hym on ys fet, And cryde to ys host w*ith* herte gret— "Takeþ þan þef an-haste." 5360

pursued by 50,000 Saracens.

To horse þa*n*ne wente at o trome Fyfty þousant of armede gome, & after hym prykede vaste.

Naymes sees all this,

¶ At a wyndowe of þe tour stod[1] Neymou*n*, And saw how þay enchacede Gweneloun, To slen hi*m* if þay my3te; 5364

and tells Roland and Oliver.

Ro[land] þan clypeþ he & Olyuer: "Sirs," quaþ Neymes, "comeþ ner, And seeþ a propre si3te;

[leaf 71]

Fro þe 3ond pauyllons prykeþ a kny3t, An-horse, y-armed, & weel y-dy3t, Wyþ a drawe sweord an-honde; 5368

& hym chacyeþ Sarsyns, by god almi3t, Wel fifty þousant y-armed bri3t, To slen hi*m* doþ þay fonde.

They recognise Gwenylon.

Me symeþ it ys a Messageer, And Gweynes [2]hit semeþ[2] be si3te her, [3]þat rideþ þar[3] al-one." 5372

"P*ar*fay," quaþ Ro[land], "þow saist þat soþe, *þat* knowe[4] hym wel & ys stede boþe, god kep hym f*ra*m ys fone!"

Alle þay gu*n*ne þan god to praye, þat scholde hym cou*n*dye on ys waye, & saflyche a3en hym sende. 5376

Ac for þay wern for hym in doute, þey by-hulden hi*m* 3erne & lokede oute, Wyte þay wolde þan ende.

FOrth hym prykeþ sir Gweneloun Opon ys stede Chacebroun, To-ward ys strengþ[e] an hye; 5380

And þe Sara3yn3 after hi*m* p*r*ikede. þa*n*ne Ase harde as hure hors mi3t renne, W*ith* noyse & eke w*ith* crye,

[1] [lokede out]. [2–2] [as]. [3–3] [as he ry3d]. [4] [seo by.]

Gweynes fleȝ forþ so wynd and rayn Til he cam neȝ amydde þe playn,
& wiȝtliche he *turnd* hi*m* þa*n*ne, 5384 — Gwenylon turns and slays
And smot a Sarsyn of Agrymou*n*, þorȝ ys hed he clef hym dou*n*,
In-to ys brest a spa*n*ne.
Wyþ tenebre he meteþ & suþþe anoþer, þ*at* on was cosyn, þat oþer was brother — the cousin and the brother of Balan.
To þe Amyral Bala*n*ne. 5388
Tenebre gurde he þorȝ þe brayn, þ*at* oþer in þe herte w*ith* miȝt & mayn,
And forþ he prykeþ þa*n*ne.
¶ Gweynes was boþ strong and feer, And ofte he tornde hym in þ*is* maner,
& slow al þat he raȝte. 5392
& eft he p*r*ikede on ys way, And wan Ol[yuer] þat al þys cas y-say
Y-saw how wel he faȝte,
To Roland said he þanne ryȝt: "How þeynt þe, felawe, be þis knyȝt — Oliver admires Gwenylon's prowess,
þ*at* berþ hym þ*us* wel al-one? 5396
Ne saw y neu*er*e o man w*ith* my syȝt, Saf þe: bere hym betere in fyȝt,
by god þ*at* sit in trone.
Now wold it god on þys nede, þ*at* y were by hym on my stede, — and wishes he was with him.
Baucyn of Melaunt. 5400
þan schold y make hure sydes blede, An hundred of hem þ*er* scholde be dede,
Of Sarsyns & p*er*sau*n*t."
¶ Of hys[1] doȝtynisse myche þay speke, Ac eu*er*e þe Saraȝyns after hym reke, — When the Saracens
To slen hym was hure mod: 5404
Ac wan þay þat frensch host of-seyn, þay wern agast & tornde aȝeyn, — [fol. 71, bk] see the French army, they turn and fly.
prykynge as þay were wod:
To þe Ameral þay come sone þas, & tolde þat soþe how it was,
of þ^e^ Messag*er* & of þ*at* host; 5408
And þ*at* Char[lis] hadde on his ferede An hundred þousant on[2] a mede,
þ*at* lay thar neȝ þe cost.
"Let ordeyn þyn host þar-for anon, þat þay beo[3] araid eu*er*echon
In armes for-to fiȝte." 5412
þe Ameral het þa*n*ne his hornes blowe, & þat alle wer y-armed in a throwe,
& to batayl y-redy he*m* diȝte.
¶ þa*n*ne com be-fore þe Amerel ther, Fro ys broþer a Messager, — A messenger tells Balan
& told hym þys tydynge, 5416

[1] Of hys [grete]. [2] on [ys]
[3] [araid] beo.

that his brother is coming

Þat ys broþer, sir Bruyllaun*t*, þat was kyng of heȝ persaun*t*,
Wyþ ys host was comynge,

with 100,000 men.

Wyþ an hondred þousent p*er*saunc3, To helpe hi*m* aȝen þe kyng of fraun*c*ȝ,
And eke aȝeyn ys host. 5420

Þa*n* wax þe Amyral glad & blythe, And þankede Mahou*n* an hundred syþe,
& gan to blowe bost.

Balan goes to meet him.

His stede tok he þanne an haste, & aȝen ys broþer wende he faste,
W*ith* oþre þ*a*t he gan ba*n*ne. 5424

& wan þay were to-gadre y-met, Spillyng of speche þar was gret
y-mad bytwene he*m* þa*n*ne.

For Char[lis] þay saiden scholde be slawe, And Fyru*m*br*a*s ys sone an-honged & drawe,
& Flo[rippe] schold be for-brent, 5428

And Char[lis] host discou*m*fyted & slayn; Thus þay talkede be-twene he*m* tweyn,
As þay to-gadre went.

Their united armies amount to over 300,000.

¶ Wa*n*ne hire hostes were to-gadre y-come, þa*n*ne was ther an huge trome,
iij hu*n*dred þousent & mo. 5432

Four dyu*er*s tonges of Saraȝyns, Persans, torkys, and Arrabyns,
And Affrycans al-so:

Ful huge was þa*n*ne þassemblee. On thyrty p*ar*tyes to-delede he
Ys Saraȝyns þe Amerel. 5436

now god to þe cristene take kepe, For þay ne habbeþ on hure hepe,
bote þe þridde del!

Gwenylon tells the result of his mission.

Now ys Gweynes come aȝeyn, & telleþ[1] ys lord, kyng Charlemeyn,
to-gadre betre & werse, 5440

þ*a*t þe Amerel ne dredeþ hy*m* noȝt, Nouþer in dede ne in þoȝt,
þe value of a kerse.

& þat wa*n*ne he spak of crystendom, How he spatte & fyede þar-on,
& wolde hym hab y-sleyne.[2] 5444

[leaf 72] [3]And how he slow kyng Bruyllant, þat was kyng of mou*n*t-myrrant

[1] telleþ [to]. [2] y-slayne *corrected.*

[3] *In a faint hand at the bottom:—*

þ*a*t host of Saraȝyns þan he beheld
þ*a*r þo by-spradde þe large feld,
iij myle yn lengþe & brede.
Al a-loud said he þen:
"Her ys gret puple of heþene men,
god of heuene ous spede!
Alþoȝ þay beo mo þan we yn nu*m*bre,
Hur*e* false fayth schal he*m* encombre,
& ek hir false dede.
þay haue þe wrong & we þe riȝt,
We schulleþ sle alle hem yn fyȝt,
Haue ȝe none drede.
*& if þ*o*u wilt ny . . . þat . . .
Co*m* out þe self y þe pray
. . . . . .
þa*n*ne kepe þe neu*er*e . .
Bote i[e] bere body . . .

* at the top of leaf 72.

A-forn ys owen eyne[1]:

& þorȝ ys host al how he passede, & how þe Saraȝyns hym þanne chacede, & how he awayward rende; 5448

& how [2]ofte he[2] turnde aȝeyn, & slow of þe Saraȝyns þat chacede hym þeyn, xxx[ti] as he wende.

¶ Charlis swer by [3]Milde marye,[3] þat þe A[myral] & hyse [4]þus scholde abye,[4] or þe sonne hure fulle. 5452 — Charles vows vengeance on the Emir.

& þanne he clepede ys conseyl, And departede his host on .v. batail, to-Riȝt as y wil ȝow telle:

Richard he takeþ on to lede, Anoþer to Reyner, god of rede, [5]to G[weneloun] tok he þat þridde[5]; 5456 — He divides his army into five parts.

Geffray Hautefuelle he tok þe furþe, þe fifþe to him-selue þat most was werþe, [6]& held hem þar amydde.[6]

¶ þe Amyral þan spak to þat kyng[7]: "Broþer, said he, þow most do þyng, þat y schal þe saye. 5460

þow schalt beo þe furste þat schal gon Wyþ þyn host aȝen our fon, Ac o þyng y þe praye: — Balan tells his brother to lead his force first against the French.

Ac if þou metest wyþ Charlemayn, Loke for noþyng þat he be slayn, As þou louest myn honour. 5464

For in-to Aufryke schal he be lad,[8] Wyþ þe oþre [9]þat me habbeþ sory mad,[9] þat ligge þ her on my tour."

¶ þay ensemblede þanne to-gadre anon, þe Sarsyns blewe hure hornes ecchon, to batail or þay paste. 5468

[10]Ac by-fore alle prikede[10] Bruyllant, For prude & for-to make auaunt, Wel a stones caste; — Bruyllant

And þanne he cryde and gan to sayn: "Whar art þow, Char[lis], þow vylayn? [11]Wat dost þov yn þis lond.[11] 5472 — challenges Charles.

In yuel tyme dudest þow pace Mantrible brigge, & oure men chace, þou abiest it with myn hond.

þyn host þys day schal beo ded, And þow schal luse þyn hore hed for þy fol outrage. 5476

[1] Aforn ys eyne [tweyne].
[2—2] [he many tymes].
[3—3] [ys croune of golde].
[4—4] [abigge scholde].
[5—5] [þe þridde to Gweneloun].
[6—6] [þan takeþ Charlemoun].
[7] [þe Amyral spak to Bruyllant kyng].
[8] [send].
[9—9] *over* 'y haue yment [y-send].'
[10—10] [& þanne by-fore alle priked out].
[11—11] [y chalange al þy lond].

& suþþe schulle we *with* strengþe of hond, Wende in-to fraunce & conquere þy lond, & al þyn heritage[1];
þorȝ-out þy lond schal beo no page þat ys xij [2]ȝer y-holde[2] of age,
So Ma[houn] me mote amende, 5480
þat he ne schel ȝelde til ous truwage, Four floryns of gold of god coygnage Euery ȝer to rente."[3]

[leaf 72, back] Charles runs him through with his spear,

¶ Wan Charlis y-herde how he sayd, [4]He tok (?) as him ful wel arayd,[4]
Blanchard he made sterte, 5484
And prykede to hym wyþ a spere; & þorw þe scheld & armure he hym gan bere, & þorw hys body him gerte.
þe schaft was god & *with*-oute lak, And huld forþ styf, and noȝt ne brak, & he hit drow out *with* strengþe: 5488

then charges at Justyn, King of Turkey, and slays him,

And rydeþ aȝen þe kyng Iustyn, Of Torkye was he a strong Sarsyn,
An[5] huge man of[6] lengþe;
Scheld ne haberke ne halp hym noȝt þat ys sper ys herte ne[7] soȝt,
þorȝ ys body and al: 5492
þe kyng ful ded of ys sadel y-gylt, And *with* þat strok þat sper was spylt, & brak to peces smal.

and after him Gargayn.

& þanne drow he ys swerd of Steel, & meteþ wyþ Gargayn & hit hym weel On þe nekke *with* mayn.[8] 5496
þoȝ ys auentaille were strong & god, He smot þo of boþe hefd & hod,
þat al ful on þe playn.[9]

Roland hears Richard's horn blow,

¶ Rychard ys horn [10]þanne herde blew,[10] Roland hyt hurde, þat[11] soun [12]he knew,[12] & gan to busky hym þenne.[13] 5500

[1] MS. heritate. [2—2] [ȝer old].
[3] *At bottom, in a faint hand:—*
þan Bruyllant brak him out afforn,
& To clypy host he blew an horn,
& þan þay come an-haste.
"Go we *þer*-for to þam affront,
& fiȝte we *with* þo heþene hond,
& maugre habben *þat* spare."
"Amen," saide þay euerechon;
With þat hert was vp anon
& layn þay wel be þare.
þan Char[lis] þat host haþ y-nome
& esyly rydeþ at o trome
& aȝen þe Sarsyns . .
[4—4] [He ne huld him noȝt þar-of apayd]. [5] [&] an. [6] of [brede].
[7] [ground] ne. [8] [Al ys] mayne. [9] [playne]. [10—10] [gan to blowe].
[11] [&] *þat*. [12—12] [gan knowe]. [13] [In þe tour þar he was ynne].

Ful wel wiste he by þat soun þat ys vncle kyng Charloun
Ys batayl [1]had by-gu*n*ne.[1]
Glad was Rolond þanne and blythe, Ys felawes clepede he tyl hym swythe, & telleþ he*m* so[2] anon. 5504 — and tells his companions:
þan waxe [3]þayr*e* hertes lyȝte,[3] & sone þay buþ yn armes dyȝte,[4] — they arm themselves.
Sykyr ynow euerechon.[5]
CHarlys & hyse þat were wyþ-oute þe Saraȝyns ȝerne þay gu*n*ne to cloute, er þay come of þe tour. 5508
Al þ*a*t Charlis wyþ ys swerd arauȝte Hit ful dou*n* ded at o drauȝte,
So gret was his vygour.
þa*n*ne by-gan muche[6] noyse & cry, [7]þe fre*n*sch fyȝte to-gadre egrely[7]
Alle þ*a*t þar were,[8] 5512
Boþe of Sarsyns and frensche men, Alle þey wende to-gadre þen,
& foȝte y-same þere.
¶ þat batayl þo by-gan wonder[9] fel, Ac[10] þat frenchs host bar hym wel, — A fierce battle ensues,
Wyþ speres & swerdes y-gr*ou*nde. 5516
To Sarsyns habbeþ þay ȝyue anon[11] Of sturne strokes wel god won,
& mad he*m* grysly wounde.
Gret slaȝt was þar on hure syde, In[12] þe feld leye þay . w*ith* wondes wyde, þ*a*t arst wer prout on pres. 5520
Moche was þe blod þat þar was schad, And many a wydewe þar was mad, And many child faderles. — [leaf 73] and great slaughter.
¶ W*ith* þat coms[13] in a Saraȝyn fier, Tenebre, þat was kyng of Byer, — Tenebre, King of Byer,
On ys helm he bar þe croun,[14] 5524
& dude þe frensche host gret damage, Why hys puple þat was sauage, — makes great havoc amongst the French.
ful many þay [15]fulde adou*n*.[15]

[1—1] [dude þo by-gynne]. [2] [þ*er*-of].
[3—3] [& þan waxe þay glad an sone he*m* diȝte].
[4] [And in fyn armure araid he*m* ryȝte]. [5] [þys lordes] *and* [wel ynow].
[6] [boþe]. [7—7] [And þe batailles en-semblede hastely].
[8] *At the bottom, in a faint hand:—*
þe tweyn hostis assemblede þan
& ech til oþer þa*n* layd an,
& farsly ga*n* to fyȝte.
þay þ*a*t wern a myle þ*er*fro
Myȝte y-hure þe strokes þo,
Y-ȝouen on helmes bryȝte.
[9] [smert &]. [10] [And]. [11] [þa*n*ne] anon. [12] In [tal].
[13] [smot in (?)]. MS. cons. [14] [& com forþ w*ith* ys fereede].
[15—15] [sloȝe to dede].

Oure cristen men hadde þay put abak Nadde þay comen þat y of spak,
þe [1]barou*n*s þ*a*t wer so p*r*este[1]; 5528

Roland and Oliver and their companions sally from the castle.

Rolond, [2]Olyuer and Naymou*n*,[2] [3]And alle þe doþþepers þan come adou*n*,[3] Al y-armed[4] in þ[e] beste;
Stedes ne toke þay wiþ hem non, For ynowe þay founde[5] w*ith*oute gon, A-strayey on þe grene. 5532
þan out of þe tour þay goþ echon,[6] And eu*e*rech of he*m* [7]haþ tak[7] on, & sone werþ[8] vp y wene.

Floripas begs them to take care of Guy.

¶ To þys barou*n*s of gret honour Florippe, þ*a*t þanne lefte on þe tour, Cryinge gan to sayne! 5536
"ȝe lordes of fraunce þat buþ þe flour, Kepeþ wel Gyoun my paramour, & bryngeþ hi*m* me aȝeyne."
[9]To batayl faste þan[9] gu*n*ne fonde, W*ith* scheldes enbraced, & spers an-honde, [10]þay dude her hors to gone.[10] 5540
[11]Wan þay ynto þe batayl[11] entred were, Sone þus [12]habbeþ þorw gon[12] there þ[e] scheldtromes of þaire fone:
[13]And alle þe Sarsynȝ þ*a*t þay gu*n*ne mete [14]To gronde þay laid he*m* w*ith* dentes grete, y-ȝyuen w*ith* spers kene. 5544
þar was non of hure helue þat nadde a-slawe mo þan twelue, þ*a*t leyen þ*e*r on the grene.

They make great slaughter of the Saracens.

¶ Wan hure speres by-gu*n*ne to faile, Hure swerdes þay drowe of god entaile, & laid on þan w*ith* mayne; 5548
Wyth strokes þ*a*t fullen as a foþer þay laid dou*n*[15] Saraȝyns ech on oþer, Ded ryȝt on þ*a*t playne.
þe Sarȝynȝ floȝen hem[16] for hure prow, Suche þ*a*t arst were hardy ynow to abide er þay come: 5552
For hure strokes fulle[17] so sare, þ*a*t Alle þ*a*t þay raȝte,[18] lasse & mare, Hure deþ þan[19] þay nome.

[1—1] *over* '[lordes] raþer yn my spelle.'
[2—2] *over* 'wyþ ys company.'
[3—3] *In the margin* 'þat þyderward come hastely [how] as y schal ȝow telle.'
[4] y-armed [alle]. [5] [seȝen]. [6] [anon]. [7—7] [þar-of tok].
[8] [lup]. [9—9] [þus barou*n*s faste forþ].
[10—10] [To þe batayl þa*n*ne, þay* goes]. [11—11] [And wan þay amonges he*m*].
[12—12] [barons þorlede]. * þay *above the line.*
[13] *under is* 'Sone þay made hem lefe þat swete, of þam alle was þar non þat nad y-sleyn an hu*n*dred fon þa*n* w*ith*-ynne wyle.'
[14] *This line crossed through.* [15] [adou*n*]. [16] [floȝe hymen].
[17] [were]. [18] [smyte]. [19] [of hem].

[1]Al-so flo3e þe Sar3yns Rolond[1] Wan þay aparceuede ys heuy hond, — The Saracens fly before them.
So[2] sper*h*auk ! doþ þe larke. 5556
For al þ*at* þorw his hondes crep To deþe he dyngede he*m* dou*n* to hep, — [leaf 73, back]
W*ith* strokes sterne & sterke.
Alle þe feldes þan wern y-fuld Wyþ þe Sarsyns þ*at*[3] wern y-kuld
In þ*at* batayl wykke; 5560
þorw-out al þe feldes wyde þ*at* blod ran dou*n* in euery syde,
In stremes grete & þykke.
Discou*m*fyt flowe þe remaynant, & after hem p*r*ikede duk Rolant, — Roland and Oliver pursue and kill more than 100 of them.
& Olyuer his felawe; 5564
Ac or þay afferrede he*m* o3t myche þen Mo þan an .C. of þe heþemen
Had hy tweyne a-slawe.
¶ Wan þe Amerel þat cas y-se3 Sorwe 3eode ys herte ne3,
To Ma[houn] he gan to mene: 5568
"Ay !" saide he, "syre Mahonet, Lyte loue schewest þ*o*u me 3et,
þow hast for-3ete me clene."
He saw ys folk faste fleoynge, & frensche men after he*m* faste prykynge,
þ*at* w*ith* swerdes layde he*m* dou*n*. 5572
Ys swerd adrow he ano*n* ri3t þ*a*nne, & p*r*ikede ys stede ! & he gan renne — Balan charges at Howel,
To howel of seynt Milou*n*.
þe Sar3yn, þ*at* was fers & smert, howel oppon þe helm he gert
[4]W*ith* his swerd w*ith*[4] mayne; 5576
þorw helm, & coyphe, & bacynet, þe swerd goþ forþ wyþ-oute let, — and cuts him down,
& sank in-to ys brayne;
He ful dou*n* ded þar al-so hot. & to Gauter beaufyl3 þ*a*nne a smot — then cleaves Gauter's skull,
A strok þ*at* was ys deþ, 5580
Ri3t on þe heued anoneward, & clef ys helm þo3 he war hard,
& ys hed in-to þe teþ.
Geffrey of Parys smot[5] he als, And gurde his heued fro þe hals, — and slays Geffrey and Fourcheere.
& Fourcheere slo3 he þ*a*nne. 5584
Charlis it se3 & wax ful wroþ, & p*r*ikede Blaunchard & to hi*m* agoþ, — Charles charges at him,
As faste as he may re*n*ne.
¶ þan Char[lis] . a strok til hym gan mynte; Ac hym faylede of ys dynte, — but his sword glances off Balan's shield,
for þ*at* swerd hym glente 5588

[1—1] *over* 'Ac by-for al oþre þay flo3e.' [2] So [þe]. [3] þ*at* [þar].
[4—4] [A strok w*ith* my3t &]. [5] [þ*a*nne] smot.

By-twene ys scheld & ys for arsoun; Ac þe sadel & þe stede clef he al doun, þorw-out al yt wente:

and cuts his horse in two

þe stede ful doun on peces tweye; þe Ameral dradde þan to ben a-sleye, or he aryse myȝte, 5592

[leaf 74]

Ac sone sterte he vp of þe forȝ, And Char[lis] stede a gerde þorȝ, þat was so fair of siȝte.

Charles's horse is killed

þe stede was ded & ful adoun, On fote stert vp þo Charloun, Raply al on hete, 5596

& wyþ ys drawe swerd an-honde Alayd on þe Ameral wyþ þat bronde, & ȝaf hym dyntes grete.

and they fight on foot.

ON fote þanne foȝte þys princes boþe, And layde on strokes wilde & wroþe, With hure swerdes kene. 5600

þe A[meral] was heȝere þan Charlys was þe amountance of a fotes spas & sum-wat more y-sene.

Ac ay faȝt Charlis wyþ herte god, And þe Ameral egerliche him with-stod, & Foule with hym gan fare; 5604

Such strokes Charlis of hym haþ hent þat scheld & haberke þer-with was rent, & he was wounded sare.

¶ þan Char[lis] by-gan to waxe wroþ, & ful sterneliche til hym agoþ & a strok on ys hed a-sett 5608

Charles cuts thro' Balan's helmet,

Wyþ ys swerd of[1] style broun: þe cercle on ys helm he bar adoun þer-wiþ ſ with-oute lette,

& of ys helm away he bar A quarter ſ & of ys cheke a schar Myche of þat oþer syde, 5612

& þan on ys schelde ful þe dent, & endelonges he hym to-rent, ȝut gan he ferþer glyde.

be ys iambeaus forþ he swarf & ys oþer spore þanne he carf, Adoun riȝt by the hele; 5616

In-to þe erthe a fot and mare Ran þat swerd þat cam so sare, þat was y-mad of steele.

and calls on him to surrender.

¶ Charlis to þamerel þan gan sayn: "ȝeld me þe relyqes vp agayn, þat þou with-halst of myne, 5620

& beo cristned and þat Auon, Oþer elles þov schalt þyn hefd forgon, To morwen or y wil dyne."

¶ Wanne þe Ameral hym vnderstod, For teone wax he almost[2] wod,

[1] [y-mad] of. [2] *over* 'wel neȝ wod.'

& to hym[1] he sterte, 5624
And smot to[2] hi*m* a strok w*ith* mod W*ith* ys swerd ful scherp and god,
& on þe helm hy*m* gerte.
Ac f*ra*m þe helm þ*a*t swerd hi*m* glente As þat Char[lis] cornel þar-wyþ to-flente, & þe dynt ful on ys schelde, 5628 — Balan smites Charles on the helmet, but
And þe st*r*onge scheld þ*er*-wyþ to-rente; Ac ȝut þe strok ys ferþer wente, noþyng þe dynt ne athelde,
[3]And ful[3] opon ys genyllere, & bar away ys chauceore, — [leaf 74, back]
Of yre & styl y-mad. 5632
boþe ys spores a-dou*n* he schar In-to þe erthe two fet & mar,
þe strok þ*a*t was so sad.
Wyþ þe schakyng þ*a*t he gan make þo Ys swerd to-brak on peces two, & þan gan he to doute. 5636 — his sword breaks in two;
Ac al þ*a*t was of ys swerd y-leued Caste he þa*n*ne aȝe Char[lis] heued,
& an anlas þo droȝ oute, — he draws his dagger,
And egerlyche to Charlis ran And hente hym by þe nekke þan, & foygnede hym w*ith* þ*a*t knyf: 5640 — and seizes Charles by the neck.
Nad he be y-armed þe bet*er*e y wys, & rathe[4] to hi*m*[4] come socour of hys,
he had hi*m* be-nome ys lyf.
¶ Ac[5] þer komen on companye, Roland & Rychard of Normandye, Olyuer & Ogyer, 5644 — Roland and others rescue him,
And myche[6] of hys oþer baronye, And departede hymen twye:
& þan A[meral] þo toke ther, — and take Balan prisoner.
& to þe erthe þa*n*ne he*m* caste; Olyuer wyþ a corde bond hi*m* fast,
Ac arst was muche ado: 5648
To Hardree had he a strok y-ȝyue Wyþ ys fuste, and al to[7]-dryue
Ys chekbon neȝ a-two:
Nad his auentaile y-beo þ*a*t heel, F*ra*nce had þo be delyured weel
of a ful traytrous man; 5652
For wyþ þe strok had he beo ded, & þan hadde muche harm be aled,
þ*a*t ful þo after þan.
¶ W*ith* þ*a*t com prikynge sir Fyru*m*bras A*n*d saw ys fader on[8] þe plas, y-bou*n*de honde & fet: 5656 — Ferumbras advises his father to submit.

[1] [& til hym þan]. [2] [til]. [3] [3] [bote sanke]. [4]—[4] [y]. [5] [Ac þe laste þa*n*ne]. [6] [al] þat. [7] 'neȝ to' *written over*. [8] [ligge] on.

"Fader," sayd he, "þow dost folye þat þow ne wolt þyn herte abye
To Char[lis] þat ys so gret;
Y rede þow do as he wil saye, & þanne for þe wol y praye
þat he schal þe kepe & saue. 5660
& al þy londes & þyn honours, & alle þy castels & alle þy tours,
Aȝeynward schaltou haue[1]."

Balan curses and threatens him.

¶ "Hold þe stille," sayde he þan, "Art þow bi-come a crystenman?
Ma[houn] do þe wrake! 5664
& if y my power rekuuere aȝe, Wel heȝe schalt þou an-honged be,
Whar þou mowe beo y-take."

[leaf 75]

¶ Wanne Fyrum[bras] y-herde how he tolde, For hym ys herte sat ful colde,
Ac no more ne saide þo[2]: 5668
for[3] þat ys fader by hym wolde[4] noȝt, Ne of his counsail noþynge ne roȝt,
On his herte hym was wo.

The Emir is set on a mule, and Charles leads him

Sone þas was þar a mule y-fet, And þe Amerel was ther-on y-set;
To Char[lis] was broȝt a stede, 5672
þe kyng lep on hym fayr & wel, & ledeþ wyþ hym þan Amerel,
þat dulful was þo for drede;

to Egremont.

In-to Egrymoygne he hadde hym þen, Wyþ twenty þousant of frensche men,
þe remanaunt by-lafte he þare, 5676
Fyȝtyng oppoun hure enemys, Affrycans, Persantȝ and tourkys,
þat sone were broȝt in care.

The Saracens, seeing this, fly,

¶ Wanne þe Sarsyns y-seȝe þat cas þat þe Amerel yn þe feld y-take was,
& so y-lad hem fro, 5680
þay floȝe away on euery syde, þar was non þat perste abyde,
Hure song was, "welewo."

but Roland and his

Ac Roland and hys companye [5]Broȝte hym in[5] aȝen an hye
& faste þay sloȝe hure fon[6]; 5684

companions pursue and slay them till night.

Fram was non til þe nyȝte Ne cessede þay neuere for to fiȝte
bot euere [7]so layd hem on.[7]
¶ By þat þe nyȝt hym was y-come, þe Sarsyns were slawe al & some,
þat þay myȝt of take. 5688
þe frenschemen þanne to hure herburghes wende, And of þe mete and drynke þat god hem sende, Murye þav dude hem make.

[1] *over* for hym þan moȝt þou haue. [2] [þat he hym ansuerede so].
[3] [&] for. [4] [do] wolde. [5—5] *over* a-druwe (?) hym yn.
[6] [& harde layde hem on]. [7—7] [sloȝe hure fon] *and* [til þay wer ded ecchon].

ON þe morwe wan þe so*n*ne schon, Char[lis] of-sente ys barons ecchon, And among he*m* dep*ar*teþ þa*n*ne 5692 — Charles distributes all the treasure,

Of þat gold & of þat gery3ou*n* þat he fond on þe tour & on þe tou*n*,
Y-now to euery manne.

An Archebysschop he ciepede after þaat, And bad hym ordeyne an huge vaat, Ful of water clere; 5696 — and orders the Archbishop to prepare a huge vat, wherein to baptise Balan.

And his orysou*n*s saye oppon, As he wolde fully ther-on
þan Amyral þ*a*t was þere.

þe Bysschop wente aboute sone þe kynges heste for-to done,
for þat hym þo3te god; 5700

& wa*n* he had al aboute y-so3t, To a gret holw marbre was he bro3t, — A great marble vessel,
þ*a*t wyþ-ynne þe paleys stod;

Whych was wonyd beo fillid wyþ wyn At euerech gret feste of appolyn, þ*a*t þ^e A[meral] holde wolde: 5704 — which was filled with wine at the Emir's feasts,

Wyth water was fulled þo þ*a*t[1] ston, And[2] þe bysschop hit blessede anon, as Char[lis] het he scholde. — [leaf 75, bk]

¶ þe Emp*er*our het come his baronage, That þer was þa*n*ne wel sauage, — is prepared,
to[3] seen þ*a*t selcouþ sy3te. 5708

And suþþe of-sente he after þan After þe Ameral, syre Balan,
be barons threo wel wy3te,

Roland, Olyuer, and Ogyer; þilke thre þo fette hym ther,
& bro3t hym forþ anon, 5712

by-fore þe emp*er*our þat hym abod And he het anon þar as he stod, — and Charles orders Balan to be undressed.
Dispoily hym by-fore þe ston.

¶ Wan þay by-gu*n*ne ys cloþys of-do Myche strif made þe Amerel tho, — He resists,
And tornde & wende faste, 5716

Ac Roland and Olyu*er* hulde hym so, That whather he wolde oþer no, — but in vain.
ys cloþys of thay caste.

¶ þe Emp*er*our sayde to hym þan—"þ*o*u schalt ben a crysteman,
& ben y-follyd here; 5720

And if þ*o*u wolt þer-to beo bro3t, Of þyne ne schalt þow lese no3t, — Charles tells him that if he will become a Christian his possessions will be restored,
þe worthy of a pere:

Ac arst þ*o*u most for-sake Mahone, And be-lyue on gode sone,
þ*a*t in marye y-kened was; 5724

[1] fulled þ*a*t [ilke]. [2] And [þan].
[3] [for] to.

and repeats to him the articles of the Christian faith.

& suþþe of hure body y-bore, Wyþ-oute wem & wyþ-oute hore,
As sunne goþ þorȝ þe glas.
þow most al-so be-lyue thus, þat he suffrede deþ for vs,
To kepe ous fram helle pyne; 5728
& þat he a-ros þe þridde day, And to helle tok þo þe way,
And delyuerede þar is hyne;
And þat he þer-after to heuene steȝ, & syt on ys fader riȝt hond an-heȝ, & ys in trynytee: 5732
And suþþe sente þe holy gost To ys decyples he louede most,
And het men y-fulled bee;
þou most byleue on holychurche, After hure lawe for-to wurche,
And on for-ȝyft of synne; 5736
And on þe dredful domes-day, Wan ech man schal rysen on such aray
As he[1] dayeþ ynne,
And come be-fore god present, And fonge ther ys iuggyment,
to ioye oþer pyne to wende, 5740
After þat: þat hy doþ heere, Body & saule to dwelle y-fere,
Euere wyþ-outen ende,

[leaf 76] ¶ Bylyf þou as y haue þe tauȝt, And on þys water tak fullauȝt,
& þys schal beo þy mede; 5744
þy body and þy catel þan myȝt þou saue, And heuene blisse al-so haue,
If þou dost þat dede."

Balan swears nothing will induce him to be baptised, and smashes the vessel.

¶ Wan þe Amerel haþ iherd hym telle, Contenance made he fers & felle, & fram hym tornde away: 5748
And bytok hym-selue þe deuel of helle, If he wolde euere wyþ folloȝt melle, Terme of ys lyues day;
Ne Mahoun wolde he neuere for-sake, For drede of deþ ne for þe wrake, to be ded þer for þe riȝte. 5752
For Angre sake þanne he swatte, & þan ston a cracchede & in a spatte In dispit of god almyȝte.
¶ Wan þe Emperour y-hurd him speke so, Wonderly wroþ þan wax he þo, Ys swerd þan gan he draȝe; 5756
Ne hadde Fyrumbras ys sone y-ben þat þo wente hem be-twen,
A wold him haue a-slaȝe.

[1] [hem self].

¶ Fyrumbras huld þan Emp[er]our, And prayede him cesse of his rauncour, & he wolde eft asaye, 5760 — Ferumbras offers to try to persuade his father to give way.

If he miȝte wyþ any colour Brynge him ȝut of his errour,
In-to þe betere waye.

¶ þanne spak Florippe, þat burde bryȝt—"Syr Emperour, þov dost noȝt aryȝt, To tarye þus for ys sake. 5764 — Floripas urges Charles to slay Balan.

ȝe hadde don wel, by god almyȝt, Had ȝe[1] do slen him ȝesternyȝt,
Wan þat he was take."

¶ þe Emperour huld ys swerd an-honde, And askede aȝen whar he wil fonde to lyue on cristes lay, 5768 — Charles again asks Balan if he will become a Christian.

And Mahou ys false god for-sake, And crystendom þar by-fore hym take Wyþ-oute more delay:

& if a wolde, þat hit were so, A wolde be ys frend for euere-mo,
On what lond þat he lende; 5772

And þat he nel by-nyme hym lond ne fee, But euere scholde[2] beo to hym pryuee, In-to ys lyues ende.

¶ þan Fyrum[bras] ys sonne hym sette on knen By-fore ys fader: & cryede aȝen— "Mercy, fader," he sayde, 5776 — Ferumbras, too, on his knees implores his father to consent.

"Swete fader, do hys lykyng, And ne make þer-of no more taryyng,
for gode loue y pray þe.

And þan myȝtou haue al þyn Awe, And libbe þy lyf on godes lawe [leaf 76, bk]
& kepe þe so fro sore; 5780

And þilke þat buþ now þyn fon Wolleþ þe louye euerechon,
& worschypy þe euere-more."

¶ "Y graunte," quaþ he þan: "haue y-saied How þat þys water ys arayed, þat y schal plungy on." 5784 — Balan yields.

þan was Fyrumbras glad & blythe, And þankede god ful many a sythe,
& broȝte hym to þe ston.

Charlis þanne hym wax ful glad, And hopede a wolde be christen mad,
So wern þe oþre barouns. 5788

þe hysschop stod þer: þo þat had Y-blessed þe fant, and ouer y-rad
Alle ys orysouns.

¶ þe bysschop sayde to þe Ameral þan—"If þou wilt ben a crysteman,
Mahoun þou most for-sake, 5792 — The Bishop tells him he must before all renounce Mahomet.

[1] MS. he. [2] scholde [he].

Aller-ferst by-fore ous here, And suþþe stape in-to þ*is* wat*er* clere,
þan schalt*o*u fullo3t take."

Balan nearly breaks his jaw-bone with his fist,

þe A[meral] þan wroþeliche hym gan beholde, And gurde hym w*ith* ys
fuste y-volde, Ageyn ys cheke an-haste, 5796
þat þre teþ sterte out of þe bon, & nadde Ogyer þo by-twene he*m* gon,
He wolde hi*m* habbe of-þraste.

¶ þa*n*ne saide þe Ameral w*ith* egre mod—"Wat wenestow, glotou*n*,
þat ich be wod, Schold y for-sake my dri3te, 5800

and then spits on the font.

And beo plunged on þys marbre ston?" In dispyt of cryst! þan spat
he þer-on, by-fore hure Aldre sy3te.

¶ þo wax Charlys wonder grym, And clepede Fyru*m*[bras] & spak
to hym, In þe maner as y schal sayne:— 5804
"Fyru*m*bras, as þow art me lef, Ne tak yt no3t to no[1] gref,
þo3 y putte hym to is peyne,
Suþþe he wil no3t *christ*ened be, Bot haþ now in dispyt of me
My bysshop y-bete sore: 5808
And aft*er*ward, in þe dyspyt of crysst, Spet on þe fant as þow her
sysst, ne p*ray* þow for hym no more."

Ferumbras begs on his knees for another chance.

¶ Wan Fyru*m*bras herd hym speke so, For ys fader þanne hym was
so wo He nyste wat þo to[2] done: 5812
Bote by-fore hym on ys knes a cryde þat a wolde 3ut a-byde
Wyþ hym til eft-sone,
þat he hym hadde eft by-so3t, & bot if he þa*n*ne wold take fullo3t,
As he hym wolde abette, 5816

[leaf 77]

Hys wille wyþ hym do a scholde & gurde of his heued 3yf a wolde,
No leng*er* wold he hi*m* lette.

Floripas says it is only a waste of time.

¶ To þe Emp*er*our saide florippe þan—"Wy tariest þ*o*u so longe wyþ
þ*a*t man, þ*a*t haþ þe & þyne agreued? 5820
Al ys for no3t! 3e A-boute goes, 3e ne b*r*ingeþ hi*m* neu*er*e to 3oure
p*ur*pos, y leye þ*er*-to myn heued."

Ferumbras remonstrates with her.

¶ Til hure þan saide sir Fyrumbras—"Sustre ne ys he þy fader;
alas! Tak of hym pytee: 5824
He þe gat & forþ þe bro3te, Thar-for ert þow mys-byþo3te,
To procury hym to slee.

[1] yt [now] no3t to. [2] wat [my3t].

Wyþ wilde hors mot y beo drawe, Bot y wolde her riȝt fawe
A lyme of me for-gon, 5828
Wyþ þat he y-folled[1] wolde bee On þat water þat[2] here [ȝe] see
standyng her on þys ston."
Wyþ þat he wep & syȝte sore, As he þanne stod hym by-fore,
& þus til hym gan telle— 5832
"Swete fader, chaunge þy þoȝt, And elles þow worst to deþe y-broȝt,
þan goþ þy saul to helle.
And if þow wolt be y-fulled heer þar-of þanne ert þow . skeer,
& heuene myȝt þou craue. 5836
And leue lordlich on þyn owe, And habbe at þyn heste heȝe & lowe,
As þou wer woned to haue.
And ther-for, swete fader myn, [Fo]rsak Mahou*n* and Appolyn,
þat buþ noȝt worþ a flye; 5840
And be-lyf on cryst, and cristned be, And þanne schalt þow þryue & þe,
& god lyf schalt þou drye?"

Ferumbras with tears implores his father to give way.

¶ "Sone," sayde þe Amerel þan, "By Mahou*n* þou art a nycy man,
þat þou dost me rede 5844
To by-lyue on such a mon þat was on a croys y-don,
for ys owe mysdede.
Y diffye hym her and alle hyse, By Mahou*n* y nolde ȝyue a pyse,
for cryst ne al ys myȝte. 5848
Nel y neuere on hym be-lyue, Ne beo y-fulled on my lyue,
to dye þarfore her riȝte."

But Balan says he will never consent to believe on a man who was crucified for his own misdeeds.

Wan þ*at* Fyru*m*bras y-knew ys þoȝt, & þat he ne myȝt hym t*ur*nne
noȝt, On herte hym lekid ille. 5852
To kyng Charlys sayde he þan—"Doþ now syre by thys man [leaf 77, bk]
As it is þy wille;
Certys y ne haue now no wonder þoȝ ȝe hym do hewe ech lyme on
sonder, þorȝ-out flechs & bon, 5856
Suþþe he wil noȝt for no pray Belyue on god: & for-sake ys lay
Ne folloȝt take non."

¶ þan Char[lis] askede of ys men a-boute, Hwych of hem wolde of al
þe route Sle þ*at* heþene hounde. 5860
Ogyer hym ansuerede—"y wil hym slo, For myche tene he haueþ
me y-do, Her ys his bane y-founde."

Charles asks who will be executioner

Ogier says he will;

[1] y-volled *corrected.* [2] þat [stent].

Ys swerd a drow þat het corteyn, Wel many a Saraȝyn had he sleyn
thar-*with* thar by-fore. 5864

and with one blow cuts off Balan's head.

Ogier in the nekke thar-wyþ hy*m* gerte, þ*a*t þe heued fro þat body
sterte, ys owen lengþe & more.

Roland calls on Guy to fulfil his promise.

[1] Wan þe A[meral] Balan was a-slawe Florippe com forþ & was wel
fawe, & [. . asked (?)] kyng Charlou*n*, 5868
& sayde, "syre kyng, as þ*o*u art wiȝte, And y haue ben trewe to þyne
kniȝte (?), [Now] *gra*unte to me Gyou*n*."
"Damesele," quaþ Rola*n*d, "þow sayst ryȝt, þow schalt hym haue by
god almyȝt." þan spak he to þ*a*t hende— 5872
"Gy of Borgoygne, do as þow hyȝt, Ant tak þys lady fair & briȝt,
In-to þy lyues ende."

'Willingly,' says Guy, 'if Charles will give his consent.'

"Wel gladlych," saide Gyoun þo, "So þat myn vncle assenty to,
þe Emp*erour* Charlemayn." 5876
þ*a*n saide Charlys—"god for-beode þat y anentes þilke neode
+ Any-þyng sayde a-gayne."

99 Floripas undresses herself.

¶ þe Damesele dispoilled hure þ*a*nne anon, Hyr skyn was as whyt so
þe melkis fom, fairer was non on molde: 5880
Wyþ eȝene graye, and browes bent, And ȝealwe traces, & fayre y-trent,
Ech her semede of gold.
Hure vysage was fair & tretys, Hure body iantil and pure fetys,
& semblych of stature. 5884

She is so beautiful

In al þe werld ne miȝt be non fayrer wymman of flesch & bon,
þan was þ*a*t creature.

that all the lords fall in love with her.

¶ Wan þys lordes had seyȝen hur naked, In alle man*e*re wyse weel
y-maked, On hure þay toke lekynge. 5888
Was non of he*m* þ*a*t ys flechs ne-raas, Noþ*er* kyng, ne baroun, ne non
þ*a*t was, Sche was so fair a þynge.

[1] N, *crossed through, the rest erased and written over.*

+ Ponat*ur* in loco isto ☞; *pointing apparently to some lines on the opposite page, which is wanting, but probably referring to the following lines which are added in the margin below:—*

"To . . . . . y pliȝte my trouþe ȝore To haue & holde for eu*ere*-more
On wedlak fre
For was . . . . do my power To saue þe" . . . . . .
. . . . . .

[*End of MS.; the missing lines are supplied as before from the French original.*]

[L'empereres méismes en a .i. ris jeté ;
Pour tant s'il ot le poil et canu et mellé, 5892
Si éust il mout tost son courage atorné.
Ens es fons c'on avoit pour Balant apresté,
Ont donné la puciele sainte crestienté,
Et par nom de bautesme ont son cors generé. 5896
Karlemaines le tint au courage aduré,
Li dus Tieris d'Ardane, ensi l'ont esgardé,
Il ne laisierent homme qui de mere fust nés.
Ne li ont pas son nom cangié ne remué ; 5900
Après, a la puciele son gent cors conraé.
Tout droit enmi la plaice en sont avant alé ;
Iluec a l'arceveques l'un à l'autre douné.
La couronne Balant a Charles demandé, 5904
Floripas en couronne et Guion le sené ;
Puis les a l'arcevesques benéis et sacrés.
A Guion de Borgoigne rent Karles le rengné,
A Fierabras en a l'une moitié donné ; 5908
De Guion le tenra par droite loiauté.
Lés la tour d'Aigremore ot .i. palais listé ;
Là sont nostre François à grant joie mené,
Richement sont servi et à moult grant plenté. 5912
.VIII. jours trestous entiers ont les noeces duré.
Karles i a .i. mois et .i. jour sejourné,
Tant qu'il ot le païs auques asseuré.
Quant Karles ot la tere auques asséurée, 5916
Le païs ont cerkié et toute la contrée.
La gent paiene en ont tant qu'il pueent menée ;
Qui ne veut croire en Dieu s'ot la teste caupée.
Par . i . saint diemence, quant l'aube fu crevée, 5920
Adont ot l'arcevesques une messe cantée ;
L'empereres en a Floripas apelée.
' Bele, ce dist li rois, je vous ai couronnée,
Si estes, Dieu merci, bautizie et levée 5924
Au milleur chevalier estes vous espousée,
Ki soit jusques Aufrique, outre la mer salée.

Floripas is baptised,

but her name is not changed.

She and Guy are crowned,

and Spain is divided between Guy and Ferumbras.

At the end of a month Charles prepares to return to France.

He asks Floripas to show him the sacred relics,

as he intends to start the next day.

Et il et Fierabras tenront mais la contrée,
.XX.^{m} hommes aront de ma gent bien armée ; 5928
Bien sera, se Dieu plaist, vers Sarrazins tensée.
Demain vaurai mouvoir par boine destinée ;
Ne m'avés des reliques encor nule monstrée;
Alés, sel m'aportés sans nule demourée.' 5932

Floripas produces the casket:

'Sire, moult volentiers, puisque il vous agrée.'
En la tour d'Aigremore est la bele montée,
Venue est à la cambre, si l'a tost deffremée,
Vint à l'escrin d'argent, s'en a la casse ostée, 5936
Et vint devant Karlon, si li a presentée.
Et li rois s'agenelle et si l'a enclinée.

the crown of thorns

Trestout premierement a la couronne ostée,
Que Diex ot en son cief enbatue et serrée ; 5940
N'estoit d'or ne d'argent ne faite ni ouvrée,
Mais d'espines poignans estoit entourtillée,
Et d'aspres joins marages de lius en lius bordée.

is exhibited to the barons.

Nos barons les monstra par boine destinée. 5944
Ha Diex ! adont i eut mainte larme plourée ;
Cascuns s'i agenoulle, s'a sa coupe clamée.

The archbishop tests it, by leaving it suspended in the air without any support.

L'arcevesques fu sages, si l'a bien esprouvée :
En haut desus le paille l'a contremont levée, 5948
Puis a retrait son brac, s'en a sa main ostée,
Et la sainte couronne s'est en l'air arestée.
Et dist li arcevesques, 'Je l'ai bien esprouvée,
Que ce est la couronne que Dix ot espiné.' 5952
L'arcevesques l'a prinse, si l'a jus avalée,

A delicious odour comes from it.

Par de desus le paile l'a assise et posée.
Plus flaire doucement que canele alumée ;
La flairour qui en ist ne puet estre contée. 5956

Environ la couronne fu moult grans li barnez ;
Moult i avoit candelles et cierges embrasés,
D'or estoit li palais, de soie encourtinés.

The archbishop takes out the nails.

L'arcevesque a les claus fors de la casse ostés, 5960
Puis i avoit sa bouce et ses ex adesés.

Et Karles les baisa et li autres barnés.
L'arcevesques fu sages, sils a bien esprouvés :
Par deseure le paile, qui d'or est painturés, 5964 *The archbishop tests the nails,*
Les a en contremont et dreciés et levés,
Puis les baisa tous cois, s'en a ses mains ostés ;
Et li cleu sont tout coi, n'en est uns escapés.
Adont i ot grant joie, c'est fines verités. 5968
' Signeur, dist l'arcevesques, pour Dui, or m'entendés ; *and declares them to be the real relics.*
Je vous di vraiement, se croire me volés,
Que ce sont li clau Dieu, qui ques ait aportés.'
Quant François l'ont veu, si les ont encliné. 5972
' Ha Dix ! dist Karlemaines, tu soies aourés !
Moult par puis estre liés quant consenti m'avés
La couronne à avoir dont fustes couronnés,
Et les saintismes claus que tant ai desirés ; 5976
Or en ert mes païs, se Dieu plaist, acuités.'
L'arcevesques les prinst, sils a jus avalés,
A nos François en a les ciés envolepés,
D'encoste la couronne les a mis et posés. 5980 *Then he draws out the inscription, which he shows, and lays on a cloth beside the other relics.*
Puis a trait fors le signe, qui bien estoit dorés ;
Plus flaire doucement que bames embrasés.
Quant François l'ont veu, e les vous enclinés,
De pité et de joie fu cascuns esplourés. 5984
L'arcevesques le prinst, qui bien fu apensés,
Puis le mist sur le paile, qui fu à or ouvrés,
O les autres reliques, dout il i ot assés.

L'emperere de France fist forment à loer ; 5988 *The relics are carefully wrapped up and placed in the king's coffer.*
Il a fait une table sor .ii. trastres poser,
Et pardesus .i. paile, qui fu fais outre mer.
Ses fist li emperere partir et desevrer ;
Puis a fait les reliques moult bien envoleper. 5992
Dedens son maistre coffre les a fait enserer.
Toutes ices reliques en vaura enporter.
Les petis espinons qu'il en fist esgrinner
De la sainte couronne qu'il ot fait desevrer, 5996 *Charles places*

the fragments of the thorns in his glove, which remains suspended in the air for over an hour.

Trestous les conquelli l'emperere au vis cler,
Et les mist en son gant, canqu'il en puet trover.
.I. chevalier le tent, qu'i vit lés lui ester,
Mais il nel rechut mie qui ne l'oï parler · 6000
Et Dix a fait le gant enmi l'air arester
Tant que une liue péust .i. hom aler ;
Ailleurs ot à entendre, ne l'en pot ramenbrer.
Karles a demandé de l'aigue pour digner ; 6004
De son gant li souvint quant il devoit laver,
Mais il ne sot à qui le bailla à garder :
Par de desus la gent le vit en l'air ester.

The archbishop points out this great miracle.

L'arcevesques le monstre à tout l'autre barné ; 6008
Ce fu moult grant mervelle, bien en doit on parler.
Karles a prins son gant, si se sist au digné.

Charles and his barons go to dinner.

Challes nostre emperere est assis au mengier,
Jouste lui Floripas la bele au cors legier, 6012
Et d'autre part Guion, qui l'ot prinse à moullier.
Fierabras tint la coupe, devant le roi, d'ormier ;
Moult furent bien servi, n'en estuet pas plaidier.
Quant il eurent digné, les napes font sacier ; 6016
Cascuns sor son ceval s'ala esbanoier.
Karlemaines a fait la quintaine drecier ;

The revelry lasts till nightfall, when they separate.

Tout le jour behourderent desi à l'anuitier.
Quant il virent le vespre, mis sont au repairier, 6020
As osteus se repairent, si se vont aaisier ;
Quant assés sont deduit, si sont alé coucier,
L'emperere se dort ens un palais plenier,
Et a songié .i. songe mirabillous et fier, 6024

Charles dreams that he is at Aix-la-Chapelle, and a voice bids him return to Spain, to help Guy.

Que à Ais la Capele se devoit haubergier.
De la tere d'Espaigne ot une vois hucier,
Que il alast la tere et les païs aidier,
Et de paiene gent nostre Signeur vengier. 6028
Tout le monde véoit de grifons esragier ;
De sa gent li faisoient mervilleus encombrier :
A .i. seul jour en furent mort plus de .xx.[ta]

En sa court à Paris avoit .i. lienier 6032 And that a favourite lioness tries to tear him to pieces.
Qui li voloit du ventre tous les boiaus sacier;
N'avoit baron en France qui l'osast aprocier.
Pour le songe se print Karles à esvillier,
De Damediu de glore se prinst à sinier. 6036
Taut soufri Karlemaines qu'i prinst à esclairier;
Devant lui fait venir Namle son consillier,
Le songe li conta qui l'ot fait esvillier.
'Sire, ce dist li dus, vous irés ostoier 6040 Naymes explains the meaning of the dream.
Ains le cief de .iiii. ans sor la gent l'aversier.
Tel homme avés nouri qui point ne vous a cier;
Damedieu nous en gart, qui tout a à jugier!'

L'emperere de France s'est levés par matin 6044 Next morning after mass the army starts.
La messe a escoutée ens ou palais marbrin,
Puis, quant il l'ot oïe, si se mist au cemin,
Lors oïssiés grant noise et mervilleus hustin;
Li os est aroutée, ne prist cesse ne fin. 6048
Damedieu le garisse, qui de l'iauve fist vin,
Le jour qu'il sist as noeces le saint Arcedeclin.
Challes est d'Aigremore partis et desevrés;
Floripas la rouine le convoia assés. 6052 Floripas accompanies them a short distance.
'Bele, ce dist li rois, ariere retornés.'
'Sire, dist Floripas, si com vous commandés;
Diex soit garde de vous, qui de virge fu nés!'
Floripas le baisa par moult grant amistés; 6056
Plourant s'en departirent, e les vous dessevrés.
Mais Guis et Fierabras ne sont pas retournez; Guy and Ferumbras go as far as Mantrible,
Ains convoient Karlon et son rice barné
Jusque au pont de Mantrible, la rice fremeté. 6060
Et Raous et Jehans lor sont encontre alé.
François se sont logié tout contreval les prés;
Karlemaines n'i est c'une nuit ostelés. where Charles stays one night.
Li rois Guis est de Karle partis et desevrés, 6064
Et Fierabras o lui, li vassaus adurés.
Au departir des .ii. i fu grans deus menés;

Mais li rois Karlemaines les a reconfortés.

Guy and Ferumbras take leave of Charles.

De Guion de Borgoigne s'est Karles departis, 6068
Et il et Fierabras, qu'est chevaliers gentis.
Moult les a l'emperere baisiés et conjoïs
Si lor a commandé que l'uns soit l'autré amis,
Et s'ost s'est aroutée par puis et par larris. 6072
Taut vont par lor journées, si com dit li escris,

On the eighth day the French arrive at Paris.

Que à l'uitisme jour sont venu à Paris.
Cascuns s'en va ou regne dont il estoit nouris ;
Karlemaines s'en va au moustier Saint Denis. 6076
Là manda arcevesques, evesques benéis,
Les reliques lor monstre Damedieu Jhesu Cris.

Charles goes to St Denis and exhibits the sacred relics,

Cel jour ot .x. evesques ensamble revestis,
Si i ot arcevesques et abés .xxxvi. ; 6080
Li barnages i fu d'Orliens et de Paris.

Au baron Saint Denis fu grans li assamblée ;
Au peron du lendi fu la messe cantée.

which he distributes: part of the crown and one nail he gives to St Denis:

Illuec fu la couronne partie et devisée : 6084
Une partie en fu à Saint Denis donnée,
Et .i. cleu ensement, c'est verités prouvée.
De la couronne fu partie et desevrée ;

the inscription to Compiegne.

A Compiegne est li signes à l'eglise honnerée. 6088
Des saintimes reliques fu la le desevrée ;
Maint present en fist Karles par France la loée :

He establishes in their honour the fair of 'Lendit.'

En l'onor Dieu en fu mainte eglise honnerée.
La foire du lendi fu par ce estorée, 6092
Que ja n'i devroit estre cens ne taille donnée.

Within three years came the treachery of Gwenelon and the death of Roland.

Ne tarda que .iii. ans qu' Espaigne fu gastée ;
Là fu la traïsons de Rollant pourparlée ;
Guenelon le vendi à la gent desfaée, 6096
Puis en fu à cevaus sa car detraïnée.
Pinabiaus en fu mors sous Loon en la prée ;
Là le tua Tierris au trencant de l'espée,

Puis fu pendus armés par la geule baée. 6100 Gwenelon is torn in pieces.
Tous jours vont traïtours à male destinée';
U en près ou en loing, ja n'i aront durée.
A Dieu vous comman je, ma canchons est finée. My tale is done,
De cest roumant est boine et la fin et l'entrée, 6104 God bless you all!
Et enmi et partout, qui bien l'a escoutée ;
Ki cest roumant escrist il ait boine durée.

Explicit Li Rommans de Fierabras d'Alixandre.]

NOTES.

p. 1, l. 4. So in the *Sowdone of Babyloyne*, ll. 25—29 :

"As it is wryten in Romaunce
And founden in bokes of Antiquyte, At Seinte Denyse Abbey in Fraunce."

p. 1, l. 11. In the *Sowdone* we are told that Charles distributed the sacred relics as follows :—

"At our lady of Parys, He offred the Crosse so fre ;
The Crowne he offred at seynte Denyse, At Boloyne the nayles thre."

which differs slightly from the account in *Fierabras* (see l. 6085).

p. 2, l. 56. "Poille." In the Fr. "Coloigne." In the side-note read "Apulia" instead of "Poland."

p. 3, l. 65. "tolde ȝow of eer." See p. 1, ll. 8—12. In the Fr. "les dignes reliques que je ne sai nommer." The number of the nails used at the Crucifixion is a disputed point. The question has been fully discussed in *N. and Q.*, Series III., vol. iii. pp. 315, 392, whence I extract the following :—

"St. Gregory Nazianzen says of the taking down from the cross—

Γυμνὸν τριαήλῳ κείμενον ξύλῳ λαβών.

Clearly intimating that our Saviour was fixed to the cross with three nails only.

"Nonnus, the Greek poet, in the fifth century, describes the sacred feet of our Lord as placed one over the other, and fastened down with a single large nail.

"On the other hand, St. Cyprian, St. Augustine, St. Gregory of Tours, and Pope Innocent III., as also Rufinus and Theodoret,[1] reckon four nails. The earliest known representation of the Crucifixion is, I presume, that found in the cemetery of St. Julius Pope, or of St. Valentine, *in Via Flaminia;* in which our Saviour is clothed in a long robe, without sleeves, reaching from the shoulders to the ankles ; and his feet are separate, and each one fastened by a nail to a piece of wood projecting from the cross."

[1] This seems to be a mistake, for Calvin in his work referred to below says—"Si vera enarrant antiqui scriptores, ac præsertim *Theodoritus*, veteris Ecclesiæ historicus, Helena *unum* filii sui galeæ inseri, *reliquos duos* equi freno aptari jussit," p. 206, col. 2.

In the *Ancren Riwle*, p. 390, we find *three* nails referred to :—" þis scheld þet wreih his Godhed was his leoue licome þet was ispred o rode, brod ase scheld buuen in his i-streiht earmes, and neruh bineoðen, ase þe on uot, efter þet me weneð, sete upon þe oðer uote."

See also *Legends of the Holy Rood*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Morris, pp. xix, xx.

It is curious that the author of the Eng. version invariably omits all mention of one of the relics so frequently referred to in the French version, *le signe honneré*, the "title," which was placed over our Lord's head.

In I. Calvin's *Admonitio de Reliquiis*, ed. of 1667, will be found a very full and interesting account of the distribution of the sacred relics. It would occupy too much space to give his account in full, but I may briefly summarise the results of his investigations so far as they refer to the relics here mentioned. Of the nails he found no fewer than *fourteen* preserved in various churches and monasteries : of which *four* were in Italy ; *two* in Germany ; *one* each at Cologne and Treves ; and *six* in France (p. 206, col. 2). In addition to these the monks of Glastonbury Abbey claimed to possess one. See *An History of the Abbey of Glastonbury*, Warner, p. lxii.

As to the crown of thorns, Calvin, p. 207, col. 1, gives a long list of places claiming to possess one or more of the thorns, and here again Glastonbury must be added. In the *Annales ordinis S. Benedicti*, III. pp. 699, 700, we read that Azan, a prefect of Jerusalem, presented to Charlemagne, "Spinea corona, que caput amabile Redemptoris nostri complexa est," and "unus de clavis qui delectabiles Christi articulos configebant." The Abbey of Glastonbury appears to have been especially rich in relics, for, in addition to the above, and others of minor importance, it possessed the spear of Longinus, presented by Audulphus, Count of Boulogne, to Athelstane, some of the milk of the Virgin, and some of the hairs of St. Peter's beard. See Knyghton's Chronicle in *Historiæ Anglicanæ Scriptores decem*, London, 1652, col. 2321, l. 28, and Warner's *History of the Abbey of Glastonbury*, Bath, 1826, p. lxii.

p. 3, l. 91. So in the *Coventry Mysteries*, ed. Halliwell, 183, "bragge or *blowe*."

p. 4, l. 101. Perhaps we should read, "[To] such þre," &c., *i. e.* "to three such men I would not give way."

p. 4, l. 102. "twelue." The Fr. is more moderate—"Ja n'en refuserai, par Mahom, jusqu'à vi.," with which the *Sowdone of Babyloyne* agrees.

p. 4, l. 120. "y knowe hi*m* wel to wisse ;" I know for certain. In this phrase *wisse* appears to be an adj. (A.S. *gewis*, Old Sax. *iwiss*, certain).

"I-wis, þenne seide william, i *wot* wel *to wisse*."
William of Palerne, ed. Skeat, 3397.

p. 4, l. 124. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xiv. 239.

p. 4, l. 128. "none kynnes þynge." See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, C. xi. 128.

p. 5, l. 144. "so most he þe ;" so might he prosper. A common expression, for examples of which see Stratmann. One of the, if not the latest use of the verb to *the* (A.S. *þeon*) is in Tusser's *Five Hundred Points of Good Husbandrie*, 1580 (Eng. Dial. Soc., ed. Herrtage), p. 19, stanza 8.

p. 6, l. 161. Know that this is thine own fault.

p. 6, l. 167. See M. Gaston Paris' remarks on this incident, and the different causes assigned for it in various poems. *Histoire Poétique*, p. 263.

p. 6, l. 173. "Makes no account of me."

p. 6, l. 197. "doþþeper." This spelling is most remarkable. Were it not for the fact that the original draught and the corrected copy are in the same handwriting, one would be led to suspect that the word had been dictated by some person who lisped. But in the original draught we find the word correctly spelt *doȝepers* (see l. 423, and note to l. 259). A similar instance of þ for ȝ occurs at l. 1462, where we find *doþeyne* for *doȝeyne*. At l. 2036 curiously enough the word is spelt correctly.

The various forms under which we find this word are very curious. In *Otuel* (Ellis. *Metr. Romances*, ii. 367) we have "*dussypere*," and "*duzze pieres*"; in the *Sowdone of Babyloyne*, "*dosiper*" and "*dosyperys*"; in *Rouland & Vernagu* (Abbotsford Club) "*dussepers*"; in *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, iii. 440, "*dukperis*" and "*Dutchpeeres*"; in *Wyntown*, v. 4350, "*dowch-sperys*." It is worthy of notice how entirely the original meaning of the word has been lost by the English poets; thus at the end of *Otuel* we read, "Here endeth Otuel, Roland, and Olyuere / and of the *twelve* dussypere." So too in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, l. 1853:—

"Ther come in a daunse IX. doseperus of Fraunce;"

and we frequently find a single knight (as in the present instance) called "*a doȝeper*."

p. 6, l. 199. "to tristyng to." A corruption of the old gerundial form. Thus in the *Tale of Beryn* (Chaucer Soc., ed. Furnivall), l. 347, we find, "This nyȝte that is to *comyng*;" and again in *P. Plowman*, C. xviii. 313, "Hopen þat he be to *comynge*." In the Wyclifite version of Rev. xii. 4 we read: "And the dragoun stood before the woman that was *to beringe* child," and in the next verse, "*to reulinge* alle folkes." Caxton, *Descr. of Britain*, 1485, has "Candred is to menyng a contrey that conteyneth a hondred tounes," p. 20. Cf. "Eart þu ðe *to cummene* eart?" Luke vii. 20.

p. 7, l. 209. "ofte sekede amonge;" sighed at frequent intervals, frequently. Compare the following from Mr. Wright's *Carols and Songs* (Percy Society):—

"Thys endys myȝth
I saw a syȝth
A stare as bryȝt as day;
And *euer amonge*
A maiden songe
Lullay, by by lullay."

Compare also Mod. Eng. *all the while*.

p. 7, l. 213. "his mantel of say." In the Fr. "son bliaut de soie." Halliwell defines *say* as "a delicate serge or woollen cloth," quoting from Palsgrave—"Saye clothe, *serge*." See Du Cange, *Glossar.* s. v. *Seta*.

p. 7, l. 219. "þat tochedmannes dede;" that was the part or duty of a man; compare l. 1435.

p. 8, ll. 234, &c. The process of arming is not so minutely described here as in *Sir Gawayne*, l. 567, *et seq.*, on which see Sir F. Madden's note in his edition for the Bannatyne Club, 1839, p. 314.

p. 8. ll. 246-7. In the Fr. version Oliver is more definite as to the reward he purposes to give Garyn:—

"Ferrant, dist Oliviers, bien ait qui te garda !
Si je vif longuement, moult grant preu i ara,
A Pasques, en avril, chevalier en sera."

p. 8, l. 241. "hys styrop trepede he noȝt;" that is, he did not place his foot in the stirrup, but vaulted into the saddle.

p. 8, l. 253. "K'au plus fier Sarrazin ancui se combatr
Qui ains fust en cest sieucle, ne jamais i ssera!'

p. 8, l. 256. "blessed him;" signed himself with the sign of the cross; in Caxton's version "blessyd hym in makyng the sygne of the crosse;" compare—"*blesce* þe al abuten mid te eadie rode tocne." *Ancren Riwle*, p. 290. The act of making the sign of the cross is still called, "blessing one's-self" by Catholics. See Myrc's *Instructions for Parish Priests* (E. E. T. S., ed. Peacock), p. 9, l. 280.

"And blesse [hem] feyre as þey conne
Whenne gloria t*ibi* ys by-gonne."

p. 8, l. 258. On the cover the following lines corresponding with ll. 258—261 of the corrected copy are legible:—

"As Charlys stod by chance at conseil w*ith* his feris,
Whiche þat wern of *fra*nce his oȝene doȝepers.
Roland . . . . . .
& þan hi*m* for-þoȝte . . . . he had" . . .

p. 8, l. 259. "doþþeperen." On this curious form see remarks on l. 197, above.

The names of the *douzeperes* are variously given in the MSS. Thus the present Romance gives them as—Roland, Oliver, Terry, Geoffrey, Ogier, Basyn, Naymes, Richard of Normandy, Berard, Aubrey, Gwylmer, and Guy of Burgundy

The Lansdowne MS. gives—Roland, Oliver, Geryn, Gerer, Berenger, Otto, Samson, Engeller, Ivon, Ivoire, Anseis, and Girard[1]; while in *Otuel* and *Roland & Vernagu* (ed. for the Abbotsford Club, from the Auchinleck MS. in 1836) no regular lists are given. Caxton, following the prose *Fierabras*, says "the barons of themperour Charles and pyeres of Fraunce ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xiij . . . But of the lordes valyaunte capytaynes were more than xiij after that I fynde" (sign. B viii, col. 1). He then gives the following names, *sixteen* in number:—Roland, Earl of Cenonia, Oliver, Richard, Garyn, Geoffrey, Hoel, Ogier, Naymes, Thierry, Basyn, Guy, Caudeboy, Ganellon, Sampson, Alorys, and Gwylmer.

In the *Sowdone of Babyloyne* also the *douzepairs* are *sixteen* in number:—Roland, Oliver, Regnier, Richard of Normandy, Garyn of Lorraine, Geoffrey, Hoel, Ogier, Lambert of Brussels, Naymes, Thierry (Terry), Basyn, Guy of Burgundy, Gaudeboys, Ganellon, Sanson of Burgundy. But at ll. 1680—1722, we find other names mentioned which do not appear in the foregoing list. Thus we have, Bery, Baliante, Aleroyse, Miron, Turpin, Bernard of Prussia, Bryere, and Naymes.

[1] Although Ogier is not included in the *Chanson de Roland* amongst the *douzeperes*, yet he is the most important personage after Roland.

M. Gaston Paris in his *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, Paris, 1865, p. 507, gives the names as found in the French versions. See also his remarks, *ibid.* pp. 416—418.

p. 8, l. 267. The following portion of the original draft corresponding with ll. 267-9 is legible on the cover:—

> "Many was þe knyȝt þat him beheld ! wan he spak his resoun.
> He said to þe kyng þer as he wes . 'y . . . . haue þe serued ȝore,
> . . . . . in werre & in lond of pes, wel vij ȝer & more'."

p. 9, l. 276. "neuere ous two to-sterte;" we two have never been separated.

p. 9, l. 286. "lome." Generally found in combination as "oft and lome." For examples see Stratmann. The comparative *lommere* occurs in *P. Plowman*, C. xxiii. 238, where it is glossed by the scribe *sepius*.

p. 9, l. 302. "Gweneloun." It is one of the signs of the popularity of the Charlemagne Romances, that this name should have become synonymous with the basest treachery. Thus Chaucer, *Monks Tale*, 3579, uses it as an epithet, when he speaks of "Genylon Olyuer, corrupt for mede;" and again, *Boke of the Duchess*, 1121:—

> "Or the false Geniloun
> He that purchased the trayson
> Of Rouland and of Olivere."

See also *Gesta Romanorum*, Tale lxxviii, p. 396.

p. 10, l. 304. From this line we learn the date of the action of the Romance. See the Introduction, p. xvi, and note.

p. 10, l. 307. "As the law decreed in the case of traitors."

p. 10, l. 311. "Rewardet," agreed, determined: cf. l. 3452. "Tweyre;" A. S. *twegra*, gen. of *twegen*, two. There are not many instances of its occurrence. In *Laȝamon*, ed. Madden, ii. 312, ll. 17568-9, we have—

> "þat hii wolde al þis lond ! fette in hire *tweire* hond,"

and ll. 21436, "fette in ȝoure *tweire* hond." See also *Ancren Riwle*, p. 406, "i þisse *tweire* monglunge." The meaning of the line is—That that which is agreed upon by the consent of any two, any third person, upon whom they may fix, shall be bound to perform. Caxton's version is, "ye haue ordeyned that it whyche by ij of vs is juged ought to be holden." The French version runs—

> "Que ce que li doi jugent, puis k'i l'ont affremé,
> Aler estuet le tierc, ensi l'ont creanté.
> Nous jujon Olivier, si l'avons esgardé,
> Qu'il fera la bataille au paien deffaé."

p. 10, l. 322. "Puis dist entre ses dens; 'Diex li doist courte vie.'"

p. 10, l. 324. "dere herte." Compare *Gesta Romanorum* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Herrtage, 1879), p. 181: "yf þou do welle, þow shalte be myn owne *dere harte;*" and *Troilus and Creseide*, iii. 988: "Lo! *herte mine*," and in the next stanza, "my *dere herte*."

p. 10, l. 325. "Qwhylles he es qwykkeand *in qwerte* vnquellyde with handis."
Morte Arthure, ed. Brock, l. 3810.

See also note in *Cathol. Anglicum*, *s.v.v. Inquarte* and *Quarte*.

p. 10, l. 326. "Were it not for thy grievous wound, I am sure thou wouldst fare well."

p. 10, l. 328-9. "Duk Reyner . . . . Olyuers fader." So we find in all the authors with the exception of one passage in David Aubert (chapt. 39): "Comment le roy Fourré fu occis contre le gré de l'empereur par Olivier de Viane, qui vengea la mort de son père *Gerier* que Fourré avoit occis," &c., but as the same author elsewhere gives the names correctly, this is doubtless, as pointed out by M. Gaston Paris, a slip on the part of the writer or the copier. (*Hist. Poét.*, pp. 263-4.)

p. 10, l. 331. Here begins the legible portion of the original draught, which for convenience of comparison has been printed parallel to the corrected version.

p. 11, ll. 334—337. These lines are an addition of the English translator: at least they do not occur in the surviving MSS. of *Fierabras*. As to the meaning of l. 335, I cannot offer any suggestion.

p. 11, l. 351. Here the draught follows the original French more closely than the corrected copy:—

"Là ù voit Fierabras, si l'a araisonné:
'Sarrazins, d'ont es tu, tant nous as apelé?'"

The four following lines, 352—355, are not in the original French.

p. 13, l. 381. "alre." See note on l. 2342.

p. 13, l. 384. "raply;" quickly, hastily. For examples see Stratmann, to which add—"He ros vp *raply:*" *Arthur*, ed. Furnivall (E. E. T. Soc., 1864), l. 87; *P. Plowman*, C. vii. 383, and *Richard the Redeles* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Skeat), prol. 13.

p. 14, l. 400. "ladde (harlot) on þy fote." In the Fr.—

"Fui t'ent fors de la tere, mar enmerras destrier,
A ton col .i. grant pel, à loi de *pautonnier*."

The word *pautener* occurs hereafter, l. 859, which see.

p. 14, l. 404. "letest so lite of me." Cf. *Richard the Redeles* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Skeat), iii. 284, and *P. Plowman*, B. vi. 170, "leet liȝt of þe lawe."

p. 15, l. 408. "stondeþ aye." An old phrase meaning to stand in awe of, to fear. Thus in *Barbour's Bruce* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Skeat), iii. 62, we have "*stand awe*," and in Havelok, ed. Skeat, l. 277:

"Al engelond of him *stod awe*,
All engelond was of him adrad,"

where the prep. *in* has been incorrectly and unnecessarily inserted before *awe*. See also *The Wallace*, v. 929, vi. 878, &c.

p. 15, l. 423. Notice that while in the original draught we have the ordinary form *doȝepers*, in the corrected copy we have *doþþeper*

p. 16, l. 433. "þe sonne hure sette." On the gender of the word *Sun* see Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 256, and my note to *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 12, l. 14.

p. 16, l. 437. "Hym dredeþ noþyng," &c. In the original French—

"Tant fu fers et oribles et de grant cruautés
Ne prisa Olivier .ii. deniers monnaés."

p. 16, l. 444. "Perigot." French, "Pieregort."

p. 17, 447. "the kynges styward." French "Fius à un vavasour, c'avoit nom Ysorés."

p. 17, l. 456. "Ogeroun þe wiȝte." The whole life of this celebrated hero is in the Royal MS. 15, E vi. 4. *Ogier le Danois, duc de Dannemarche*, was printed at Paris about 1498. His old Gothic Sword, Spatha, and Iron Shield are still preserved in a monastery in the north. Bartholinus, *Antiq. Domic.* ii. 13, pp. 578-9. For further notices see M. Michel's edition of *Charlemagne* from the Royal MS. 16, E viii. 7, written in the 12th century (Paris, 1836); and Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, ii. 137-8.

"Who more couragious then *Renaldo?* who more invincible then *Roldan?* who more comely or more courteous then *Rogero?* from whom the dukes of *Ferrara* at this day are descended (according to *Turpin* in his Cosmographie). All these knights, and many more, Master Vicar, that I could tell you, were knights errant, the very light and glorie of knighthood."—*Don Quixote*, ed. Shelton, 1652, Part 2, chapt. 1, p. 139.

p. 17, l. 458. "Spelie." For examples of this rare word see Stratmann, to whose references add *P. Plowman*, C. vii. 432.

p. 18, l. 473. "cors of werre;" as distinct from a "cors of pees," or a jousting match, which was usually conducted with spears without heads of iron. Thus in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, l. 1215, we read:—

"Thou shalt be servid, or I sess,
Bothe of werre and of pess,
Of ayther cours thre;"

and again, l. 1261, we find mentioned "sperus of pese," which were the jousting weapons above alluded to. See Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, ed. Hone, p. 141, and Meyrick, *Antient Armour*, Glossary. In MS. Lansdowne 285, leaf 10, are rules for the proper conduct of "justes of pees."

p. 18, l. 476. The horse of the vanquished became the property of the conqueror. There are numerous allusions to this custom. See, for instance, *Sir Degrevant*, ll. 1112, and 1119: "Syxty stedus he wan."

p. 19, l. 498. "Et voit le sanc vermel à la tere couler,
Car l'ahans du ceval li ot fait escrever."

p. 20, l. 507. "þou blerest noȝt so myn eȝe." A common expression for *blind, deceive, delude.* Thus Chaucer, *Reeve's Tale* (*Cant. Tales*, A. 4049): "By my þrift ȝit schal i *blere here ie;*" and in *Ly Beaus Disconus*, l. 1432:—

"Wyth fantasme and fayrye
Thus sche *blerede hys yye.*"

See also *P. Plowman*, C. i. 72; *Seven Sages*, ed. Wright, 2952, &c.

p. 20, l. 510. "Myddel": *sic* in MS., but probably we should read "my sadel", as in the draught. Caxton's version has, "two flagons hangyng on the sadil of my hors." "a costrel." French "voila .ij. barils."

p. 20, l. 511. This balm is thus referred to in *Don Quixote*, ed. Shelton, 1652:—"Be not grieved, friend Sancho, replyed the knight; for I will now compound the precious *Balsamum* which will cure us in the twinkling of an eye." The ingredients of this *Balsamum* were Rosemary, Oil, Wine, and Salt, mixed together in an old tin pot, and over it were said "eighty paternosters and as many *Aves, Salves* and *Creeds* . . . [he] did easily persuade himself that hee had hapned on the right manner of compounding the *Balsamum* of *Fierabras;* and that having that medicine, hee might boldly from henceforth, undertake any

ruines, battailes, conflicts or adventures, how dangerous soever."—Lib. I, Pt iii, chap. 3, pp. 31-2.

p. 20, l. 521. "by þis liȝte." A proverbial expression equivalent to "during this life." We have the same idea in different words at l. 1744, where we find, "by þys leem."

p. 21, l. 525. "Rolandre." A form apparently invented *metri gratia;* compare the reading of the original draught.

p. 21, l. 528. "fer & ner." A phrase of common occurrence, and equivalent to, "all over, thoroughly."

p. 22, l. 544. The translator has here omitted a few lines in the original French :—

> "Et respont Fierabras : 'trop me viels ore haster.
> Par foi, se tu me vois deseur mes piés ester,
> N'a si fier homme el siecle ne me doie douter.'
> 'Certes, dist Olivier, trop t'ai oï vanter.
> Miex vaut mesure à dire que ne fait sorparler ;
> A bon droit te devroit de ton cors meserrer.' "

p. 22, l. 545. "bente hym brymly as a bor." A common simile in early poetry. Thus in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, Camden Society, 1844, l. 1240, we read—

> "The eorl hoved and by held
> *Brem as a bare,*"

and in Shelton, *Works*, i. 187 :—

> "Your bragynge bost, your royal aray,
> Your beard so *brym as bore at bay.*"

p. 22, l. 548. "Had he ben," &c. French :—

> "Se il vausist créir le digne roi Ihesu,
> N'eust tel chevalier dusques à Montagu."

I-volled occurs in *Robert of Gloucester.*

p. 23, l. 580. Here the translator has passed over several lines descriptive of Ferumbras's arms, &c., and particularly of his three swords, Plorance, Baptism, and Garbain, the whole pedigree of which is given. In fact the whole account of the combat is considerably altered in the present English version.[1] The author of the latter omits the incident of Oliver's assisting Ferumbras to arm, and the long harangue of Oliver made in the hope of converting the Saracen to Christianity.[2] The French writer represents Ferumbras as then again offering the balm to Oliver, and its refusal.

The French knights who are witnesses of the combat are alarmed for their champion's safety, and Charles, covering his head with his cloak, hurries to his chapel to pray for his success. Roland is anxious to join Oliver, but is prevented by the king, who reminds him of his refusal to accept the challenge. Both the combatants are wounded, and Ferumbras proposes, as he sees Oliver is pale from loss of blood, to leave off for a time, but the latter refuses. The prayer of Charlemagne to the Virgin then follows—a curious specimen, since in it he declares that if Oliver is conquered, he will destroy all the altars and

[1] The account as given in the *Sowdone* follows the French text exactly.

[2] Compare the very amusing description of the duel between Magog the Saracen and Rauf Coilȝear, ed. Murray, pp. 29—32.

crucifixes, words for which Naymes reproaches him. Then comes a long prayer of Oliver, who is again wounded, but refuses the balm which Ferumbras offers him with the assurance that it will make him as lively as a swallow in May. The Saracen is then wounded, but having drunk some of the balm, is quickly restored. Oliver with a stroke of his sword cuts away the two bottles containing the balm, which fall to the ground (l. 742, English version). He leaps off his horse, seizes one of the bottles, drinks its contents, by which he is restored to strength, and then throws both into the river. The weight of the gold with which they are set causes them to sink, but on the feast of St. John they rise to the surface. Ferumbras in a rage slays Oliver's horse (l. 591, English version). The French wish to assist their countrymen, but Charles insists on fair-play to Ferumbras. The latter offers Oliver his own horse, and as the offer is refused, he himself dismounts. Charles utters another prayer, and an angel appears to him, and tells him that Oliver will be the conqueror, but not without severe wounds.

Meanwhile the combat continues, and Ferumbras disarms Oliver: and advises him to renounce Christianity, offering him his sister Floripas in marriage. Oliver rejects the offer, and also refuses to accept his own sword back, but by a sudden spring seizes one of Ferumbras' swords, Baptism, with which he continues the combat. At length Ferumbras is seriously wounded and asks for mercy.

Here the two versions again correspond.

p. 24, l. 583. in draught, "þylke": *sic* in MS., read "þykke", as in the corrected copy.

p. 25, l. 601. "hir eyþer." See note on l. 677.

p. 26, l. 623. "cercle." This is not the padded wreath worn from the time of Richard II. to Henry IV. on the bacinet, but the more splendid band of goldsmiths' work enriched with jewels. It is called *bordoure* in the *Awntyrs of Arthure*, xxx. 4, and said to be "alle of brynte golde"; and in the present poem, l. 5627, it is termed the "cornel". See Roquefort, *Glossaire, Supplement* v. *Helme*, Planche's *Hist. of Costume*, p. 160, &c.

p. 26, l. 631. Compare l. 727.

p. 26, l. 636. In the French version this incident occurs before the fight begins.

p. 27, l. 652. "Y am Charlis Eemys sone." This would mean, "I am the son of Charlis' uncle," but I do not find that Reyner is in any other passage called the uncle of Charles.

p. 27, l. 661. "beyne," both. This is the O. E. *begen*, which we find as *beiȝen*, *beien*, *beine*, *beyne*, in Lazamon. In the Vernon MS. we read—

> "Well þou maiht ȝif þou wolt, taken ensaumple of *beyne*,
> Bothe two in heor elde children heo beore."

p. 27, l. 677. "Vnder hure boþen fete:" under the feet of both of them. So we find, "*her neither* may henten oþer," *P. Plowman*, C. xvii. 81: "*her none*," *ibid.* B. xiv. 239. Compare l. 601, "hir eyþer," and l. 4146, "ȝour summe."

p. 28, l. 679. Apparently the line means, in the excitement and thrusting of the moment, to the Saracen, &c. Cotgrave gives "*Entrelas*, m. A knot hard to be loosed, and intricate businesse, a work much entangled. *Entrelassement*, m. A setting, putting or thrusting in, between or among."

p. 28, l. 681. "to donde." This form occurs in "A Prayer to Our Lady," pr. (from the Addit. MS. 27,909) in *An old Eng. Miscellany*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Morris, p. 123, l. 15—"*to donde* sunne awei fram him." It is a corrupt form of the infinitive arising from a confusion of the gerundial form *-nne*, corrupted into *-ing* (see l. 199), with the participial ending *-ende*. Thus in *O. E. Homilies*, ed. Morris, ii. 57, we read: "the rihtwise [man fasteth] for to *witiende* his rihtwisnesse."

It is worth noticing that in the French version the positions of the two combatants are reversed, so far as this incident is concerned.

p. 29, l. 697. "many a schoure." We still speak of a "*shower* of arrows, or darts," and the word was frequently used in that sense; cf. *flana scuras*, showers of arrows, in the A.S. fragment of Judith. Compare ll. 771, 841.

p. 30, l. 719. I know of no other instances of the forms *sot* or *soot* for the past tense of the verb to sweat. Chaucer uses *swot*.

p. 31, l. 727. Compare l. 631.

p. 31, l. 750. The following lines, corresponding with ll. 750-1 of the corrected copy, are at the back of the Fragment:—

> "Of herte was F[erumbras] boþe hol & sond: & plenyde hi*m* no þyng,
> [Ac] ful him dou*n* knelyng on þe grond, & þankede heuene kyng."

There are also a few other lines partly legible, running round the margins, and some, but for the most part illegible, on the other cover.

p. 32, l. 753. "for Marie sone *þat* mayde:" that is, "for the love of the Son of Mary that Virgin." Compare l. 1270, "We buþ Charlis men þe Emperere." The construction, though singular-looking, is not at all uncommon in Old English: thus in *P. Plowman* we find several examples, *e. g.* "For marie loue þy moder," *i. e.* for the love of Mary thy mother; C-text, viii. 149; "Peers pardon þe plouhman," *i. e.* the pardon of Piers the Plowman; C-text, xxii. 187, 392; "For Peers loue þe plouhman;" *i. e.* for the love of Piers the Plowman; C. xvi. 131, xxiii. 77, &c. So again in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 5437, "Themperours moder william," *i. e.* the mother of the Emperor William. See also Chaucer, *Boke of the Duchesse*, l. 282; *Squieres Tale*, 209, &c.

p. 32, l. 756. "Are not worth thinking of."

p. 33, 766. "y-core." So in *Laȝamon*, ed. Madden, 20971:—

> "Alle hii weren *i-core*: and heȝe men i-bore."

p. 33, l. 771. "Went him." See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. Prologue l. 7.

p. 33, l. 774. "Goffanoun." "*Gonfanon*, m. A little square flag, or Penon at the end of a Launce; or (more particularly) an old-fashioned Banner, or square Standard, borne on the top of a Launce; such as, even to this day, is used in the warres made by the Pope." Cotgrave. See also Meyrick, *Antient Armour*, Glossary. The French version reads:—"Du pan de son bliaut li a les flans bendés."

p. 34, l. 800. "v þousant of oþre and mo." This gives a total of 15,000, but the French text has "L^{M}." The "mo" in the English version seems to mean 3; cf. l. 815.

p. 34, l. 813. "Mantreblee." There appears to be some doubt as to the correct

spelling of this name. In the *Sowdone of Babylon* it is printed as "Mountrible," and in the *Complaint of Scotland*, ed. Dr. Murray, p. 63, we have, "the tail of the brig of the *mantribil.*" The same spelling appears in *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, iii. 455, where we find "Mantrybill." Shelton also refers to "Mantryble the bryge," *Poems against Gamesche*, ed. Dyce, i. 117, l. 22; and so it appears also in Caxton's *Lyf of Charles the Grete*, 1485, which follows the original French prose Fierabras; and in Shelton's translation of *Don Quixote*, Bk I, part iv, cap. xxii, p. 130, ed. 1675, where in the original Spanish the reference is to "*Fierabras*, con la puente de *Mantible*" (*sic*), part I. cap. xlix.

On the other hand, the editors of the French version of *Fierabras* and of *La Destruction de Rome* print the name as "Mautrible," and so it seems sometimes to be in the Ashmole MS. Considering, however, the slight difference between *u* and *n* in MSS., I have followed the reading which appears to have the weight of evidence in its favour.

p. 34, l. 819. "Hure commune horn," &c. In the French text—"Es trés et as herberges ont olifans sonnés."

p. 34, l. 825. "þe wou*n*dede man þan he set adou*n*." In the original French this is done at Ferumbras' own desire, and Oliver, we are told,—

> "Belement le couca desous le ramé pin;
> Ses espées li baille, li rois l'en fist enclin."

The latter part of this line is repeated at l. 838, below.

p. 34, l. 827. "iornay." The use of this word in the sense of *combat* is not uncommon; compare *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, xiii. 480:—

> "Him war levar that *Iourneye* wer
> Wndone, than he swa ded had bene;"

and again, xx. 494—

> "He come nocht to the *Iournee*,
> For his Arme was brokyne in twa."

We still use the expression "to win, or lose, the *day*."

p. 35, l. 833. "at arst;" *i. e.* "then for the first time." So in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 1028:

> "þanne alisaundrine *at arst* þan antresse him tille."

p. 35, l. 855. "Escaped from him by flight as best they might."

p. 35, l. 859. "pantener", read "pautener." This word occurs twice in *Barbour's Bruce*, i. 462, and ii. 194. Cotgrave gives "*Pautonnier.* A lewd stubborn or saucy knave;" and Burguy, "*Paltonier*, *pautonier*, homme sans profession ni demeure fixé; homme de mauvaise vie, méchant, hautain, misérable, queux, coquin." Halliwell quotes from *Guy of Warwike*, p. 113, "a feloun *pautener*." See l. 400, above. The word occurs again, p. 121, l. 3877.

p. 36, l. 876. "plate & maille." Plate armour was, as its name implies, formed of *plates* of steel or iron, while *mail* armour was composed of small *rings* or links. "*Maille.* Maile, or a linke of maile (wherof coats of mail be made); also a Hauther, or any little ring of mettall resembling a link of maile." Cotgrave.

p. 37, l. 928. "schake." So in *Laȝamon*, ed. Madden, 13,246:—"Nes þer nan biscop þat forð on his weei ne *scoc*."

p. 38, l. 940. "Cornybourgh." French text, "Corsuble.

p. 38, l. 941. "persched." "To perche, *vbi* to Thirle," *Cathol. Anglicum*. For other instances of this and similar forms of the word, see my *Gesta Romanorum* (E. E. T. Soc.), p. 47, l. 28, and note thereon.

p. 38, l. 953. "vewe." One of the instances of *v* used for *f*.

p. 38, l. 955. "chacyeþ forþ;" *i. e.* hurry along with them. See instances in Stratmann.

p. 38, l. 956. "riȝdt:" for *rideth;* a very singular form.

p. 38, l. 966. "falsarȝ:" hand-bills, in the French *fausart*.

In the Chronicle MS. *Bertrand du Guesclin* we read:—"D'espees et de *faussars* ot sur lui plus de cent," and again—"Gettent dars et *faussars*, moult en vout ociant."

John, the Monk of Mairemontier, i. *Hist. Gauf. Duc Normand* says—"Imposita est capiti ejus cassis multo lapide pretioso relucens, quæ talis temperaturæ erat, ut nullius ensis acumine incidi vel *falsificari* valeret." Robert de Bourron, *Hist. Arthure et Merlin*, has, "Li haubert sunt si fort et si tenant qu'il ne puent maille *fausser*." Meyrick, *Antient Armour*.

p. 38, l. 969. "wel thre score & mo." French text, "plus de xlvi."

p. 38, l. 971. "wel an akers lengþe." I know of no other instance of the use of the word *acre* as expressing a measure of distance. See notes to ll. 2270 and 3040. A somewhat similar expression occurs in the amusing description of the fight between Rauf Coilȝear and Magog, the Saracen, where the latter strikes the former so hard that—

"The lenth of ane rude braid he gart him remufe."

Ed. Murray, p. 30, l. 864.

The expression occurs again, l. 4699.

p. 39, l. 977. "suþþen y-set alle an horce." French text:—

"Sur bons chevaus les montent, n'i ot onques roncis."

p. 39, l. 984. "At aualyng of a hulle;" *i. e.* at the descent from a hill, &c. French text:— "A l'avaler d'un tertre ont paiens consivis."

p. 39, l. 988. "þat schon so siluer briȝt;" that shone as bright as silver. French text—"dont li poins est burnis."

In the poems of Pulci and Boyardo the name of Roland's celebrated sword appears as *Durindana* and *Durlindana*. The possession of this sword was so coveted that Gradasso, a powerful Eastern king, invaded France with 150,000 men, in order to secure it and Rinaldo's horse.

We find this sword referred to in the *Roman de Horn* (12th Century), MS. Harl. 527, leaf 61, back, col. 2, v. 40.

"Unkes mielȝ ne trenchat Curtein ne *Durendal*."

One of the earliest authors who speaks of it is Rodulphus Tortarius, who lived at the end of the 11th century, between 1096 and 1145:—

"Ingreditur patrium gressu properante cubiculum,
Diripit a clavo clamque patris gladium;
Rullandi fuit iste, viri virtute potentis,
Quem patruus magnus Karolus huic dederat.
Et Rullandus eo semper pugnare solebat,
Millia pagani multa necans populi."

Histoire de l'Academie Royale des inscriptions, &c., vol. xxi. 4°. p. 141.

All the celebrated warriors of romance appear to have given names to their swords: thus we find Charles' own sword termed *Joieuse* (see below, l. 4683, *Chanson de Roland*, ed. M. Michel, st. 179, ll. 6, 13); Turpin's *Almace* (*ibid.* st. 153, l. 7); Baligant's *Maltet* (*ibid.* st. 227, l. 15); Richard of Normandy's *Escalidars* (Romance of *Ogier le Danois*, ed. Adenez); Oliver's *Hautecleer;* Ogier's *Cortine*, and others. Ferumbras in the French version has three swords, Plorance, Baptisme, and Garbain.

The following account of *Durendal* is from *Le Premier Livre de la plaisante et delectable histoire de Gerileon d'Angleterre*, by Estienne de Maisonneufve Bordelois, Paris, 1572, 8°. leaf 47, back:—" Apres cela elle (la fée Oziris) tira du dit cabinet vne espee large, belle et bien trenchante au possible, le fourreau de laquelle estoit de la peau d'un grand serpent, qui fut occis par Hercule lors qu'il estoit encore bien jeune, laquelle estoit si proprement mouchetée qu'encore qu'elle n'eust esté garnie et couuerte de plusieurs diamans, rubis, et autres pierres precieuses, ayant esté mise a l'opposite du Soleil, elle eust rendu plus grand lueur et clarté que le mesme or . . . . . s'appeloit *Duransarde*, que ledit Nabot auoit conquise sur le merueilleux et epouuantable Geant Scarafarab, qui estoit de la race d'Ancelade, vn de ceux qui voulant jadis monter au ciel furent foudroyez par Jupiter." In a work published at Paris in 1555, by Pierre Belon du Mans, entitled, *Observations de plusieurs singularitez et choses memorabiles, trouuées en Grece, Asie, &c.*, Bk. III. chapt. 42, leaf 204, we are told that, " La grand espée de Roland pend encore pour l'heure presente à la porte du chasteau de Bource. Les Turcs la gardent chere comme quelque reliquaire; car ils pensent que Roland estoit Turc, au moins s'il peut estre vray ce que le vulgaire en pense." In the French Fierabras *Durendal* is said to have been made by Munificans, one of three brothers who forged nine celebrated swords, three of which I have already mentioned as belonging to Ferumbras, the others being *Musagine*, *Courtain* (Ogier's) *Floberge*, *Hauteclere*, and *Ioieuse*.

Roland's dying address to his sword, in which he fully describes it, will be found in the *Chanson de Roland*, ed. Michel, st. 169, p. 90; and in Turpin's *Vita Caroli Magni*, Florence, 1822, chapt. xxiii. pp. 66-7. In this latter work will be also found, p. 147, a long and interesting account of an ancient sword corresponding in almost every particular with *Durendal*, as described by Roland himself.

p. 39, l. 996. " on ys yre," *i e.* on his ear. The form *ieare* occurs in the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*, ed. Morris, 211; and *iare* in *An English Miscellany*, ed. Morris, p. 36.

p. 39, l. 1000. " prysouns," prisoners, as frequently found in early writers. Similarly we have *message*, for a messenger, Chaucer, *Man of Lawe's Tale*, 333. See the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, ed. Morris, l. 2044; *P. Plowman*, C. x. 72; xxi. 59, &c.

p. 39, l. 1001. " with rendouns;" *i. e.* at full speed. Cotgrave gives, " *Aller à grand randon.* To go very fast, or with a great and forced pace." So in *Bevis of Hampton*, p. 139, " He rod to him *with gret randoun.*"

p. 39, l. 1003. " potte an auenture;" risked, ventured. The *Catholicon Anglicum*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Herrtage, gives " to In Awntyr. *In eventu ponere.*"

p. 40, l. 1034. " sechyng on þe playne." French, " le camp ont recerquié."

p. 40, l. 1070. In the French text it is Roland and Ogier who disarm Ferumbras.

p. 40, l. 1071. "sengle." Apparently the meaning is *undressed;* the French text reads—"Li rois est remens *sengles* on bliaut gironné."

p. 40, l. 1072. Compare l. 1942. In the French text Ferumbras is thus described—

"Gros fu par les espaules, grailles par le baudré
Et ample ot le viaire, gentement figuré,
Les ex vairs en la teste comme faucons mué."

p. 41, l. 1082. "an archebisschop." In the French text—

"Il apela Milon et Turpin l'alosés,
Deus rices arcevesques de moult grand saintete.

p. 42, l. 1087. It was the custom for persons converted to Christianity to change their names.

p. 42, l. 1094. "taste is wounde," *i. e.* examine by touch, probe. In a similar way we find the expression "to fele a savour." The translator has literally rendered the French original, which has—"Ils sont venus au roi, les flans li ont tastés." Cotgrave gives—"*Taster.* To taste; or take an essay of; also to handle, feele, touch, or grope for." The same expression occurs in *Horn Childe* and *Maiden Rimnild* (pr. in Ritson's *Metr. Rom.*, p. 309):—

"The maiden *tast* Hornes *wounde*
The kinges douhter in that stounde.

See also *P. Plowman.* B. xviii. 84. Caxton's version reads "sercheden his woundes."

p. 42, l. 1104. "atte frome:" at first. The expression occurs in the *Owl and Nightingale*, ed. Stratmann, 1513. Compare also the *Castel off Loue*, ed. Weymouth, 595:—

"Herkeneþ now forþere *atte frome*
How vr Saueor wolde come;"

and in the Anglo-Saxon Gospel of St. John i. 1,—"*On fruman* wæs word," &c.

p. 42, l. 1109. This celebrated bridge is thus referred to in Don Quixote, ed. Shelton, 1675: "See what wit is there in the world so profound, that can induce another to beleeve that the History of *Guy* of *Burgundie*, and the Princes *Floripes* was not true? Nor that of *Fierabras*, with the Bridg of *Mantible*, which befell in *Charlemaines* time, and is I swear, as true, as that it is day at this instant? And if it be a Lie so must it be also that ever there was an *Hector*, *Achilles*, or the War of *Troy; The twelve Peeres of France*, or King *Arthur* of *Britaine*, who goes ȝet about the world in the shape of a Crow, and is euery foote expected in his kingdome . . . . . and in *Roncesuals* there yet hangs *Rowlands* horne, which is as big as a very great joyst."—Lib. I, Part iv, chapt. xxii, p. 130.

p. 42, l. 1112. "prisouns." See note to l. 883, above.

p. 42, l. 1115. "Carful;" full of care, wretched. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xiii. 103, and see Luke xiv. 13, and l. 5221, below.

p. 42, l. 1118. "Amerel". The following are the various forms under which this word appears in the romances. In Fierabras we have *Amirans* and *Amirant;* in the Provençal version, *Almiran;* in the Sowdone *Admyrall, Amiral;* in Caxton *Admyral.*

p. 43, l. 1146. "þes moste man;" this the tallest man, &c.

p. 44, l. 1159. "broȝt of lyues dawe;" killed: a common expression. Compare l. 1588:

> "Mani a bold burn was sone *broȝt of dawe*."
> *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, 3817.

and "Mani a bold burne sone *broȝt of liue*."—*ibid.* 1159.

p. 44, l. 1176. "noȝt for þat;" nevertheless. Compare the modern expression *for all that*. At l. 5265 we have the form *for—þan*.

p. 44, l. 1186. "stokkes of trow;" in wooden stocks, pillories. French text—"En ma cartre profonde en *estroit* les metés."

p. 45, l. 1201. "Sche was a mayde fair & swet." Floripas is described as follows in the French text:—

> "Moult par ot gent le cors, escevi et molé,
> Le car ot tenre et blance comme flours en este,
> La face vermellette comme rose de pré
> La bouce petitete, et li dent sont seré,
> Ki plus estoient blanc k'ivoire replané.
> Les levres ot grossetes, dou rouge it ot assés,
> Le nés ot bien séant, le front bel et plané,
> Les ex vairs et rians plus d'un faucon mué."

p. 45, l. 1206. "on & on;" one and one, that is of this one and that one, of everyone. Compare our expression "of one and another," and see l. 1193.

p. 45, l. 1211. "in baile;" in custody, confinement. "*Bail.* A wardship, tuition, government." Cotgrave. See *Kyng Alisaunder*, ed. Weber, 7532, &c.

p. 46, l. 1238. "preynte." According to Prof. Skeat from an A.S. verb *prinken*, to wink, of which, however, we find but slight traces. In Halliwell we have "*Prink*, to look at, gaze upon. *West.*" The word occurs in *P. Plowman*, B. xiii. 112:—

> þanne conscience curteisliche . a contenaunce he made,
> And *preynte* vpon pacience . to preie me to be stille."

It occurs again in the present poem, ll. 1365, and 4507.

p. 47, l. 1264. Note the change in the tenses.

p. 47, l. 1270. See note to l. 753.

p. 47, l. 1284. "at þy paye;" at thy pleasure, to please thee.

p. 47, l. 1289. "Doggedlich;" i. e. *dogtelich*, doughtily, valiantly.

p. 47, l. 1290. "helue." See l. 103

p. 47, l. 1291. "by hur selue;" with herself.

p. 47, l. 1294. "Moult vaut miex boins taisirs que folement parler."

p. 48, l. 1304. In the French text—

> "'Je quit c'as pucieles sivés moult bien juer,
> En cambre sons cortine baisier et acoler.'
> Dist Guillemers l'Escos: 'Biens saves deviner,
> Juqu'en Jherusalem ne trouveriés son per.'"

Caxton's version has, "I byleue veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in somme chaumbre vnder curtevnes. & dysporte you in loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner."

p. 48, l. 1307. In the French text Floripas sends *Marmucet* (Maumecet) not for

a sledge-hammer, anvil, &c., but for a long rope with which she pulls the knights up from the dungeon; and so in Caxton's version.

p. 48, l. 1311. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xiii. 117—

"Euery man help oþer, for hennes shulleþ we alle."

p. 48, l. 1316. "ȝeate." This pronunciation of *gate* still survives in Devonshire. The line is literally translated from the French—

"Par une gaste porte de viel antequité."

p. 48, l. 1324—1331. This description of the chamber of Floripas differs altogether from that in the French text, in which only the ceiling is described as follows:—

"Desus la maistre vaute avoit par art posé
Le ciel et les estoiles, et yver et esté,
La lune et li solaus, qui nous donne clarté,
Forers, teres et puis, i est tout painturé,
Li oisiel et les bestes et li serpent cresté."

The author then tells us that the chamber was built by king Methuselah, who he assures us ("*ce dist on par verté*") died of grief because king Naaman desired to have it. Surely an extraordinary jumble of personages. The garden is then described, amongst the plants growing in which is the Mandrake, which will cure any wound or disease.

With the description of Floripas's room as here given compare that in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, ll. 1425—1500 (where amongst the wall-paintings we find one of "Grete Charlus with the crounne"), and the following from *Early English Miscellanies*, Warton Club, 1855, ed. Halliwell, p. 4:—

"The towres shal be of every, Clene corven by and by,
The dore of whallus bone;
The cowpuls alle of galyngalle, The bemus alle of ryche coralle,
Ryally begone;
The dosers alle of camaca, The bankers alle of taffaca,
The quysschyns alle of velvet;
The wyndows alle of jasper stone, The pelowrs of coralle everychone,
With joye joyned in gete," &c.

p. 48, l. 1325. So in *Sir Guy*,

"The walls therof were of cristall,
And the sommers of corrall."

p. 50, l. 1329. Compare *Laȝamon*, 24,598; "mid golde bi-gon."

p. 50, l. 1341. "sente." Probably *sendal*, a species of rich thin silken stuff, highly esteemed. See *Strutt*, II. 3; *Guy of Warwike*, p. 421, &c. Or it may mean that the bedsteads were of *Sendal-wood*. "*Sendal*. Sandal, sendail; Bois rouge des Indes." Roquefort.

p. 50, l. 1359. "Or y ha told þy fader fore;" before I have informed thy father. The *fore* appears to be superfluous.

p. 50, l. 1360. "chaunged was al hure blee." In the French text—

"si a le sanc mué:
Son pere moult redoute et sa grant cruauté.'

p. 50, l. 1365. "preynte." See note to l. 1238.

p. 50, l. 1368. "hur cast;" French, sa volente.

p. 51, l. 1370. "þat olde trate;" that old woman. An expression of contempt.

Halliwell curiously enough quotes the word from the *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 150, misspelling it *crate*, and corrects Ritson for spelling it correctly. (See Halliwell *s.v.* Crate.) In the present instance the first letter of the word in the MS. is certainly more like *c* than *t*, but these are letters between which it is at times almost impossible to distinguish.

p. 51, l. 1386. "Sche fet him a drench." In the French text Floripas gives Oliver a small bit of the Mandrake already referred to as growing in the garden, but the effect is the same.

p. 51, l. 1387. "sone þas;" at once. See Introduction, p. xxvii.

p. 51, l. 1388. "gropede;" felt. So Hampole, *Pricke of Conscience*, 6556, tells us that in Hell the darkness will be such "þat it may be *graped*, swa thik it es."

p. 51, l. 1391. "tauȝte þat sche was free;" showed that she had learnt politeness and courtesy.

p. 51, l. 1407. "by is power;" according to his power.

p. 52, l. 1450. "Myn herte me ȝifþ." Compare the modern expression—my heart misgives me.

p. 52, l. 1463. "to don him sle ther;" to cause him to be slain there. See Introduction, p. xxiii.

p. 54, l. 1512. "Vij." French text "xv."

p. 54, l. 1525. "Myne amendes make;" that is, make amends, satisfaction to me. The expression occurs several times in the present poem. *Amendes* is singular, as in Pecock's *Repressor* (Rolls Series, ed. Babington, p. 110), where we read, "a sufficient *amendes*," and in the *Catholicon Anglicum* we have, "an Amendes. *Emenda, emendacio, correccio.*" See hereafter, ll. 1724, 1768.

p. 54, l. 1527. "in fee;" that is as a knight held his land from his sovereign, or a vassal from his lord. Spelman defines *Fee* as "the right which the vassal has in land, or some immoveable thing of his lord's, to use the same, and take the profits of it hereditarily, rendering to his lord such feudal duties and services as belong to military tenure; the meer propriety of the soil remaining always vested in the lord."

p. 55, l. 1579. See note to l. 197 above.

p. 55, l. 1580. French text reads—

> "Tels .x. en materoie ains soleil esconsé;
> Mais envoie jouster .1. legier baceler,
> Car trop avés cel cief et canu et mellé."

p. 56, l. 1595. "þe hedes on þe tre by-lafte;" the heads remaining on the shafts.

p. 56, l. 1602. "What halt it;" of what use is it to make a long story of it, to delay us in our tale?

p. 57, l. 1621. "requilled hem alle;" drove together. In the French text:—

> "Et aquellent Francois environ de tous les."

Requilled represents the Latin *recolligere* as *Aquellent* represents *accolliqere*. "*Aqueillir*. Associer. *Accolligere*," Roquefort.

p. 57, l. 1633. "seuen glotouns." French—"vii gloutons." We have already had the word as used by Charles to Roland on his refusal to accept Ferumbras' challenge: see l. 164.

p. 57, l. 1638. "Hure wyle miȝt þow now wel ȝylde;" thou canst now well requite their treachery.

p. 57, l. 1639. "Al quike y rede þan let hem hylde;" I recommend that thou cause them to be skinned alive.

p. 58, l. 1653. "stent;" for *standeth:* as we say, How matters *stand.* See l. 2035.

p. 58, l. 1666. "Al so mot y waxe;" so may I thrive, prosper.

p. 58, l. 1667. "prensenty." French *prensenter.*

p. 58, l. 1671. "vassalage;" conduct becoming to a knight. "Vasselage, *vasselaige:* Courage, valeur, action de valeur, action courageouse, prouesse, force de corps." Roquefort.

p. 58, l. 1672. "an hed." In the French text, "Cascuns saisi .ii. testes."

p. 58, l. 1674. "aferrom;" far off, from afar. So in *Morte Arthure* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Brock), 856:—

"We folowede *o ferrome* moo thene fyfe hundrethe."

p. 58, l. 1678. "Richard;" in the French—Ogier li danois.

p. 58, l. 1680. "þef." Sic in MS. Read *þes.* Compare l. 4315, below.

p. 58, l. 1682. "Sixty pers." French "xxx. ars."

p. 58, l. 1684. French text—

"X breteques y a, chascune sor piler,
Et peut bien sur cascune .x. chevaliers ester."

p. 58, l. 1687. We are told afterwards in the French text that the river was 12 feet deep, and the lowest pier 30 yards high.

p. 59, l. 1700. "Who, to look at, seems a fiend."

p. 59, l. 1701. "Hache." French "mace."

p. 59, l. 1705. Compare note on l. 1042.

p. 59, l. 1708. "ther by-gynneþ luþer hansel;" that is—here is a bad beginning. *Hansel* is literally "the first money taken for the sale of any commodity, or taken the first in the morning."—*Bailey.*

p. 59, l. 1711. "I will try to find out his intentions, and delay him a while, till you shall all have passed over."

p. 59, l. 1715. "it miȝte be dure aboȝt." French text reads:—"Viels tu donner .i. cop pour .xv. recouvrer?"

p. 60, l. 1729. It is singular that the author of the English version should omit here four lines in which Naymes accounts to Alagolofure for the heads which each knight carries at his saddle-bow, a point on which the Bridge-ward would naturally demand an explanation:

"XV. larrons trouvames là val enmi ces prés,
Si nous vaurent tolir no destriers sejournés.
Mais, merci Diu de glore, i l'ont cier comperé;
Véés ici les testes, se vous ne m'en créés."

which, it will be seen, correspond with Roland's statement to the Emir, at ll. 1683—1687.

p. 60, l. 1734. "It is not easy to get." Literally from the French, "n'est legiers à trouver."

p. 60, l. 1736. "an hundred." French, "vii°."

p. 60, l. 1739. French text gives:—

"Et .M. palefrois fors, .M. destriers sejournés,
Et du pié du ceval .M. mars d'or esmerés,
Après d'or et d'argent .iiii. sonmiers trousés."

p. 60, l. 1741. "nemaþ gome;" take heed, notice.

"Son he seide, tak good *gome*,
ȝyven þou hast þin owne dome."
Cursor Mundi, ed. Morris, l. 7937.

p. 60, l. 1748. "harneys;" baggage, *impedimenta*. The author follows the French text literally:—"Ci vient nostre harnois." "*Harnas*, Armure complète, ornement; meubles et ustensiles de ménage; bagage, outils; en bas lat. *harnesium*." Roquefort.

p. 60, l. 1750. "hertes of gresse;" fat harts; already, l. 1619, called "hertes refet at al." *Grease* or *greese* is the fat of a hare, boar, wolf, deer, &c.; and the season for killing harts and bucks was called *grease-time*, because they were then fattest. See *Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, l. 658 and 1101.

p. 60, l. 1773. "on a grene erber." In the French text:—"Siet sous cel arbre ramé." O.Fr. *herbier*, Lat. *herbarium*, a garden. The spelling *erber* occurs in some MSS. of *P. Plowman*, B. text, xvi. 15, and in *P. Plowman's Crede*, l. 166, we find the plural *erberes*. The word was afterwards confounded with *harbour* (*herberwe*), and, still later, was misspelt *arbour* from an erroneous idea that it was connected with Lat. *arbor*, a tree. See Dr. Murray's note on *Thomas of Ercildoune* (E. E. T. Soc.), l. 177.

p. 60, l. 1793. "Roland." In the French text it is Naymes who speaks first, but the words and actions used are the same, and are certainly more appropriate to the reckless Roland than to the quiet Naymes.

p. 60, l. 1808. "By ous sente he þe to sayn;" by us he sent the message to deliver to thee. So in Lonelich's *Holy Grail*, ed. Furnivall, xiii. 48, "And thus the sente to seyne Ech del;" and xii. 187, "And therefore the sente to sein be me." See also below, p. 121, l. 1866.

p. 63, l. 1841. "his amendes." See note on l. 1525, and compare ll. 1885 and 4150.

p. 63, l. 1844. "abust;" tellest; a shortened form for *abeodest*. Wrongly explained in Halliwell.

p. 63, l. 1860. "Cil qui m'ocist Corsuble et mon oncle Mautrie.

p. 63, l. 1861. See note to l. 521.

p. 64, l. 1872. "ȝea, trupt!" an exclamation of contempt. It occurs in a poem on the reign of Edward I., printed in Mr. Wright's *Political Songs* (Camden Society, 1839), p. 223. "*Tprot*, Scot, for thi strif!" on which the Editor remarks—"The word *tprot* appears to be a mere exclamation of contempt. In a poem on 'The Propertees of the Shyres of Engelond,' printed by Hearne in the Introduction to the fifth volume of Leland's *Itinerary*, we find it used, as here, against the Scots:—

'Northumbrelond hasty and hoot;
Westmerlond *tprut* Scotte.'

In Sir Thomas de la More's *Chronicle*, it is applied to King Edward II:—'*Tprut!* Sire King!' It seems to be taken from the French: in Jean Bodel's *Jeu de S. Nicolas* (*Théatre Français au Moyen-Age*, ed. MM. Moumerqué and

Michel) it is put into the mouths of the common gamblers in a public-house :—

> '*Tproupt ! tproupt !* bevons hardiement :
> Ne faisons si le coc emplat' (p. 183).

And again, immediately after (p. 184) :—

> '*Tproupt ! tproupt !* où que soit passé, Diex ! '"

It seems to be a word coined for the purpose of expressing visibly the sound made with the lips in uttering an ejaculation of contempt.

p. 64, l. 1890. I cannot explain this line.

p. 64, l. 1893. "how he let his lif;" how he spends (*ledeth*) his life.

p. 64, ll. 1895—1898. Are additions of the English translator.

p. 65, l. 1907. "þis day ȝat or none." Fr. "ains l'eure de complie," which is a very different thing, bring the time for the last prayers of the day.

p. 65, l. 1913. "wiþoute more distaunce;" without any further contest."

p. 66, l. 1942. "sengle." Compare l. 1071 : French text :—

> "En la pure cemise soit li tiens cors remés,
> Sor ton col une selle d'un destrier sejourné."

p. 66, l. 1953. "lete don of dawe;" caused to be put to death. Compare l. 1159.

p. 67, l. 1976. Note the two forms "heo" and "sche" in this line.

p. 67, l. 1992. "let hewen hem flesch & bon." French text :—

> "Or leur faites les piés et les menbres cauper,
> Et ardoir en .l. fu par dehors la cité."

p. 67, l. 2007. "a-sotid." French text, *assoté*.

p. 68, l. 2008. "duke Myloun." French text :—

> "Du rice duc Milon vous devroit ramenbrer,
> Qui tant nori Girart, qu'il ot fait adouber;
> Puis li tolli sa fille, Galiene au vis cler,
> L'enfant Garsilium en fist desireter."

p. 68, l. 2016. "þow gadelyng horesone." French text :—

> "Fils à putain, fait elle, lecierres parjurés."

p. 68, l. 2019. "y wol þe teche," &c. French text :—

> "Je te donroie ja tel de mon puing ou nés
> Que très parmi la goule te sauroit li sans clers."

p. 68, l. 2021. "prysouns." See note on l. 883.

p. 68, l. 2027. The rime requires that we should read "het schitte the dore *faste*." The line is written over another erased.

p. 68, l. 2032. "aspye;" enquire.

p. 68, l. 2034. "may him gayme;" that may amuse him. Lines 2031 to 2036 are an addition of the English translator.

p. 68, l. 2035. "stent." See note to l. 1653.

p. 68, l. 2036. "doȝopers." It is strange that here the author should spell this word correctly, while elsewhere we find "doþþopers." See note to l. 197.

p. 69, l. 2053. "þou madest an hard vyage." French text :—

> "He Diex ! dist Floripas, or est Karles irés."

p. 69, l. 2059. "Corsible of Mantrie." In the French version these two names appear as representing two distinct persons :—

"Tu m'ocesis Corsuble et mon oncle Matrie," as in l. 1860.

p. 69, l. 2065. "Roland my name is callid riȝt." French text:—

"Fix sui Milon d'Engler,
Et si ai nom Rollans, ensi sui apelés."

p. 69, l. 2076. "Wan þat my fader," &c. Compare before, ll. 1412—1425.

p. 70, l. 2085. "his;" probably an error for "he."

p. 70, l. 2092. "vi. fet." French text, "deus iiij pies mesurés."

p. 71, l. 2140. "þus wyle;" the while, while.

p. 71, l. 2142. "a wykkeder man," &c. French text:—"N'ot tant felon paien jusc'à la rouge mer."

p. 72, l. 2174. "he put him seluen on a cas;" he risked himself in an situation, from which he met with trouble.

p. 73, l. 2187. "heþenis;" heathendom, l. 121, "heþenisse."

p. 73, l. 2191. "Lyues;" the genitive sing. of the noun used adverbially. So in *Ancren Riwle*, p. 390: "Nu, þeonne, biseche ich þe . . . . þet tu luuie me efter þen ilke dead deaðe, Hwon þou noldes *liues;*" and *Havelok*, ed. Skeat, 509: "Y if y late him *liues* go." Compare l. 2483.

p. 73, l. 2207. "olde cherld." French text, viellars.

p. 73, l. 2211. "barons in fee;" barons holding their land direct from the king. See note to l. 1527.

p. 74, l. 2221. "to ryuere;" go hawking at the river-side after water-fowl. So in the *Life of St. Alexius* (E. E. T. S., ed. Furnivall, 1878, p. 65) we read how the Saint was set

"To lernen chiualrie,
Of hunting & of *Ryuere*
Of chesse pleieng & of tablere."

p. 74, l. 2224. "pleyeþ to þe eschekkere;" play at chess or at tables (back gammon). See an account of the old game of chess in the notes to the *Gesta Romanorum*, chapt. xxi. p. 70.

p. 74, l. 2225. "iew-de-dame;" draughts. "*Dames*. The play on the outside of a pair of Tables, called draughts." Cotgrave. See Strutt, *Sports and Pastimes*, 1810, p. 278, and Jamieson, *s. v.* Dams.

p. 74, l. 2227. "sckyrme alay." I do not know the meaning of these words; most probably there is some error in the text.

p. 74, l. 2229. "All these are not worth a straw."

p. 74, 2232. "chymenay;" hearth, fireplace. This was the original meaning of the word from Lat. *caminus*. So in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, l. 1375—

"Damesel, loke ther be A ffuyre in the *chymene*."

See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. x. 94.

Compare also the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone of Babyloyne*:—

"To the *Chymneye* forth he goth
And caught a bronde him withe to smyte" (l. 2009).

But in the same poem, l. 2351, the word appears to bear the modern meaning, for we are told that Mapyne the thief,—

"Even in to Floripas boure, By a *chemney* he wente inne."

This is a very early instance of this use, as *chimnies* in the present sense of the word were not common before the time of Elizabeth.

p. 74, l. 2240. "with oute ȝede," &c. This seems to mean that Naymes moved so that Lucifer was between him and the fire, which is corroborated by the fact that when Naymes strikes the Saracen, the latter falls "doun amidde þe fyre."

p. 74, l. 2242. "onde." Icel. *önd, ondi*, breath. "An Ande; *anelitus*." *Cath. Anglicum.* See *Prompt. Parv.* s. v. *Onde.*

p. 74, l. 2244. "fachoun." "A faulchion: perhaps the sword was first so called when the inner edge was sharpened, in resemblance of the hand-bill, and afterwards the name was applied generally to any sword. The Statuta Ecclesiæ Agnensis say:—*Statutum fuit quod nullus canonicus, mullus clericus portare audeat cultellum armorum*, falchionem *pennatam, clavam ensem, aut alia arma.*" See Meyrick's *Antient Armour*, 1824, iii. Glossary.

p. 74, l. 2253. "faire hure falle þat ilke hond:" fair befall it, that hand.

p. 75, l. 2256. "let hym enchaufye ynne." French text:—"or le laisiés caufer." In the *Sowdone of Babyloyne*, Naymes, we are told, "With a fyre-forke he helde him doune," while Floripas "bade him warne him wele" (l. 2018).

p. 76, l. 2291. "Coudryn." French text, Cordroé.

p. 76, l. 2303. "an hundred." French text, "M."

p. 77, l. 2336. "þat so on þe fenne," &c.; that was so covered with mud. On *by-gan* see note to l. 1329.

p. 77, l. 2342. "alre most;" most of all. *Alre* is the genitive pl. of the adjective, which we find under the various forms, *ulre, aller, alder, aldre, alther.* See numerous examples in Stratmann and Halliwell. *Aldre* occurs in the present poem at l. 2541, p. 83.

p. 78, l. 2376. "to ȝer." French text, jusque à viii. ans.

p. 78, l. 2377. "vj. mylen." French text, iv lieues.

p. 79, l. 2392. "an hundred pound." French text, une grant caretée.

p. 79, l. 2399. "myster;" craft, skill; l. 2425, "maystries."

p. 79, l. 2413. "attendeþ;" lights. French text:—

"Une chandelle a prinse, au fu l'a alumée."

"þat he of þe holi gost so ure heorte *utende*." *An Early Eng. Miscellany*, ed. Morris, p. 52. A.S. *ontendan.*

p. 79, l. 2421. "druwerye;" sweetheart, betrothed. In *Arthour and Merlin*, p. 312, the Virgin is styled "Cristes drurie." O.French, *drurie, druerie*, love, passion, from *drut*, a lover; O.H. Ger. *trút*, Ger. *traut*, dear. See *Rime of Sir Thopas*, 2085. "þe ȝute;" compare our expression, all *the while*, and see l. 2140.

p. 80, l. 2429. "whit as wales bone;" that is, as white as ivory (the bone or tooth of the walrus). So in *Sir Eglamour*, ed. Halliwell, 801,—

"A man-chylde had Crystyabelle,
As whyte as whallys boon."

The expression is not uncommon in the old poets; thus in the *Squyr of Lowe Degre*, l. 537, we find—

"Lady, as whyte as whales bone,
There are thyrty agaynst me one;"

Compare also *Love's Labour Lost*, v. 2:—

"This is the flower that smiles on every one,
To show his teeth as white as whales bone."

See also the description of the house in *Early Eng. Miscellanies*, ed. Halliwell, from the Porkington MS. (Warton Club, 1855), p. 4, l. 8, where we are told that—

> "The towres shal be of every
> Clene corven by and by,
> The dore of whallus bone."

p. 81, l. 2475. "wan þe soune hure schon." See note to l. 433.

p. 81, l. 2483. "lyues man." See above, l. 2191.

p. 82, l. 2524. "clynge & drie;" pine away through thirst. So in *P. Plowman*, B. xiv. 50: "whan þou clomsest for colde, or *clyngest for drye;*" and *Metrical Homilies*, ed. Small, p. 88:—

> "For pal and *clungen* was his chek,
> His skin was *klungen* to þe bane."

Hampole, in describing the signs of man's approaching death, says—

> "His pouce es stille, with-outen styringes,
> His fete waxes calde, his bely *clynges*."
> *Pricke of Conscience*, 822.

Shakspere, *Macbeth*, v. 5, 40, has "Till famine *cling* thee," *i. e.* pine, shrivel thee up.

p. 83, l. 2534. "maumerye." From the false idea that the Mahometans were idolaters—a belief very general in the middle ages—arose the O.French *mahommet*, an idol; *mahumerie*, idolatry, or an idolatrous temple, as here. Chaucer, *Persones Tale* (De Avaritia), says:—"an idolastre peraventure ne hath not but o *maumet* or two, and the avaricious man hath many; for certes, every florein in his coffre is his *maumet*." See *Mawmet* in Wedgwood's Etymological Dictionary.

p. 83, l. 2538. "Sir Ternagan," &c. French text:—

> "Là estoit Tervagans, et Apolins levés,
> Et Margos, et Jupins, et des autres assés."

p. 83, l. 2541. "aldre." See above, l. 2342.

p. 83, l. 2543. "y-poudred;" interspersed. "A garment *poudered* with purple studdes." Hollyband's *Dict.* 1593.

p. 83, l. 2558. "þat god schold ben on apayd;" that God should be pleased with.

p. 84, l. 2603. "our purchase for to make." Fr. *pourchasser*, to hunt after, chase; thence, to catch, seize, rob; thence, to obtain generally; and finally, to acquire in exchange for money. In old writers the word had the meaning of acquiring in any way, whether by force or not. We see it in its transition state in Shakspere, *Henry V*, iii. 2:—"They will steal anything and call it *purchase*." Spenser uses the word in its original sense, *Faery Queene*, I. iii. 16:—

> "On his backe a heavy load he bare
> Of nightly stelths, and pillage severall,
> Which he had got abroad by *purchase* criminall."

p. 84, l. 2614. The cuirass called broigne. The word occurs in documents of the time of Charlemagne. The Anglo-Saxons termed it *byrne* and *byrnan;* the Normans *broigne*. Thus the *Roman de Garin*:—

> "L'escu li perce, s'a la *broigne* faussée."

Again :—

"En son dos vest une *broigne* trestice."

In *Le Roman de Ron* :—

"Des haubers et des *broignes* mainte male faussée."

And the *Roman de Roncevaux* :—

"La veist-on tante *broigne* saffrée."

From Meyrick's *Antient Armour*, 1824.

The *Brynye* was of *mail*, as appears from *King Horn*, 2740 :—"Of his brinie ringes mo."

"And caste a *brinie* up-on his rig."

Havelok, ed. Skeat, 177.

p. 85, l. 2623. "her schal leue ;" shall remain here. So in *P. Plowman*, A. iii. 190 : "þer I *lafte* wiþ my lord," and *Gesta Romanorum*, ed. Herrtage, p. 401, "he *lefte* still alone in the kyrke."

p. 85, l. 2629. "our on ;" one of us. Compare "hure boþen," l. 677, and the note.

p. 86, l. 2647. "latoun." A kind of mixed metal, resembling brass both in nature and colour. We find it used for helmets (*Rime of Sir Thopas*, 2067) ; sepulchral monuments (*Way in Prompt.*) ; spoons (Nares, *Glossary*) ; lavers (*P. Plowman's Crede*, 196), &c.

p. 86, l. 2648. "blas ;" blast. So in the *Ancren Riwle*, p. 82, we have "þes deofles *bles*," and in *An Early English Miscellany* (E. E. T. S., ed. Morris), p. 93 : "windes *bles*."

p. 86, l. 2654. "boþe bok & bil." French text, "les flans et les costés." Here the meaning appears to be, "back & front."

p. 87, l. 2684. "forsake he þys myster ;" let him give up this profession (of a soldier).

p. 87, l. 2692. "xxiiij of faire somers." Fench text, "ix soumiers."

p. 87, l. 2695. "capouns." French text, "boins paons lardés."

p. 87, l. 2706. "xxx. pousant." French text, "plus de xx^{m}. armés."

p. 88, l. 2719. "þat art." The change of person is curious.

p. 88, l. 2728. "dartes y-feþered wiþ bras." Compare l. 966.

p. 89, l. 2752. "wel-a-Fyn ;" well, perfectly, to good purpose. Compare Tusser, *Five Hundred Points* (E. Dial. Soc., 1878), p. 210, l. 5.

p. 89, l. 2753. "þou syngest an ydel songe." French text, "pour noient regretés."

p. 89, l. 2762. "Hete ;" time.

p. 89, l. 2770. "an aker lengþe." See note to l. 971. French text, "plus d'une grant ruée." Compare l. 3040.

p. 90, l. 2782. "agon ys al myn hiȝt ;" all my promised pleasure.

p. 90, l. 2784. "Hit ne may beo no consail ;" there can be no concealment about it.

p. 90, l. 2792. "þe þridde day." French text, "Je rendrai ceste tour ains demains l'ajornée."

p. 90, l. 2804. "tomorwe or niȝt þat þe cok hym graide ;" before the cock crows to-morrow night. French text, "demain ains l'avesprée." "*Avesprer*. To drawe towards evening to growe neare night." Cotgrave.

p. 90, l. 2808. "þat we ete;" since we have eaten.

p. 91, l. 2822. "teynt." French text, "il est estains et pailes."

p. 91, l. 2832. "Hit is twel month and more apaste." French text, "plus de v. mois." From this line and ll. 304-5 it would appear that Charlemagne's stay in Spain extended over four years, but the *Song of Roland* states that he was in Spain seven years,[1] while in *Otuel* this is still further increased to twenty-seven years.[2] See *Otinel, Chanson de Geste*, ed. MM. Guessard and Michelant, pp. vi, vii, and Gaston Paris, *Histoire Poétique*, p. 268.

p. 91, l. 2829. "he is myn vncle riȝt." French text adds:—

"Et fils d'une des filles au duc Millon d'Aingler."

p. 91, l. 2830. "Cosyn . . Germayn." "*Germanus*, de eodem germine vel eadem genetrice manantes."—Dulange. "*Germain.* Germaine: come of the same stock, bred of the same kind, neare of kinne, of all-one race." Cotgrave. "For certis ye ne han no child but a doughter, ne ye han no brethere ne *cosines germains.*" Chaucer, *Tale of Melibeus.*

p. 91, l. 2834. "mored;" rooted, fixed. A.S. *more*, a root, which occurs in *P. Plowman*, C. xvii. 250; xviii. 21; xxii. 340. See *Legends of the Holy Rood*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Morris, p. 28.

p. 92, l. 2854. And yet we are not told that he had been freed from the bonds with which he had been "harde & uaste y-bounde."

p. 92, l. 2860. "dede hym kulle." We cannot take *kulle* here literally, but as meaning "tried to kill." Caxton's reading is—"they al to-bete hym in suche wyse that he knewe not where he was."

p. 92, l. 2872. "wyþ-oute any where;" without any doubt.

p. 93, l. 2919. "amounty;" amount to, signify.

p. 94, l. 2946. "euene him selue;" equally with himself. So in *P. Plowman*, B. xvii. 134:—

"I hote þat þow louye
Thyn euene crystene euermore, euene forth with þi-self."

and Chaucer, *Knightes Tale*, 2235: "emforth (= even forth) my might." See also *King Solomon's Book of Wisdom*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Furnivall, p. 83, l. 33.

p. 95, l. 2963. "blessede;" made the sign of the cross. See l. 256.

p. 95, l. 2969. "douce France." The Editor of the Roxburghe Club edition of the *Sowdone of Babyloyne* makes a curious suggestion arising from the epithet here applied to France. After remarking on the fact that *sixteen*, if not more, are enumerated as amongst the "douȝepairs," he says:—"a reference to l. 170 will show that the epithet *dowse* is applied to France: it may, therefore, have been given to the twelve peers, much in the sense of gentle in the English word gentleman, *homo gentilis.*" Introduction, p. vi.

p. 95, l. 2976. "polte." So in *Robert of Gloucester*, 479, 7, "Hii *pulte* hem vorþ bivore þe oþere," and in *Laȝamon*, I. 321, l. 7527:—"And Nemnius *pulte* vp his scelde."

[1] "Set anz pleins que en espaigne venimes:
Jo vos cunquis e Noples e Commibles,
Pris ai Valterne e la terre de Pine
E Balasgued e Tuele e Sezilie."—ed. Michel, p. 8, st. xiv.

[2] And so in *Gui de Bourgogne*, l. 59:—

"Il a .xxvii. anz qu'en Espaigne venismes."

p. 96, l. 2986. "Hur brede was y-bake." Compare l. 577.

p. 96, l. 3019. "loude & stille." One of those proverbial phrases, with the meaning of "in every way, at all times," which so frequently occur in the old poets. Compare "oft and lome;" "hard & neychs" (l. 5187); "high and low;" "fer and hende;" "al and some;" "late and rathe;" &c.

p. 96, l. 3020. "schille;" shrilly, loudly. Not a mistake for *schrille*, as might be thought, but the true form of the word, from A.S. *scyll.* It occurs not infrequently; see, for instance, *William of Palerne*, ll. 37, 213; *Sir Eglamour*, 300, &c.

p. 96, l. 3021. "our men." The pronoun here comes in curiously, this being the only instance in which the author identifies himself with either side.

p. 97, l. 3037. "be-vapid." This may either be the same word as *by-fraped*, l. 2987, or, as Prof. Skeat suggests, it may = *be-wappid*, thoroughly *whopped* or beaten. See Halliwell, *s. v.* Wap. Halliwell also gives "Waped, stupified (A.S.)," but I cannot find the word in Stratmann, though Bosworth has "*Wapian*, to waver, to be astonished."

p. 97, l. 3039. "hy*m*me." Sic in MS. We should doubtless read hyme*n*, the mark of contraction being misplaced.

p. 97, l. 3040. "More þan a boȝe-draȝte;" French text, "plus d'un arpent de tere," which we have literally translated in ll. 971 and 2770.

p. 97, l. 3053. "Roland." In the French text "Guy."

p. 98, l. 3061. "ounþank habbe þat spare;" shame to him who keeps back, spares himself. French text, "dehait ait cui en caut."

p. 98, l. 3063—3175. An addition of the English translator.

p. 98, l. 3072. "is takyngge þanne aboȝte;" suffered for having captured him (Guy).

p. 98, l. 3083. "in þy donger." French text, "en vo dangier." Here we have the original meaning of *danger*, i. e. jurisdiction, the power which a feudal lord possessed over his vassals. "Dawnger: *domigerum, regnum.*" *Cath. Anglicum.* Chaucer says of the Sompnour,—

> "In *dāunger* hadde he at his owne gise
> The ȝonge gurles of the diocise."—Prol. C. T. 663.

See further illustrations in my note to the word in the *Catholicon Anglicum.*

p. 99, l. 3126. "duden hem for to gone;" set themselves to get away.

p. 99, l. 3131. "y-vewdid;" voided, cleared. "*Vuider.* To void, evacuate, emptie," &c. Cotgrave. The original prose *Fierabras* reads "qilȝ vuiderent la place," and Caxton, "made them to voyde the place."

p. 100, l. 3136. "Two & þyrty grete somers." French text, "xv soumiers."

p. 100, l. 3155. "iornee;" a day's work.

p. 100, l. 3157. "monþes three." French text, "Enfresi c'à .ii. mois n'aront mais povreté."

p. 101, l. 3170. "Barbygan;" rampart. "Barbican by-fore a castelle. *Antemurale.*" *Prompt. Parv.* See Dr. Weymouth's note *s. v.* in Glossary to the *Castel off Loue.*

p. 101, l. 3170. "þy castel of tre." French text, *beffroi.* In the *Cath. Anglicum* we have "A Barsepay (Barfray); *fustibulum*," on which see my note.

p. 101, l. 3184. "of al france þay bereþ þat flour." French text, "La flors i est de Franche, tout le plus alosé."

p. 101, l. 3190. French text—

> ".I. viellart, .i. cenu de moult grant cruanté,
> Qui plus de .M. hommes mordris et estranlés.
> En la forest d'Ardane, où il a conversé."

p. 101, l. 3194. "chel;" perhaps for *chol*, jaw. The French text has *cief*.

p. 102, l. 3202. "By oure;" on what is ours they live. French text, "Et vivent tout du nostre."

p. 102, l. 3222. "heþenene." A relic of the old genitive plural ending in *-ene*: so in *P. Plowman* we have *kingenen*, of kings.

p. 102, l. 3227. In the French text the engineer is named Mahon.

p. 102, l. 3228. "Foule verde with þe tour;" it fared ill with those in the tower.

p. 102, l. 3233. "armedem in syker wede." French text:—

> "Cascune avoit vestu .i. hauberc fremillon,
> Et lacié en son cief .i. vert elme réom."

p. 103, l. 3263. "boȝes of brake." Bows with a rack or winch, cross-bows of the largest size and strongest tension.

> "With alblastis also [thai] atlet to shote,
> With big *bowes of brake* byrkit full hard."
> *Troy Book*, ed. Panton and Donaldson, 5728.

See the meaning of the term fully discussed in Prof. Skeat's note on *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 293:—

> "Setteth *bowes of brake*, and brasene gonnes."

A *gunne* was a machine for casting stones, a catapult.

p. 103, l. 3267. "wilde fyr;" a combustible mixture, otherwise termed Greek fire. In *Richard Cœur de Lion*, 2463, we read of a vessel laden "with wylde fyr and other vytayle;" and at l. 5229, of the besiegers of a castle blowing "wylde fyr in trumpes of gynne." "Wyylde Fyyr. *Spartus: ignis Pelasgus, vel ignis Grecus.*" Prompt. Parv., on which see Mr. Way's note.

p. 104, ll. 3280, 3281. Notice the different genders of the pronouns, *he*, *hit*.

p. 104, l. 3282. "schaly;" to peel off, drop off like scales.

p. 104, l. 3286. Soon it will be our lot (it will betide) to be burnt to ashes.

p. 104, l. 3289. "Melk of þe camele," &c. Caxton in his *Mirrour of the world*, pt. II. cap. 21, speaking of "grekyssh fyre," says that "it can not be quenchyd with water, but with *aysel*, vryne, or with sonde only. The Sarasyns selle this water right dere and derrer than they doo good wyne."

p. 104, l. 3295. "þy doȝter dede." So we find "suster sone; moder half," &c. See Introduction, and l. 3448.

p. 105, l. 3310. "Springold;" or springal, an ancient military engine for hurling stones, arrows, &c.

> "And sum þai went to þe wal
> With bowes and with *springal*."—*Beves of Hamtoun*, p. 159.

A deed of Edward II, dated 1325, in Rymer's *Fœdera*, mentions "Springaldos, *balistas, arcus, sagittas, ingenia, et alias hujusmodi armaturas pro munitione*

castrorum et villarum." See Meyrick's *Antient Armour.* Cotgrave gives "*Espringalle.* An ancient engin of warre, whereon stones, pieces of iron, and great arrowes were shot at the wals of a beleagured Towne, and the defenders thereof: (now out of use.)"

p. 105, l. 3323. "y wot rizt wel to wisse." See note to l. 120

p. 105, l. 3324. "wold." So in *Sir Perceval,* ed. Halliwell, 2006—

> "The geant stode in his holde,
> That *had* those londis *in wolde.*"

p. 106, l. 3345. Here in the French text Balan begins to curse Mahomet and all his gods, but is rebuked by Sortybrant. In the *Sowdone* Balan seizes the image of Mahoun and smashes it, whereat all the priests and bishops fall on their knees and cry—"Mahoun thyn ore," which the editor has curiously explained as "thy golden image!"

p. 106, l. 3352. "be-trend;" involved. See note to l. 4006 below.

p. 106, l. 3377. "launce ne kepede he non;" he cared for no lance, did not care to take a lance with him.

p. 107, l. 3385. "for arsoun;" the fore saddle-bow. Each saddle had two *arsouns,* one in front and one behind. "*Arçon,* a saddle-bow," Cotgrave. See Halliwell, *s. v.* Arson.

p. 107, l. 3389. "i-broched;" spitted, transfixed.

p. 109, l. 3448. "ys syster sone." The sign of the genitive case is frequently omitted before words beginning with a sibilant.

p. 109, l. 3450. "& þan lest he ys blys;" and then loseth he all his pleasure.

p. 109, l. 3475. "þanne hymen bad þe duk Gyoun," &c. In the French text Guy offers of his own accord to go, but Floripas will not hear of his doing so.

p. 110, l. 3481. "y am sumdel stryken in age." French text—"je suis de grant ané."

p. 110, l. 3499. "at nessche & hard;" lit. in soft and hard. A proverbial phrase meaning "in every way, in every point." See note to l. 3019.

p. 110, l. 3511. "þe beste red ys þat y can;" the best plan which I know is, &c.

p. 112, l. 3555. "vilentyne." French text, "Oisiaus et volatisses." See the Glossary.

p. 113, l. 3600. "By a fer contraye;" by a great distance, a long way.

p. 114, l. 3625. "was nozt so ferred ys fon;" had not got so far from his foes. See also l. 5565 below.

p. 115, l. 3657. "brochyng;" spurring. So in *Morte Arthure,* ed. Brock, l. 918: "*Brochez* the baye stede, & to the buske rydez," and *Langtoft,* p. 277: "Ther stedes *broched* thei fast." "*Brocher un cheval des esperons.* To spurre him, to strike him with the spurres; also to spurre him hard, almost to sticke him with spurring," Cotgrave.

p. 115, l. 3659. "Of quente entaille was is stede," &c. French text:—

> "Sor .i. destrier d'Arabe, qui plus cort que levrierz,
> Couvert d'un rice paile, menu est entailliez . . . .
> L'un costé avoit plus blanc que n'est flors en pré,
> Et l'autre avoit plus roge que charbon alumé,
> Le keue paonace, le bu en haut levé.

Plus menu que pietris est li cevaus gietés,
La cuisse grosse et corte, les piés plas et coupés.
Et ot droite l'eskine et les crins acesmés,
Petites oreilletes, maigre chief, ample nés.
Moult ot largue le pis, les ex et vairs et clers;
Tout estoit comme pie par devant vaironnés.
La sele fu d'ivoire dont il fu enselés,
Et de .iiij. fors chaingles fu li cevaus chainglés;
Li estrier furent d'or, rices fu li poitrés;
.C. campanetes d'or i pendent de tous lés.
Quant li cevans galope, ki tant est abrievés,
Li sons de campanetes est tans dous et soués,
N'i vaut lai ne vielle .ii. deniers monnéés.
Li paiens l'esperonne par andeus les costés,
Et li destriers li saut .xxx. piés mesurés,
Et vait ensi bruiant comme foudre et oré."

p. 115, l. 3667. "ket;" this word seems here to mean "quickly, furiously." It is a word of rare occurrence, but is found twice in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, ll. 330, 3793, where we also find the adverb *ketli*, *ketly*, ll. 1986, 2105, and 3023. See Professor Skeat's note in the Glossary *s. v.* where he suggests that possibly it may be another form of the O.E. *skeet*, O.N. *skjóttr*, sharp, quick, in the same way as we find the two forms, *moulder* and *smoulder*; *knap* and *snap*, &c. The word occurs also in *P. Plowman*, A. xi. 56, where the meaning seems to be *acute*, *sharp*.

p. 115, l. 3686. "for a þousend pound of golde." French text, "pour .xiiij. cités."

p. 116, l. 3693. "grope to þat gerse;" felt the wound (*gash*). "A garse: *scara vel scaria.* To garse, *scarificare*," *Cathol. Anglicum.* Palsgrave has "Garsshe in wode or in a knife, *boche*," and Huloet, "Garse or cutte, *incisura.*" "A garse or gash, *incisura.*" *Manip. Vocab.*

p. 116, l. 3699. "entamy;" make any effect on. French text reads "enpirier," which Cotgrave renders by "impaire, imbase, or make worse."

p. 116, l. 3704. "In to þe feld it fleȝ." French text:—

"Le cief li a trencié près du bu, rés à rés;
Plus d'une longe toise en est avant salés."

p. 116, l. 3708. "þat comeþ after gon;" a curious expression, where the *gon* appears superfluous.

p. 116, l. 3713. "morel;" properly a dark-coloured horse. See *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 9. French text reads, *Bauçant.* "*Morée*, a kind of murrey, or dark-red colour. *Cheval moreau*, a black horse," Cotgrave.

p. 116, l. 3721. "ouer-towart:" athwart, across. French text, en travers.

p. 117, l. 3735. "Fyfty stedes." French text, xiiij.

p. 118, l. 3763. "wot to wys." See note to l. 120.

p. 118, l. 3765. "For ȝe hyre," &c. Probably we should read—"For ȝe schal hyre," &c.

p. 119, l. 3804. "Me nyste nowar ys pere;" nowhere was his equal known.

p. 119, l. 3820. "ryȝd[t]." Compare l. 956.

p. 119, l. 3825. "snel;" sharp, careful.

"Teche hem alle to be war and *snel*,
That they conne sey þe wordes wel."
Mirc's Instructions for Parish Priests, ed. Peacock, p. 4, l. 121.

p. 120, l. 3835. "Hym schel beo betre han y-leued;" it will be better for him to have left it (not done so).

p. 120, l. 3851. "Messager." French text, "drugemans," a dragoman, which Cotgrave gives as "*Druguement*, a Trucheman, or Interpretor."

p. 121, l. 3863. "As foul þat fleþ on þe lift;" in the air, aloft.

p. 121, l. 3875. "pautener." See note to l. 859.

p. 121, l. 3876. "He sent þe so to saye." See note to l. 1808.

p. 121, l. 3878. "& ys by-stole awaye." The only other instance of this word of which I am aware is in Laȝamon's *Brut*, 28,422; "and *bistal* from þan fihte."

p. 121, l. 3886. "tyȝd." See l. 1817.

p. 121, l. 3888. "A skuntede als a bore;" he foamed like a wild boar. In the prose *Fierabras* the reading is—"il commenca à escumer come sil fust vng senglier eschauffe," which Caxton translates—"he began to scumme at the mouthe lyke a bore enchaffed." "*Escumer*, to foame," Cotgrave.

p. 122, l. 3893. "orn;" ran. A.S. *rinnan*, *irnan*, *eornan*. *Orn* occurs in the *Ancren Riwle*, p. 188, and in *Laȝamon* we have such forms as *irnen*, *urnen*, *eornen*. See also *P. Plowman*, C. xix. 165, and *Stratmann*, s. v. *Rinnan*.

p. 124, l. 3956. "wyt ase melkys fom." Compare *Sir Degrevant*, l. 1386: "whyȝth as the seeys fame." The French text reads, "fu blans comme nois." See also l. 5879, below.

p. 124, l. 3968. "thro;" sharp, swift; "hur peinis were so *þroo*." *Sir Triamour*, l. 405, and *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, 3264; "wiþ þre M. of men þat *þro* were to fiȝt."

p. 124, l. 3984. "Er he a-liȝte adoun." French text, "il estoit descendus son ceval recengler."

p. 125, l. 3987. "sterrede." See before, l. 3923.

p. 125, l. 4006. "betrende;" to wind round, involve him. See Chaucer, *Troilus and Cresseide*, 4080, and l. 3352 above, which are the only other instances of the word of which I am aware, although the simple verb *trende* is not so rare.

p. 125, l. 4015. "fayne y wolde þe croune of — ȝelde." French text:—

"Je vous rent la couronne dont je suis couronnés;
Jamais jour de ma vie n'en tenrai l'ireté."

p. 126, l. 4031. "þe Ameral haueþ y-gadred," &c. French text:—

"De toute paienime a ses barons mandés."

Gwenelon here, in the French text, makes the speech which is afterwards, ll. 4163 to 4186, attributed in the English version to Hautefulle.

p. 127, l. 4075. "Malkare." French text, "Macaires."

p. 128, l. 4109. "lond ne rente." French text:—"n'ot de terre .i. arpent."

p. 128, l. 4119. "rybaud." French text, "glous."

p. 129, l. 4146. "ȝour summe;" some of you. Compare l. 677.

p. 129, l. 4157. "þe amendes a profrede him," &c. French text:—

"Au duc Renier de Genes a son gage donné."

p. 130, l. 4176. "An ten ȝer ate leste." French text, "seul .xx. ans."

p. 130, l. 4187. "enchanted so;" persuaded, deceived. Literally translated from the French text:—

"Là ont li träitour Karlemaine encanté."

"*Enchanter;* to charme, inchant, bewitch; bleare the eyes, deceive the understanding," Cotgrave.

p. 132, l. 4241. "Raol Mountferant." French text, "Raoul le Ferrant."

p. 133, l. 4291. "on hymen ylong;" through them, by their help. The phrase is still common, though now become vulgar: "it is all along of you," *i. e.* "it is all through you." Chaucer uses it—

"I can not tell *wheron it was along*,
But wel I wot gret strif is us among," C. T. 16398.

p. 134, l. 4327. "Cyuyle grant;" great Seville.

p. 135, l. 4338. "Hit were noȝt worþ a slo." So in *Havelok*, ed. Skeat, 2051: "Of hem ne ȝeue ich nouht a slo." Compare ll. 4930, 4975, 5442, below.

p. 135, l. 4357. "at my paye;" to please me, to my mind.

p. 136, l. 4371. "sarplers;" sacks, packing-cases. "*Sarpilliére*, a sarpliar: a peece of canvas, cloth, or other stuffe to wrap or packe up wares in," Cotgrave. The French text reads—"Es sarpeillieres lient toursiaus d'erbe fenée."

p. 136, l. 4385. "Raol of Mans." French, "Raoul d'Amiens." Compare l. 4423.

p. 136, l. 4393. "tyd þe haue." The change of pronoun is curious.

p. 137, l. 4405. "terme of al hur age;" in all their life-time.

p. 137, l. 4423. "Muche maugre mote he han," &c. See note to l. 3061. French text—"Se bien ne m'i combat, recréans sui prouvés."

p. 137, l. 4435. Compare *Bevis of Hamtoun*, p. 91:

"His berd was bothe gret and rowe,
A space of a fot betwene is browe."

p. 138, l. 4437. "ys nose cammus;" flat-nosed. So Chaucer says of the Miller, "Round was his face and *camois* was his nose." *Reeve's Tale*, l. 14, and again, l. 54, he describes the Miller's daughter as having "*camoys* nose, and eyghen gray as glas." Cotgrave gives: "*Camus*, flat-nosed. *Camuser*, to flatten, or quash down the nose, to breake the bridge of the nose, to make flat-nosed."

p. 138, l. 4463. "cloþes of tarse," a species of silken stuff formerly much esteemed.

"In *toges of Tarsse* fulle richelye attyrede."—*Morte Arthure*, 3189.

This cloth was said to derive its name from *Tharsia* adjoining Cathay (China), whence it came. Ducange explains *Tarsicus* as "panni preciosioris species." See *P. Plowman*, B. xv. 163, and Professor Skeat's note thereon.

p. 139, l. 4465. "god won;" good plenty. Cf. l. 3560.

p. 141, l. 4539. "non hoȝe;" no fear, alarm. *Hoȝheful* occurs in the *Ormulum*, 2902, and *hohfulle* in *Laȝamon*, 14096. A.S. *hoga*. "be-toȝe;" dressed, covered.

p. 141, l. 4553. "stilp of ok;" a post of oak, *stub*. See Halliwell, *s. v.* Stolpe. The French text has—"un marbre encontré, Autresi le caupa comme un baston alé."

The Rev. Barton Lodge, in the Introduction to his edition of *Palladius* (E. E. T. Soc.), p. ix, says—"In the Corporation Rolls, preserved amongst the Colchester Records, we find that in the 3rd and 4th Richard II, a sufficient piece of land was granted to place three *stulps* to support a certain vine opposite the house of one Clement, a dyer in North Street; and 'in 4th and 5th Edward II, Hugh de Stowe raised two *stulps* under his vine opposite his tenement in Chero.'"

p. 142, l. 4588. "a rank;" in a rush, with a charge.

p. 144, l. 4649. "Muche was þe noise & þat cry," &c. French text—"Moult par fu grans la noise et li hus et li cris;" great was the *hue and cry*.

p. 144, l. 4652. "Enfachoun." French text, "Effraons."

p. 145, l. 4663. "Had ykept hem wiþ busynesse;" had nursed them carefully. French text, "les avoit bien nourris."

p. 145, l. 4664. "Algate." A distinctively Northern adverb. See Introduction.

p. 145, l. 4668. "barers;" the bar, gate, barrier. Notice the other form of the word in l. 4679:

> "The folk that assaȝeand wer
> At mary ȝet, to-hewyn had
> The *barras*, and a fyre had maid."
>
> *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, xvii. 756.

p. 145, l. 4678. "tilde;" reached. A.S. *teldan*, "*telded* on lofte," *Alliterative Poems*, ed. Morris, 2. 1342. Compare l. 59.

p. 146, l. 4707. "to done." The gerundial infinitive: see Introduction.

p. 146, l. 4721. "Ho-so þis day," &c. French text:—

> "Honis soit li frans hom qui vient au couarder."

p. 147, l. 4751. "wyþ-oute distaunce;" without fighting. "A Distance, *Distancia, & cetera:* vbi Debate," *Cathol. Anglicum;* on which see my note.

p. 147, l. 4753. "Godes for-bode;" may there be God's prohibition.

> "ix. tymes *Goddis forbott*, thou wikkyde worme,
> Thet ever thou make any rystynge."
>
> A charm for the tooth-ache, from the Thornton MS. printed in *Reliq. Antiq.* I. 126.

In the Percy Folio MS., ed. Furnivall and Hales, *Robin Hood*, &c., p. 18, l. 59, vol. I. we read—"'Now, Marry, *gods forbott*,' said the Sheriffe, 'that euer that shold bee.'" The expression also occurs twice in Stafford's *Examination of Abuses*, 1581, New Shakspere Soc., ed. Furnivall, p. 73, where it is spelt "*God sworbote*."

p. 150, l. 4846. "& monaye whyt & blake." French text:—

> "Fin or et blanc argent et pailes de coulour."

"*Monnoye blanche*, brasse or copper coin silvered over. *Monnoye noire*, brasse, copper, or iron coine, unsilvered," Cotgrave.

p. 151, l. 4856. "molde;" the suture of the skull. See l. 4567, above.

p. 151, l. 4862. "for a somers charge of golde;" for a horse-load of money. "A charge; *Onus*," *Cath. Anglicum*.

p. 151, l. 4869. "After þe ȝer þat our lord was bore," &c. This line is an addition of the English translator. See the remarks in the Introduction, where it is shown that the date is almost exactly 200 years late, 980, instead of 775.

p. 153, l. 4930. "noȝt worþ a flye." French text, "ne valés une alie."

p. 154, l. 4974. "& we be-leue with-ynne;" and we remain, within. Chaucer uses *bileue* in the same sense, *Squire's Tale*, 583; see other examples in *Stratmann*, and compare ll. 1595 and 2623 above.

p. 154, l. 4975. "ȝyue a stre;" give, care a straw for. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xvii. 93, and Chaucer, C. T., F Group, l. 695.

p. 154, l. 4983. "saut;" assault. So we have *pele* for *appele*.

p. 155, l. 4993. "pykoys & howes;" pickaxes and hooks. The modern *pick-axe* is simply a tautological corruption of the French *picois*, a mattock, pickaxe. In the *Paston Letters*, ed. Gairdner, I. 106, we find *pikoys* as here used as a plural, and so in the *Handlyng Synne*, ll. 940-1:

> "Mattok is a *pykeys*
> Or a pyke, as sum men seys."

"*Forsorium*, a byll or a pykeys," *Medulla Grammatice*.

p. 156, l. 5030. "hure haberkes ritte;" split, cut. So in *Sir Tristram*, p. 33:—

> "The breche adoun he threst
> He *ritt*, and gan to right:"

and in *Havelok*, l. 2495:—

> "Sket cam a ladde with a knif,
> And bigan rith at þe to
> For to *ritte*, and for to flo."

See l. 5339, below.

p. 157, l. 5057. "Wel two C." French text, "M."

p. 157, l. 5077. "cloþ of tarse." See note to l. 4463, above.

p. 158, l. 5087. "Certys y dude gret folye," &c. French text adds:

> "Fols est ki fame croit, on l'a dit grant pieça."

p. 158, l. 5092. "lyme & lyþ;" limb and body. Compare the common expression, "body and bones."

p. 159, l. 5127. "Wyt þat þe selue;" blame thyself for that.

p. 159, l. 5133. "breke him heued & arm." French text, "brisastes son nés."

p. 160, l. 5174. "Of cowardyse ous moȝe arette;" may accuse us of, or attribute to us, cowardice. So in Chaucer, *Knight's Tale*, 1871:—

> "It nas *aretted* him no vyleinye,
> Ther may no man clepe it no cowardye.

"to Aritte. *Ascribere, deputare, imputare*," *Cath. Anglicum*, on which see my note. Wyclif also uses the word in 2 *Corinth.* v. 19, "not retting to hem her giltis."

p. 160, l. 5177. "syt on my bok;" lit. sits on my back, *i. e.* remains with me.

p. 161, l. 5185. "þat ys herte ne by-gan to cacche;" that did not pluck up courage. French text:—

> "N'i a celui d'aus tous n'ait vertu recouvrée."

p. 162, l. 5221. "a carful iornee:" a sad day's work, a hard time.

p. 162, l. 5240. "Ay tweyne aȝen hem one;" quite two against their one.

p. 163, l. 5265. "for-þan;" for this reason, because. The expression occurs in *Laȝamon*, l 989, and in the *Castel off Loue*, ed. Weymouth, l. 1072: "And he scholde neuer die *for* þon."

p. 163, l. 5278. "þan al þat god y owe;" than all the goods, wealth I own.

p. 164, l. 5301. "perschede." See l. 941, and note thereon.

p. 164, l. 5313. "felaschip;" companion. The French text has:—

"Onques n'i vot mener ne per ne compaignon."

See note in *Cath. Anglicum*, *s.v.* Felischippe.

p. 165, l. 5335. "make þy fyn;" pay the penalty, make amends.

p. 165, l. 5339. "A clew ys heued," &c.; he scratched (*clawed*) his head and tore his hood. For *riȝte* see l. 5030, above.

p. 165, l. 5341. "& prauncede," &c.; and stamped about, and puffed and blew, as if he were mad.

p. 165, l. 5342. "or was after longe;" lit. before it was long time after, *i. e.* for a long time.

p. 166, l. 5353. "Bruyllant, þat was kyng of Mountmyrrant." In the French text no name is given to the Saracen slain by Gwenylon: Bruyllant, who is called Balan's brother, comes on the scene at l. 5417, below. It appears to be an oversight of the translator.

p. 166, l. 5366. "a propre siȝte." The word *proper* is still used in this very phrase with the meaning of *worth seeing*, fine, but it has descended to the level of a slang term.

p. 168, l. 5425. "spillyng of speche;" great telling of news, great talk. French text, "grant ioie."

p. 168, l. 5437. "on hure hepe;" in their gathering, army.

p. 168, l. 5442. "þe value of a kerse;" the value of a rush (cress). This very expression is still kept up: men say a thing is not "worth a curse," but the true meaning of the last word is quite forgotten. *P. Plowman*, C. xii. 14: "*Nat worth a carse.*" Compare ll. 124: "he douteþ he kyng ne Emperour, *þe value of a rysshe;*" and ll. 4338, "noȝt worþ a slo;" 5722, "þe worthy of a pere;" and 5847, "y nolde ȝyue a pyse."

p. 168, l 5443. "fyede þar-on;" expressed his disgust at it.

p. 169, l. 5453. "v. batail;" five divisions. In the French text it is *ten*, the second five being entrusted to Alorys, Macaire, Hardres, Amaugis, and Sanses. "*Bataille*, any squadron, battallion, or part of an army," Cotgrave.

p. 170, l. 5482. "Euery ȝer to rente;" every year as a tax.

p. 170, l. 5484. "Blanchard." A common name for a *white* horse.

p. 171, l. 5520. "prout on pres;" bold in battle. A not uncommon expression in alliterative poems.

p. 171, l. 5526. Here the author of the English version has most unaccountably omitted no less than 125 lines of his original. This may have arisen from one or other of three causes:—

(1) He may have *intentionally* omitted the lines; or (2) he may have turned over two leaves; or (3) the lines may not have been in the MS. from which he made his translation.

As to (1), I do not think it at all probable that the translator would intentionally have omitted the passage: against such a view the strongest argument is the closeness with which he has throughout the remainder of the poem followed his original.

Neither do I think (2) more probable. When we consider the care with which he has revised his poem we can hardly conceive that he would be satis-

fied with only *one* reading of his original, and it is hardly probable that the same accident should have happened more than once.

We are, therefore, reduced to (3), which is not at all impossible.

As, however, the author may have intentionally omitted the passage I give it here instead of in the text.

'Par Mahomet, dist il, tous serés afolé;	He threatens the French.
Quant passastes Mautrible, musart fustes prové.	
Jamais en douce France ne serés retorné,	
Et anuit perdra Karles du miex de son barné.'	
Richars de Normendie a le Turc escouté,	Richard charges at and slays him.
Le destrier laisse coure, si a à lui jousté;	
L'escu li a percié et le hauberc saffré,	
Parmi le gros du pis li mist le fer quarré,	
Si souef l'abat mort qu'il n'a brait ne crié.	
'Outre, dist l'empereres, trop vous estes vantés.'	
Richars de Normendie trait le branc aceré,	
Tost en feri .i. Turc dusque au neu du baudré.	
Francois passent à force le grant val Josué;	The French force their way to the valley of Aigremont,
Jusque au plain d'Aigremore n'i ot regne tiré.	
Là trouverent la force de Balant l'amiré;	
En sa compaigne furent .xxx. roi couronné,	
Et .c^{m}. paien, que Persant, que Escler.	where the Emir is with 100,000 men.
Cil qui vienent fuiant li ont dit et conté	
Que ses freres est mors et la gent c'ot mené.	
Quant l'entent l'amirans, tout a le sanc mué.	Balan laments over the death of his brother.
Dont s'ont li estandart li maistre cor sonné.	
L'amirans en apele son neveu Tempesté,	
Sortinbrant de Connibre, son consillier privé:	
'Baron, dist l'amirans, n'i soiés oublié;	
Je vous di et commant, s'entendre me volés,	
Tant me querés Karlon que vous le me trovés;	
Et se jou ne l'ocis, poi pris ma poetés:	
Moi ne caut se je muir, quant je l'arai tué?	
Quant Sortinbras l'entent, s'a de pité plouré.	
Li amirans cevauce, qui de corage ot fier;	Description of Balan.
Ricement fu armés ser le courant destrier.	
En toute paienime n'ot .i. si boin coursier,	
Si estoit trestous novis com meure de morier.	
Toutes ses armes furent ouvrées à ormier.	
Large ot la forcéure, le cors grant et plenier;	
Par desus la ventaille fait sa barbe lacier,	
Plus est blance que noif, quant ciet après fevrier,	
Contreval li pendoit jusque au neu du braier.	
Li amirans commande s'ensaigne à despoier,	He orders his standard to be unfurled,
Devant les Sarrazins se prent à eslaisier.	
Dont sonnerent ensanble .c. graile menuier.	
A bataile cevaucent et font lor gent rengier;	and places his archers in front.
On premier cief devant estoient li arcier,	
Pour les nos desconfire as ars turcois mainier.	
Adonques véissiés .i. estour commencier,	
L'un mort par desus l'autre verser et trebucier;	A fierce combat ensues.
Moult i ot grant dolor au traire et au lancier.	

As ars trucois commencent les nos à damagier ;
Plus menu que gresins font sajetes lancier.
Atant es vous poignant le preu comte Renier,
Celui de Genevois, qui fu pere Olivier.
Sortinbran de Connibre a encontré premier,
Grant cop li vait donner, nel vaut plus esparnier,
Ses escus ne li vaut ne maille ne denier,
La maille a trespassé du blanc hauberc doublier,
La lance o le penon li fait on cors baignier,
Des arçons l'abat mort, le cuvert losengier.
Quant Sortinbrans cai, la hante fist brisier,
Et Reniers trait l'espée, dont bien se sot aidier
Paien et Sarrazin commencent à hucier ;
Ki estui atendra moult ara mal loier.
.I. Sarrazins s'en torne, l'amirant va noncier
Que 'mors est Sortinbras, que tans aviés cier.'
Quant l'amirans l'entent, le sens cuide cangier.
'Ha! dist-il, Sortinbrans, tant vous avoie chier,
Quant je vous ai perdu, moult m'en doit anuier ;
Jamais ne monra Turs ki tant faice à priser ;
De duel erragerai se ne vous puis vengier.'

Renier encounters Sortibrant,

and slays him.

The Sarasins are panic-stricken.

Balan's grief at the death of Sortibrant.

Moult fu pour Sortinbran l'amirans esmaians.
Par mautalent s'en torne coureciés et dolens,
Le morel laise coure, ki sous lui va bruiant,
Sour l'escu de son col fiert Huon de Milant.
Trestous est pourfendus, rons est li jaserans ;
Le fer li a conduit par ambe .ii. les flans,
Mort l'abat du ceval, ce fu damaige grans.
Quant la lance brisa, si a trait le nu branc,
Mort a .xv. Francois et .xiiii. Normans,
Souvent crie: 'Aigremore! vengiés ert Sortinbrans!
Or vous ferai connoistre venus est l'amirans :
Ancui sera destrius li barnages des Frans,
Jamais .i. en sa tere ne sera repairans ;
Karlon enmerrai prins par les grenons ferrans ;
Avoec lui ert pendus Oliviers et Rollans.'
A ce mot enforcierent li paien l'amirant ;
De nostre gent destruire est cascuns desirans.

He charges at the French

and slays Huon of Milan,

and 15 French and 14 Norman soldiers.

The Saracens rally.

Moult fu grant la bataille et li cap e felon.
Atant es vous poignant le conte Guenelon,
Hardré et Alori, d'Autefoelle Grifon,
Et le pere Herviu, Macaire de Lion,
Et l'orguelleus barnage brocant à esperon.
A l'abaisier des lances font tel ocision
Que plus de mil paien trebucent on sablon.
Atant es l'amirant sur le noir aragon ;
Amont parmi son heaume ala ferir Milon.
Ne li valut li cercles vaillant .i. augueton ;
Tout l'éust pourfendu enfresi c'au menton,
Mais l'espée torna, por tant ot garison.
Le destrier li copa par devant son archon ;
Tost trebuca à tere par desus le sablon.

Balan throws Milo from his horse,

Quant il ne l'a ocis ne se prise .i. bouton;
L'amirans le saisi à l'aubere fremillon,
A .ii. mains le leva sur l'auferrant gascon; — and tries to carry him off prisoner,
Ja l'en éust porté jusque à son pavillon, — but is surrounded.
Mais l'orguelleus lignages li est tous environ.
Là ot as brans d'acier si faite caplison,
Ja fust li amirans detenus en prison,
Mais au secourre vinrent tantost mil Esclavun. — 1000 Saracens come to his aid.
Là oïssiés grant noise et grande husion;
Le feu gregois geterent tout ardant à bandon,
François menent ferant le trait à .i. boujon.
Ja fuissent desconfit sans nule raenchon, — The French are almost defeated,
Quant Fierabras i vint, qui moult amoit Karlon.
Iluec fist de paiens moult grant ocision,
Tenpesté a ocis, le neveu Rubion, — but Ferumbras comes to the rescue.
Et bien plus de .l. du lignage Mahon.
Mais de paiens i ot à si très grant fuison,
Se Damediex n'en pense, qui souffri passion,
Ancui iront François à grant destruision.

La bataille fu grans, longuement a duré.
Ja fuissent no François moult malement mené,
Quant de la tour sont tuit nostre conte avalé.

p. 172, l. 5532. "A-strayey on þe grene." See l. 3729.

p. 172, l. 5542. "þe scheldtromes;" battalions, regiments. Halliwell quotes from *Vegecius*, MS. Douce 291, leaf 5:—"How he schal have for knowynge and wys insyȝt of all perellis and harmes that liȝtliche mowe bifalle in scheltromes or batailes." *Sceld-trume* and *sceld-trome* occur in *Laȝamon*. See also *Octovian*, Weber's *Metr. Romances*, 1505; *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 294; and Trevisa's *description of the Battle of Hastings*, "ar the scheltroms come to-gedders." A.S. *scýld-truma*, lit. a troop-shield, then an armed company or battalion of soldiers.

p. 172, l. 5549. "foþer." See before, l. 641, and *Alisaunder*, Weber's Romances, 1809.

p. 173, l. 5565. "afferede hem oȝt myche;" got much distance from them. Compare l. 3625, before: "Richard was noȝt so *ferred* ys fon." In the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*, ed. Morris, p. 178, we read—"to cachie and *uerri* þane dyuel uram him." A.S. *feorrian*.

p. 173, l. 5579. "also hot;" at once. Compare the phrase *foot-hot*, with all possible speed, in Chaucer, *Man of Lawes Tale*, B. 438, and *fut-hate* in *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, iii. 418.

p. 174, l. 5601. "þe amountance of a fotes spas," &c. The original French is more moderate—"Li amirans fu graindres de Karlon demi pié."

p. 174, l. 5615. "iambeaus." Armour for the legs, covering them both front and rear: in this particular they differed from the *greaves*, which only protected the shins. "*Jambiere;* a greave, leg-harnesse, or, armour for a leg," Cotgrave.

p. 175, l. 5627. "cornel;" the circle of gold and precious stones round the helmet. See l. 623, above: "To-flente;" flew in pieces. French text:—

"Grant caup donna Karlon sur l'eame qui verdie,
Que les flours et les pieres tout contreval en guie."

p. 175, l. 5630. "athelde;" restrained, kept back. See *Laȝamon*, 10,970, 13,825, &c.

p. 175, l. 5631. "genyllere;" knee-armour. "*Genouilleres*, pully-pieces (armour) for the knees," Cotgrave. "Chauceore;" the same as we have had before, l. 235, called "hosen of mayle." "*Chausseure*, a hosing, or shooing; also, hosen, or shooes," Cotgrave.

p. 175, l. 5638. "anlas." French text, "une misericorde," of which Meyrick, *Antient Armour*, *Glossary*, says—"said to have been so named because with this the knights obliged their antagonists to call for mercy."

"An *anlas* and a gipser al of silk
Heng at his girdel."—Chaucer, *C. T. Prologue*, 357.

p. 175, l. 5640. "foygnede;" thrust at, tried to stab. So in *Morte Arthure*, l. 1898:—

"Thare faughtte we in faythe, and *foynede* with sperys."

And Chaucer, *Knightes Tale*, 796:—

"And after that with scharpe speres stronge
They *foynen* ech at other wonder longe."

p. 175, l. 5648. "Ac arst was muche ado." French text:—

"Mais il i ot anchois moult grant tenchonnerie."

p. 176, l. 5665. "Wel heȝe schalt þou an-honged be." French text:—

"Je te ferai ardoir ens en la poi boulie."

p. 176, l. 5682. "Al þi song is wailawai." *Owl and Nightingale*, l. 219.

p. 177, l. 5693. "geryȝoun;" treasure. The word occurs in *Laȝamon* in the forms *gœrsume*, *gersume*, and *garsume*. For other instances see Stratmann.

p. 177, l. 5694. After this line in the original French come the following:—

"Corsable de Valnuble son ceval trestorna,
Desi jusque à la mer onques ne s'aresta,
Au roi de Capadoce les nouveles conta
Que Karles Aigremore et l'amirant prins a;
Sacié's moult ert dolens quant il ice sara.
Plus de .C^m^. Furs pour ice rasambla,
Sor Guion de Borgoigne à force les mena,
Sa tere et son païs li destruist et gasta.
Plus de .vii. mois entiers li sieges i dura;
D'un roit trencant espiel ens ou cors le navra.
Mais Karles l'emperere, qui Espaigne gasta,
Quant il revint ariere, fierement li aida."

p. 177, l. 5716. "wende faste;" moved, twisted himself fast.

p. 177, l. 5722. "þe worthy of a pere;" the value of a pear. Compare *Richard the Redeles*, ed. Skeat, Prol. 73: "It shulde nat apeire hem *a peere*," and *Morte Arthure*, Globe edit. p. 377.

p. 177, l. 5724. "y-kened;" conceived. Of this word there are not many instances. It occurs in the Anglo-Saxon Version of St. Matthew, i. 20:—"þæt on hyre *acenned* was, hyt ys of þam Halgan Gaste:" in the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*, ed. Morris, p. 12, "he wes *y-kend* of þe holi gost, and y-bore of þe mayde Marie;" and again, p. 263; and in *Laȝamon*, 26,128.

p. 178, l. 5725. "Wyþ-oute wem & wyþ-oute hore;" without spot or stain. *Hore* may perhaps mean adultery, as Halliwell explains it; probably it does

in the present instance, where the French text reads—"En la sainte Virge puciele s'aombra." Halliwell quotes from a MS. of Caius Coll. Camb. 107:—

"Syth the tyme that Cryst Ihesu
Thorough hys grace and vertu,
Was in this world *bore*
Of a mayd withowt hore."

p. 178, l. 5730. "hyne;" servants, followers. Compare *P. Plowman*, Prol. 39—"Qui turpiloquium loquitur, is luciferes hyne."

p. 178, l. 5747. "Contenance made he," &c. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xvi. 121: "A contenance he made, And preynte vpon pacience."

p. 178, l. 5753. "cracchede." French text, ecraca. "*Escraser*, to squash downe, beat flat, crush in pieces with much pressing, or hard leaning on," Cotgrave.

p. 179, l. 5761. "colour;" pretext, means. "*Colour*, a fayned matter," Palsgrave.

p. 179, l. 5763. "þanne spak Florippe," &c. In the Provençal version Floripas joins Ferumbras in begging Charles to spare her father's life and in entreating Balan to consent to be baptised. In the *Sowdone* there is no mention of either of them interfering either for or against their father.

p. 179, l. 5772. "on what londe þat he lende;" in whatever country he might settle.

p. 180, l. 5809. "sysst;" seest. A form invented *metri gratia*. *Syxt* occurs in Wright's *Popular Treatises on Science*, p. 134, and in the *Castel of Loue*, l. 8.

p. 180, l. 5815. "& bot if he þanne wold take fulloȝt." French text:—

"Et se il ne puet estre à ceste fois matés."

p. 180, l. 5819. "þat man." French text adds, "Ce est .i. vis diables."

p. 180, l. 5821. "ȝe aboute goes;" you are labouring in vain, lit. going in a circle.

p. 181, l. 5827. "wyþ wilde hors;" with savage horses. *Hors* is here plural, as shown by the form of the adjective.

p. 181, p. 5835. "skeer;" safe, free from. So in Wright's *Religious Songs*, iv. 78: "of blisse ȝe beoþ *skere*."

p. 181, l. 5840. "noȝt worþ a flye." This expression has occurred before, see l. 4930. It also occurs in Chaucer, *Canons Yeomans Tale*, l. 1150: "Or some what else, was *nat worth a flye*." Compare l. 437. French text:—"Ja ne vaut Mahomet .ii. deniers monnéés."

p. 181, l. 5845. "þat was on a croys y-don." The usual expression for "crucified" in early writers. For examples see *Gesta Romanorum*, ed. Herrtage, p. 179: "þey did him vppon the crosse, and spette on his face;" Myrc's *Instructions to Parish Priests*, p. 14, l. 437; Lonelich's *Holy Grail*, ed. Furnivall, xlix. 313, &c. "To do on crosse; *Crucifigere*," *Cathol. Anglicum*.

p. 181, l. 5847. "y nolde ȝyue a pyse;" I would not give a pea. *Pyse* or *pese* is a perfectly correct singular form (Latin *pisum*): the plurals *pesen*, *peses*, are frequently met with: see, for instance, *P. Plowman*, C. ix. 307: "of benes and of *peses*." A similar expression to that in the present line occurs in *P. Plowman*, C. ix. 166, "sette peers *at a pese*," accounted Piers at the value of a pea; *i. e.* set him at naught. See note to l. 5442.

p. 181, l. 5849. "on my lyue." Here we have the Northern adverb *on-lyue*, alive, during life. See Introduction.

p. 181, l. 5857. "for no pray;" for no entreaty.

p. 182, l. 5877. "anentes þilke neode;" with respect to this necessary condition, *i. e.* of his giving his assent.

p. 182, l. 5879. "þe melkis fom." We have already had this expression at l. 3956.

p. 182, l. 5881. "eȝene graye," &c. In the French text, l. 2014, Floripas is described as having "les ex *vairs* et rians plus d'un faucon mué," while in the *Destruction of Rome*, l. 256, we read—"Les ves avoit plus *noirs* que falcon montenier." So Chaucer (?) writes, "His eyen graie as is a faucon," where the original French is *vers*. *Romaunt of the Rose*, 546. In *Sir Eglamour*, l. 861, we read of "eyen grey as crystalle stone," from which Malone, in his *Shakspere*, iv. 118, edit. of 1821, conjectured that the term meant what we now call a *blue* eye. Thus in *Venus and Adonis*, l. 482, we have—

"Her two *blue* windows faintly she upheaveth,"

while at l. 140 the eyes of Venus are said to be "*grey* and bright." In the present instance there can be no doubt as to the colour intended. "*Oeil verd*, a grey eye." Cotgrave, "browes bent." See note to l. 4435, "ȝealwe traces;" fair tresses. So Chaucer, *Knighte's Tale*, 191:—

"Hire *ȝelwe heer* was browded in a *tresse*."

"y-trent;" perhaps plaited or curled.

p. 182, l. 5882. "Ech her;" each (every) part of them, *i. e.* of her tresses.

p. 182, l. 5883. "tretys;" slender and long. Cotgrave has: "*Traictif, nez traictif.* A pretty long nose, a nose of a graceful length. *Traictis, isse*, whence *Traictisses mains;* long and slender hands." "iantail," "*Gentil.* comely, sightly, pretty, neat, well-fashioned, goodly, faire," Cotgrave. "pure *fetys;*" perfectly well-proportioned, elegant. "*Faictis, isse*, neat, feat, comely, handsome, proper, well-made, well-featured, well set together," Cotgrave.

GLOSSARY.

Pr. (or *pt.*) *s.* = *present* (or *past*) *tense*, 3 *pers. sing.*
Pr. (or *pt.*) *pl.* = *present* (or *past*) *tense*, 3 *pers. pl.*
References starred are to the "original draught."

A, 47/1282, *adj.* one.

A, 101/3180, *adj.* all.

A, 134/4307, *prep.* on.

A, *passim. pron.* he.

AAN, 24/594, *adv.* on.

ABATAYLD, 134/4310, *pp.* embattled, fortified.

ABETTE, 180/5816, *vb.* aid, assist.

ABIEST, 169/5474, 2 *pr.* as *fut. s.* shalt suffer for, shalt pay for.

ABIGGET, 41/1063, *vb.* pay, suffer for it.

ABODE, 67/1985, *pt. pl.* delivered, told.

ABOWȜ, 107/3390. ABOȜEDE, 69/2070, *pt. s.* leant, stooped. ABOȜE, 95/2972, *pp.*

ABOȜT, 19/488, *pp.* bought, paid for.

ABOȜTE, 98/3072, *pt. pl.* paid, made a return for. *See* ABYE.

ABUDE, 63/1833, *vb.* deliver, tell. ABUST, 63/1844, 2 *pr. s.* A.S. *abeodan.*

ABULD, 3/74, *pp.* built, constructed.

A-BYE, 4/107, *vb.* pay for, suffer for.

AC, 2/49, *conj.* but.

ACORDED, 130/4158, *pt. pl.* became reconciled. "To Acorde; *vbi* to make frende." *Cath. Anglicum.*

ACOUPEDE, 56/1594, *pt. pl.* struck, encountred.

ACQUITE, 30/713, *vb.* repay, requite.

A-FERE, 13/387, *vb.* frighten, terrify. AFFEREST, 30/722, 2 *pr. s.*

AFFERREDE, 173/5565, *pt. pl.* distanced.

AFFERROM, 58/1674, *adv.* from afar, far off.

AFFIED, 32/756, *pt. s.* relied, trusted. Fr. *affier.*

AFFORN, 41/1080, *prep.* before.

AFFROUNT, 59/1689, *adv.* face to face, in line.

AFFULLED, 105/3335, *pp.* killed, felled.

AFONGE, 46/1237, *vb.* receive, meet with.

AFRIȜTE, 5/138, *pp.* frightened, afraid.

AFTERWART, 6/63, *adv.* after this, afterwards.

A-GAN, 76/2305, *pt.* gone, past.

AGASTE, 107/3410, *pp.* frightened.

AGRISE, 106/3370, AGRYSE, 54/1541, *vb.* be frightened. A.S. *agrisan.*

A-KELE, 139/4492, *vb.* be cooled. "To Kele; *frigidare, et cetera;* vbi to make calde." *Cath. Anglicum.*

AKER, 89/2770, *sb.* acre.

ALACCHE, 99/3098, *vb.* catch.

ALDRE, 180/5802, *adj.* of all. *Hure aldre syȜte,* the sight of them all.

ALED, 175/5653, *pp.* put down, prevented. A.S. *alecgan.*

ALIȜT, 55/1548, *pt. pl.* alighted, dismounted.

ALIȜTE, 46/1261, *vb.* light.

ALLE AND SOME, 54/1513, one and all, all.

ALLER-FERST, 180/5793, *adv.* first of all.

ALMYS, 64/1897, *sb.* alms, deed of charity.

AL-ONE, 7/50, *adj.* alone, singly, by himself.

ALOUTE, 128/4089, *vb.* bow, give place.

*ALRE, 13/381, *adj.* of all. ALRE MOST, 77/2342, most of all. *See also* ALLER, *and* ALDRE.

ALS, 18/474, *conj.* as. *Als so harde* = as hard.

ALYES, 127/4078, *sb. pl.* associates, friends.

AMAIEDE, 50/1377, *pp.* afraid, dismayed.

AMBLERE, 11/344, *sb.* amble, trot.

AMENDES, 54/1525, *sb.* reparation, amends. *See* Note

AMENDIE, 65/1917, *vb.* make satisfaction.

AMERAUNT, 21/532, *sb.* amiral, emir.

AMONGE, 7/209, *adv.* at times; *ofte amonge*, constantly.

AMORWE, 78/2369, *adv.* in the morning.

AMOUNTANCE, 174/5601, *sb.* amount, length.

AMOUNTY, 93/2919, *vb.* mean, amount to.

ANAN, 4/106, *adv.* at once, soon.

ANBETTYMENT, 78/2364, *sb.* abetting, helping.

ANBUSCHYMENȝ, 34/812, *sb.* ambush, ambuscade.

AND, 7/200, *conj.* if.

ANDRESSEDE, 130/4155, *pt. s.* set, placed himself.

ANDURIEþ, 102/3217, *vb.* endure, resist.

ANENTES, 182/5877, *prep.* concerning.

ANGER, 102/3208, *sb.* trouble, misfortune.

ANGRYDE, 89/2766, *pt. pl.* harassed.

ANGWISCHOUSE, 82/2500, *adj.* full of anguish, greatly grieved.

ANGWYS, 41/1080, *sb.* anguish, pain.

ANHEȝE, 46/1240, *adv.* in haste, speedily.

ANLAS, 175/5638, *sb.* a kind of knife or dagger, usually worn at the girdle.

ANONEWARD, 26/622, *prep.* upon, along. *See also* AUNDWARD.

ANPEYNEDEM, 27/665, *pt. s.* exerted himself. ANPEYNY, 94/2947, *imper.*

ANUYE, 106/3352, *sb.* annoyance, grief.

ANUYLT, 48/1308, *sb.* anvil. A.S. *anfilt.*

A-NYED, 12/364, *pp.* harassed, troubled.

APAID, 9/271, *adj.* pleased, satisfied,

APERCEUEDE, 31/739, *pt. s.* perceived. Fr. *apercevoir.*

APERTELY, 106/3359, *adv.* plainly, openly.

APLIȝT, 27/644. APLYȝT, 50/1393, *adv.* indeed, certainly.

APPON, 21/546. OPPON, 22/554, *prep.* upon, on, over.

AQUEYNT, 104/3288, *pp.* extinguished.

ARANK, 142/4588, *adv.* in a line.

ARAS, 2/46, *pt. s.* arose.

ARAUNDOUN, 34/824, *adv.* at full speed.

ARAUȝTE, 25/606, *pt. pl.* aimed, struck. A.S. *rǽcan.*

ARAWE, 143/4605, *adv.* in a row, in a line.

ARAY, 7/212, *sb.* condition, state.

ARBELASTE, 101/3174, *sb.* cross-bows.

ARECHE, 35/854, *vb.* reach, touch.

AREDE, 20/508, *vb.* guess, tell, judge.

ARERE, 93/2896, *vb.* rear, raise, erect. ARERD, 7/210, *pt. s.*

A-RESTE, 132/4242, *vb.* stop, halt.

ARETTE, 160/5174, *vb.* accuse, impute. "To Aritte; *ascribere, imputare.*" *Cath. Anglicum.*

AREȝTE, 56/1597, *pt. s.* struck. *See* ARAUȝT.

ARSOUN, 107/3385, *sb.* saddle bow.

ARST, 28/675, *adv.* at first, before.

ASARMES, 94/2933, *interj.* to arms. Fr. *aux armes.*

A-SAYE, 51/1425, *vb.* try, endeavour.

ASCAPE, 146/4713, *vb.* escape.

ASCRIEDE, 30/720, *pt. s.* called to.

ASLAȝE, 3/84, *pp.* slain.

ASOTID, 67/2007, *adj.* mad, besotted. "*Assoté*, sotted, besotted," Cotgrave.

A-SPYE, 68/2032, *vb.* enquire.

ASPYE, 154/4966, *sb.* spy.

ASSEEGE, 106/3348, *sb.* siege, attack.

A-STAUNCHE, 44/1179, *vb. imp.* restrain, moderate.

ASTERUE, 97/3058, *vb.* perish, die. A.S. *asteorfan.*

ASTOȜE, 95/2971, *pt.* ascended, mounted. A.S. *astīgan.*

A-STREYEY, 117/3729, *adv.* A-STREYEþ, 172/5532, astray, wild.

A-STYNTE, 63/1842, *vb.* stop, cease.

ASTYȜE, 157/5056, *pt.* climbed, scaled. *See* ASTOȜE.

ATEND, 104/3280, *pt.* set alight.

ATENED, 4/114, *pt.* annoyed, vexed.

ATEYNTE, 113/3612, *pt.* exhausted. The corresponding French word in this passage is *estanciez.* "*Estainct*, extinguished . . . . spent, lost, utterly perished," Cotgrave. *See also* TEYNT.

ATTACHE, 140/4517, *vb.* 1 *pr. s.* arrest.

ATTES, 36/881, at his.

ATTEYNT, 11/333, *pp.* vanquished. *See* ATEYNTE.

A-TWYNNE, 20/522, *adv.* apart.

AUNDWARD, 59/1694, *adv.* upon, on top of. *See also* ANONEWARD.

AUNTRE, 3/89. AUNTURE, 53/1479, *sb.* danger, risk.

AUALYNG, 39/984, *sb.* descent, slope.

AUANTAILE, 26/624, *sb.* *See* AUENTAILLE.

*AUAUNCE, 17/448, *vb.* promote.

AUAUNTED, 2/42, *pt. s.* praised, puffed.

AUAUNTWARDE, 153/4919, *sb.* van, front.

AUELDE, 4/101, *sb.* yield.

AUENTAILLE, 8/238. The moveable front of the helmet covering the face, through which the wearer respired: used also for the whole of the front of the helmet.

AUENTURE, 39/1003, *sb.* danger, risk.

AUONGE, 93/2904, *vb.* receive, take.

AUOW, 62/1818, *sb.* vow.

AVOWEDED, 67/1983, *pp.* acknowledged, avowed it.

AUYNDE, 32/757, 1 *pr. s.* find out, discover.

AUYSE, 7/195, *vb.* consider, reflect: *he wil him betre auyse,* he will think better of it, be more careful.

AWE, 179/5779, *sb.* worship, respect. O.Icel. *agi.*

AWOK, 43/1135, recovered, come to his senses.

AWREKE, 49/1362, *vb.* avenge.

AYCHS, 162/5248, *sb.* ash-tree.

AYE, 15/408, *sb.* awe; *stondeþ aye*=stand in awe of. *See* Note. *See* AWE.

AYþER, 145/4659, *pron.* each, either; *hur ayþer*, each of them.

AXETH, 43/1124, *pr. s.* enquires, asks.

AȜE, 27/647. AȜEN, 4/100. AȜY, 30/724, *adv.* again, against.

BAD, 123/3947, *pt. s.* begged, asked; *bad a bone*, made a prayer.

BAILE, 45/1211, *sb.* confinement, prison.

BAKOUNS, 87/2696, *sb. pl.* pigs, hogs.

BALAUNSYNG, 103/3243, *sb.* throwing of darts, &c.

BALE, 36/903, *sb.* captivity.

BAME, 20/511, *sb.* balm. Fr. *baume;* Lat. *balsamum.*

BANE, 3/86, *sb.* ruin, destruction.

BANNE, 168/5424, *vb.* summon together.

BAR, 17/448, *pt. s.* bore, carried.

BAR OF, 23/572, *pt. s.* warded off.

BARERS, 145/4668. BARRERS, 145/4688. BARRES, 145/4679, *sb. pl.* barriers, rampart. "A Barras. *Antemurale, vallum.*" *Cath. Anglicum.*

BARNAGE, 106/3364, *sb.* nobles, barons.

BARNEE, 50/1373, *sb.* children, men.

BARNYE, 100/3160. BARONYE, 2/48, *sb.* barons.

BA-SCLAWE, 6/179, *pt.* for *be a-sclawe*, be slain.

BATAIL, 169/5453, *sb.* battalions, divisions.

BATEDEDE, 32/749, *pt. s.* abated.

BAYLYE, 135/4333, *sb.* orders, command.

BE-BLED, 50/1380, *pt.* covered with blood.

BEDE, 59/1709, *pt.* bidden, ordered.

BEER, 3/64, *pt. s.* bore, carried away.

BEHETE, 50/1402, *pt. s.* promised.

BELAY, 5/134, *pt. s.* besieged, beset.

BELEUE, 106/3345, *vb.* to leave off, desist from. A.S. *bilæfan.*

BE-LEUE, 154/4974, 1 *pr. pl.* remain, are left.

BE-LEUED, 120/3849, *pt.* neglected, left undone.

BELEYN, 34/805, *pp.* beset, surrounded. *See also* BELAY.

BELYÞ, 51/1437, *pr. s.* believes.

BEMENE, 116/3724, *vb.* lament, bemoan. A.S. *bimœnan.*

BE-NOME, 175/5642, *pp.* taken, deprived.

*BEO, 22/548, *pp.* been.

BEODE, 62/1825, *pt. pl.* delivered, told. A.S. *beodan.*

BERD, 23/571, *sb.* beard, chin.

BERE, 45/1201, *sb.* cry, lamentation.

"Who makis sich a *bere.*"
Townley Myst. 109.

BERST, 99/3109, *pr.* 2 *s.* bearest, behavest.

BESPEKEN, 110/3509, *pr. pl.* consult, talk over. "ȝe habbeþ a-mong ȝu *bispeke* þat ilome." — *Martyrdom of Thomas Beket*, ed. Black, 919.

BESTADE, 90/2800, *pt.* seized, overcome.

BE-STERTE, 146/4716, *pp.* beset (?).

BE-SWYKE, 130/4164, *vb.* deceive. A.S. *biswican.*

BET, 34/830, *adv.* better, faster.

BETAKE, 33/763, *sb.* hand over to, give up.

BETAUȜTE, 76/2316, *pt. s.* commended him to.

BE-TOȜE, 141/4539, *pp.* strongly clad.

BE-TRAPPEDE, 117/3731, *pt. pl.* surrounded, beset.

BETRENDE, 125/4006, *vb.* surround, encircle.

BETREUÞEDE, 70/2105, *pt. s.* betrothed, pledged himself to.

BE-VAPID, 97/3037, *pp.* thoroughly beaten. *See* Note.

BEYNE, 27/661, *pron.* both. *See* Note.

BIL, 86/2654, *sb.* front. *Bok and bil*, back and front.

BILEUE, 34/829, *sb.* belief, faith.

BI-TID, 28/679, *pt. s.* befell, happened.

BITOK, 157/5075, *pt. s.* gave, committed. *See also* BETAKE *and* BYTOK.

BLAN, 57/1626, *pt. s.* stopped, halted.

BLAS, 86/2648, *sb.* sound, blast.

BLEE, 49/1360, *sb.* countenance, colour. A.S. *bleo.*

BLENCHE, 122/3914, *sb.* turn aside. A.S. *blencan.*

BLEREST, 20/507, 2 *pr. s.* blindest, to blear one's eye, to deceive him. *See* Note.

BLESSED, 8/256, *pt. s.* blessed, signed with the cross.

BLEYNTE, 35/838, *pt. s.* turned, inclined. *See* BLENCHE.

*BLIF, 91/2837. BLYF, 39/1002. BLYUE, 70/2087, *adv.* at once, quickly.

BOBAUNCE, 13/383, *sb.* boasting.

BOK, 86/2654, *sb.* back.

BON, 25/617, *sb.* bone. A.S. *bân.*

BONE, 84/2583, *sb.* prayer.

BOR, 21/545, *sb.* boar.

BORGEYS, 16/444, *sb.* burgess, citizen.

BORWGH, 61/1767, *sb.* town.

BOSSCHE, 93/2887, *sb.* bush, wood.

BOT, 24/589, *pt. s.* bit, cut.

BOT IF, 10/318, unless, except.

BOTE, 14/401, *sb.* message.

BOUN, 124/3986, *adj.* bound.

BOURE, 49/1336, *sb.* chamber.

BOȜ, 61/1761, *pt. s.* stooped, bent.

BOȜE-DRAȜTE, 97/3040, *sb.* bow-shot.

BOȜE-SCHOT, 3/90, *sb.* bow-shot.

BOȜTEST, 43/1153, 2 *pt. s.* didst redeem, buy.

BRAID, 70/2099, *pt. s.* started up.

BRAIDE, 99/3122, *sb.* rush, sally. *See also* BRAYDE.

BRAKE, 103/3263, *sb. boȜes of brake*, cross-bows. *See* Note.

*BRAND, 23/580, *sb.* sword. *See* BROND.

BRAYDE, 28/684, *sb.* charge, rush, moment, of time; 68/2008, sudden fate.

BRED, 4/103, *sb.* bread.

BREDE, 59/1688, *sb.* breadth.

BREGGURDEL, 80/2448, *sb.* middle, waist; *lit.* the waist-band; "Brygyrdyll. *Lumbare, renale.*" *Prompt. Parv.*

BREN, 154/4962, *vb. impr.* burn.

BRENNYNG, 47/1263, *adj.* burning. BRENNYNGEST, 74/2236.

BRENT, 12/371, *pp.* burnt.

BRESTE, 30/719, *vb.* burst out.

BRIGGEWARD, 59/1700, *sb.* keeper of the bridge; 112/35, watch on the bridge.

BROCHYNG, 115/3657, *pr. p.* spurring.

BROD, 123/3941, *adj.* broad, wide.

BROKE, 110/3484, *vb.* enjoy, possess. A.S. *brûkan.*

BROND, 29/684, *sb.* sword.

BRONDE, 74/2236, *sb.* brand.

BRUSSCHET, 34/800, *sb.* thicket, underwood. "*Brusc.* Butchers-broome, Pettigree, knee-holme, knee-hulver (a shrub)." Cotgrave.

BRUST-BON, 57/1623, *sb.* breast-bone.

BRUSTES, 41/1072, *sb. pl.* breast, chest.

BRYMLY, 21/545, *adv.* fiercely.

BRYNYE, 85/2614, 96/3024, *sb.* cuirass. *See* Note.

BRYTASQES, 105/3315, *sb. pl.* battlements. "*Bretesque*, a port, or portall of defence, in the rampire, or wall of a towne." Cotgrave.

BUCHYMENT, 34/798, *sb.* ambush.

BUDEþ, 46/1235, *pr. s.* offers.

BULDE, 78/2377, *vb.* build, erect.

BURDE, 70/2095, *sb.* maiden.

BUSKY, 170/5500, *vb.* get ready, prepare.

BUTE, 122/3895, *pt. pl.* beat.

BUþE, 4/100, *pr. pl.* are.

BYDYNG, 126/4026, *sb.* delay, remaining here.

BY-GO, 68/2013. BYGONE, 77/2342, *pp.* ruined, deceived.

BY-GON, 108/3429, *pp.* overrun, covered.

BY-GYNT, 24/602, *pr. s.* begins.

BY-LAFTE, 56/1595, *pt. pl.* remained, were left.

BY-LEYN, 139/4483, *pt.* besieged, beset.

BYLOKE, 71/2127, *vb.* look after, take care of.

BY-NYME, 179/5773, *vb.* take away, deprive.

BY-NYþE, 56/1607, *prep.* below, under.

BY-STOLE, 121/3878, *pt.* stolen, escaped.

BYTOK, 178/5748, *pt. s.* commended, wished himself with. BYTOKE, 108/3413, entrusted, gave in charge.

CACCHE, 161/5185, *vb.* take up, recover.

CALT, 59/1699, *pr. s.* call.

CAMMUS, 138/4437, *adj.* flat. "*Resimus.* That hath a camoyse nose crooked upwarde." Cooper, *Thesaurus*, 1584. *See* Note.

CAN, 110/3511, *pr.* 1 *s.* know.

CARF, 32/743, *pt. s.* cut.

CARFUL, 42/1115, *adj.* full of care, troubled.

CAS, 28/679, *sb.* chance.

CAST, 49/1368, *sb.* meaning, intention.

CAST, 59/1710, *pp.* determined, settled.

CATEL, 178/5745, *sb.* property, goods.

CAȝTE, 95/2982, *pt. pl.* caught, captured.

CERKE, 80/2449, *sb.* shift, chemise. A.S. *serce, syrce.*

CHAFFAR, 139/4467, *sb.* merchandise, goods.

CHALANGIE, 98/3062, *vb.* claim, seize. "To Chalenge; *vendicare.*" *Cath. Anglicum.*

CHAMBERERE, 46/1238, *sb.* maid, attendant.

CHASTE, 67/1993, *vb. impr.* chastise punish.

CHAUCEORE, 175/5631, *sb.* hose of mail.

CHECKE, 25/615, *sb.* cheek.

CHEKBON, 175/5650, *sb.* jawbone cheekbone.

CHEL, 101/3194, *sb.* throat. A.S. *ceole;* O.Dutch, *kele.*

CHERE, 11/346, *sb.* face; *hence* eyes.

*CHILLE, 14/389, for *ich wille* = I will.

CHILUELARIE, 2/46, *sb.* knights.

CHYKE, 25/615, *sb.* cheek.

CHYKE, 135/4331, *sb.* chick, bird.

CHYMENAY, 74/2232, *sb.* fire-place. *See* Note.

CHYNE, 7/212, *vb.* gape, open. A.S. *cênan.*

CLEPEDE, 7/216. CLIPEDE, 5/142, *pt. s.* called. A.S. *cleopian.*

CLEW, 165/5339, *pt. s.* tore, clawed.

CLOS, 156/5023, *sb.* enclosure.

CLOUE, 6/179, *pt.* cut down.

CLOUT, 37/906, *sb.* piece of cloth.

CLOUTE, 171/5507, *vb.* strike, knock about.

CLOWE, 17/463, *vb.* ? cut away, ward off.

CLYNGE, 82/2524, *vb.* pine away. A.S. *clingan.*

CLYPEDE, 32/752, *pt. s.* called. A.S. *cleopian.*

CLYUE, 65/1901, *vb.* cling.

COLBLAK, 34/807, *adj.* coal-black.

COLOUR, 179/5761, *sb.* excuse, argument.

CONSAIL, 90/2784, *sb.* concealment.

CONSAILER, 69/2052, *sb.* councillor.

CONSELYNGGE, 61/1790, *pr. p.* in council, consulting.

COPLES, 48/1328, *sb. pl.* beams, joists.

CORAIOUS, 15/414, *adj.* courageous, brave.

CORNEL, 175/5627, *sb.* circlet of gold round a helmet.

CORS, 18/473, *sb.* course; *cors of werre* = a warlike charge.

CORS, 10/303, *sb.* course.

CORTEYST, 48/1298, *adj.* most courteous.

CORTOYSE, 67/1974, *adj.* gentle.

COSNEDE, 58/1683, *pt. s.* cost.

COST, 55/1552, *sb.* country, region. Compare "they prayed him that he would depart out of their *coasts.*" Matt. viii. 34.

COSTREL, 29/510, *sb.* a small wooden bottle. "A Costrelle; *oneferum, et cetera; ubi* a flakett." *Cath. Anglicum.*

COTE-ARMURE, 22/552, *sb.* an upper garment worn over the armour, and generally ornamented with armorial bearings.

COUNDYE, 166/5375, *vb.* conduct, guide.

COUPES, 76/2297, *sb. pl.* cups.

COUTHE, 79/2403, *pt. s.* knew, understood.

COUYNE, 46/1227, *sb.* design, conspiracy.

COWART, 24/593, *sb.* cowardly fellow.

COYE, 76/2286, *adj.* quiet, still. "*Coy.* Quiet, still, husht." Cotgrave.

COYGNAGE, 170/5481, *sb.* coinage.

COYPHE, 36/898, *sb.* skull-cap.

CRACCHEDE, 178/5753, *pt. s.* smashed, broke.

CRAFT, 163/5253, *sb.* apparatus, baggage.

CRAKE, 85/2604, *vb.* crack, break.

CREAUNCE, 12/358, *sb.* renown, reputation.

CREAUNT, 21/533, *adj.* recreant.

CREP, 173/5557, *pt. pl.* passed.

CRISTENTE, 12/364, *sb.* christendom.

CROLLID, 49/1354, *adj.* curled, curly. "With lokkes *crulle* as they were leyd in presse." Chaucer, C. T. Prologue 81. Dutch *Krolle,* a curl.

CROYCEDE, 152/4913, *pt. s.* crossed, blessed, made the sign of the cross.

CROYȜ, 13/376, *sb.* cross.

CURE, 55/1548, *sb.* charge, business.

CUSSEDE, 70/2112, *pt. pl.* KUSSEDEN, 71/2032. CUST, 157/5081, *pt. s.* kissed.

DADEST, 153/4944, 2 *pt. s.* didst, hast done.

DALE, 64/1890, *sb.* ?

DAME, 74/2225, *sb.* draughts. *See* Note.

DAWES, 144/4631, *sb. pl.* days.

DAYE, 33/777, 1 *pr. s.* die. DAYEþ, 178/5738, *pr. s.* DAIEDE, 94/2928. DAYDE, 84/2581, *pt. s.*

DEABLET, 142/4569, *sb.* ? devil.

DEBAT, 106/3348, *sb.* fighting, quarrelling. "Debate; *contentio,* &c." *Cath. Anglicum.*

DEDE, 24/595, *sb.* death.

DEDEYNGNEDE, 11/349, *pt. s.* disdained.

DEEL, 118/3776, *sb.* lamentation. O.Fr. *doel.* *See* DUL.

DEEL, 28/669. DEL, 2/44, *sb.* share, part. A.S. *dǣl.*

DEERE, 79/2395, *vb.* hurt, affect. A.S. *derian.*

DEKE, 155/5010, *sb.* ditch, moat.

DELEDE, 150/4849, *pt. s.* divided, shared.

DELFOLLY, 8/232, *adv.* mournfully.

DEMEMBRED, 158/5092, *pt.* dismembered, torn limb from limb.

DEMEYNE, 13/382, *adj.* simple, lowly.

DENTE, 25/617, *sb.* blow, stroke.

DENTEE, 83/2545, *sb.* pleasing smell.

DEPARDIEUX, 98/3061, *exclam.* by God.

DEPARTEDE, 175/5645, *pt. pl.* separated.

DERE, 157/5070, *sb.* harm, hurt.

DERE, 63/1852, *adj.* dear, precious, 19/488, *adv.*

DEREYNE, 9/265, *vb.* challenge, claim. "*Desrener.* To dereine; to justifie or make good." Cotgrave.

DERRE, 17/451, 2 *pr. s.* dare.

DEUYS, 66/1969, *sb.* plan, suggestion.

DIFFYE, 4/106, 1 *pr. s.* defy, challenge.

DISCOLOURID, 41/1079, *pp.* without colour.

DISCOUMFIT, 89/2773, *sb.* defeat.

DISPITOUSLY, 67/1985, *adv.* insolently.

DISPIȜTE, 17/457, *sb.* contempt.

DISPOILLED, 182/5879, *pt. s.* DISPOILY, 177/5714, *vb.* undress, strip.

DISTAUNCE, 65/1913, *sb.* contention, dispute. See *Gesta Romanorum*, Glossary.

DISTRYED, 12/365, *pp.* destroyed.

DIȜTE, 4/119, *vb.* prepare, dress, 7/214, *pt. s.* A.S. *dihtan.*

DO, 7/217, *vb. imp.* cause, see.

DOGGEDLICH, 47/1289, *adv.* doughtily, bravely. *See* DOȜTILICH.

DOL, 76/2288, *sb.* part. A.S. *dǣl.* *See also* DEEL *and* DEL.

DOLOUR, 72/2175, *sb.* pain, suffering. Lat. *dolorem.*

DONDE, 28/681, *vb.* be done.

DOSSERS, 49/1340, *sb. pl.* curtains, hangings. *See* Prompt. Parv., *s. v.* Docere.

DOTOUSE, 59/1699, *adj.* dangerous.

DOUCE, 47/1269, *adj.* sweet, dear.

DOUTE, 127/4057, *vb.* fear, be afraid of.

DOUTE, 64/1899, *sb.* danger.

DOȜTILICH, 15/420, *adv.* doughtily, bravely.

DOȜTY, 17/458, *adj.* brave, valiant. DOȜTYERE, 21/531, *comp.* DOȜTYESTE, 52/1448, *Super.* A.S. *dyhtig.*

DOȜTYNISSE, 101/3197, *sb.* bravery, daring.

DRAPREYE, 138/4457, *sb.* cloth.

DRAST, 121/3887, *pt. s.* durst, dared.

DRAUȜT, 107/3392, *sb.* lift.

DRAUȜTE, 29/703, *sb.* stroke.

DRAȜT BRIGE, 66/1952, *sb.* draw-bridge.

DRAȜÞ, 6/192, *pr. s.* draweth.

DRECCHE, 67/1997, *vb.* DRECCHEN, 56/1602, delay. A.S. *dreccan.*

DRECCHYNGE, 15/377, *sb.* delay.

DRENCH, 50/1386, *sb.* draught, drink.

DRIE, 82/2524, *vb.* die of thirst.

DRIȜTE, 2/49, *sb.* Lord, God. A.S. *dryhten.*

DROGY, 59/1691, *vb.* draw, drag.

DROPEDE, 42/1103, *pt. s.* grieved.

DROȜ, 16/446, 1 *pt. s.* drew, betook.

DRURYMODE, 42/1103, *adv.* drearily, sadly.

DRUWERYE, 79/2421, *sb.* sweetheart, lover.

DUDEN, 3163, *pt. s.* did, caused; *duden hem sle*, caused them to be slain.

DUELLE, 27/648, *sb.* delay, hesitation.

DUL, 119/3791, *sb.* DULES, 119/3785, *pl.* lamentation. *See* DEEL.

DULFUL, 45/1201, *adj.* doleful, grievous.

DUP, 123/3941, *adj.* DUPE, 46/1257, deep.

DUPNISSE, 76/2312, *sb.* depth.

DURE, 21/535, *vb.* last against, stand against.

DURE, 128/4091, *adj.* dear, precious, 59/1715, *adv.*

DURNELY, 136/4373, *adv.* secretly, closely. A.S. *derne, dyrne.*

DURYE, 134/4311, *vb.* live.

DUSSCHED, 98/3068, *pt. pl.* dashed, knocked. DUST, 35/854, *pt. s.* O.Icel. *dusta.*

DWEL, 86/2646, *sb.* delay.

DYNGEN, 4/104, *vb.* dash, pound.

DYUYS, 58/1663, *sb.* plan, counsel. *See also* DEUYS.

DYUYSID, 58/1672, *pp.* proposed.

EEM, 8/261, *sb.* uncle.

EER, 3/65, *adv.* before, already.

EFT, 34/811, *adv.* again.

EFT-SONES, 156/5039, *adv.* again.

EGED, 141/4541, *adj.* edged.

EGRELICH, 19/496, *adv.* closely, eagerly.

ELDE, 110/3497, *sb.* age, years. Origin-

ally age simply, but afterwards confined to *old* age.

EMBROUDED, 22/553, *pp.* embroidered, worked over.

ENBATAILD, 58/1684, *pp.* embattled.

ENCENZ, 83/2545, *sb.* incense.

ENCHACEDE, 93/2906, *pt. pl.* drove, hurried. Fr. *enchasser.*

ENCHANTED, 130/4187, *pp.* persuaded, overcome.

ENCHES, 104/3302, *sb. pl.* inches.

ENCOMBRE, 94/2942, *sb.* cause trouble to, harass.

ENDELONGES, 19/498, *adv.* all along, down.

ENFORCE, 33/793, *vb.* exert. ENFORCEDE, 33/782, *pt. s.*

ENIVGIEÞ, 66/1959, *imper. pl.* judge, sentence.

ENPAYNEDE, 26/633, *pt. s.* exerted.

ENPAYREDE, 145/4691, *vb. pt. s.* became weaker, failed.

ENSERCHE, 42/1093, *vb.* examine, inspect.

ENSOYNGNE, 91/2827, *sb.* excusing, prevarication.

ENTAILLE, 31/730, *sb.* ENTAYLLE, 31/745, workmanship, fashion.

ENTAMY, 116/3699, *vb.* break, cut through.

ENTEMPRE, 6/164, *vb. imp.* restrain, moderate.

ENTENDIAÞ, 111/3517, *pr. pl.* attend, direct their attention.

ENTERLAS, 28/679. (?)

ENTEYNTE, 84/2590, *pp.* affected, weakened.

ENTREMETRIE, 22/557, *vb.* interfere.

ENVY, 4/114, *sb.* insolence.

ERBER, 61/1773, *sb.* garden, arbour.

ERE, 155/5004, *adv.* ever.

ERLICH, 2/46, *adv.* early. A.S. *earlice.*

ESCHEKKERE, 74/2224, *sb.* chess.

EUERECHE, 5/140, *pron.* each, every one.

EYMEDE, 31/735, *pt. s.* aimed, endeavoured.

EȜENE, 37/907, *sb. pl.* eyes.

FACHOUN, 74/2244, *sb.* sword. *See* Note.

FACOUN, 41/1074, *sb.* falcon, hawk.

FALE, 34/798, *adj.* many, numerous.

FALE, 63/1845, *sb.* fellow, companion.

FALSARȜ, 38/966, *sb. pl.* hand-bills. *See* Note.

FALUREDE, 116/3707, *sb.* company.

FANDE, 87/2683, *vb.* try.

FANT, 22/548, *sb.* FANSTON, 42/1083, font.

FARE, 34/809, *vb.* to go, ride. FARETH, 74/2221, *imper.* A.S. *faran.*

FASOUN, 41/1075, *sb.* fashion, appearance.

FAUTEREL, 162/5235, *sb.* villain.

FAUȜT, 86/2657, *pt. s.* FAȜT, 21/532, fought.

FAWE, 43/1150, *adj.* happy, satisfied. FAȜE, 10/308, *adv.* A.S. *faegen.*

FAYN, 66/1951, *adj.* pleased, happy.

FEE, 10/305, *sb.* reward; 179/5773, property, money paid by vassals: *in fee*, 54/1527, as a vassal.

FEER, 12/329, *adj.* FERE, 15/414, proud, fierce.

FEL, 64/1891, *sb.* skin. A.S. *fel.* Lat. *pellem.*

FELAWE, 5/150, *sb.* companion, associate. O.Icel. *felagi.*

FELDE, 35, 841, *pt. s.* moved, bent.

FELLE, 16/428, *adj.* daring, fierce.

FERD, 34/832. FERDE, 3/85, *sb.* company, followers. A.S. *ferd, fyrd. See also* FERED, FEREDE, *and* FURDE.

FERDE, 113/3598, *pt. s.* fared, A.S. *faran.*

FEREN, 8/258, *sb. pl.* companions. A.S. *gefera.*

FERETE, 75/2254. FERTEE, 134/4307, *sb.* strength, valour. "*Fiereté.* Fiercenesse, boldness, stoutnesse, mettle," &c. Cotgrave.

FERLICH, 35/842, *adv.* fiercely.

FERLY, 30/716, *adj.* wonderful, fearful.

FERMYE, 71/2113, *vb.* confirm, strengthen.

FERRED, 114/3625, *pp.* distanced, far from.

3 errata

FETTE, 46/1260, *vb.* fetch, bring.

FETYS, 182/5883, *adj.* neat, well-proportioned.

FEÞME, 76/2312, *sb.* fathoms.

FEYE, 80/2430, *adj.* accursed, cowardly. A.S. *fǣge*, which means: (1) doomed, (2) dead, (3) accursed, (4) cowardly. See *Grein*, I. 274.

FEYNTYSE, 127/4073, *sb.* cowardice.

FIER, 15/409, *adj.* *See* FEER.

FLEAND, 88/2740, *pr. p.* flying. The northern form of the present participle: cf. l. 2736 above.

FLECHS, 139/4493. FLEHS, 138/4440, *sb.* flesh.

FLEN, 55/1574, *vb.* FLEO, 14/400, *vb.* flee. FLEOYNG, 88/2736, *pr. p.* fly. A.S. *fleon.*

FLET, 134/4311, *pr. s.* flows, runs.

FLETTE, 35/853, *sb.* ground, *the flat.*

FLEȜ, 31/731, *pt. s.* flew.

FLITTE, 156/5028, *vb.* stir, move.

FLOUR, 101/3184, *sb.* palm, prize.

FLOWEN, 35/855, *pt. pl.* FLOȜEN, 57/1620, fled.

FLYTE, 137/4420, *vb.* fight, quarrel.

FOL, 44/1170, *adv.* full, very.

FOL, 22/563, *adj.* foolish. Fr. *fol.*

FOLGHEDE, 61/1761, *pt. s.* followed.

FOLLOHT, 41/1047, baptism. FOLLOȜT, 14/397, *sb.* A.S. *fulwiht.* See *Reliq. Antiq.* II. 243, and *Laȝamon*, 36.

FOLȜYEAÞ, 39/1001, *pr. pl.* follow, pursue.

FON, 6/184, *sb. pl.* foes, enemies.

FOND, 150/4849, *pt. s.* found.

FOND, 11/341, *vb.* venture, try.

FONGE, 178/5739, *vb.* receive.

FOR, 174/5589, *adj.* fore, front.

FORCHURE, 22/551, *sb.* "*Fourcheure*, f. A forkinesse, or forkednesse; a forke-like division, or cleaving; also that part of the body from whence the thighes doe part; (I thinke wee call it the Twist.)" Cotgrave.

FORCHYS, 92/2881, *sb. pl.* FOURCHYS, 95/2970, gallows. "*Fourche*, a Forke, Pitch-forke, or Prong; also, a gibbet, or paire of gallowes." Cotgrave.

FORCLEUE, 21/543, *vb.* cut through, cleave.

FOR-COYN, 25/617, *pp.* cut to pieces, cut through.

FORDRAWE, 62/1796, *vb. subj.* tear in pieces.

FORFARE, 12/318, *vb.* perish, be ruined.

FOR-GNAȜE, 43/1149, *vb.* devour.

FOR-GO, 10/319, *vb.* lose. FORGONE, 84/2584, *pp.*

FOR-LETE, 47/1274, *vb.* lose, forego.

FORSAKE, 18/483, *vb.* fly from, avoid.

FORT, 71/2146, for to, to.

FOR-ÞYNK, 10/319, 2 *pl. pr.* repent, regret.

FORW, 116/3720, *sb.* furrow.

FOR-WERIEÞ, 90/2809, *pr. pl.* become worn out, exhausted.

FORȜ, 174/5593, *sb.* lit. furrow; ground.

FOR-ȜYFT, 178/5736, *sb.* forgiveness.

FORȜYT, 89/2774, *pt. s.* forgot.

FOÞER, 26/641, *sb.* a heavy weight.

FOYGNEDE, 175/5640, *pt. s.* thrust at. O.Fr. *foindre*, *foigner*, to feign, make a *feint.*

FOȜT, 43/1127, *pp.* fought.

FRAYNE, 40/1035, *sb.* ash. "*Fresne*, an ash tree," Cotgrave. Lat. *fraxinus.*

FRAYNE, 45/1216, *vb.* ask, question. A.S. *frignan*, pt. t. *frægn.*

FRECHS, 86/2664, *adj.* fresh, new. A.S. *fersc.*

FREE, 17/466, *adj.* noble.

FREKE, 4/113, *sb.* man. A.S. *freca.*

FROME, 42/1104, *sb.* beginning; *atte frome* = at first.

FRY, 108/3441, *sb.* noble maiden. A.S. *freo*, *frê.*

FUL, 74/2237, *pt. s.* fell.

FULD, 107/3390, *pt. s.* folded, clasped.

FULDE, 117/3734, *pt. s.* felled, knocked down.

FULLAUȜT, 178/5743, *sb.* baptism. *See* FOLLOHT.

FULLY, 177/5697, *vb.* baptise. FULLED, 42/1084, *pp.*

FUR, 25/605, *sb.* FYR, fire, sparks.

FURD, 57/1625, *sb.* ford.

FURDE, 4/95, *sb.* company, host. See FERED, FEREDE and FERDE.

FURDE, 4/113, *pt. s.* conducted, behaved.

FUSTE, 65/1901, *sb.* fist. A.S. *fǣst.*

FUURE, 4/101, *num.* four.

FUYSOUN, 138/4457, *sb.* plenty, quantity. Lat. *fusionem* from *fundere*, to pour out.

FYEDE, 168/5443, *pt. s.* showed contempt.

FYN, 60/1731, *sb.* payment.

FYSAGE, 41/1079, *sb.* visage, face.

GADELYNG, 46/1234, *sb.* vagabond, rascal. A.S. *gœdeling.*

GALE, 64/1889, *sb.* voice.

GALWETRE, 133/4269, *sb.* gallows.

GALWYS, 93/2896, *sb.* gallows, gibbet.

GAN, GUN, *passim. Used as auxiliaries of tense; thus* gan to glyde = did glide.

GAN, 37/910, *pt. s.* GUN, 34/824. GUNNE, 37/938, *pt. pl.* began.

GARNYMENTȝ, 50/1395, *sb. pl.* dresses, clothes.

GAS, 67/1975, 71/2145, *pr. s.* goes, walks.

GAT, 180/5825, *pt. s.* begat.

GATE, 62/1801, *sb.* way, road. O.Icel. *gata.*

GEANT, 59/1700, *sb.* giant.

GENT, 27/646, *adj.* noble.

GENYLLERE, 175/5631, *sb.* armour for the knees.

GERDE, 38/947, *pt. pl.* GERTE, 57/1618, *pt. s.* pierced, cut, struck. A.S. *gyrdan.*

GERSE, 116/3693, *sb.* cut, wound, gash. "A garse; *scara uel scaria.*" *Cath. Anglicum.*

GERTE, 24/601, *pt. pl.* made, caused.

GERYȝOUN, 177/5693, *sb.* treasure.

GLAYUES, 88/2728, *sb. pl.* GLEUES, 145/4690. GLEYUES, 38/966. GLYUES, 104/3275, glaives: weapons made of a cutting blade at the end of a pike or staff.

GLEDE, 74/2230, *sb.* a live coal, red-hot, but not blazing.

GLENTE, 12/356, *pl. s.* glanced.

GLOD, 24/590, *pt. s.* glided, glanced.

GLOTOUNS, 120/3841, *sb. pl.* villains. "*Glouton.* A knave, rascall, filthie fellow," Cotgrave.

GOBET, 25/614, *sb.* part, piece.

GOFFANOUN, 33/774, *sb.* flag, pennon.

GOME, 14/402, *sb.* 131/4203, *sb. pl.* man, creature.

GOME, 60/1741, *sb.* care, heed.

GON, 22/555, *vb.* go, move.

GONDE, 64/1890. (?)

GONELS, 135/4345, *sb. pl.* long gowns. "*Gonnelle.* A whole Petticote; the bodies & skirts being joined together," Cotgrave. "*Gonel.* Habillement d'homme et de femme, ... casaque on longue cotte qu'on mettoit sur l'armure, et qui descendoit sur les mollets. Les *goneles* étoient en soie on en drap, et étoient blasonnées. Geoffroy, fils de Fouiques-le-Bon, Grand Sénéchal de France, eut le surnom de *grise-gonelle*, parce qu'il portoit ordinairement sa cassaque de couleur grise," Roquefort.

GOST, 126/4038, *vb.* 2 *pr. s.* goest; *goest to grounde*, wilt be ruined.

GOST, 21/539, *sb.* spirit.

GRADDE, 35/858, *pt. pl.* shouted, cried. A.S. *grǣdan.*

GRAIDE, 90/2804, *pr. as fut. s.* shall crow.

GRAME, 44/1182, *sb.* rage.

GRAME, 29/691, *vb.* be vexed.

GRAS, 71/2035, *sb.* grace, goodness.

GRAYÞE, 13/385, *vb. imp.* GREYÞE, 52/1472, get ready, prepare, put on. O.Icel. *greiða.*

GREDE, 102/3225, *vb.* shout, cry. A.S. *grǣdan.*

GRESSE, 60/1750, *sb.* grease, fat.

GRETE, 106/3347, *sb.* cry.

GRETTE, 55/1567, *pt. s.* saluted, cried to.

GRILLE, 73/2195, *vb.* suffer, be pained.

> 'Nu ich mai singe hwar ich wulle,
> Ne dar me neuer eft mon agrulle."
> *Owl and Nightingale*, ed. Stratmann, 1110.

GROPEDE, 50/1388, *pt. s.* felt, touched.

GROT, 134/4313, *sb.* bit, part.

GRUTE, 93/2908, *adj.* great, heavy.

GRYMLY, 21/539, *adj.* grim.

GRYS, 87/2695, *sb. pl.* pigs. O.Icel. *grêss.* "Gris: *porcellus.*" Cath. Anglicum.

GRYSLICH, 7/201, *adj.* fearful, dreadful.

GURD, 128/4117, *pt. s.* GURT, 74/2248, struck, smote. *See* GERDE.

GURDELSTEDE, 59/1707, *sb.* waist, belt.

GYEÞ, 153/4921, *pr. s.* guides, leads.

GYNNE, 135/4351, *sb.* plan, stratagem, device, machinery.

GYNT, 84/2589, *pr. s.* begins.

GYRFACOUNS, 60/1738, *sb. pl.* large falcons.

GYSARMES, 36/895, *sb. pl.* battle-axes.

GYSE, 54/1540, *sb.* manner, way.

GYUES, 47/1272, *sb. pl.* gyres, fetters.

HAB, 156/5042, 2 *pr. pl.* have.

HABERKE, 8/236. HAUBERKES, 26/632, *sb.* coat of mail.

HABERIONS, 28/675, *sb. pl.* breastplates, generally of mail or close steel.

HACHE, 59/1701, *sb.* battle-axe.

HAKENAY, 37/908, *sb.* hack horse.

HALBERKE, HAUBERKES, 26/632, *sb. pl.* coats of mail.

HALP, 17/449, *pt. s.* helped, assisted.

HALS, 8/249, *sb.* neck.

HALT, 56/1602, *impers. pr.* for *haldeth*, benefits, is of advantage.

HALUENDOL, 103/3253, *sb.* half, part.

HAMWARD, 126/4030, *adv.* homewards.

HAN, 46/1237, *vb.* have, receive.

HANNE, 33/795, *adv.* hence.

HANT, 51/1406, *sb.* hand.

HAPID, 57/1635, *pp.* happened, befell.

HARD, 15/423, *adj.* hardy, brave, daring.

HARD, 122/3901, *sb.* hard work, difficulty.

HARLOT, 46/1234, *sb.* rascal, low fellow.

HARNEYS, 60/1748, *sb.* baggage, accoutrements. "*Harnois.* Armor, harnesse: also a team, cart or carriage," Cotgrave.

HARNEYSCHEAÞ, 94/2929, *vb. imper.* arm, equip.

HAUNDE, 86/2658, *sb. pl.* hands.

HAUNSEL, 59/1708, *sb.* beginning: lit. the first money received.

HEBBE, 46/1248, *vb.* heave. A.S. *hebban.*

HEE, 10/303, *pr.* they.

HEEL, 175/5651, *adj.* sound.

HEF, 11/340, *pt. s.* raised, lifted.

HEFD, 164/5302, *sb.* head. A.S. *heafod.*

HEFÞE, 33/791, *sb.* handle, haft.

HELE, 43/1125, *vb. imper.* hide, conceal, cover. A.S. *helan, hilan.* HELEDE, 115/3655, *pt. s.*

HELF, 4/99, *sb.* HELUE, 5/159, behalf, part.

"O godes *halfs.*" – *Ormulum*, 634.

A.S. *healf.*

HELF, 138/4441, *sb.* (?)

HEN, 147/4741, *adv.* HENNE, 104/3285. HENNES, 30/713, hence, from hence.

HENDE, 113/3616, *adv.* near.

HENDE, 33/784, *adj.* gentle, kind.

HENTE, 59/1722, *pt. s.* seized.

HEO, *passim. pr.* she.

HER, 49/1354, *sb.* hair.

HERBORGHEDE, 163/5251, *pt. pl.* lodged, encamped.

HERBURGHES, 176/5689, *sb. pl.* resting-place, camp.

HERM, 17/461, *sb.* HERME, 84/2568, injury, hurt.

HERMYE, 47/1295, *vb.* injure, damage.

HERT, 115/3661, *sb.* hart, deer.

HESTE, 42/1094, *sb.* command, order.

HET, 41/1067, *pt. s.* ordered; 151/4865, *pt. s.* named. A.S. *hatan.*

HETE, 89/2762, *sb.* occasion, time.

HEÞEMEN, 41/1053, *sb. pl.* heathens.

HEÞENIS, 73/2187, *sb.* HEÞENISSE, 4/121, heathendom, heathen countries.

HEUED, 14/405, *sb.* head. A.S. *heafod.*

HEUEDE, 96/3004, *pt. s.* heaved, lifted, raised.

HEYL, 30/712, *adj.* whole, sound.

HEȜE, 75/2283, *adj.* principal, high.

HEȜEDE, 147/4731, *pt. s.* hurried, hastened, hied.

HEYȜ, 25/622, *adv.* high, above.

HILUES, 144/4655, *sb.* handles, hafts.

HIR EYÞER, 24/601, each of them.

HIȜT, 44/1166, *pt. s.* was called, was named. A.S. *hatan.*

HIȜT, 47/1262, *pt. s.* ordered, bade.

HIȜT, 90/2782, *sb.* promised happiness.

HOD, 165/5339, *sb.* HODE, 35/843, hood.

HOL, 20/519, *adj.* HOOL, 20/522, whole, sound.

HOLD, 40/1026, *sb.* prison, captivity.

HOLDE, 84/2592, *adj.* faithful. A.S. *hold.*

HOND, 54/1523, *sb.* hound, dog.

HOPE, 10/326, 1 *pr. s.* expect, believe.

HORE, 178/5725, *sb.* adultery (?).

HORE, 5/154, *adj.* white-haired, old.

HORESONE, 68/2016, *sb.* bastard.

HOST, 95/2982, *sb.* haste.

HOSYN, 66/1941, *sb. pl.* hose: breeches or stockings, or both.

HOTEÞ, 65/1925, *pr. s.* bids, orders. HOTEN, 152/4901, *pp.*

HOVE, 103/3269, *vb.* remain, stay. HOUEDE, 140/4515, *pt. s.* HOUYNGE, 122/3904, *pr. p.*

HOUTE, 102/3225, *vb.* shout, cry. "Howtyn or cryyn. *Boo.*" *Prompt. Parv.*

HOWES, 155/4993, *sb. pl.* hooks.

HOȜE, 141/4539, *sb.* hurt, harm. *See* Note.

HUD, 50/1400, *pp.* hid, hidden.

HUGENYS, 2/51, *sb.* size.

HULD, 6/178, *pt. s.* held, kept.

HULLE, 119/3819, *sb.* hill.

HUMELICH, 69/2050, *adv.* gently, quietly.

HURD, 2/47, *pt. s.* heard.

HURE, 68/2035, *vb.* hear.

HURE, 7/215, *pron.* her, it.

HURE, 10/303, *poss. pr.* their.

HWYCH, 20/511, *pron.* which.

HYE, 42/1106, *vb.* hasten, hurry.

HYLDE, 57/1639, *vb.* skin; *let hem hylde,* cause them to be skinned.

HYLP, 102/3208, *sb.* help, assistance.

HYLUE, 138/4434, *sb.* haft, handle.

HYMEN, *passim.* these, they, them.

HYNE, 178/5730, *sb. pl.* servants.

HYREÞ, 119/3794, *pr. pl.* hear.

HYWE, 24/604, *pt. pl.* hewed, slashed.

HYWE, 145/4665, *sb.* complexion. A.S. *heow, hiw.*

HYȜT, 182/5873, 2 *pt. s.* didst promise.

I-BOTENED, 6/166, *pp.* buttoned, fastened.

I-BROCHED, 107/3389, *pp.* pierced, transfixed.

IN-BUCHED, 92/2879, *pp.* placed in ambush.

I-DIȜTE, 55/1577, *pp.* prepared, armed. A.S. *dihtan.*

IHERID, 42/1100, *pp.* praised. A.S. *herian.*

I-HOTE, 42/1087, *pp.* named. A.S. *hatan.*

ILECHE, 77/2336, *adj.* like.

ILKE, 26/637, *adj.* same, very.

ILYUE, 62/1804, *vb.* believe, credit.

I-PAID, 60/1747, *pp.* satisfied, paid.

I-PIȜT, 83/2543, *pp.* placed, fixed.

I-SAME, 70/2112, *adv.* together.

*I-SCHENT, 12/371, *pp.* destroyed.

I-SWONKE, 5/152, laboured, exerted. A.S. *swincan.*

IAKKE, 116/3689, *sb.* a defensive upper garment quilted with stout leather: a jerkin.

IAMBEAUS, 174/5615, *sb. pl.* leg-armour which covered both the front and the rear, while *greaves* only protected the shins.

IANTAIL, 21/527, *adj.* noble, courteous. Fr. *gentil.*

IET, 58/1681, *sb.* contrivance, device.

IEW-DE-DAME, 74/2225, *sb.* draughts.

IOLIF, 8/251, *adj.* 56/1582, handsome, active.

IOLYTE, 75/2259, *sb.* mirth. "*Ioliet*: Iollity, jollinesse: jocundnesse, mirth, &c.," Cotgrave.

IOUPOUN, 116/3689, *sb.* a short kind of surcoat introduced in the time of Edward III: often of silk or velvet, and was worn over the armour in the same way as the *Cote-armour.*

IORNAY, 34/827, *sb.* combat.

IORNE, 126/4029, *sb.* journey, way.

IORNEE, 100/3155, 134/4307, day's work, day's march.

IOUSTE, 4/105, *vb.* joust, engage, contend.

IUGGYMENT, 178/5739, *sb.* judgment, sentence.

IUPOUN, 31/745, *sb.* jacket.

KEEM, 8/260, *vb. pt. s.* came. KEMEN, 99/3130, *pt. pl.*

KENDE, 48/1298, *sb.* race.

KENNEþ, 134/4314, *pr. s.* knows.

KEP, 125/4016, *vb.* 1 *pr. s.* care, wish.

KEPEDE, 106/3377, *pt. s.* troubled for.

KERNELS, 102/3234, *sb. pl.* battlements. "*Creneaux, Carneaux;* the battlements of a wall. *Creneler.* To imbattle," Cotgrave.

KERSE, 168/5442, *sb.* rush. *See* Note.

KET, 115/3667, *adv.* KETE, 143/4596, quickly, fast, fiercely. *See* Note.

KEUERID, 78/2370, *pp.* covered, hid.

KNAK, 143/4599, *sb.* knock, blow.

*KNAL, 17/463, *sb.* (?knak,) knock, blow. Compare the preceding word.

KNEN, 179/5775, *sb. pl.* knees.

KNOþ, 6/174, *pr. s.* knoweth.

KUD, 50/1401, *pp.* known, celebrated, discovered. A.S. *cyðan, cuðian.*

KULDE, 86/2660, *pt. s.* killed.

KUNNE, 14/389, *sb.* kin, race, family.

KUSTE, 68/2030, *pt. s.* kissed, embraced.

KUþE, 4/104, *vb.* KYþE, 55/1581, show, make known. *See* KUD.

KYNNES, 4/128, *sb.* kind, manner. *None kynnes,* of no kind.

LACYE, 164/5308, *vb.* lace up.

LAK, 56/1589, *sb.* delay, hesitation; 170/5487, defect.

LANCYNGE, 88/2733, *sb.* shower of lances or darts.

LASSE, 6/187, *adv.* less.

LATOUN, 86/2647, *sb.* a mixed metal resembling brass.

LAUȜTE, 76/2315, *pt. s.* LAWTE, 39/995, caught.

LAWE, 3/85, *sb.* faith, creed.

LAWE, 13/386, *vb.* laugh. LAWYNG, 60/1757, *pr. p.*

LAY, 14/397, *sb.* religion, faith.

LAY, 56/1602, *sb.* song, story.

LAYKY, 106/3357, *vb.* amuse themselves, play.

"ȝif him list for to *laike,* þenne loke we mowen."
P. Plowman, B. Prol. 172.

LECHES, 42/1092, *sb. pl.* physicians.

LEEM, 63/1861, *sb.* light.

LEES, 15/407, *sb.* lie.

LEF, 19/495, *adj.* willing, desirous.

LEF, 21/541, *sb.* leaf.

LEF, 148/4763, *vb. imper.* leave, retire from, give up.

LEFTE, 172/5535, *pt. s.* was left, remained.

LEGGE, 54/1534, *vb.* lay, set; 136/4394. stake.

LEKEDEM, 118/3769, *pt. pl.* pleased them.

LEKYNGE, 98/3090, *sb.* pleasure. *Hure lekynge,* pleasing to her.

LEL, 61/1770, *adj.* faithful, true.

LENDE, 179/5772, *vb.* landed, settled.

LERE, 77/2354, *vb.* learn, hear.

LET, 93/2896, *pt. s.* ordered, caused. A.S. *lǣtan.*

LET, 3/93, *vb.* hinder, stop. A.S. *lettan.*

LEUE, 85/2633, *vb.* remain, be left.

LEUERE, 5/145, *adv.* rather, sooner.

LEUES, 48/1327, *sb. pl.* folding-doors.

LEUET, 61/1781, 1 *pr. s.* leave it, give it up.

LEYE, 26/629, *vb.* lie, be deceived.

LIBBE, 179/5779, *vb.* live, pass (one's life).

LIFLODE, 81/2493, *sb.* provisions, means of subsistence.

LIFT, 121/3863, *sb.* sky, air.

LIGGE, 48/1311, *vb.* lie, remain.

LIPPEN, 5/141, *sb. pl.* lips.

LIþ, 74/2248, *sb.* nerves, sinews. A.S. *lið.*

LIȜT, 71/2145, *pt. s.* alighted.

LIȜTE, 20/521, *sb.* light.

LODLUKER, 145/4665, *adj.* more loathsome, hideous.

LOES, 9/273. LOS, 4/123, *sb.* praise, fame.

LOME, 9/286, *adv.* often, frequently.

LORDLYNGES, 54/1518, *sb. pl.* LORLYNGES, 97/3049, sirs.

LORE, 76/2298, *pt. pl.* lost.

LOSENGERS, 131/4196, *sb. pl.* deceivers, liars. "*Losengier.* A flatterer, cogger, foister, pickthanke, prater, cousener, guller, beguiler, deceiver." Cotgrave.

LOÞ, 19/4195, *adj.* unwilling, loth.

LOUELICH, 68/2030. LOUELY, 8/244, *adv.* with love, lovingly.

LOUS, 16/439, *sb.* louse, flea.

LOUTE, 3/67, *vb.* bow, bend.

LOW, 12/356, *pt. s.* LOWȜ, 20/524, laughed.

LUP, 8/243, *vb. pt. s.* leaped.

LUSE, 139/4469, *vb.* lose money.

LUST, 17/453, *vb. imper.* listen, hearken. LUSTE, 64/1900.

LUTHER, 59/1708, *adj.* evil, bad. A.S. *lyðer.*

LUUERE, 128/4093, *adv.* rather, more willingly.

LYAUNCE, 51/1409, *sb.* family, descent; 128/4098, party, alliance.

LYBBE, 131/4213, *vb.* 1 *pr. s.* live.

LYE, 74/2242, *sb.* flame. A.S. *lêg, lŷg.*

"Fostren forth a flaumbe and a feyre *leye.*"
P. Plowman, B. XVII. 207.

LYERE, 60/1757, *sb.* liar.

LYKE, 57/1631, *vb.* please.

LYME, 158/5092, *sb.* limb.

LYN, 111/3541, *vb.* lie, beset.

LYN, 3/89, *vb.* to stop, remain. A.S. *linnan.*

LYNEDE, 49/1362, *pt. s.* leaned. LYNYNGE, 106/3358, *pr. p.*

LYTE, 139/4474, *adj.* little, small; 55/1578, *adv.*

LYTHER, 54/1535, *adj.* dangerous, fierce. A.S. *lyðer.*

LYÞ, 158/5092, *sb.* limb. *See* LIÞ.

LYUAND, 22/549, *adj.* living, alive.

LYUEDE, 3/85, *pt. pl.* believed.

LYUES, 81/2483, *adv.* alive.

LYURE, 42/1095, *sb.* liver.

MA, 91/2828, *imp. pron.* men, they. Fr. *on.* *See* ME.

MAKE, 51/1422, *sb.* mate, consort.

MALES, 131/4201, *sb. pl.* bags.

MAMETES, 83/2541, *sb. pl.* idols. *See Note to l.* 2534.

MANACE, 16/432, *sb.* threats, menaces.

MANYON, 35/835, many a one, many.

MARBRE, 177/5701, *sb.* marble-vessel.

MARTYR, 2/55, *vb.* martyr, slay.

MASALYNE, 48/1327, *sb.* some kind of metal: probably brass. Halliwell quotes from MS. Cantab. Ff. II. 38, leaf 122:—

"iiij. c. cuppys of golde fyne,
And as many of *maslyn.*"

MASTRYE, 65/1904, *sb.* MAYSTRYE, 2/57, power, mastery

MAT, 84/2590. MATE, 82/2506, *adj.* faint, almost dead. "*Mat.* Deaded, mated, amated, quelled, subdued, overcome." Cotgrave.

"Meliors was al *mat:* sche ne miȝt no furþer."
William of Palerne, ed. Skeat, 2441.

MAUFESOURS, 114/3633, *sb. pl.* villains, malefactors.

MAUGRE, 23/567, *prep.* in spite of.

MAUGREE, 10/315, *sb.* misfortune.

MAUMERYE, 83/2534, 153/4938, *sb.* shrine or temple of idols. *See* Note.

MAWE, 59/1691, *vb.* may, are able. *See* MOWE.

MAY, 94/2927, *sb.* maid. A.S. *mæg.*

MAYE, 39/978, *vb.* to be troubled. "*S'Esmayer.* To be sad, pensive, carefull; to take thought." Cotgrave. Caxton reads—"lose his wits."

MAYGNY, 61/1791, *sb.* MAYNEE, 107/3405, meyne. Attendants, retinue. O.Fr. *maisniée* = *mansionatam,* from *mansionem,* as *household,* from *house.*

MAYL, 144/4653, *sb.* mallet, hammer.

MAYLLE, 26/624, *sb.* ring or link of his mail-armour. *See note to l.* 876.

MAYSTRES, 49/1349, *sb.* governess.

ME, 3/88, *impers. pron.* men, people; equivalent to the French *on.* *See* MA.

MEDE, 167/5409, *sb.* meadow, field.

MELKIS, 182/5879, *sb.* of milk.

IELLE, 178/5749, *vb.* have anything to do, meddle with.

MELLEDE, 104/3290, *pt. s.* mixed, mingled.

MENDE, 84/2584, *sb.* consciousness, mind.

MENE, 173/5568, *vb.* lament, complain.

MERUAYLLEþ, 22/556, *imp. pr.* it surprises, astonishes me, I am astonished.

MESSAGER, 52/1466, *sb.* MESSAGERE, 53/1483, messenger.

MEST, 73/2217, *adj.* greatest, principal.

METE, 2/47, *sb.* a meal.

METE-LES, 45/1195, *adj.* without food.

*METENYE, 12/352, *vb.* maintain.

MEYNE, 22/556, *adj.* low, poor.

MEYTEYNE, 12/352, *vb.* maintain.

MICHE, 34/811, *adv.* much.

MIDDEL, 73/2199, *sb.* waist.

MIDE, 92/2866, *prep.* with. A.S. *mid.*

MIXT, 18/474, 2 *pt. s.* mightest, canst.

MOD, 5/144, *sb.* temper, feeling, disposition.

MOLDE, 153/4940, *sb.* the suture of the skull.

MOLDE, 12/361, *sb.* earth.

MON, 45/1212, *sb.* MONE, 45/1196, lament, lamentation.

MONEKYS, 3/60, *sb. pl.* monks.

MORED, 91/2834, *pp.* fixed, rooted.

"And *i-mored* so uaste also þat hi ne miȝte awei be nome."—*Legends of the Holy Rood*, E. E. T. S., ed. Morris, p. 28, l. 126.

MOREL, 116/3713, *sb.* a name properly applied to a dark-coloured horse. "*Morel* as *Moreau. Moreau cheval;* a blacke horse." Cotgrave.

MORNYNG, 77/2338, *sb.* mourning, lamentation.

MORWE, 42/1114, *sb.* MORWENYNG, 2/46, morning, morrow.

MORWETYDE, 93/2895, *sb.* morning-time, morning.

MOST, 5/144, *aux. vb.* might.

MOT, 10/318, *aux. vb.* may.

MURGþE, 68/2034, *sb.* MURþE, 2/48, mirth.

MYNE, 155/4993, *vb.* undermine.

MYNTE, 173/5587, *vb.* aim.

MYSBEDE, 85/2619, *vb.* give disgraceful orders to, speak shamefully.

MYSBRAYDE, 40/1037, *sb.* abuse.

MYS-BYþOȝTE, 180/5825, *pp.* mistaken, acting wrongly.

MYSTER, 87/2684, *sb.* trade, profession, art.

MYSWENT, 66/1963, *pp.* mistaken, gone wrong.

NAD, 5/141, *pl. s.* for *ne had*, had not.

NAKE, 88/2744, *adj.* uncovered, bare.

NAM, 80/2434, for *ne am*, am not.

NAM, 31/746, *pt. s.* hit, reached; 8/257, took. A.S. *niman.*

NAMLICH, 62/1823, *adv.* especially.

NAYM, 13/374. Nain. Compare CAYM = Cain.

NAȝT, 61/1779, *adv.* not, nought.

NAUEL-STEDE, 20/509, *sb.* navel, middle.

NEDES, 60/1741, *adv.* necessarily.

NEITE, 5/148, *sb.* night, evening.

NEL, 23/568, for *ne will*, will not.

NEMPNED, 101/3196, *pp.* named.

NEODE, 120/3853, *sb.* affair, business.

NERE, 10/326, *pt. s.* for *ne were*, were not.

NERE, 41/1069, *adv.* never.

NESSCHE, 110/3499, *adj.* NEYCHS, 161/5187, soft; *at nessche & hard*, entirely, on every point. A.S. *hnesce.*

NEYȝ, 23/575, *adv.* nigh, nearly.

NEȝED, 6/179, *pt. s.* approached. NEȝEHEDE, 53/1494, drew near. A.S. *neahwian.*

NEȝENE, 88/2720, *num.* nine.

NEȝENTENE, 87/2699, *num.* nineteen.

NEȝY, 154/4953, *pr. pl.* approach, come near. *See* NEȝED.

NISTE, 28/681, *pt. s.* for *ne wiste*, did not know.

NOLDE, 4/127, *pt. s.* for *ne wolde*, would not.

NOME, 43/1133, *pp.* betaken, taken. A.S. *niman.*

NONE, 56/1587, *sb.* noon.

NONES, 48/1324, *for the nones* = for the time (*for than ânes*).

NOT, 122/3902, *pr. s.* for *ne wot*, does not know.

NOÞELES, 23/573, *conj.* nevertheless, yet.

NOÞER, 5/147, *conj.* NOUÞER, neither, nor.

NOWAR, 2/51, *adv.* nowhere. A.S. *nâhwer*.

NUBBEE, 55/1571, *sb.* Nubia.

NULLETH, 94/2932, 1 *pr. pl.* for *ne wulleth*, will not.

NUYE, 2/49, *vb.* be vexed or grieved.

NYCY, 181/5843, *adj.* foolish, silly. Lat. *nescius*.

NYCYTE, 75/2255, *sb.* folly. Fr. "*niceté:* simplicitie, or simpleness." Cotgrave.

NYSTE, 89/2756, *pt. pl.* for *ne wiste*, did not know, were at a loss.

NYÞEMEST, 103/3257, *adj.* lowest.

NYȜT, 155/5017, *pt. pl.* knew not.

O, 18/470, *adj.* one.

OF-SEȜ, 117/3739, *pt. s.* saw at a distance.

OF-TAKE, 39/984, *pp.* OF-TOKEN, 39/987, *pt. pl.* overtook.

OK, 141/4561. OKE, 141/4554, *sb.* oak.

ONDE, 74/2242, *sb.* breath.

ONES, 156/5040, *adv.* ONYS, 15/418, once, before.

ONEÞE, 88/2739. ONNEÞE, 36/883. OUNEÞE, 85/2631, *adv.* with difficulty, with reluctance. A.S. *Oneaȝ* from *eaȝ*, easy.

ONLADE, 155/4989, *adj.* unloaded, empty.

ONMAWE, 86/2658. OUNMAWE, 89/2766, *adj.* fierce, furious.

OPEN-HER, 66/1943, *adj.* bare-headed.

OR, 154/4970, *adv.* before, ere.

ORN, 122/3893, *pt. s.* ran. A.S. *rinnan*, *irnan*, *eornan*.

"The children *ournen* at the bares."
MS. Cott. Cleop. D. ix, leaf 156, back.

OTEN, 152/4901, *sb. pl.* oats, corn.

*OUN, 20/511. ?

OUNARAID, 34/821, *adj.* unprepared, unarmed.

OUNDO, 48/1310, *vb. imper.* undo, release.

OUNGERTE, 66/1943, *adj.* ungirded.

OUNHELID, 24/586, *adj.* uncovered. A.S. *helan*, to cover.

OUNHENDE, 66/1965, *adj.* uncourteous.

OUNKENDE, 48/1301, *adj.* unkind.

OUNLEKES, 47/1264, *pr. s.* unlocks. OUNLOK, 46/1254, *pt. s.*

OUNRIDE, 32/747, *adj.* OUNRYDE, 116/3691, fearful.

OUNRIȜT, 40/1031, *sb.* outrage.

OUNRIȜT, 5/157, *adv.* unfairly, wrongly.

OUNÞANK, 98/3061, ill thanks. The same as *maugre*, or *malgre* = *malegratum*.

OUNWRASTE, 93/2905, *adj.* OUNWRESTE, 147/4740, wicked, base.

OUNWRYE, 63/1849. *vb.* unfold, disclose, tell. A.S. *unwrîhan*.

OUT-TAKE, 7/200, *prep.* except, save.

OUTTRAGE, 58/1669, *sb.* foolish action.

OUÞER, 3/84, *conj.* or, *ouþer* . . . . *ouþer* = either . . . or.

OUERAL, 50/1389, *adv.* everywhere, altogether.

OUERCASTE, 63/1831, *vb.* be troubled.

OWAR, 33/767, *adv.* anywhere. A.S. *âhwær*.

OWE, 157/5068, *adj.* own, true.

OȜENE, 20/513, *adj.* own.

OȜT, 54/1535, *sb.* ought, anything.

OȜTE, 98/3071, *pt. s.* owned, possessed.

PACE, 111/3523, *vb.* pass, cross.

PAID, 83/2533, *pp.* pleased.

PAN, 161/5188, *sb.* piece, portion. "*Pan.* A pane, piece, or pannell of a wall, also a Spanne." Cotgrave. "Panne of a howse; *Panna.*" Cath. Anglicum.

PAN, 145/4685, *sb.* skull.

PARAGE, 58/1668, *sb.* parentage, kindred.

PARD, 111/3517, *sb.* part, direction.

PARFAY, 17/457, in faith, faith. Fr. *par foi*.

PARFORNY, 67/1994, *vb.* perform, carry out.

PAS, 95/2969, *sb.* course.

PAST, 89/2763, *sb.* paste. *On past*, in a pie.

PASTE, 45/1195, *pt. pl.* went away, departed.

PAUTENER, 35/859, *sb.* villain, rascal. *See* Note.

PAUYLOUNS, 3/74, *sb. pl.* tents.

PAYE, 135/4355, *sb.* pleasure, satisfaction. *At my paye* = to please or satisfy me.

PAYNYE, 4/122, *sb.* PAYENYE, 33/761, heathendom, pagan countries.

PAYS, 130/4152, *sb.* peace, reconciliation.

PAYTREL, 115/3665, *sb.* breastplate; the strap that crosses the breast of a horse.

PENOUN, 55/1555, *sb.* flag, banner.

PERCY, 143/4613, *vb.* pierce, wound.

PERE, 15/413, *sb.* equal, match. Lat. *par.*

PERE, 177/5722, *sb.* pear.

PEROUN, 137/4429, *sb.* column, pier. "*Perron.* A square base of stone, or metall, some five or six feet high, whereon, in old time, knights errant placed some discourse, challenge, or proofe, of an adventure." Cotgrave.

PERREE, 48/1327, *sb.* jewels, precious stones. "*Pierrerie.* Jewels or precious stones." Cotgrave.

PERS, 141/4548, *vb.* pierce, cut through.

PERS, 58/1682, *sb. pl.* piers.

PERSAUNT, 154/4980, *sb.* Persians.

PERSCHED, 38/941, *pt. s.* pierced, ran through.

PEYNYMES, 33/762, *sb. pl.* pagans, paynim.

PIȜT, 69/2069, *pp.* fixed, placed.

PLAT, 48/1330, *pp.* plated.

PLATE, 36/876, *sb.* plate-armour. *See* Note.

PLEYNEDE, 32/750, *pt. s.* complained.

PLYȜTE, 47/1281, *vb.* plight, pledge. A.S. *plihtan.*

PLYȜTE, 97/3029, *pt. s.* snatched, plucked.

POLASTRE, 48/1327, *sb.* ?

POLTE, 157/5077, *pt. s.* put, placed.

PORPOS, 22/560, *sb.* intention, purpose.

POSTE, 100/3158, *sb.* power, might.

POT, 73/2213, *pt. s.* POTTE, 39/1003, put, placed.

POYLE, 12/365, *sb.* Apulia.

PRAUNCEDE, 165/5341, *pt. s.* stamped about.

PRAY, 181/5857, *sb.* prayer, entreaty.

PREF, 43/1150, *sb.* proof, witness.

PRES, 171/5520, *sb.* charge, struggle.

PREST, 103/3240, *adj.* ready. O.Fr. *prest.* Fr. *prêt.* Lat. *præsto.*

PREYNTE, 46/1238, *pt. s.* winked. "*Prince eages*, nictus vel ictus oculi." Lye, A.S. Dict.

PROCURY, 180/5826, *vb.* cause, endeavour.

PROFRYEM, 5/139, *vb.* offer himself, volunteer.

PROUTELICH, 4/118, *adv.* proudly, haughtily.

PROW, 12/357, *sb.* good, advantage. O.Fr. *prou.*

PRUDE, 16/432, *sb.* pride, haughtiness.

PRUWESSE, 40/1014, *sb.* prowess, daring.

PRYKIE, 34/824, *vb.* ride.

PRYME, 62/1800, *sb.* six o'clock, a.m.

PRYS, 6/173, *sb.* value, account, estimation.

PRYSOUNS, 39/1000, *sb. pl.* prisoners, captives.

PRYUEE, 179/5773, *adj.* friendly.

PULT, 24/594, *pt. s.* put, placed. PULTE, 33/774, pushed.

PUPLE, 130/4169, *sb.* people, men.

PURCHAS, 85/2603, *sb.* acquisition.

PURPOS, 66/1956, *sb.* opinion, proposal.

PYCH, 135/4330, *sb.* pitch.

PYKES, 144/4647, *sb. pl.* spikes.

PYKOYS, 155/4993, *sb.* pickaxes. *See* Note.

PYNE, 41/1048, *sb.* PYNS, 41/1055, *sb. pl.* grief, pain.

PYNGE, 80/2430, *vb.* tingle, stir; 46/1248, push.

PYSE, 181/5847, *sb.* pea. Lat. *pisum.*

QUARELS, 105/3312, *sb. pl.* bolts from cross-bows. "*Quarreau.* A Quarrell, or boult for a crossebowe, or an arrow

with a four-square head." Cotgrave.

QUARREE, 145/4676, *adj.* square-headed.

QUAȜTE, 25/607, *pt. s.* shook, quaked.

QUED, 16/429, *sb.* wretch. O.Fris. *qvâd.*

QUEDE, 54/1535, *sb.* ill, harm.

QUELLE, 16/431, *vb.* kill. A.S. *cwellan.*

QUENTE, 115/3659, *adj.* strange, curious, quaint. *See* QUEYNTE.

QUEREL, 28/668, *sb.* quarrel, engagement.

QUERT, 30/712, *adj.* safe, whole.

QUERTE, 10/325, *adj.* safe. *In querte* = in safety. "Querte; *Incolumis.*" Cath. Angl.

QUEYNTE, 58/1684, *adj.* QUYNTE, 58/1681, 103/3257, curious. "*Coint.* Quaint, compt, neat, fine, spruce," &c. Cotgrave.

QUYCLYCH, 60/1742, *adv.* quickly, soon.

QUYKE, 118/3764, *adj.* alive, living.

QUYTE, 62/1819, *vb.* requite, repay.

RAD, 67/1990, *pp.* advised, told.

RAIED, 76/2295, *pp.* laid out, served.

RAKE, 72/2177, *pt. s.* hurried. A.S. *recan.*

RAPLY, 13/384, *adv.* quickly. Cf. Lat. *rapere*, to snatch, to seize hurriedly.

RATHE, 121/3874, *adv.* early. RAÞERE, 16/426, *comp.*

RAUȜT, 26/641, *pp.* RAȜT, 38/965, *pt. pl.* reached, struck. *See* ARAUȜTE.

RAY, 13/385, *imper. s.* array, prepare.

RAYNE, 60/1755, *sb.* rein, bridle.

RECET, 40/1021, *sb.* retirement.

RECREENT, 12/318, *adj.* recreant.

RECULEDE, 142/4585, *pt. pl.* drove back, made to recoil.

RECULLE, 38/971, *vb.* recoil, draw back, retreat.

RECULYNGE, 89/2771, *sb.* retreat, retiring.

RED, 59/1716, 67/1986, *sb.* advice. REDE, 169/5456.

REDE, 7/218, *vb.* assist, maintain.

REFET, 60/1736, *pp.* fattened, fat. "*Refaict.* Plumpe, fattened, high-fed." Cotgrave.

REGARD, 47/1297, *sb.* looks, appearance. "*Regard.* A look, view, sight, aspect." Cotgrave.

REGNEE, 78/2386, *sb.* kingdom.

REKE, 46/1249, *vb.* run, hurry. A.S. *recan.*

REKE, 167/5403, *pt. pl.* hastened.

REKE, 3/61, *adj.* rich. A.S. *rîce.*

RELIEDE, 38/963, *pt. pl.* rallied, recovered.

RELYGYOUS, 3/62, *adj.* members of any religious order.

REMUYE, 3/77, *vb.* remove, stir.

RENDE, 74/2242, *pt. s.* ran.

RENDOUN, 166/5357, *sb.* haste, speed. *See* ARAUNDOUN.

RENEYED, 145/4673, *pp.* foresworn, false.

RENTE, 22/561, *sb.* property.

REPE, 113/3583, *adv.* speedily, quickly. *See also* RAPLY.

REPREUE, 14/404, *sb.* shame, disgrace.

REQUILLED, 57/1621, *pt. pl.* drove together. *See* Note.

RESCOWE, 40/1012. RESCUWE, 39/1008, *vb.* RESCUWY, 39/1003, rescue.

RESOUN, 126/4047, *sb.* advice, opinion.

RESTARE, 51/1439, *vb.* restore, give up.

REUE, 14/405, *vb.* deprive, bereave.

REWARDIEÞ, 109/3463, *pr.* 2 *pl.* determine, agree. REWARDED, 10/312. REWARDET, 10/311, *pp.*

REWE, 97/3026, *sb.* row.

REWÞE, 33/784, *sb.* pity.

REYNOURS, 62/1798, *sb. pl.* thieves, robbers.

RIBAUX, 140/4517, *sb. pl.* villains, rascals.

RIDEL, 83/2537, *sb.* curtain, screen. "*Rideau.* A curtain, or cloth-skreen." Cotgrave.

RIG, 137/4397. RIGGE, 48/1309, *sb.* back. A.S. *hrycg.*

RIGGES, 55/1565, *sb. pl.* ridges, mounds.

RITTE, 156/5030, *pt. pl.* cut, tore.

RIȜDT, 38/956, *pr. s.* rides.

RIȜTES, 135/4343, *adv.* directly, straight.

ROBBY, 62/1799, *vb.* rob, plunder.

ROUT, 34/813, *sb.* ROUTE, 34/825, company, followers.

ROUTE, 49/1343, *vb.* roar. O.Icel. *rauta.*

ROWE, 48/1300, *vb.* ?*perhaps* rest, be still. See *The Tale of Beryn*, ed. Furnivall, l. 284.

ROWE, 66/1954, *adv.* rough, thick. A.S. *ruh, ruw.*

ROȜT, 176/5669, *pt. s.* cared, recked. A.S. *rêcan.*

RYDE, 48/1300, *vb.* ride.

RYOT, 138/4459, *sb.* assembly, gathering. O.Fr. *riote.*

RYSE, 42/1114, *pt. pl.* arose, rose.

RYSSCHE, 4/124, *sb.* rush. A.S. *risce.*

SAD, 12/353, *adv.* strongly.

SADE, 103/3235, *adj.* heavy; 105/3340, sharp, severe. "Sad, or hard. *Solidus.*" *Prompt. Parv.*

SAF, 128/4109, *prep.* except, save.

SAINFAILE, 77/2350, *sb.* certainly, beyond a doubt. Fr. *sans faille.*

SAKRED, 51/1405, *pp.* taken a solemn oath.

SARPLERS, 136/4371, *sb. pl.* bags. "*Sarpillére.* A Sarpliar; a peece of canvas, cloth, or other stuffe to wrap or packe up wares in." Cotgrave.

SAUETE, 107/3410, *sb.* safety.

SAWE, 57/1635, *sb.* tale, account.

SAY, 7/213, *sb.* serge or woollen cloth. "Saye clothe, *serge.*" Palsgrave.

SAY, 34/811. SAYE, 117/3729, *pt. pl.* SAYW, 46/1245, *pt. s.* saw, discovered.

SAYE, 42/1093, *vb.* try, examine.

SAYNE, 63/1836, *vb.* say, tell.

SAYSEþ, 96/3009, *pr. s.* seizes.

SCABERKE, 33/771, *sb.* scabbard.

SCAþYE, 32/759, *vb.* harass, injure.

SCHAD, 31/743, *pt. s.* spilt.

SCHAK, 86/2663, *sb.* shock, charge.

SCHAKE, 37/928, *vb.* hurry, ride.

SCHAKET, 73/2205, *vb.* shake it.

SCHALY, 104/3282, *vb.* peel off, fall off (in scales).

SCHAPE, 146/4713, *pp.* purposed, proposed. A.S. *sceapian.*

SCHAV, 25/615, *pt. s.* cut, shaved off.

SCHEF, 50/1369, *pt. s.* pushed, shoved.

SCHELTOU, 51/1436, shalt thou.

SCHENE, 138/4463, *adj.* bright, shining.

SCHENNES, 72/2175, *sb.* ruin, destruction. A.S. *scendnyss.*

SCHENT, 17/459, *pp.* disgraced, defeated. A.S. *scendan.*

SCHENTFULE, 67/1973, *adj.* shameful, disgraceful.

SCHEP, 21/541, *pt. s.* shaped, created. *See* SCHAPE.

SCHERTH, 35/837, *pr. s.* cuts, shaves. A.S. *sceran.*

SCHILDE, 31/727. SCHULDE, 26/631, *pt. pl.* resounded. O.H.Ger. *scellan.*

"*þide* schillinde stefne."
Seinte Marharete, ed. Cockayne, 19.

SCHILLE, 96/3020, *adv.* shrilly, loudly. A.S. *scyll.* *See* Note.

SCHIPPE, 21/542, 2 *pr. s.* prepare, make ready. *See* SCHAPE.

SCHON, 66/1941, *sb. pl.* shoes.

SCHOND, 66/1947, *sb.* ruin, disgrace. A.S. *sceond.*

SCHOURE, 25/581, *sb.* blow.

SCHREWE, 62/1828, *sb.* villain, cursed fellow.

SCHRIDE, 8/234, *vb.* array, dress. SCHRIDDE, 35/868, *pt. s.* A.S. *scrýdan.*

SCHYNDE, 20/523, *vb.* ruin, destroy. A.S. *scendan.*

SCKYRME, 74/2227, *vb.* fence.

SCOLLE, 12/353, *sb.* skull, head.

SCOUTE, 75/2284, *sb.* wretch.

SEDE, 6/190, *pt. s.* said, cried.

SEET, 45/1200, *pt. s.* sat.

SEGE, 72/2183, *sb.* position, place; 78/2358, siege, attack.

SEKEDE, 7/209, *pt. s.* sighed.

SELCOUþ, 177/5708, *adj.* strange, unusual.

SELUE, 67/1997, *adj.* same.

SEMBBLY, 35/834, *adj.* fair, handsome.

SEMBLANT, 37/923, *sb.* face, countenance.

SEMBLEE, 79/2423, *sb.* assemblage.

SENGLE, 41/1071, *adj.* simple, hence, unclothed, naked; 66/1942, *adv.* *See* Note.

SERUAGE, 2/56, *sb.* subjection.

SESSOYNGNE, 65/1923, *sb.* Saxony.

SEST, 70/2108, *pr. t. s.* seest.

SEST, 40/1017, *pt. pl.* ceased, stopped.

SET, 64/1872, 1 *pr. s.* reckon, think of consequence.

SEȜ, 31/736, *pt. s.* SEȜE, 19/504, saw. A.S. *seon.*

SEȜ, 24/589, *pt. s.* ?

SHET, 124/3962, *pt. s.* shot, plunged. *Sset* occurs in *Robert of Gloucester.*

SHREWEDERE, 138/4431, *adj.* more villainous-looking.

SHREWIDNESSE, 98/3084, *sb.* villany.

SHROUT, 106/3358, *sb.* cover, shelter. A.S. *scrût.*

SIBBE, 109/3447, *adj.* related.

SIGGE, 3/87, *vb.* say, tell.

SIKERLUKERE, 35/867, *adv.* SYKERLUKER, 37/909, more securely, more safely.

SIþ, 44/1163, *adv.* afterwards, after.

SIþES, 41/1080, *sb. pl.* times.

SIȜTE, 40/1023, *pt. s.* sighed.

SKEER, 181/5835, *adj.* free, safe from.

SKRYȜTE, 56/1609, *pt. pl.* shrieked, cried out.

SKUNTEDE, 121/3888, *pt. s.* foamed. *See* Note.

SKYLES, 110/3499, *sb. pl.* reasons, reasoning.

SLAKE, 84/2595, *vb.* fail, run short.

SLAUNDRE, 4/132, *sb.* mockery.

SLAUȜT, 103/3236, *sb.* SLAȜT, 171/5519, slaughter.

SLEE, 2/55, *vb.* slay. SLEEþ, 66/1966, *imper.* A.S. *sleon.* *See also* SLONE *and* SLOW.

SLEGGE, 48/1308, *sb.* sledge-hammer.

SLENT, SLENTE, 28/674, *pt. s.* aimed, struck. *See* STRATMANN, *s. v. Slengen.*

SLEȜ, 52/1446, *adj.* SLEȜE, 46/1239, wise, sensible. O.Icel. *slægr.*

SLO, 135/4338, *sb.* sloe. *See* Note.

SLONE, 16/427, *vb.* SLAY, 66/1958, *pp.* A.S. *sleon.*

SLOW, 3/59, *pt. s.* SLOȜ, 3/62, slew. A.S. *sleon.*

SMERE, 13/386, *adv.* ? gently.

"He *smere* lôh." *Laȝamon*, ed. Madden, 14061.

SMYLLEþ, 83/2546, *pr. s.* smells.

SNEL, 75/2273, *adv.* quickly, at once. A.S. *snell, snel.*

SO, 3/81, *adv.* as; so . . . so = as . . . as.

SOCOURE, 45/1192, *sb.* help, assistance.

SOIOURNED, 150/4841, *pt. s.* halted, remained.

SOMERS, 87/2692, *sb. pl.* pack-horses, horses of burden. "*Sommier.* A sumpter-horse."—Cotgrave.

SOND, 14/401. SONDE, 165/5331, *sb.* message.

SONDE, 23/573, *sb.* sand, ground.

SOOT, SOT, 30/719, *sb.* sweat. A.S. *swat.*

SOR, 19/503, *sb.* wound. "Surre; *cicatrix.*" Cath. Anglicum.

SOUNDERLICHE, 67/1990, *adv.* separately.

SOUNEDE, 41/1080, *pt. s.* SOWENEDE, 131/4221, swooned, fainted.

SOWENYNG, 43/1134, *sb.* SOȜENYNG, 84/2585, swooning, faint.

SOȜTE, 3/71, *vb. pt. t.* sought, came to.

SPELIE, 13/342, *vb.* spare. "*Spele* and spare." *P. Plowman*, C. XIV. 77.

SPELLE, 16/429, *sb.* speech, harangue.

SPERDE, 47/1263, *pt. s.* closed, barred. A.S. *sparrian.*

SPERHAUK, 87/2680, *sb.* sparrow-hawk.

SPILLE, 153/4947, *vb.* be lost, ruined, killed. SPILD, 23/569, *pp.*

SPILLYNG, 168/5425, *sb.* waste, outpouring.

SPIȜTE, 103/3248, *pt. s.* ? directed, bade.

SPORES, 55/1564, *sb. pl.* spurs.

SPREYNTE, 104/3291, *pt. s.* sprinkled. A.S. *sprengan.*

SPRINGOLD, 105/3310, *sb.* a machine of war for casting stone arrows, &c. *See* Note.

SPRYNGGYNG, 112/3562, *sb.* dawning, opening.

STAGES, 103/3255, *sb. pl.* platforms, stories. Fr. *estage.*

STAP, 11/345, *sb.* step.

STAPE, 180/5793, *vb.* step.

STENT, 58/1653, *pr. s.* stands.

STERK, 103/3241, *adj.* sharp, stiff. A.S. *stearc.*

STERREDE, 132/4233, *adj.* with a star on his forehead.

STEUENE, 99/3111, *sb.* voice.

STEȜE, 78/2388, *vb.* climb.

STEȜE, 178/5731, *pt. s.* ascended. A.S. *stīgan.*

STILLE, 10/322, *adv.* quietly, in a low tone.

STILP, 141/4553, *sb.* stump, post. O.Icel. *stolpi.*

"But iii foote high on *stulpes* must ther be."
Palladius on Husbondrie, ed. Lodge, 39/1054.

STOKKES, 44/1186, *sb. pl.* stocks.

STORK, 71/2118, *adj.* stiff, sharp. *See* STERK.

STOUNDE, 20/518, *sb.* moment.

STOURE, 29/696, *sb.* battle, contest.

STOȜEN, 156/5027, *pp.* climbed. *See* STEȜE.

STRAUȜT, 67/1976, *adv.* STRAȜTE, 73/2204, directly, straight.

STRE, 74/2229, *sb.* straw.

STREK, 8/244, *vb. pt. s.* stroked.

STREKES, 47/1265, *pr. s.* hurries, goes rapidly.

STRUYEDE, 3/64, *pt. s.* destroyed.

STURIE, 36/876, *vb.* exert, busy himself.

STYL, 105/3313, *sb.* STYLE, 138/4433, steel.

STYNTE, 3/77, *pt. s.* stopped, halted. A.S. *astyntan.*

STYÞ, 29/696, *adj.* STYÞE, 85/2614, fierce, strong, sturdy; 26/631, *adv.* A.S. *stīð.*

SULK, 138/4463, *sb.* silk.

SUNDERLY, 94/2937, *adv.* separately, individually.

SURLOKERE, 20/520, *adv.* more safely.

SUÞÞE, 27/647, *adv.* after, afterwards, since.

SWARF, 31/743, *pt. s.* swerved, glanced, passed. A.S. *sweorfan.*

SWART, 93/2908. *adj.* black. A.S. *sweart.*

SWATTE, 178/5753, *pt. s.* sweated.

SWER, 3/82, *pt. s.* swore.

SWETE, 120/3855, *vb.* sweat, be exhausted.

SWOLWE, 132/4232, *sb.* swallow.

SWOM, 124/3958, *pt. s.* swam.

SWYKEL, 142/4589, *adj.* traitorous, deceitful. A.S. *swīcol.*

SWYNKE, 20/517, *vb.* work, labour.

SWYRE, 31/735, *sb.* neck. A.S. *swīra.*

SWYÞÞER, 34/816, *adv.* more quickly.

SYCHE, 65/1935, *vb.* seek, follow.

SYE, 58/1679, *pr. s.* seest.

SYKERLY, 3/62, *adv.* certainly, assuredly.

SYKERY, 47/1281, *vb.* assure, pledge. *See also* SAKRED.

SYKYNGE, 77/2345, *pr. p.* sighing.

SYMEÞ, 59/1700, *pr. s.* seems.

SYSST, 180/5809, 2 *pr. s.* seest.

SYȜYNG, 40/1040, *sb.* sighing.

TABIDE, 19/500, *for* to abide, to wait for.

TABLERE, 74/2225, *sb.* backgammon.

TABOURS, 122/3895, *sb. pl.* drums.

TAKET, 73/2204, *vb.* take it, seize it.

TAL, 12/363, for *to al; in tal* = into all.

TALE, 34/799, *sb.* count, reckoning *by tale*, in number.

TANGE, 48/1308, *sb.* tongs.

TARSE, 138/4463, *sb.* a kind of silk. *See* Note.

TAST, 59/1700, *vb.* TASTE, 42/1094, try, examine, touch.

TAUȜTE, 50/1391, *pt. s.* TAȜTE, 56/1603, showed, proved.

TEEN, 39/991, *sb.* TENE, 35/846, rage, vexation.

TELEST, 55/1578, *pr. s.* countest, reckonest. TELLEÞ, 4/117, TELT, 6/173, *pr. s.*

TEYNTE, 82/2506, *pp.* pained, affected. A.S. *teonian, tȳnan.*

THE, 5/144, *vb.* thrive; *so most he þe*, so might he prosper.

THILKE, 12/364, *pron.* that one, he.

THO, 5/141, *adv.* then.

THRO, 124/3968, *adj.* swift, threatening.

THROWE, 167/5413, *sb.* moment, short time.

TIDE, 11/350, *sb.* time. A.S. *tíd.*

TILLE, 3/59, *vb.* reach, come to. TILDE, 145/4678, *pt. s.* A.S. [*ge*]*tillan.*

TIȜT, 40/1015, *pt. pl.* turned, directed their course. TIȜTE, 31/729, *pp.* intended, meant.

TOCHED, 7/219, *pt. s.* appertained to, belonged to.

TOCHON, 96/3000, *pt. s.* broke in pieces. A.S. *to-cînan.* "Þe roche *tochon.*" *An Eng. Miscell.*, ed. Morris, p. 92.

TO-CLATRID, 36/897, *pp.* broken to pieces.

TO-FALLE, 155/5011, *pp.* knocked to pieces.

TO-FLENTE, 153/4940, *pt. s.* flew in ieces.

TO-GADRES, 28/672, *adv.* together.

TO-HEWE, 28/676, *pp.* cut to pieces.

TOK, 4/114, *pt. s.* counted, considered.

TOL, 141/4541, *sb.* tool, weapon.

TOLD, 145/4659, *pp.* reckoned, measured.

TO-NIȜT, 5/153, *adv.* this night just past, last night.

TO-RENTE, 28/675, *pt. pl.* tore, cut to pieces.

TORKE, 85/2605, *sb.* Turk.

TO-TAAR, 141/4533, *pt. s.* tore to pieces.

TOUR, 42/1104, for *to our.*

TOUȜT, 151/4857, *adj.* strong. *See* TOȜT.

TO-WOND, 84/2568, *pt. s.* went, tumbled.

TOȜT, 124/3969, *adv.* strongly, fiercely. "Þe kniȜt so *toȜt.*" *Sir Gawayne*, 1869.

TOȜT, 59/1716. ?

TOȜTE, 136/4390, *adv.* tightly, full.

TRACES, 182/5881, *sb. pl.* tresses, hair.

TRATE, 50/1370, *sb.* old wretch. *See* Note.

TRAYSEMENT, 147/4754, *sb.* treason, treachery.

TRE, 56/1595, *sb.* TREO, 123/3939, wood, shaft. TREN, 102/3230, *pl.*

TRECHOUR, 102/3210, *sb.* traitor.

TRENCHAUNT, 21/537, *adj.* cutting, sharp.

TREPEDE, 8/241, *vb. pt. s.* stepped on.

TRETYS, 182/5883, *adj.* slender. *See* Note.

TREU, 133/4393, *sb.* toll. "*Treu.* The toll or custom paied unto Lords, for salt, and other commodities, or merchandise, carried along by their dominions; and generally, any toll, tax, or imposition."—Cotgrave. *See* TROW.

TRIST, 6/191, 1 *pr. s.* trust, rely on.

TRISTOUR, 78/2373, *sb.* grief, sadness.

TROME, 78/2372, *sb.* assembly, gathering, heap. A.S. *truma.*

TROSSY, 130/4189, *vb.* TROSSYE, 58/1663, *imper. s.* TRUSSYE, 130/4193, *vb.* pack, tie. "*Trousser.* To tucke, packe, bind or girt in." Cotgrave. TROSSEDE, 13/4201, *pt. pl.*

TROW, 44/1186, *sb.* wood.

TROW, 60/1732, *sb.* toll, fine. *See* TREU.

TRUFLE, 109/3459, *sb.* nonsense, folly.

TRUPT, 64/1872, *interj.* pooh! *See* Note.

TRUSSYAM, 126/4029, *vb.* get themselves ready, pack up. *See* TROSSY.

TRUWAGE, 60/1731, *sb.* toll. "*Truage*, A toll, custom, tax, imposition." Cotgrave.

TURDE, 87/2691, *pt. pl.* turned, from French *tour;* turn being from *tourner.* L. Lat. *tornare.*

TWELMONTH, 91/2832, *sb.* twelve-months a year.

TWELÞE, 91/2843, *num. adj.* twelfth.

TWEYRE, 10/311, *num.* of two.

TWYE, 175/5645, *num.* two.

TWYȜTE, 56/1596, *pt. pl.* drew hastily. A.S. *twiccan.*

TYNT, 56/1596, *pp.* lost, destroyed. O.Icel. *týna.*

TYȜD, 62/1817, *impers. pr. as fut.* it will betide, happen to.

ÞAR, 2/51, *adv.* where.

ÞARȜ, 76/2288, *prep.* through.

ÞE, 181/5841, *vb.* ÞEO, 103/3251, thrive, prosper. A.S. *þeon.*

ÞEARMES, 38/949, *sb. pl.* bowels. A.S. *þearm.*

ÞEDE, 73/2207, *sb.* country. A.S. *þeod.*

ÞENCHESOUN, 130/4168, *sb.* for *þe enchesoun*, the reason.

ÞENGYNS, 155/4985, for *þe engyns*.

ÞENNE, 34/803, *adv.* thence.

ÞERSTE, 9/291, *vb. pt. s.* dared, ventured.

"I ne *þerste* do such a fol dede."
Seinte Margarete, ed. Cockayne, 304.

ÞEYNT, 167/5395, ? does it seem to.

ÞEYȜ, 18/483, *conj.* though, although.

ÞILKE, 23/578, *pron.* that, such. ÞYLKE, 48/1301, *pl.*

ÞOLIE, 47/1275, *vb.* suffer, endure. A.S. *þolian*.

ÞONDER, 26/631, *sb.* thunder.

ÞOR, 21/544, *adv.* there.

ÞORW, 35/843. ÞORWH, 34/829. ÞORȜ, *prep.* through, by.

ÞOÞRE, 113/3592, for *þe oþre*, the rest, the others.

ÞRASTE, 113/3606, *vb.* push on; 36/871, *pt. s.* pressed, pushed.

ÞREF, 68/2017, *sb.* fortune, luck, thriving.

ÞRETE, 43/1152, *vb.* threaten.

ÞRIDDE, 49/1355, *num. adj.* third.

ÞROW, 28/679, *sb.* time, moment.

ÞUS, 27/660, *pron.* these.

ÞYWYNG, 158/5094, *pr. p.* ? threatening.

UAKE, 72/2148. ? awake.

VCHONE, 102/3207, *pr.* each one, all.

VNDERFONGE, 7/208, *vb.* undertake.

VNDERNOME, 7/205, *pp.* abused; 100/3148, *pp.* undertaken; 161/5213, perceived.

VNDERȜYTE, 81/2469, *pt. pl.* understood. A.S. *undergitan*.

VNRIDE, 29/705, *adj.* violent, fierce. *See* OUNRIDE.

VNWRASTE, 46/1256, *adj.* vile, wretched, worthless. *See* UNWRAST *in Glossary to* Havelock, ed. Skeat.

VSAUNCE, 73/2217, *sb.* custom, habit.

VSAUNT, 104/3296, *adj.* accustomed.

VAAT, 177/5696, *sb.* vat, vessel.

VACCHE, 82/2517, *vb.* fetch, procure.

VAILLE, 36/877, *vb.* avail, be of service to.

VASSALAGE, 58/1671, *sb.* noble deed, becoming a knight.

VASTE, 20/509, *adv.* fast by, close by; 83/2565, soundly, fast.

VAUASOUR, 16/430, *sb.* vassal, an unknighted person, common soldier.

VERAMENT, 16/435, *adv.* truly, assuredly.

VERDE, 102/3228, *impers. pt.* it fared, was.

VET, 72/2183, *sb. pl.* feet.

VETRES, 48/1313, *sb. pl.* fetters, chains.

VEWE, 38/953, *adj.* few.

VIAGE, 34/804, *sb.* journey.

VILENTYNE, 112/3555, *sb.* birds (wild), fowl. A corruption of *Volatile*, the usual M. E. name for birds in general, Lat. *volatilia*, neuter plural, used as a *collective* noun *singular*, much as we say *poultry*, *fowl*. It here = French *volatisses*, which itself is another corruption from the same source.

VOLDE, 97/3028, *vb.* fold, clasp.

VORES, 55/1565, *sb. pl.* furrows, vallies. A.S. *furh*.

VOULE, 137/4427, *adj.* foul, hideous.

VOYDEDE, 144/4627, *pp.* cleared, emptied. *See* Y-VEWDID.

VYLAYNICHE, 165/5345, *adv.* insolently. VILENLY, 62/1825, outrageously, shamefully.

VYLONYE, 75/2254, *sb.* harm, disgraceful treatment.

VYNDE, 20/522, *vb.* find.

VYUE, 43/1147, *num. adj.* five.

WACCHE, 161/5185, *sb.* guard, garrison.

WACE, 14/389, 2 *pt. s.* WAST, 15/421, *pt. s.* was.

WALES, 80/2428, *sb.* whale's. *See* Note.

WALWE, 84/2585, *vb.* WALWEDE, 77/2328, *pt. s.* roll about, wallow, flounder. A.S. *wealwian*.

WAN, 2/47, *adv.* when

WAN, 20/513, 1 *pt. s.* won, gained.

WANNYS, 47/1267, *adv.* whence.

WANYE, 57/1645, *vb.* vanish, disappear.

WAR, 144/4635, *adj.* aware, told.
WAR, 50/1381, *conj.* whether.
WAR, 56/1592, *vb. imper.* beware.
WAR-FOR, 10/505, *conj.* wherefore, for which.
WARYSOUN, 42/1099, *sb.* reward.
WAS, 60/1726, *pron.* whose.
WATHER, 18/486, *conj.* whether.
WAȜES, 49/1343, *sb. pl.* waves.
WEDEDE, 68/2007, *pt. s.* wedded.
WEDES, 60/1751, *sb. pl.* clothes, dresses.
WEL-A-FYN, 89/2752, *adv.* to good purpose, well.
WELDE, 116/3716, *sb.* power, possession.
WEM, 178/5725, *sb.* stain. A.S. *wamm.*
WENDEST, 13/387; *WENIST, 13/387, 2 *pr. s.* thinkest, imaginest.
WEORE, 5/157, *pt. pl.* WORE, 5/156, were.
WEP, 153/4928, *pt. s.* wept.
WEPNE, 6/171, *sb.* a weapon, arms.
WERE, 35/845, *vb.* defend, protect. A.S. *werian.*
WERCHE, 54/1545, *vb.* work, act.
WERRE, 17/450, *sb.* war.
WES, 45/1194, *pt. s.* was.
WHERE, 92/2872, *sb.* doubt.
WHILE, 84/2580, *adv.* once.
WHYTE, 49/1367, *vb.* know, learn. A.S. *witan.*
WIKKE, 36/889, *adj.* fierce, violent (men).
WILLES, 7/221, *adv.* of one's own free will, willingly.
WILY, 71/2138, will I.
WISSE, 4/120, *adj.* certain. *See* Note.
WIT, 84/2584, *sb.* senses.
WITH-HALST, 174/5620, *v.* 2 *pr. s.* withholdest.
WITTES, 57/1649, *sb. pl.* thoughts, opinions.
WIXE, 53/1485, *adj.* strong, fit for fighting. O.Icel. *vigr*, battle.
WIȜTE, 17/456, *adj.* active, strong.
WIȜTLICHE, 167/5384, *adv.* bravely, courageously.
WO, 7/209, *adj.* grieved, vexed.
WOD, 24/591, *pt. s.* went, passed. A.S. *eode.*
WOD, 31/728, *adj.* mad, furious.
WOLD, 105/3324, *sb.* power, possession.
WON, 48/1311, *sb.* dwelling, place.
WON, 112/3560, *sb.* plenty. "Woone, or grete plente *copia,*" &c.—Prompt. Parv. See *P. Plowman*, C. xxiii. 170.
WOND, 36/892, *pt. s.* went, turned.
WONDE, 19/501, *sb.* wound.
WONDOWE, 49/1361, *sb.* window.
WONE, 68/2017, *sb.* habit, practice.
WONED, 78/2390, *pp.* accustomed.
WORLDY, 161/5202, *adj.* earthly, on earth.
WORSCHIP, 39/981, *sb.* honour, fame.
WORST, 34/805, 2 *pr.* as *fut. s.* wilt be.
WORþ, 19/488, *pr.* as *fut. s.* will be.
WOST, 70/2108, *pr.* 2 *s.* knowest.
WOSTOU, 65/1905, wouldest thou.
WOT, 26/638, 1 *pr. s.* know.
WRAKE, 62/1815, *sb.* mischief, destruction.
WRECHE, 130/4181, *sb.* vengeance.
WRYTE, 61/1782, *pp.* written.
WRYȜT, 61/1774, *sb.* writing, letter.
WYCHE, 38/955, *pron.* which, whom.
WYCKE, 146/4721, *adj.* hard, painful.
WYKES, 112/3549, *sb. pl.* weeks. A.S. *wice.*
WYKKE, 36/882, *adv.* fiercely, mightily.
WYLDE, 160/5179, *vb.* wield.
WYMEN, 86/2672, *sb. pl.* women.
WYS, 118/3763, *adv. to wys*, for certain, of a certainty. *See* WISSE.
WYT, 124/3956, *adj.* white.
WYT, 159/5127, *imper. s.* blame, find fault, charge.
WYTE, 163/5276, *vb.* know, find out. A.S. *witan.*
WYTHERWYNS, 28/672, *sb. pl.* antagonists, enemies. A.S. *wiðerwinna.*
WYUY, 70/2096, *vb.* wive, marry.
WYȜT, 15/415, *adj.* active, strong.
WYȜT, 11/342, *sb.* man, person.
WYȜTE, 177/5710, *adv.* brave, valiant.

Y-BATRID, 36/896, *pp.* inlaid.

Y-BORE, 16/444, *pp.* born.

Y-BULD, 48/1331, *pp.* built.

YCH, 161/5191, *pr.* I.

Y-CORE, 33/766, *pp.* chosen. "Icham *coren* king." *Guy of Warwike*, p. 428.

Y-FERE, 11/345, *adv.* together.

Y-FOLLED, 181/5829, *pp.* Y-FULLED, 181/5835, baptised. *See* Y-VOLLID.

Y-FRACLED, 115/3659, *adj.* spotted, freckled.

Y-FULD, 3/74, *pp.* filled.

Y-GULD, 48/1330, *pp.* gilt.

Y-HARNEYSED, 115/3665, *pp.* adorned, ornamented.

Y-HUDDE, 135/4346, *pp.* hidden, concealed.

YKE, 130/4166, *adv.* also. A.S. *eac.*

Y-KENED, 177/5724, *pp.* conceived. A.S. *cennan.*

Y-LEPE, 144/4626, *pp.* thrown over, made to leap over the bridge.

Y-LET, 130/4135, *pp.* stopped, prevented.

Y-LIF, 77/2343, *vb. imper.* believe, trust.

Y-LONG, 133/4291, *adv.* along of, in consequence of.

Y-LOȜE, 20/511. ?

Y-LYUEST, 128/4097, 2 *pr. s.* believest, trustest.

Y-MACED, 105/3326, *pp.* amassed, collected.

*Y-MET, 11/335, *pp.* dreamt.

Y-METE, 70/2092, *pp.* measured.

YMONE, 4/99, *adv.* together. A.S. *gemong.*

Y-MUWED, 60/1738, *pp.* moulted, changed their plumage.

Y-MYNT, 23/576, *pp.* meant, intended.

YNDE, 92/2866, *sb.* end.

YNEWE, 26/626, *adv.* anew, afresh.

Y-NOME, 42/1105, *pp.* taken, captured. A.S. *niman.*

YNOW, 40/1043, *adv.* enough. A.S. *genoh.*

Y-PEYNT, 29/701, *pp.* painted, ornamented: *wyth gold y-peynt* = gilt.

Y-PILT, 10/316, *pp.* fixed, settled.

Y-PONDRED, 48/1327, *pp.* strewed.

Y-PYȜT, 48/1305, *pp.* placed, fixed.

Y-RAD, 127/4083, *pp.* counselled, advised. A.S. *rǣdan.*

Y-RAD, 179/5789, *pp.* read, repeated.

Y-RAFT, 65/1934, *pp.* stolen, taken.

YRE, 31/742, *sb.* iron.

YRE, 114/3643, *sb.* rage, anger.

Y-SAME, 44/1188, *adv.* together.

Y-SETE, 2/48, *pp.* set, inclined.

Y-SHRID, 66/1940, *pp.* clothed, dressed. A.S. *scrȳdan.*

Y-SLENTE, 105/3313, *pp.* flung, slung.

Y-SOWE, 77/2328, *pp.* exhausted, fainting. A.S. *swogan* (?)

Y-SPERDE, 113/3596, *pp.* bolted, barred.

YSSE, 4/125, *pr. s.* is, exists.

Y-STABLYD, 117/3753, *pp.* stabled, put in the stable.

Y-STOKEN, 161/5190, *pp.* stopped, blocked.

Y-STRAWED, 15/421, *pp.* strewn, covered.

Y-TRENT, 182/5881, *pp.* plaited, curled.

YUEL, 7/212, *adj.* ill, evil, bad. YULE, 15/417, *adv.*

Y-UASTE, 91/2822, *pp.* fasted.

Y-VERE, 47/1269, *adv.* together.

Y-VEWDID, 99/3131, *pp.* cleared, emptied. *See* Note.

Y-YOLDE, 180/5796, *pp.* closed, shut.

Y-VOLLID, 22/548, *pp.* baptised. A.S. *fulwian.*

Y-WARESCHID, 32/758, *pp.* healed, cured.

Y-WORÞ, 93/2908, *pt. s.* was, became. Y-WORÞE, 148/4761, *pr.* as *fut. s.* will be.

Y-WREÞÞED, 126/4045, *pp.* angered, enraged.

Y-WYS, 5/139, *adv.* certainly, in truth. A.S. *gewiss.*

Y-ȜETE, 2/49, *pp.* eaten, finished his meal.

ȜAF, 46/1243, *pt. s.* gave. A.S. *gifan.*

ȜARE, 130/4193, *adj.* ready, prepared.

ȝEARE, 161/5186, eager; 97/3059, *adv.*

ȝEALWE, 182/5881, *adj.* yellow, fair.

ȝEATE, 59/172, *sb.* ȝETE, 71/2141, passage, entrance.

ȝEDE, 74/2240, *pt. s.* ȝEODE, 118/3770, *pt. pl.* ȝUTE, 31/729, went, moved. A.S. *eodé.*

ȝELDE, 21/533, *vb.* yield, surrender. ȝULDE, 38/953, *pt. pl.*

ȝERNE, 19/505, *adv.* ȝURNE, 81/2478, hastily, speedily, eagerly.

ȝEUE, 17/462, 1 *pr. s.* as *fut.* shall give. A.S. *gifan.*

ȝYUE, 4/191, 1 *pr. s.* give, yield.

ȝIFþ, 52/1450, *pr. s.* assures, tells.

ȝILPE, 29/694, *vb.* boast, speak loudly of. A.S. *gelpan, gylpan.*

ȝOLDE, 115/3684, *pp.* paid back, requited.

ȝOND, 166/5367, *adj.* yonder.

ȝOT, 116/3690, *pt. s.* went, cut. A.S. *eode, ivit.*

ȝUTE, 32/750, *adv.* yet.

CORRECTION.

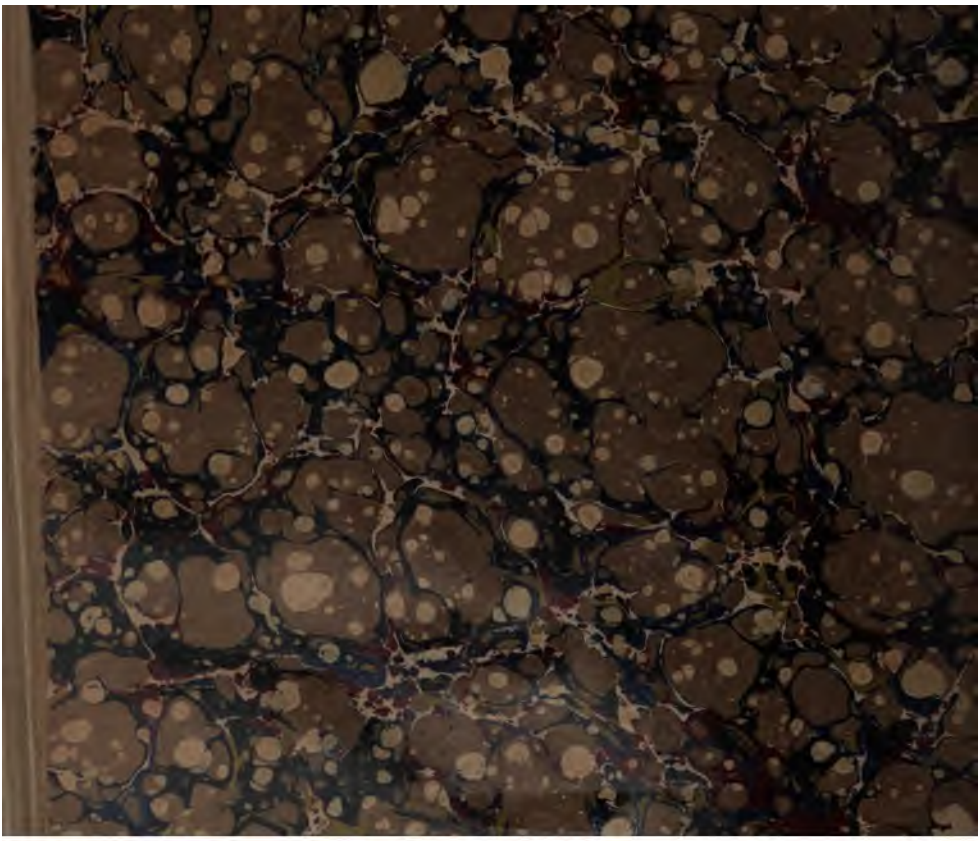
In Glossary, *for* GRILLE, 73/2195, *read* AGRILLE, *and transfer to A.*

Bungay:

CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS.

Stanford University Libraries
Stanford, California

Return this book on or before date due.



Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 005 625 35u

STANFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
CECIL H. GREEN LIBRARY
STANFORD, CALIFORNIA 94305-6004
(415) 723-1493

All books may be recalled after 7 days

DATE DUE

F/S JUN 30 1996
AUG 1996